



**AN EXPOSÉ OF THE METHODS AND STRATEGIES USED BY
SATAN AND HIS PRINCIPALITIES TO RECRUIT POST MODERN
YOUTH TO EVIL SUPERNATURALISM BY DEFILING AND
CORRUPTING THE IMAGE OF CHRIST WITHIN THEM**

by

LEANDRI BLACK

Master of Theology in Ministry (Cum Laude)

Submitted in Accordance with the requirements for the degree of

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

at the

ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

PROMOTOR

Prof Dr Connie M. J. Brand (DLitt PhD MTh)

October 2013

DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned _____ declare that this dissertation is my original work, gathered and utilised especially to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted to any other university for a higher degree. I certify that all information contained herein and in my application materials submitted by me are true, correct and accurate to the best of my knowledge and believe.

Signature

Date

DEDICATION

Firstly I would like to thank and dedicate this thesis to our Lord Jesus Christ for placing a hunger inside of me to get to know Him better.

I further dedicate this thesis to my husband, Ian - thank you for your help, support and interest, always listening to my ideas, being there and understanding. Thank you for keeping me in your prayers and supporting me to finalise this dissertation.

To my father, Pieter - thank you for your love and support through all my decisions, for challenging my thoughts and helping me to strengthen my relationship with God, friends and family. Thank you for always being there and being the priest in our family as God has intended a father to be.

To my mother, Maryann – thanks for your unconditional love and care. Thank you for believing in me and standing by me. Your support has carried me through and helped me to become the person I am today.

To my brother, Ruan – thank you for challenging my opinions with a different perspective. This has helped me to broaden my opinions and thoughts in a new way.

Lastly to all the troubled children and youth in bondage, including Christians who do not know the peace and unconditional love Jesus Christ has for them, that they will learn the Truth and that the knowledge of the Truth will set them free.

-----oOo-----

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

To my Loving Lord Jesus' ministering Spirit, who guided me and gave me the awareness to write this thesis and for His ever abiding grace and protection and wisdom.

To Professor Connie MJ Brand my most sincere gratitude for all your guidance, encouragement and inspiration. Thank you for challenging my thoughts, ideas and providing me with the insight needed to finalise this dissertation. Thank you for the time you've spent helping me and your dedication to Râdâh Academy.

For the magnificent graphical work included in my dissertation I would like to show my earnest appreciation to Susan de Lange from SL Studios.

-----oOo-----

SUMMARY

AN EXPOSÉ OF THE METHODS AND STRATEGIES USED BY SATAN AND HIS PRINCIPALITIES TO RECRUIT POST MODERN YOUTH TO EVIL SUPERNATURALISM BY DEFILING AND CORRUPTING THE IMAGE OF CHRIST WITHIN THEM

By

Leandri Black

SUPERVISOR: Prof Dr Connie M.J Brand (DLitt, PhD, MTh)
DEGREE: Philosophiae Doctor
INSTITUTION: St Clements Private Swiss University

There are two kingdoms according to Scripture, the Kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan, who was once the most beautifully created covering cherub of God. His grotesque pride caused him to be cast from heaven.

In rebellion, Satan is now leading his armies in an assault against God's Kingdom, which directly puts the children of God – mankind in the middle of this war –his destruction and defilement is specifically aimed at the youth and little ones.

By killing the image of God within mankind and their children, Satan makes man an open target for attack, destruction, corruption and defilement thereby cutting them off from having a sonship relationship with their Creator God.

This thesis deems to expose these methods by educating parents and their children about the Truth enabling them to be vigilant and able to discern Satan's devices. Placing the youth and the children, the upcoming generation back into the hands of the Lord, thereby protecting them from Satan and his demonic armies by the Blood of Christ in their spirit, soul and body.

To be foretold is to be forewarned since the most precious treasure of civilisation lies in the preservation of the world's youth - especially so for the Christendom.

-----oOo-----

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)

TITLE PAGE.....	i
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY.....	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS.....	vii
SUMMARY.....	ix
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated).....	xi
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xiii
PROLEGOMENA.....	1
CHAPTER 1: REVELATIONAL KNOWLEDGE PERTAINING TO THE CREATOR'S PLAN AND PURPOSE OF THE MAGNIFICENTLY, ENIGMATICALLY AND UNIQUELY CREATED BEING CALLED MANKIND (ADAMA).....	21
CHAPTER 2: AN EXPOSÉ OF THE PLANS, THE STRATEGIES AND THE METHOD OF DEFILING AND KILLING OF THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN GOD AND HIS CHILDREN, HUMANKIND.....	107
CHAPTER 3: IDOLATRY AND WITCHCRAFT IN MEDIA AND THE MUSIC, CONTROLLING AND MANIPULATING MANKIND THROUGH MIND DEFILEMENT AND DECEPTION CREATING AN ILLEGITIMATE AUTHORITY.....	209
CHAPTER 4: DISMANTLING THE SATANIC KINGDOM OF DARKNESS AS THE AXIOM AND ENDPOINT OF CULTS INFLUENCING POST MODERN YOUTH	319
CHAPTER 5: EXPOUNDING REVELATION PERTAINING TO THE CROSS AND THE DIVINE VICTORY OF PUTTING THE YOUTH OF TODAY IN THE HAND OF GOD.....	419
CONCLUSION	559
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	571
TERMINOLOGY AND ABBREVIATIONS.....	593
ADDENDUM 1.....	597
ADDENDUM 2.....	601
ADDENDUM 3.....	603
LIST OF TABLES AND FIGURES.....	623
CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	625

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Prolegomena

Chapter One: Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being Called Mankind (Adama)

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	21
2.	GOD THE GOD OF DESIGN AND CREATION.....	27
2.1	The Trinity of God.....	31
2.2	Misinterpretations of the Trinity.....	32
2.3	Clarification of the Trinity.....	32
2.4	The Mystery of Godliness.....	36
3.	GOD'S IMAGE.....	39
3.1	Attributes of God.....	43
3.1.1	Absolute Attributes.....	44
3.1.1.1	Spirituality.....	44
3.1.1.2	Self-existence.....	44
3.1.1.3	Immutability.....	45
3.1.1.4	Unity.....	46
3.1.1.5	Truth.....	46
3.1.1.6	Love.....	47
3.1.1.7	Holiness.....	47
3.1.2	Relative Attributes.....	48
3.1.2.1	Eternity.....	48
3.1.2.2	Immensity.....	49
3.1.2.3	Omnipresence.....	49
3.1.2.4	Omniscience.....	50
3.1.2.5	Omnipotence.....	51
3.1.2.6	Truth.....	51
3.1.2.7	Mercy.....	52
3.1.2.8	Grace.....	52
3.1.2.9	Justice.....	53

4.	THE SPIRITUAL IMPORTANCE OF THINGS IN THE SPIRITUAL REALM.....	55
5.	THE UNIQUELY, ENIGMATICALLY CREATED CREATURE CALLED MANKIND.....	58
5.1	Created by Love in the Image and Likeness of God.....	61
5.2	What is man?.....	66
5.2.1	Man, a Created Being.....	66
5.2.2	Three theories surrounding the origin of the soul.....	76
5.2.2.1	The theory of pre-existence.....	76
5.2.2.2	The theory of Creation.....	77
5.2.2.3	The theory of the Traducianists.....	77
5.2.3	Origin of the nonmaterial part of Man.....	79
5.2.3.1	Dichotomous view.....	79
5.2.3.2	Trichotomous view.....	79
5.2.3.3	Multi-faceted view.....	80
5.2.4	Material Part of Man.....	81
6	MANKIND FALLING FROM GRACE.....	84
7	DOCTRINE OF SIN.....	98
7.1	Definition of Sin.....	98
7.2	The Christian and Sin.....	99
8	CONCLUSION.....	101

Chapter Two: An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

1	INTRODUCTION.....	107
2	WHY WAS EVIL EVER CREATED?.....	114
3	GOD AT WAR AGAINST THE FORCES OF DARKNESS.....	120
4.	SATAN, THE ADVERSARY'S KINGDOM.....	128
4.1	The Person Satan.....	129
4.2	The Satanic Trinity.....	136
5.	DEMONOLOGY.....	137
5.1	Demonic Beings.....	141
5.1.1	The Characteristics of Demons.....	142
5.1.2	Evolution of Meaning of the Term "Demon" in Greek.....	145
5.1.3	The Power of Demons over the Human Body.....	149
5.1.4	The Relation of the Spirit World to the Natural World.....	152
5.1.5	Man's Relation to the Spirit-World.....	156

5.2	The Fallen Angels.....	159
6.	THE PRINCIPALITIES OF THE KINGDOM OF DARKNESS AND THEIR SPECIFIC AIMS TO DESTROY THE CHILDREN OF MANKIND.....	163
6.1	Exegesis of the Names and Meaning of the Principalities and Powers.....	163
6.2	The Principalities of Satan’s Kingdom.....	165
6.3	The Four Separate Principalities.....	168
6.3.1	A Biblical View on the Principalities.....	169
6.3.2	Appollyon’s Specific Aims to Destroy Children.....	170
6.3.2.1	Characteristics of Appollyon, detecting the workings of this principality in children.....	170
6.3.3	Abaddon’s (Hebrew Name) Specific Aims to Destroy Children.....	174
6.3.3.1	Characteristics of Abaddon detecting the workings of this principality in children.....	175
6.3.4	Prince of the West Leviathan (The Dragon, the Snake).....	179
6.4	The Job Functions of Demons.....	180
6.4.1	Demons are well organised and are under Higher Authority.....	182
6.4.2	Demons work Together in Families.....	183
7	A PRACTICAL EXPLANATION/DESCRIPTION OF THE METHODS OF DESTRUCTION AS SEEN IN THE AIMS OF THE PRINCIPALITIES TO DESTROY THE YOUTH.....	185
7.1	Corrupting the Image of Christ.....	186
7.1.1	The sexual iniquities root as an axiom of Post Modern Youth Problems.....	189
7.1.1.1	Spirit/Soul ties in Friendship.....	191
7.1.1.2	Spirit/Soul ties in a Group or Community.....	191
7.1.1.3	Spirit/Soul ties – sexual snares.....	193
7.1.2	Pornography.....	195
7.1.3	Destructions via the sins of the flesh.....	195
7.1.4	Emotional Trauma.....	197
7.1.5	Passive or Trance State of Mind – The Spirit of Passivity.....	198
7.1.6	Occult Involvement.....	198
7.1.7	Halloween, a form of idolatry.....	199
7.1.8	Destroying a Healthy Family Structure.....	200
7.1.8.1	Delinquent Personalities.....	204
8.	CONCLUSION.....	205

Chapter Three: Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate Authority

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	209
2.	IDOLATRY AS AN INSTRUMENT TO CORRUPT AND DEFILE AND MISLEAD.....	215
2.1	Idolatry as seen in South Africa.....	215
2.2	Idolatry in the Old Testament.....	220
2.3	Idolatry in the New Testament.....	225
3.	THE FUTURE IS NOW: NEW AGE CULTS.....	227
4.	PAN THE GOD OF ROCK AND ROLL.....	230
5.	DEFILING THE IMAGE OF GOD IN CHILDREN THROUGH MUSIC.....	234
5.1	Brief History on Rock and Roll.....	234
5.1.1	Early Rock: Mid 50's – Early 60's.....	234
5.1.2	British Invasion, Motown Music, Folk Music: Early 60's – Late 60's.....	234
5.1.3	Acid or Hard Rock: Late 60's – Early 70's.....	235
5.1.4	Heavy Metal: Early 70's – Late 70's.....	235
5.1.5	Theatrical Satan Rock: Late 70's - Present.....	236
5.2	Symbolism and Music a hidden language.....	240
5.3	The effect of Music on a Child's Brain, Body and Spirit.....	246
5.4	The beat in music.....	254
5.5	Quotes From Famous Rock Stars.....	263
6.	COVERT DESTRUCTION THROUGH "CHRISTIAN ROCK".....	267
6.1	The Fruit of Religious Rock.....	270
6.2	Testimonies of young People who came out of Christian Rock.....	273
7.	DESTRUCTION VIA DECEPTION SPREAD THROUGH THE MEDIA.....	276
7.1	The origins of Monarch Mind Control Evident in the Media.....	291
8.	MODERN DAY OCCULTIC CULTURE.....	299
8.1	Popular Pop Icons.....	300
9.	CONCLUSION.....	312

Chapter Four: Dismantling the Satanic Kingdom of Darkness as the Axiom and Endpoint of Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	319
2.	THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN OCCULT AND CULTS.....	323
2.1	Cults.....	323
2.2	Occult.....	329

3.	TYPES OF CULTS.....	332
3.1	Christian Science.....	339
3.2	Eastern Religious Cults.....	343
3.2.1	What do Eastern Religious Cults Believe?.....	343
3.3	Freemasonry.....	345
3.3.1	That do Freemasons Believe?.....	349
3.4	The Illuminati.....	351
3.5	Salvation from the Stars.....	353
3.6	Children of God.....	355
3.6.1	What the “Children of God” believes.....	360
3.7	Jehovah Witnesses.....	364
3.7.1	What Does The Jehovah Witnesses Believe?.....	365
3.8	The New Age Movement.....	368
3.8.1	What Do They Believe?.....	372
3.9	Spiritism.....	374
3.9.1	What Do They Believe?.....	376
3.10	Transcendental Meditation.....	377
3.11	Sinister Sects, Magic and Murder.....	379
3.12	Sinister University cults in Nigeria.....	384
4.	THE OTHER JESUS OF THE CULTS.....	388
4.1	The Jesus of Christian Science.....	389
4.2	The Jesus of Jehovah's Witnesses.....	391
4.3	The Jesus of the Mormons.....	392
5	MIND MANIPULATION AND DECEPTION IN CULTS.....	393
5.1	Deception.....	394
5.2	Dependency.....	395
5.3	Fear.....	395
6.	FAMILY INVOLVEMNET IN CULTS AND THE INFLUENCE ON CHILDREN.....	398
6.1	Who gets involved in Cults.....	400
7.	PRAYERS OF RENUNCIATION.....	405
8.	CONCLUSION.....	414

Chapter Five:

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the
Devine Victory of Putting the Youth of Today in the Hand
of God*

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	419
2.	NESHAMAH IN COUNSELLING.....	427
2.1	What is Neshamah?.....	429
2.2.1	Pre-Conception problems.....	430
2.2.2	Behavioural Indicators of Demonic Oppression – After Birth/Adult Life.....	434
2.2.2.1	Incapacity for Normal Living.....	435
2.2.2.2	Extreme Bondage to Sin.....	436
2.2.2.3	Deception about Normal Personality.....	436
2.2.2.4	Tragic Happenings and Accident Proneness.....	436
2.2.2.5	Financial Insufficiency.....	437
2.2.2.6	Inner Anguish.....	437
2.2.2.7	Restlessness and/or Insomnia.....	437
2.2.2.8	Abnormal Sex Life.....	437
2.2.2.9	Trances.....	438
2.2.2.10	Violence, Super-Human Strength.....	438
2.2.2.11	Reporting of Demonic Torment.....	438
2.2.2.12	Self-Inflicted Injury.....	439
2.2.2.13	Functional Sickness.....	439
2.2.2.14	Unidentified Foul Odours.....	439
2.2.2.15	Rapidly Changing Personality.....	439
3.	THE IMPORTANCE OF FAMILY AND PARENTAL LOVE.....	440
3.1	The Importance of Discipline.....	444
3.2	Why do Troubled Youth Break the Rules?.....	446
3.3	Responding to an Angry Youth.....	451
4.	SANCTIFICATION AS PART OF THE EQUIPPING OF THE SAINTS.....	453
4.1	Holiness is seeing Christ formed in Mankind.....	454
4.2	Sanctification as projected through Counselling.....	455
4.3	Sanctification means Change.....	456
5.	DELIVERANCE OF CHILDREN IN BONDAGE TO THE SATANIC KINGDOM OF DARKNESS.....	462
5.1	Demonic Interconnectedness.....	462
5.2	Preparation for Deliverance.....	463
5.2.1	Preparation of the Minister/Counsellor before Deliverance.....	464
5.2.2	Preparation of the Ministry Receiver.....	468
5.2.3	Continuing the Deliverance.....	476
5.2.4	What to do With Stubborn Demons.....	476

5.2.5	What Demons Hate.....	479
5.2.6	Additional Deliberation in Removing a Resistive Demon.....	480
5.3	Relationship counselling.....	481
6.	SPECIFIC DEMONS, AREAS TO ADDRESS WITH REGARDS TO CHILDREN.....	482
6.1	Children of Death and Hell (Demons).....	483
6.2	Unholy Trinity.....	483
6.3	Control Spirit.....	484
6.4	Abused Child physically, emotionally and spiritually	484
6.5	Deliverance and the Fragmented Soul.....	495
6.6	Deliverance for the Subconscious Mind, Freeing, Restoring, Protecting.....	497
6.7	Drug Addiction.....	501
6.8	Imaginations.....	504
7.	SPIRITUAL BOUNDARIES IN A FAMILY HOME.....	506
7.1	Specific Boundaries.....	506
7.2	Building an altar.....	506
7.3	The anointing of the Holy Spirit.....	507
7.4	Mark ones house with the Word of God.....	507
7.5	Music changing the atmosphere in a home.....	509
7.6	Covering the Child in the Blood of Jesus.....	512
7.7	Daily Praying for one's children.....	512
7.7.1	The Shabbat Blessing for a Son.....	513
7.7.2	The Shabbat Blessing for a Daughter.....	514
7.7.3	The Shabbat Blessing for Children.....	514
8.	SPIRITUAL WARFARE.....	516
8.1	Praying against the deaf and dumb spirit – assault through the ear and mind gate.....	517
8.2	The Sword of the Spirit as Protection for the Family in the End Times.....	522
8.2.1	Victory over a passive mind.....	524
8.3	The Path to Freedom.....	524
9.	EFFECTIVE WAYS OF MINISTERING/EVANGELISING TO TROUBLED CHILDREN OR YOUTH.....	527
9.1	Teaching the Gospel with the Bridge.....	531
9.2	Material to use by Teachers, Pastors, Educators, Sunday School Teachers and Parents Educating and counselling Children About the Curses.....	533
9.3	Image to Use while Ministering The Triune God to the youth.....	538
9.4	Teaching Manual for Children with Regards to Spiritual Warfare.....	539
9.5	Resources for Parents.....	545
10.	SPIRITUAL BLESSINGS TO BE PRAYED OVER CHILDREN.....	547

10.1	Spiritual Protection to be prayed against Spiritistic Harassment.....	550
11.	CONCLUSION.....	552
	<i>Conclusion</i>	559
	<i>Bibliography</i>	571
	<i>Terminology and Abbreviations</i>	593
	<i>Addendum 1</i>	597
	<i>Addendum 2</i>	601
	<i>Addendum 3</i>	603
	<i>List of Tables and Figures</i>	623
	<i>Certificate of Editing</i>	625



*An Exposé of the Methods and Strategies Used by Satan
and His Principalities to Recruit Post Modern Youth to Evil
Supernaturalism by Defiling and Corrupting
The Image of Christ within Them*

Prolegomena

Besides being complicated, reality, in my experience, is usually odd.

It is not neat, not obvious, not what you expect.

- C. S. Lewis, Mere Christianity

These words of C. S. Lewis capture an eternal truth about nature, or human nature at least. Reality is not only complicated but full of surprises. One who would discern reality by armchair intuiting or by force of logic from superficial observations may spend many years in mental gymnastics without coming much closer to its nature.

Just when the answer seems simple, neat, obvious, clear-cut, black and white - at that very moment one ought to become suspicious. Reality seldom comes in such tidy packages. The Creator of mankind seems to have had a penchant for surprise and the unexpected, combined with no small sense of humour.

Yet here mankind is, seeking to translate complex reality into usable information and principles, proposing to try to make sense of some major areas of human life and problems, to provide an orderly framework for understanding them, and to describe effective ways of intervening that are accessible to the pastoral counsellor. The potential for oversimplification is immense.

Still, the task is not hopeless. This thesis is written in the belief that there is an underlying order within complexity. In describing such order, there will be drawn from a large body of Biblical truth and psychological theory and research that sheds light on the nature of these human problems and their solutions.¹

IDOLATRY is the first of the ten commandments a person breaks before any of the others are broken, before it is possible for mankind to sin, they need to love something else more than God, be it themselves, the world, parents, children, a spouse or even Satan through an idol the person clings to or adores more than the Lord.

God teaches in His Word to only fear the Lord, people have lost the fear of the Lord as the opinions of man is more important than the opinion of God. People would rather obey man made rules that the rules of the Lord. The Bible also teaches that man does not have to fear idols and render to them, nor should they fear man.

Children are prone to a lot of fears, fear of rejection, fear of not fitting in or not being good enough, fear or not being loved especially by their parents. **The Antidote to fear is faith**, Jesus proclaimed in Luke 4 verses 18 and 19 that He came to heal the broken-hearted and to bring deliverance to the captives and the bruised.

¹ Miller, W.R and Jackson, KA (1995) Practical Psychology for Pastors. USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc, p xii.

"The Spirit of the Lord is on Me; because of this He has anointed Me to proclaim the Gospel to the poor. He has sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to proclaim deliverance to the captives, and new sight to the blind, to set at liberty those having been crushed, to proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord."

Luke 4:18-19 MKJV

Through this gospel, mankind is given a new identity - an identity not based on race, social class, gender, a theological system, or a system of rules and regulations. Rather it is a new and perfect identity based *solely on faith* in Christ, an identity that defines every aspect of the believer's life – an identity in the image of the Lord Jesus Christ.

This image of Christ within mankind was ruined at the fall. The goal of counselling is the renewal of that image. Concretely this means likeness to Christ, who perfectly imaged God as man, who came to show mankind how to live within the boundaries God had given man to live a life in abundance.

In these days when there are so many voices all claiming to be the truth it is imperative that Christians know what they believe. Scripture teaches that mankind should **test** what they hear.

Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but try the spirits to see if they are of God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world.

1 John 4:1 MKJV

The **Truth** is really a Person – ***The Lord Jesus Christ*** as Jesus states in the Bible:

Jesus said to him, I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life; no one comes to the Father but by Me.

John 14:6 MKJV

The Living Word and the Written Word are so closely linked that Jesus also declared:

Sanctify them through Your truth. Your Word is truth.

John 17:17 MKJV

Truth is measured by the Word of God as it is the only standard, the Biblical criterion or framework for judging all doctrine. Mankind ignores the Word of God to their own detriment, because Jesus stated that heaven and earth shall pass away, but **not** His Word (Matthew 24:35).

People go astray because they do not know the Word of God, nor the power of the Lord (Matthew 22:29), as the Word of God was given as inspired by the Lord for *doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness*. (2 Timothy 3:16). What mankind believes affects how they think, feel and act and therefore the book of Timothy encourages believers in Christ as per the following verse:

Hold on to yourself and to the doctrine; continue in them, for doing this you shall both save yourself and those who hear you.

1 Timothy 4:16 MKJV

The ***language barrier*** is one of the key reasons why people, sometimes even Christians get involved with the cults, as they use Christian terminology and frequently quotes unreservedly from the Bible – which is usually used and quoted out of context. Their definitions are usually redefined and different from Biblical definition. For example, when a person involved in Christian Science says that he believes in God, he means something quite different to the Biblically based definition of God.

A cult may be defined as a religious group that differs in belief and practise to basic Bible teaching, therefore Christians should insist on clear definitions to avoid confusion. Many have fallen victim to the deceit found in cults in their attempt to find peace, truth and fulfilment for the deep needs of the human spirit.

Beware lest anyone rob you through philosophy and vain deceit, according to the tradition of men, according to the elements of the world, and not according to Christ.

Colossians 2:8 MKJV

Only Jesus - the Truth Himself can fully satisfy and fulfil the whole of man - body, soul and spirit, for whoever drinks the water that Jesus gives will thirst no more (John 4:14), within the hearts of men God created a “**God shaped vacuum**” which only He can fill.

Jesus warned mankind to be vigilant, to be aware of false prophets which will come disguised in sheep’s clothing, as deceitful workers claiming to be the Apostles of Christ (Matthew 7:15, 2 Corinthians 11:13-15), teaching doctrines contrary to the Word of God (1 Timothy 1:10).

Some of the cults discussed in this thesis are examined under nine basic points of doctrine, based on the **Word which is the Truth of God**: God, The Trinity, The Person Jesus Christ, The Holy Spirit, The Work of Jesus (the Atonement), Jesus’ Resurrection and Return, Salvation by Faith Sin and Judgement Heaven and Hell, Man and the Bible.

Since ancient times man have been collaborating with Satan to set his works in motion, according to the Masonic legend, the Two Pillars of Knowledge had everything that was, is or shall ever be inscribed on them. The Sumerian civilisation, highly developed in written language effectively received secrets of wisdom and the sciences of Heaven from the knowledge imparted to them by Watchers – known as the Fallen Angels.

This knowledge had been written on these pillars came to be known as the “*Tablets of Destiny*”, through these tablets, mankind was able to be re-educated into the “*Sciences of the Hidden Mysteries of Nature*” – through these written languages the “*Craft*” was reborn following the flood. This knowledge of the Craft was used in the construction of the Megalithic Builders’ ancient stone circles, perfectly aligning with the sun, moon, stars and certain constellations. Their sacred sites still exhibit a force that produces physical manifestations upon the human body, such as altered levels of consciousness, anxiety, dizziness, weakness, nervousness, fainting, fast heartbeat, nausea, healings and heightened awareness.

Around these Megalithic Structures water plays a significant role, as they were strategically placed over earth currents to produce a type of electromagnetic Extremely Low Frequency (ELF) from natural telluric energy fields – this “*ancient technique*” ELF is also used in music today, as a method of mind control.

As per the legend the seven famous Gothic Cathedrals built by The Knights Templar’s were constructed using a magical and sacred formula. These Cathedrals were erected on ancient sites to continue the worship of mixing manmade structures with the heavens above them. The templar’s knew the earth currents below these sites were capable of producing a vibrational energy upon the human body. Earth currents running below the ground’s surface, have an energy that can stimulate and open the mind’s Third eye, known as the pineal gland.

Certain music and lyrics repeats words, almost like a mantra, the mantra is chanted to create a vibration within the body, it is used in an effort to produce the perfect harmonic pitch of a single musical note to vibrate the body just like when one is secretly positioned within the Pyramids and Gothic Cathedrals. These vibrations activate the Kundalini, known to the Yogi as “*the fiery Serpent power within*”.²

Most artists show great interest in Egyptian mythology, as most of their live performances are based upon it and contain the symbolism thereof.

It is thus utterly important to get to know the strategies the adversary uses to lure the youth into his kingdom. This thesis isn’t only limited to children and adolescents, it includes teenagers and young adults.

People have lost the fear of the Lord, they have lost the commandments which God have instituted for man to be protected from the occult. For this reason people carry on and live their lives according to their own will, ignorantly participating in occult.

² Pugh, Dr Joye Jeffries (2006) Eden, The knowledge of Good and Evil. USA: Tate Publishing, LLC, pp. 65, 180, 198.

Today people need to strive to receive the wisdom and fear of the Lord to walk in the Light of Christ.

The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

Proverbs 1:7

The combination of music, movies, toys, books etc based on the occult and magic creates a **powerful recruiting tool** that Satan uses to draw young people away from the will of God and the will God has for their lives. Modern culture projects a negative image upon Christianity, causing young people not to search for God and keeping them away from the Body of Christ – the Church.

The occult draws children with the lie of universal acceptance of everyone regardless of their religious views, sexual orientation or appearance. It promises great power and the revelation of universal secrets which can transform ordinary lives into unlimited potential, a world promoting a life which one live by their own standards, not having to be held accountable to God.

The occult offers an escape from social responsibility, luring its participants into isolation where Satan can manipulate the way a person views himself or herself in relationship to the rest of society and especially in how they view themselves to God. Media could thus be seen as an escapism mechanism young people use to try to escape from reality; **to get away from reality is to try and get away from God.**

Satan creates a false sense of elitism within the individual which grows into an almost alter ego of who the person used to be. This is one of the main reasons members of pagan groups change their names while practicing ceremonial magic – it is a escape mechanism from their own day to day life – very much the same as children playing certain video games creating their very own character with a unique name. The more a person is drawn away from reality the easier it is to convince them to stray farther away from God and who He created them to be.

Satan has no problem mixing enough truth to make a teaching seem right with just enough error to damn souls to hell. He would use any means possible to entrap and ensnare people especially children – children are more susceptible to spiritual things than adults, Jesus said that one should believe like a child – for this reason Satan starts to trap people in their childhood, which creates a stronger bond or hold that he will have on their lives, misleading a child from the special and specific calling God has for his life and the rightful path of the Lord.

Prolonged exposure to violent media causes a child to become more desensitised, they come to the conclusion that violence is the only way to resolve a dispute and they live in unreasonable fear. Secular media affects a person's thoughts and ideas – it affects the way one sees God as well as the world around you. It defiles the image of Christ within the child leaving the child in ignorance to what God has created him or her to be, a created being in the image of the Most High God. Children has a vivid imagination, they can imagine and make up stories and play it out for hours and days at a time. Some children even make up imaginary friends which people just brush off as things children do.

One could ask why the sudden increases of occult symbols in the media, why the sudden interest therein even in children stories, books and music. Celebrities that claim to be role models to today's children are constantly participating in these symbols. Christians totally disregard the sober warnings given throughout Scripture that Satan will work through false teaching, false miracles, false words of knowledge, false prophecies and false manifestations of godliness. Christians fail to vigilantly test modern day media teachings, books and films to God's Word to reveal Satan's deceptions and practices.

This proposed proposal deems that a definite problem occurs when people are in ignorance about the reasoning behind certain "*rituals*", "*beliefs*" and practices coming from the Occult through the media.

This research proposal will look into the origin of the Occult and cults and the relevancy thereof in the media today and it will expose the fact that the media prevents spiritual growth and faith.

It will illuminate the workings of Darkness to keep children and the youth from stumbling into the dark and to light the way for those who are lost and bound by the kingdom of Darkness.

Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

John 14:6

This proposed proposal will provide methods/teaching on how music can be used as a method of spiritual warfare against Satan and his entourage. How children can be delivered from the snares of methods of Satan and how the family can be rooted in their Source of life – the Lord Jesus Christ.

This thesis' aim and purpose:

The purpose of this proposed thesis is to introduce and demonstrate the effects, of the occultic and demonic content found in the media and toys, on a child's body, soul and spirit. It is hypothesized that the content and the materials found in media, in many cases, serves as an introduction to evil, contains magical rituals and teach children real magic along with facilitating intense occult training, it will show that this content is a recruiting tool of Satan.

The aim of the proposed hypotheses includes the following:

- To analyze and study the scripture-based worldview based on the mind of Christ in depth, in order to facilitate a better understanding with the problem of the root of occultism.
- Providing an overview of the history of these occult influences in the media and the modern society's viewpoint of this theme.

- To expose the strategies used by the enemy and to highlight the dangers and pitfalls of watching/participating in worldly related topics – especially coming from the media.
- To present this as something dangerous and utterly contrary to the will of God (1 Samuel 15:23) eventually leading to idolatry.
- To educate people about the powerful forces working through cults, movies, music and toys with witchcraft as the driving force behind it.
- To educate people that secular media is about rebellion towards God which deceives people from the truth.
- To exegete a biblical view regarding what the Christian church should teach concerning the problems of satanic involvement. Whether this is deception due to involvement in direct witchcraft practices or by watching and submitting oneself to music and movies. The end result is the same occult bondage.
- Give an account of case studies with the possibility of drawing conclusions relating to children watching these movies and listening to this music as a tool that promotes an un-biblical worldview within their minds.
- To expose the effects secular media and music has on a child's brain creating a false sense of accomplishment.
- This thesis proposes to show the Christian what it means to be created in the image of Christ, and how Satan wants to destroy the image of Christ within the children and the youth.
- To educate parents about the principalities and power of darkness and their goals to destroy their children.
- To warn parents of the dangers lurking behind cults.

On an application level, the purpose of this thesis is:

- To educate, warn, rebuke, correct and encourage Christians to the urgent message of radical repentance and preparation in order to be found blameless at the coming of the Lord, in spirit, soul and body, in the midst of a generation filled with occultism. (Philippians 2:15, Colossians 2:2, 4:8, 1 Thessalonians 4:17; 5:23)

- To empower Christian parents to be knowledgeable, having godly discernment to expose the lies, confusion and anxiety caused by Satan and to stand firm in the light of increasing difficult life situations and choices. To empower the father, priest of the home on what God's will for him is in a family unit – to teach his children to love the Lord with their whole heart and to re-implement unity in the family by worshipping God.
- To encourage, strengthen, edify and bless Christians to be able to speak the truth as per the word of God, amidst all the confusion in doctrine especially about occultism and witchcraft.
- To encourage Christian parents to use every opportunity to assist their children's spiritual growth towards spiritual maturity and perfection in Christ.
- The proposed thesis will prove that the mind is the primary battleground of one's spiritual destiny. It will show that Satan works on the minds of children to achieve his purposes. (2 Corinthians 4:4)
- This proposed thesis will demonstrate that the worldly view of music and movies filled with occultism and witchcraft is outside the view of biblical values. In a worldly view good and evil is deemed to be equal imbedding danger for the generations to come. The proposed thesis will thus conclude that one cannot be a Christian and believe or participate in this worldly view of music and movies filled with occultism without being a hypocrite or deceived person.
- The proposed thesis will empower parents and children to use true worship and music against the powers of darkness, that the true worshippers of God are at the front line in battle and that singing is a powerful tool against the enemies of God.

The objectives of this research are to answer the following questions:

- Do the media, books, magazines, television and radio give a distorted, untrue view of the effects of these occult themes in the media?
- Are they completely misinformed, or intentionally deceptive about the nature of these movies or music?

- Why do some people/children tend to withstand the sorcery through music and the media on a stronger level than others?
- Do bloodline sins have an effect if children get affected by it or not/Does bloodline sins and curses open one up to spiritual deception via the media?
- Can children be affected to the stage of acting upon it?
- What is the effect of witchcraft/sorcery in the media on the body, soul and spirit of children?
- How does this witchcraft affect the imagination of children?
- What is the effect of music on the brain, soul and spirit?
- Does this witchcraft in media (movies/music etc) affect children in a different manner in different cultures?
- The Bible teaches that there is power in spoken words, what is the effect of lyrics in music on the physical and or spiritual realm?
- Does rebellion transfer from music to the listener and how?
- Is it inherently wrong for Christian youth to watch films containing occult content?
- Is it impossible for a Christian to watch such films solely for the entertainment value without somehow undermining his or her dedication to Christ?
- Is the fantasy world of movies just “*make belie*” and could it have an effect on the physical and spiritual realm?
- Does the spirit become weakened or poor by certain genres of music?
- Why are certain cults seen as unbiblical even though they seem to be so close to the truth?
- What does it mean to be created in the image of God?

HYPOTHESES

The proposed thesis will consist of the following hypotheses:

Hypothesis 1: The proposed thesis will proof that witchcraft is real and does exist, that this power comes from Satan and his dark forces, as Brand explains the theodicy directly concur to the person of Satan³.

Hypothesis 2: This proposed thesis will show that movies and music containing occult themes are more than just a movie or a song. It should instead be seen as training material to be part of the occult by employing witchcraft. These movies and music is being created as part of a plan to bring children into witchcraft, it is a form of brainwashing and mind control and also fundamentally anti-Biblical and sin. The thesis will also address the effects of these themes and sounds in music and movies on the brain and how the mind can be controlled by certain sounds.

Hypothesis 3: This proposed thesis will show that occult in music and movies presents a world without the Biblical viewpoints God has planned that the values and morality has no meaning in today's world. It will attest that the worldview reflecting from these occult movies and music presents a universe without the Triune God, that New Age movement of "*I myself am god*" is now the norm. In the light of the New Age movement it will show that any involvement in Cults ultimately ends up in the satanic kingdom of Darkness.

Hypothesis 4: This proposed thesis will equip Christian parents with the necessary information to daily renew their minds to eventually obtain the mind of Christ with the consequential sanctification– in order not to be blinded and deluded by Lucifer's deceptions, so that they can shine light on the darkness of the movie and music industry and make informed decisions regarding this.

Hypothesis 5: This proposed hypothesis will deem to develop the discernment of the spirit realm to equip mature Christian parents to discern good and evil; Light and Darkness and especially important to detect Occult influence and involvement.

³ Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Dissertation for Doctor of Philosophy, UK: Calvary University.

DEMARCATIION INCLUDING SCOPE AND LIMITATION

The proposed research does not aim to be an exhaustive treatment and critique of Occult practices, the different false doctrines and religions. It will not give an in depth description of the Occult practices, the different false doctrines and religions mentioned. Nor give an explanation on how to get involved there in. It does not attempt to provide answers to perplexing questions regarding occult involvement appearing in the media especially in movies and music.

The following areas of the field of study will be excluded: a complete study of Gnosticism, New Age religions, Freemasonry and other related fields will not be studied in-depth, but only the aspects that is used to lure people into this deception by opening of the spiritual third eye. The field of psychology per se will not be covered, but only the occult methods used by this field will be explained.

Rather than elaborate in great detail upon the many rites, rituals, myths, practices, names, or paraphernalia employed in Ancient and Contemporary Occultism this Research aims to provide only the minimal amount of information needed to establish the facts.

The primary purpose is to expound, as necessary, the basic practices, beliefs and worldviews of contemporary Occult practices and then analyze the findings in an apologetic analysis. The proposed thesis will be done from an Exegetical⁴ point of view.

This proposed thesis is unique in the attempt to provide a valuable contribution to the truth, knowledge and freedom that comes by knowing and doing the right thing with regards to occult driven media and toys.

⁴ of or relating to exegesis : Explanatory <an *exegetical* text>

LITERATURE REVIEW

In constructing this research project, executing the research and analysing the data, a broad and deep body of literature was considered.

This literature crosses disciplines, including Anthropology⁵, Astrology⁶, Mythology⁷, Numerology⁸, Occultism⁹, Phenomenology¹⁰, Psychology¹¹. Also Pre-history¹² and History¹³, Religious studies¹⁴, Satanism¹⁵, Sociology¹⁶, Symbology¹⁷ and Theology¹⁸. While an exhaustive account of all the relevant literature in these disciplines would be a dissertation-size undertaking in and of itself, it is instructive to examine only some of the key texts, theories and concepts which inform and underpin this research. Such an examination also helps put this project in a larger scholarly and Ethnographic context.

THESIS WRITING METHODOLOGY AND APPROACH

A combination of diverse qualitative designed methodology types is intended to be used as Historical analysis, Ethnography and Phenomenology approaches. However quantitative design types will be used to examine some social work.

The academic report is audience oriented:

- It will demonstrates in-depth understanding of the topic
- Answers reader's important questions about the topic

⁵ Refer to Terms and Definitions

⁶ Refer to Terms and Definitions

⁷ Refer to Terms and Definitions

⁸ Refer to Terms and Definitions

⁹ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁰ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹¹ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹² Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹³ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁴ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁵ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁶ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁷ Refer to Terms and Definitions

¹⁸ Refer to Terms and Definitions

- Defines the terms and concepts the readers need to know
- Uses language the reader will understand
- Uses persuasion, not undocumented assertions, to argue the topic
- The report will use peer reviewed publications or other reliable, credible, sources to support ideas

The study will include:

- Data collection and literature review obtained from books, magazine articles and internet information.
- Audio visual material such as television programmes, documentaries, movies and CD-Rom material.
- Structured, unstructured and semi-structured interviews.
- Case studies.

The approaches will be as follows:

Scientific knowledge will be gained through observation and studies.

Terminology/Terms

Terminology, terms and definitions used in the dissertation, will be defined at the end.

Abbreviations

Abbreviations used in the dissertation, will be defined at the end.

REFERENCING

The Harvard Method will be used in the Bibliography and footnotes are used to reference authors, definitions, etc. at the bottom of each page.

PROPOSED TABLE OF CONTENTS AND DIVISION OF CHAPTERS

TITLE

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

Chapter One - Revelational Knowledge Pertaining To The Creator's Plan And Purpose Of The Magnificently, Enigmatically And Uniquely Created Being Called Mankind (Adama)

To understand the purpose of spiritual defilement Satan has planned for mankind one firstly need to have an understanding of the divine plan God has for the creation of mankind, created in His image from the most highest to the most humble (soil). Mankind was formed from the dust of the earth. God breathed the breath of life into his nostrils making man a living soul and that combination created the spirit of man, making mankind close to a divine being. This chapter will reveal the deeper revelation as to why God choose to create mankind from the highest level to the lowest level.

Chapter Two – An Exposé Of The Plans, The Strategies And The Method Of Defiling And Killing Of The Relationship Between God And His Children, Humankind

This chapter will expound the method by which Satan who is the epitome of rejection, rejects and destructs God's legitimate authority. Detail will be given as to how the illegitimate authority of Darkness deems to rob Christians from the power and authority of God's Word (mainly through deception). Satan's original purpose was to cover God with worship; he now uses this purpose to strip mankind of the holy worship intended by God to bring man into His intimate presence. Satan's

grotesque pride drives his hatred for God and the children of God to destruction. This chapter will elucidate Satan's strategies and plans going against God's will via hatred, jealousy, aggression and possession destroying the divine image of God in mankind.

Chapter Three - Idolatry And Witchcraft In Media And The Music, Controlling And Manipulating Mankind Through Control And Mind Defilement And Deception Creating An Illegitimate Authority

The bizarre phenomena pertaining to hedonistic evil demonic music and media leading mankind into a perverse state in soul and body and spirit, to lead humans through defiled music into their base animalistic nature deprived from higher morality and divine purpose.

It will expose idolatry and witchcraft's purpose of desolating and separating mankind from God, witchcraft promotes carnal and suppresses the spiritual and opposes the revelation of Jesus Christ crucified. Via defiled music witchcraft exalts human thinking above divine revelation. Certain living idols will be used as case studies. This thesis will research the two aspects of witchcraft especially as seen in music and media.

Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,

Galatians 5:19-20

Witchcraft will never be of any good to Christians.

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10

Chapter Four - Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth

This thesis' purpose is to dismantle and emphasise the role of Satanism as the axiom and endpoint leading the destructed and deceived and broken youth right into the snares of Satan, knowingly or unknowingly. Any involvement in Cults is ultimately participation in the kingdom of Darkness.

Chapter Five – Expounding Revelation Pertaining To The Cross And The Divine Victory Of Putting The Youth Of Today In The Hand Of God

An exegetical study on spiritual warfare - praise and worship for healing, inner healing, authority and deliverance to come into the fullness of the plan God has for His children to become victors with Christ instead of captives in the evil supernaturalism.

This thesis's purpose is to reveal the already defeated foe of God and the methodology exposed in the Word of God through the Holy Spirit that the generations of humankind belongs to the Lord.

Although Satan is trying his utmost best to pull an already broken world (mankind) into destruction via music and the media, Satan is a defeated foe. Christians must make a determined effort to throw off the veil of witchcraft and fix their gaze on the perfect work of the Cross, which is the knowledge of the truth that will set them free.

For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.

1 Corinthians 1:18

The proponent of the knowledge of the Truth of the Word of God will change the uncircumcised heart of the youth from hedonistic evil supernaturalism into the fullness of the light of total freedom and joy in and through the Lord Jesus Christ.

-----oOo-----



Chapter One

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being Called Mankind (Adama)

*"Thou hast created us for Thyself, and our hearts know no rest until they
repose in Thee"¹*

Augustine, The Confessions

1. INTRODUCTION

A central theme discussed throughout this thesis is exemplified in a core problem, that basically boils down to a single question as stated by Brand², "A question of how God and evil are able to co-exist in the same universe."

¹ Durant, Will (1950) *The Age of Faith*. New York: Simon and Schuster, Inc., p. 71.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

The first answer is that it is impossible for man to understand the issue in his human nature and secondly any God that man can define is no God at all".

In a nutshell mankind should cleave to the main presupposition: **God is**. God is beyond the power and ability of man to define, He is infinite and thus mankind must depend on some form of self revelation in order to discover who God is. Firstly one would take the approach of what is confined of historic Christian religion as it is presented to man in the Bible, several points' needs to be noted in this approach. In this thesis the study of the Bible is taken as starting point and will be regarded as the self revelation of God and as the Word of God. As such the Word of God is the Truth and every proposition will be examined and proven in the light of it.

The Bible gives a clear proclamation – God exists, it never argues the existence of God but rather represents His existence as bare fact. His existence is a subject for another thesis but for the purposes of this thesis the existence of God is proclaimed as it is in Scripture.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

John 1:1 MKJV

Evil is also very much a reality because the Bible plainly reveals it, evil is not an illusion of the mind of mankind nor is it a thing of relativity. It is very real and God takes it very seriously. The axiom of the thesis is proved to be the Word of God therefore it will be started with some repique of Jesus Christ as the Son of God, since He is the Word. This thesis will explain the view of God the Father as seen through the eyes of the Son and Savior Jesus Christ. God is always good, He is compassionate, holy and **He is Love**.

² Brand, Dr Prof CMJ (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Pretoria South Africa: Unpublished, pp. 26-29.

Compassion is the hallmark of Jesus' God, consequently Jesus' healings and deliverance plays a major role in His ministry and are not simply patches on a body destined for death regardless; they are manifestations of God's reign on earth now and in breaking of eternity into time, a revelation of God's merciful nature, a promise of the restitution of all things in the heart of the loving Author of the universe.

It is fundamentally important to understand the image of God, God tells mankind that they were made in His image and in His likeness (Genesis 1:26). How are mankind to understand the image and likeness, does it denote something physical in the way God would look like or would it merely be His divine character, or does it simply refer to God's attributes.

Where Scripture demonstrates some prophetic vision or description of God, it provides glimpses of the image of God of what God looks like. Grasping the image of God will aid in figuring out what the believer's future is and also how Satan has tried to demolish the image in mankind throughout the ages and will deceive the world in the very near future.

The Bible teaches that God is the eternal One and that there is none like Him, the Lord Himself is God in heaven above and on the earth beneath, there is no other, (Deuteronomy 4:39) God proclaims the end from the beginning and from earliest times things that are not yet done (Isaiah 46:10), He is the First and the Last, and besides Him there is no other God (Isaiah 44:6), God made the earth and created man on it, it was His hands that stretched out the heavens and commanded all their host (Isaiah 45:12). God exists in and of Himself; He was never created and has no end. There is none like Him in heaven above, on the earth or below the earth.

Isaiah teaches a very important aspect of mankind's salvation:

Yet it pleased Jehovah to crush Him; to grieve Him; that He should put forth His soul as a guilt-offering. He shall see His seed, He shall prolong His days, and the will of Jehovah shall prosper in His hand.

Isaiah 53:10 MKJV

Through Jesus God saw the perfect sacrifice for all mankind's sin, the word seed in Hebrew is *zera* which means the physical and biological offspring or children. It means that someone is the descendent from another.

Everyone who has been born of God does not commit sin, because His seed remains in him, and he cannot sin, because he has been born of God.

1 John 3:9 MKJV

If God's seed is in a believer it means that that person has been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible through the Word of God which lives and abides forever the seed of God has no sexual connotation whatsoever.

having been born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, through the living Word of God, and abiding forever.

1 Peter 1:23 MKJV

A believer in Jesus is thus the descendant of God, a child of God and the other term used to describe the children of God is Christians.³ Throughout Scripture God is seen to enter into a covenant with mankind and He promises to bless a person and his descendants.

And Jehovah your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your seed, to love Jehovah your God with all your heart and with all your soul, so that you may live.

Deuteronomy 30:6 MKJV

³ Hamp, D (2011) *Corrupting the Image, Angels, Aliens and the Antichrist Revealed*. USA: Douglas Hamp, pp 33, 68

And Jehovah your God will make you have plenty in every work of your hand, in the fruit of your body, and in the fruit of your cattle, and in the fruit of your land, for good. For Jehovah will again rejoice over you for good, as He rejoiced over your fathers;

Deuteronomy 30:9 MKJV

Though hand join in hand, the wicked shall not be innocent; but the seed of the righteous shall be delivered.

Proverbs 11:21 MKJV

They will not labor in vain, nor bring forth for terror. For they are the seed of the beloved of Jehovah, and their offspring with them.

Isaiah 65:23 MKJV

And their seed will be known among the nations, and their offspring among the peoples; all who see them will acknowledge them, that they are the seed Jehovah has blessed.

Isaiah 61:9 MKJV

And they shall be My people, and I will be their God. And I will give them one heart and one way, that they may fear Me forever, for their good and for the good of their sons after them.

Jeremiah 32:38-39 MKJV

God blesses the children of the righteous, people who love the Lord with their whole heart and soul, as the children of God, every Christian and Christian church has a responsibility, they are involved in the society and its problems with no exception.

Even the pastor, congregation, or denomination that claims to be ministering to purely spiritual needs is in that way declaring its place on the political, economic, and social issues of its community and nation, this is true for the mere fact that the spiritual life of any person is profoundly social, no matter how "individualistic" or personal it seems to be as the origin is social, for faith comes by hearing, and human messengers who are used by God to bring the Gospel message to the nations (Romans 10:14-17).

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

Even when a person is "*alone with God*," the person's emotions, sentiments, private prayers, conscience, language, religious concepts, beliefs, values, and attitudes toward himself, the world, and God are all modified by past experiences in society.⁴

Society tends to ignore children in trouble and usually prefer to remove them from sight. Some citizens even insist on severe punishment for these children. An adult who would punish children stricken with measles or leukaemia would be considered insane but nonetheless youngsters battered or neglected by alcoholic parents, children who run away because their homes are without love or because they are being hurt at school or children who are being beaten and raped, are often uncared for or punished.

School leaders, church officials, and other professionals and volunteers, who work with children in trouble, tend to rather focus instead on "*good*" children. Many of those who care about problem children, including several thousand sincere, dedicated persons employed by the various public and private agencies and institutions, continue to face much criticism and little support when the public cries out for reform.

The public scoffs at "*kid-coddlers*" and permissive do-gooders clinging to tired myths and those who refuse to examine facts. Some become so frustrated that they now demand that the present system of dealing with children in trouble be scrapped.

Even if money, rather than children, is of supreme importance to the people of this nation, they would be well advised to reconsider the way they deal with young people, because the staggering rise in the number of troubled youth will soon cost the nation dearly. Neglect of children in trouble and in need, produces misfits,

⁴ Moberg, D (1965) *The Social Responsibility of the Christian*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, p. 13.

drifters, welfare cases, delinquents, and criminals. The result is a tremendous financial drain on a nation and a tragic squandering of human potential.⁵

Keeping this in mind, the question arises who is God, who is man and was man created with characteristics of both good and evil inside of him. It is therefore utterly important that mankind grasp the concept of what it means to be created in God's image to therefore be able to teach it to their descendants enabling a person to fulfill his purpose in the will and plan of the Lord.

To create families to God's structure, raising children in the image and likeness of God. This chapter will also discuss how Adam lost his image in and of God being deceived by Satan (Genesis 3:1) which is the same problem mankind still faces today as they aren't taught what is the deeper meaning of being made in the image of the Most High God.

2. GOD THE GOD OF DESIGNS AND CREATION

God did not create man because He was lonely, egocentric, self-centered or wanted to be worshipped, God is secure in who He is, from the beginning He had company with Jesus and the Holy Spirit, God didn't need humankind. God was a self sustaining family in and of Himself.

Neither is worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things;

Acts 17:25

Mankind was created through and by God's great love; He loved mankind even before He created them which is an everlasting love, loving a person before the person is even born.

⁵ Dwight, S and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth, Wheaton: Tyndale House Publishers. pp. 12-13.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

The LORD hath appeared of old unto me, saying, Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee.
Jeremiah 31:3

God in His infinite wisdom has also chosen humankind to be a part of His eternal plan:

Remember the former things of old: for I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me, Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:
Isaiah 46:9-10

Mankind thus plays a significant role in God's plan of reconciliation and salvation and it is thus essential to understand who man is and why God has created man.

An account of the creation of the whole earth is found in Genesis one, God created light, darkness, the heaven, earth and the sea and all the creatures found upon the earth and in the waters, the seen and the unseen world. Everything God created was perfectly in His will and purpose,

And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.
Genesis 1:31

God is a God of patterns, order, designs and wonderfully structured projects.⁶ God perfectly cares and controls the entire ecosystem, everything God created is beautiful and perfect in its time and every creature from its lowest molecular structure speaks of God and praises Him. God does not do anything by chance or for emotional reasons, everything is done according to His models and designs.

There is a general revelation, which is preliminary to salvation, which reveals aspects about God and His nature to all mankind so that all humanity has an

⁶ Ferrell, Dr Ana Mendez (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. USA: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p. 19.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

awareness of God's existence. Psalm 19:1–6 is a primary passage laying emphasis on the general revelation of God in the universe and in nature. The heavens speak of God's glory, for no one apart from a majestic God could bring the vast heavens into being. The earth, in all its exquisiteness, harmony, and intricacy, reveals the handiwork of God. Romans 1:18–21 further emphasizes the general revelation of God and the fact that man is accountable to God. He has revealed "*His invisible attributes, His eternal power and divine nature*" so that humanity is without excuse.⁷

For the unseen things of Him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being realized by the things that are made, even His eternal power and Godhead, for them to be without excuse.

Romans 1:20 MKJV

Even the natural realm acknowledges Jesus as the Creator having spiritual authority over all things in the heavens and on the earth, to emphasize this; four cases will be mentioned. In Mark, Jesus and His disciples crossed the sea to go to the other side, while crossing a storm arose, Jesus was asleep and His disciples woke Him in a panic, Jesus stood up and in an exceedingly authoritative and majestic command, amid the howling tempest on the heaving sea, in the darkness of the night, by His own power He rebuked the wind and told the sea to be still and there was great calmness. None other but the God of the storms could awe, by a word, the troubled elements and send a universal peace and stillness among the wind and waves.

And He awakened and rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, Peace! Be still! And the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.

Mark 4:39 MKJV

Jesus returned from Bethany early one morning, He was hungry and on His way He found a fig tree, but the tree bore no fruit. Jesus said to the tree that it will never bear

⁷ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 28.

any fruit again and the tree immediately withered away. The tree was directly obedient to its Maker and accepted the authority Jesus had over it.

And returning early to the city, He hungered. And seeing a fig tree in the way, He came to it and found nothing on it except leaves only. And He said to it, let no fruit grow on you forever. And immediately the fig tree withered away.

Matthew 21:18-19 MKJV

Upon the last breath of the Lord Jesus, when He gave up His spirit, nature reacted to what happened in the spiritual realm, the sun went dark and there were earthquakes, as the creation could not bear the fact that their Creator had to die.

And from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land until the ninth hour. But the centurion and those guarding Jesus, seeing the earthquake, and the things that took place, they feared greatly, saying, Truly this One was Son of God.

Matthew 27:45,54 MKJV

Jesus travelled to the Mount of Olives, upon His arrival He asked His disciples to go into the town and upon entering they will find a donkey with a colt tied to her, He asked them to bring the animals to Him. It was predicted in the Old Testament that Jesus would ride into the city on a colt, (Zechariah 9:9) a donkey who was never ridden before. The animal was never trained or broken in, but the colt knew His Maker and Jesus sat and rode on Him with ease, where the natural instinct of a colt never broken in would have been to jump around and throw of the rider.

And they brought the ass, even the colt, and put their clothes on them, and He sat on them.

Matthew 21:7 MKJV

It is thus clear to see throughout Scripture that Jesus, the Creator and Lord is acknowledged by His creation, nature humbly bows before the Lordship of Jesus.

God sent Jesus Christ, His only begotten son and He revealed God the Father to mankind. The word exegesis - to draw out, or to explain is derived from the Greek word translated “*explained*” (*exegesato*) in John 1:18. In that text the expression stresses that through His teachings and miracles Christ has explained the Father to mankind. A major emphasis of John’s gospel is that Jesus came to reveal the Father. It is important to know that Jesus has the same authority as God, as He is in essence – God, one should therefore study the Trinity of the Lord.

2.1 The Trinity of God

The Trinity of God is a doctrine that is primary to the Christian faith; belief or disbelief in the Trinity marks orthodoxy from unorthodoxy. Human reason, however, cannot comprehend the Trinity, nor can logic explain it and although the word itself is not found in the Scripture, the doctrine is plainly taught throughout Scripture. The early church was forced to study the subject and affirm its truth because of the heretical teachings that arose opposing the Trinity.

The term Trinity is not the best term because it accentuates only the three persons but not the unity within the Trinity. The German word *Dreieinigkeit* (“three-oneness”) better communicates the concept. A proper definition includes the distinctness and equality of the three persons within the Trinity as well as the unity within the Trinity. The word Triunity may better express the doctrine.

A proper definition of the Trinity affirms: “***the Trinity is composed of three united Persons without separate existence - so completely united as to form one God. The divine nature subsists in three distinctions - Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.***”

2.2 Misinterpretations of the Trinity

Tri-theism: In early church history men such as John Ascunages and John Philoponus taught that there were three who were God but they were only related in a loose association as, for example, Peter, James, and John were as disciples.

The inaccuracy of this teaching was that its proponents deserted the unity within the Trinity with the result that they taught there were three separate Gods rather than three Persons - **within one Godhead**. **Sabellianism or Modalism:** Originated by Sabellius (c. a.d. 200), this philosophy erred in the opposite from that of Tri-theism. Even though Sabellius spoke of Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, he understood all three as basically three modes of existence or three manifestations of one God. The teaching is thus also known as modalism because it views one God who variously manifests Himself in three modes of existence: Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.

Arianism. Arian doctrine had its heredity in Tertullian, who subordinated the Son to the Father. Origen carried Tertullian's concept further by teaching that the Son was subordinate to the Father "*in respect to essence*" which ultimately led to Arianism, which denied the deity of Christ. Arius taught that only God was the uncreated One; because Christ was begotten of the Father it meant Christ was created by the Father. According to Arius there was a time when Christ did not exist. Arius and his teaching were condemned at the Council of Nicea in a.d. 325.

This thesis holds to the term Sola Scriptura indicating that the complete Word (Bible) was instigated by the Triune God as seen in e.g. John 1.

2.3 Clarification of the Trinity

God is one in regard to essence; the early church history had the question developed whether Christ was the same as the Father in substance or in essence. Arius taught that Christ was like the Father in substance, yet the Father was greater

than Christ; hence, although some equated the terms substance and essence, the proper way to designate the Trinity became “*one in essence*.” The fundamental oneness of God is linked to Deuteronomy:

Hear, O, Israel. Jehovah our God is one Jehovah.

Deuteronomy 6:4 MKJV

This statement emphasizes not only the uniqueness of God but also the unity of God (James 2:19). It means all three Persons possess the summation of the divine attributes but yet the essence of God is undivided. Oneness in essence also emphasizes that the three Persons of the Trinity do not act independently of one another. This was a constant theme of Jesus in rejection to the charges of the Jews (John 5:19; 8:28; 12:49; 14:10).

God is three with respect to Persons, the word persons brings confusion and to detract from the unity of the Trinity, and it is readily renowned that persons are an inadequate term to describe the relationship within the Trinity. Some theologians have opted for the term subsistence; saying God has “*three subsistences*”. Additional expressions used to describe the distinctiveness of the Three are: distinction, relation, and mode.

The term persons are nonetheless accommodating inasmuch as it emphasizes not only a manifestation but also an individual personality. In suggesting God is three with respect to His Persons it is emphasized that each has the same essence as God and that each acquires the fullness of God. **In God there are no three individuals alongside of, and separate from, one another, but only personal self-distinctions within the Divine essence.**

This is an important difference from modalism (or Sabellianism), which teaches that one God merely manifests Himself in three various ways. This unity within three

Persons is seen in Old Testament verses such as Isaiah 48:16 where the Father has sent the Messiah and the Spirit to speak to the restored nation. In Isaiah 61:1 the Father has anointed the Messiah with the Spirit for His mission; the references in these verses emphasize both the equality and the unity of the three Persons. The three Persons have separate relations, within the Trinity exists a relationship that is expressed in terms of subsistence. The Father is not begotten nor does He proceed from any person; the Son is eternally begotten from the Father (John 1:18; 3:16, 18; 1 John 4:9).

The Holy Spirit eternally proceeds from the Father and the Son (John 14:26; 16:7) and the word procession suggests the Trinitarian relationship of the Father and the Son sending the Spirit. It is important to note, however, that these terms indicate a relationship within the Trinity and do not propose inferiority in any way. Because the terms can tend to suggest inferiority some theologians deny their usefulness.

The three Persons are equal in authority, even though terms like generation and procession may be used in referring to the functioning within the Trinity, it is imperative to distinguish that the three Persons are equal in authority. The Father is recognized as authoritative and supreme (1 Corinthians 8:6); the Son is also recognized as equal to the Father in every respect (John 5:21–23); the Spirit is likewise recognized as equal to the Father and the Son (Matthew 12:31).

The Old Testament Teaching of the Trinity:

Whereas there is no ultimate or explicit statement in the Old Testament affirming the Trinity, the Old Testament agrees to for the Trinity and implies that God is a Triune being in a number of passages. In the creation account of Genesis 1 both God the Father and the Holy Spirit are seen in the work of creation. It is stated in Genesis 1:1 that God created heaven and earth while the Holy Spirit floated over the earth to

infuse it with vitality (Genesis 1:2). The term God in Genesis 1:1 is **Elohim**, which is a plural form for God. Albeit this does not explicitly teach the Trinity, it certainly allows for it as seen in the plural pronouns “**us**” and “**our**” in Genesis 1:26. David recognized a distinction of persons between “LORD” and “my Lord” (Psalms 110:1), he implies that Messiah is One greater than an ordinary human king because he refers to Messiah with an ascription of deity, “my Lord.” In the prophecy pertaining to Christ in Isaiah 7:14 the Lord makes it apparent that the One born of a virgin will also be Immanuel, “God with us.” It is an attestation to Messiah’s deity.

Two additional passages mentioned above implying the Trinity are Isaiah 48:16 and 61:1. In both of these passages all three Persons of the Godhead are mentioned and seen as distinct from one another.

The New Testament Teaching of the Trinity:

To ultimately demonstrate that the Scriptures teach the Trinity, two things must be confirmed: that there is only one God and that all three Persons are called God. The Father is called God (1 Corinthians 8:6); the Son is called God (Hebrews 1:8–10); the Holy Spirit is called God (Acts 5:34); God is one God (Deuteronomy 6:4). Uniting these four statements confirms the Trinity. There are additional New Testament passages in which the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit are seen in such a relationship as to affirm both their unity and equality.

In the act of making disciples Jesus commanded that the apostles were to baptize the new disciples **in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit** (Matthew 28:18). It seems clear that the equality as well as the unity of the three Persons is intended. In Mary’s conception the **Trinity is involved: the Holy Spirit came upon Mary, the power of God overshadowed her, and the resultant offspring was called the Son of God** (Luke 1:35). All three are also seen as separate at the baptism of Jesus (a denial of modalism; Luke 3:21–22).

In John 14:16 the unity of the three is again brought up: the Son asks the Father who sends the Spirit to indwell believers forever. The unity of the three is obvious. In Romans 8:9–11 all three are mentioned as indwelling the believer, 2 Corinthians 13:14 surely is a strong verification of both the equality and unity of Father, Son, and Holy Spirit (1 Corinthians 2:4–8; Revelations 1:4–5).⁸

All the qualities and unity was manifested through Jesus when He came in the flesh, which is the mystery of godliness, God manifesting in His fullness and glory into a human body to save mankind from their sin.

2.4 The Mystery of Godliness

J.I. Packer has said: "*Here are two mysteries for the price of one - the plurality of persons within the unity of God, and the union of Godhead and manhood in the person of Jesus. ...Nothing in fiction is so fantastic as is this truth of the Incarnation,*"⁹

The fact that God manifested in the flesh is absolutely one of the most incredible mysteries, that the Infinite God who fills all things, who Was and Is, and Is to Come, the Almighty, the Omniscient, and the Omnipresent, actually condescended to veil Himself in the garments of inferior clay. He created all things and yet He deigned to take the flesh of a creature into union with Himself: the Infinite was linked with the infant and the Eternal was blended with mortality. The God of creation whom Heaven could not contain, were born in a stable with a lowly wedded pair. Saying that God was manifested in the flesh is testifying to the Lord's birth and the whole Divine manifestation in His life on earth.

⁸ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp 36 - 39.

⁹ Packer, J.I (1993) *Knowing God*. Downers Grove, Illinois: Inter Varsity Press, p.53.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

He was God in miracles most abundant, but He was Man in sufferings most pitiable. He was the Son of the Highest, and nevertheless, a Man of Sorrows and acquainted with grief. He trod the billows of the submissive sea and yet He owned not a foot of land in all Judea. He fed thousands by His Power and yet all faint and weary He sat upon a well, and cried, give Me a drink. He cast out devils, but was Himself tempted by Satan. He cured all manner of sicknesses and was Himself exceedingly sorrowful even unto death. Winds and waves obeyed Him, every element acknowledged the presence of their Creator and yet He was tempted in all points like a man, a human being, yet with equal certainty God was manifest in Him.

The mystery and revelation of God in the flesh became more astonishing when God condescended to give up His live by His own creatures. Taken from prison and judgment to be fastened to the accused wood and put to death of the deepest shame and bitterest torture ever imagined. The Truth of God manifested in the flesh brings upon great honor to mankind, for the God who is the All Consuming Fire took the nature of man into Union with Himself.

There could have been no putting away of sin or the overcoming of sin if God had not become incarnate in the flesh. Sin cannot be removed except by an atonement, neither would any person have sufficed to atone but one of like nature to those who had offended.

By man came death; by man also must come resurrection and so Jesus appears as Man to save His people from their sins, by taking the sins of His people upon Himself, by giving Himself as the atonement for sin.¹⁰

Jesus is thus fully God and fully man; He is one Person who has two natures a divine nature and a human nature. Scripture teaches that Jesus is the Most High God Himself.

¹⁰ Mystery of Godliness (www.spurgeongems.org/vols13-15/chs786.pdf)

looking for the blessed hope, and the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ,

Titus 2:13 MKJV

Jesus has all the attributes of God, He knows everything (Matthew 16:21; Luke 11:17; John 4:29), is everywhere (Matthew 18:20; 28:20; Acts 18:10), has all power (Matthew 8:26, 27; 28:18; John 11:38-44; Luke 7:14-15; Revelation 1:8), depends on nothing outside of Himself for life (John 1:4; 14:6; 8:58), rules over everything (Matthew 28:18; Revelations 19:16; 1:5) never began to exist and never will cease to exist (John 1:1; 8:58), and is mankind's Creator (Colossians 1:16). In other words, everything that God is, Jesus is - for Jesus is God. As mentioned in the description of the Trinity of God is the three Persons, and the Person Jesus – God the Son became incarnate as stated in the book of John:

And the Word became flesh, and tabernacled among us. And we beheld His glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and of truth.

John 1:14 MKJV

Jesus has always been God right from the beginning, but Jesus wasn't always man He became man with the incarnation. Jesus did not give up any of His divinity in the Incarnation, rather as one early theologian put it, "*Remaining what He was, He became what He was not.*" Christ "was not now God *minus* some elements of His deity, but God *plus* all that He had made His own by taking manhood to Himself."¹¹

Thus, Jesus did not give up any of His divine attributes at the Incarnation. He remained in full possession of all of them. For if He were to ever give up any of His divine attributes, He would cease being God. The truth of Jesus' humanity is just as important as His divinity as John strongly speaks about denying that Jesus is man is of the spirit of the antichrist (1 John 4:2-3). Jesus' humanity is presented in the fact that He was born as a baby from a human mother (Luke 2:7; Galatians 4:4), He

¹¹ Packer, J.I (1993) *Knowing God*. Downers Grove, Illinois: Inter Varsity Press, p.57

became weary (John 4:6), thirsty (John 19:28), and hungry (Matthew 4:2), and He experienced the full range of human emotions such as marvel (Matt. 8:10), weeping, and sorrow (John 11:35).¹²

From the Biblical basis it is clear that Jesus is both God and man, and that each nature within Him is full and complete, it is therefore necessary to gain understanding of the Image of God.

3. GOD'S IMAGE

Tselem is the Hebrew word which means shadow, used 15 times in the Hebrew Bible, taken upon the usage of the word shadow it would mean that it is a representation of something living or nonliving, 11 times of the 15 mentioned the word is referring to idols, a physical representation of a demon as per Paul in the book of one Corinthians. The word *tselem* as used in this context was to describe these idols or images as a representation of demons who were truly worshipped:

What then do I say? That the idol is anything, or that an idolatrous sacrifice is anything? But I say that the things which the nations sacrifice, they sacrifice to demons and not to God. And I do not desire that you should have fellowship with demons.

1 Corinthians 10:19-20 MKJV

Ezekiel also mentions idols and images that referred to demonic beings, it is clear that an image is an accurate representation of the real thing (Ezekiel 23:14) but it is not the same as the real thing, an image thus conveys only some information about a person but not all of the details. Adam fathered a son in his own likeness and image - *Tsalmo* (Genesis 5:3), a marvelous illustration of how mankind was created in God's image, just as mankind's descendants acts and bears resemblance to the parents they are separate and distinct beings.

¹² How can Jesus be God and Man? (www.desiringgod.org/resource-library/articles/how-can-jesus-be-god-and-man)

God created Adam - to act and look like Him, but he was not the same as God. The word *t'munah* means shape, image, or form and is very similar to the word *tselem*, according to God Himself Moses saw the Lord's form; the King James Version stipulates the word as **similitude** meaning shape or embodiment

With him will I speak mouth to mouth, even apparently, and not in dark speeches; and the similitude of the LORD shall he behold: wherefore then were ye not afraid to speak against my servant Moses?

Numbers 12:8 KJV

The Israelites were taught not to make any *t'munah* of things in heaven or in earth; likeness used in this context corresponds to similitude in the verse above:

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:

Exodus 20:4 KJV

The same word *t'munah* is used when Moses saw the form of the Lord and also to describe what the children of Israel did not see, as they weren't able to see God's form – God only revealed Himself to Moses. Therefore Moses reprimanded the people recounting the fact that the people did not see God's form - even though he had and that they should not make an image of God.

And the LORD spake unto you out of the midst of the fire: ye heard the voice of the words, but saw no similitude; only ye heard a voice.

Deuteronomy 4:12 KJV

Ezekiel also gives an account of the image of the Lord (Ezekiel 1:1),

Also out of its midst came the likeness of four living creatures. And this was how they looked; they had the likeness of a man.

Ezekiel 1:5 MKJV

The appearance of the creatures or their likeness is described in great detail and then Ezekiel shares that he saw God above the expanse and He had the appearance of a human, the Hebrew texts says: *as the likeness of Adam*. Ezekiel isn't describing God in mankind's image, he shares that God has the appearance "like Adam" which is really to say that man - Adama has the appearance or image of God.

And from above the expanse that was over their heads was a likeness like a sapphire stone, the likeness of a throne. And on the likeness of the throne was a likeness looking like a man on it from above. And I saw Him looking like the color of polished bronze, looking like fire all around within it. From the likeness of His loins even upward, and from the likeness of His loins even downward, I saw Him, looking like fire, and it had brightness all around. As the bow that is in the cloud in the day of rain looks, so the brightness all around looked. This was how the likeness of the glory of Jehovah looked. And I saw. And I fell on my face, and I heard a voice of One speaking.

Ezekiel 1:26-28 MKJV

God manifested as Jesus in the flesh - another description of God's image and likeness, it is thus clear that God who is infinitely above mankind - His creation, created mankind to look like Him.

Nevertheless in John 4 it is said that God is a Spirit, which in the sense of the world would mean no shape or form, Paul clarifies this in 1 Corinthians 15 that in the world to come, mankind would be bodiless as a new body would be provided, a heavenly body. Earthly bodies, which Adam was originally made of was made of dirt, he was a carbon based life form.

The heavenly body will be of a different nature, not restricted like the carbon or dirt - based earthly body mankind currently has. Paul makes a series of important revelations pertaining to how Jesus is and how man will be upon resurrection, by showing the parallels between the earthly and spiritual body. Man's resurrected

body will be tangible, touchable and permanent. Just as mankind is in the image likeness of Adam, so too will they bear the image of the Lord Jesus Christ.

But not the spiritual first, but the natural; afterward the spiritual. The first man was out of earth, earthy; the second Man was the Lord from Heaven. Such the earthy man, such also the earthy ones. And such the heavenly Man, such also the heavenly ones. And according as we bore the image of the earthy man, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly Man.

1 Corinthians 15:46-49 MKJV

And I say this, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, nor does corruption inherit incorruption. Behold, I speak a mystery to you; we shall not all fall asleep, but we shall all be changed; in a moment, in a glance of an eye, at the last trumpet. For a trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall all be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. But when this corruptible shall put on incorruption, and when this mortal shall put on immortality, then will take place the word that is written, "Death is swallowed up in victory.

1 Corinthians 15:50-54 MKJV

In summary Paul didn't signify that spiritual mean nebulous or bodiless, rather having a body but in the spiritual dimension. Jesus' resurrected body is the paradigm for what mankind's heavenly body would be like, a body not subjected to sin, corruption, decay or death. It can walk through walls and exist in the spiritual realm and yet enter into the earthly realm and eat and drink at will. Paul states that man's new body is in God's likeness **and that you put on the new man which was created according to God, in true righteousness and holiness** (Ephesians 4:24). He states that the new body will be made of spirit and not of dirt, like the Lord Jesus' (Philippians 3:21).

The meaning in John that God is Spirit thus means that God is not composed of dirt, His essence is spirit - He is not earthly, man's body is a reflection or shadow of what God is, **Scripture teaches that the heavenly realm is the original and things on**

the earth is more or less a replica of that which is in heaven. God thus has a spiritual body and made man after Himself.¹³

who serve the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was warned of God when he was about to make the tabernacle. For, He says "See that you make all things according to the pattern shown to you in the mountain."

Hebrews 8:5 MKJV

The attributes of God may be defined as those distinguishing characteristics of the divine nature which are undividable from the idea of God and which represent the basis and ground for His various manifestations to His creatures. God's attributes are to be distinguished from His works and it is important to remember that God's attributes do not "add" anything to God; they reveal His nature.

3.1 Attributes of God

Some interpretations for the attributes of God and what He created in correlation with it includes the following:¹⁴

God has created:	God has:
Time – History	Eternity, Everlasting, Timelessness
Dimension – Space	Infinity, No end, Unseen, Invisible
Thought – Mind, Soul	Knowledge, Wisdom, Will
Development – Change	The same, Changes not, I am
Dependence – Pray, Hope	Sovereign, Cares, Gives
Correctness – Right, Wrong	Goodness, Holy, Perfection
Beauty – Esthetics	Glory Presence, Peace

¹³ Hamp, D (2011) *Corrupting the Image, Angels, Aliens and the Antichrist Revealed*. USA: Douglas Hamp, pp 32-44.

¹⁴ Banting, Paul Prof Dr: Lecture at Râdâh Academy 2013.

God's attributes are usually classified under two categories, more recurrent classifications include absolute and relative, incommunicable and communicable (intransitive and transitive), or moral and non-moral. In the study of God's attributes it is important not to exalt one attribute over another; when that is done it presents a false impression of God. It is all the attributes of God taken together that presents an understanding of the nature and Person of God.

3.1.1 Absolute Attributes:

3.1.1.1 Spirituality

God is Spirit - not a spirit, He does not have corporeity or physical form (John 4:24). A body restricts, but God as spirit is ubiquitously; He cannot be limited. Even though God does not have a body, He is nonetheless a substance but not material. Spirituality goes further than merely identifying God as not having a body; it also means He is the source of all life. In Exodus God prohibits mankind of making any image reflecting a god, because God does not have a physical form it is wrong to make any likeness to Him.

The various references to God's physical features seen in Scripture (Genesis 3:8; 1 Kings 8:29; Psalms 34:15; Isaiah 65:2) are anthropomorphisms – a figurative language giving God human characteristics which is used in an attempt to make Him understandable to humankind.

3.1.1.2 Self-existence

God's self-existence means that He has the ground of His existence in Himself. God is independent in His Being, but also He is independent in everything else; in His virtues, decrees and works, which causes everything to depend on Him.

And God said to Moses, I AM THAT I AM. And He said, So you shall say to the sons of Israel, I AM has sent me to you.

Exodus 3:14 MKJV

This verse emphasizes God's self existence in His identification, "I AM WHO I AM." God has continual existence and life in Himself (John 5:26). An unborn baby is dependent on its mother for life; animals are dependent on their surroundings for life; trees and plants are dependent on sun and rain for life; every living organism is dependent on someone or something else but God is independent and existent in Himself (Daniel 5:23; Acts 17:28).

3.1.1.3 Immutability

Immutability is the perfection of God by which He is devoid of all change, not only in His Being, but also in His perfections, and in His purposes and promises...and is free from all accession or diminution and from all growth or decay in His Being or perfections. Change is always for better or for worse, but since God is absolute perfection, improvement or deterioration are impossible for Him.

For I am Jehovah, I change not. Because of this you sons of Jacob are not destroyed.

Malachi 3:6 MKJV

This verse Malachi educates the doctrine of immutability James 1:17 points toward the fact that there is no variation or shifting shadow with God. There is change throughout the world from year to year, but God does not change in His Person neither in His response to His creatures.

Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above and comes down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness nor shadow of turning.

James 1:17 MKJV

The worth of this doctrine is colossal since God does not change, His love and His promises remains certain without end. God will never change concerning His promise He gave mankind in John 3:16.

3.1.1.4 Unity

The unity of God is explained firstly that God is numerically one in His essence and cannot be divided it is known as Monotheism¹⁵, which also affirmed Him as absolutely unique; there is none other god that can be compared with Him (Exodus 15:11). The prominence on God as numerically one is also stressed in 1 Timothy 2:5 and 1 Corinthians 8:6. Secondly, the unity of God stresses that God is not a composite and cannot be divided into parts. The statement stresses the “*inner and qualitative unity*” of God. Because the Lord alone is God, none other is to share His glory, hence the prohibition, “*Guard yourselves from idols*” (1 John 5:21).

3.1.1.5 Truth

Truth means that the facts match to reality; truth recognizes things as they are. Defined in relation to God - truth that perfection of His being by virtue of which He fully answers to the idea of the Godhead, is perfectly reliable in His revelation, and sees things as they really are.

God is true God in distinction to all other gods, there is none like Him (Isa. 44:8–10, 45:5), His Word and Revelation are reliable because God is truth (Numbers 23:19; Romans 3:3–4; John 14:1, 2, 6; Hebrew 6:18; Titus 1:2) and therefore mankind can trust in the Lord, God knows things as they are for He is the beginning of all knowledge, He makes it available to man as He sees fit in order for mankind to have fellowship with Him. God is thus the source of all truth, in all the spheres known to

¹⁵ What is Monotheism (www.atheism.about.com/library/FAQs/religion/blrel_theism_mono.htm) Date Accessed: 22 September 2013.

mankind – which includes moral and religion as well as every field of scientific endeavor.

3.1.1.6 Love

God's love is indicated in the First book of John, verse 10 explains how His love is displayed

The one who does not love has not known God. For God is love. In this is love, not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son to be the propitiation concerning our sins.

1 John 4:8,10 MKJV

God's love could be defined as seen by Enns:¹⁶ *“that perfection of the divine nature by which God is eternally moved to communicate Himself. It is not a mere emotional impulse, but a rational and voluntary affection, having its ground in truth and holiness and its exercise in free choice.”*

Agape is the Greek term translated as “love,” frequently used to denote God and His response to humanity (John 3:16; 5:42; Romans 5:5, 8; 8:35, 39; 1 John 4:10, 11, 19; Revelations 1:5). *Agape* signifies a reasoned-out love, rather than an emotionally-based love but it is not devoid of emotion, one that loves the object irrespective of the worth of the object and even though the love may not be reciprocated.

3.1.1.7 Holiness

Holiness means to be “set apart” or “separation” (Hebrew *shqedo*; Greek *hagiazō*). Countless see holiness as the prime attribute of all because holiness permeates all the other attributes of God and is unswerving with all He is and does.

¹⁶ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, p 31.

Several features are embraced in the holiness of God and it has a transcendent emphasis, indicating that **God is absolutely distinct from all His creatures and is exalted above them in infinite majesty**. God is without peer, high exalted living on a high and holy place. Holiness also has an ethical emphasis, indicating that God is separate from moral evil or sin. Holiness' points to God's majestic purity, or ethical majesty, the foundation of this emphasis are seen in Leviticus 11:44, 45, "**Be holy, for I am holy.**" God is morally pure and therefore He cannot condone evil or have any relationship to it (Psalms 11:4–6). In His holiness God is the moral and ethical standard; He is the law. He sets the standard.

3.1.2 Relative Attributes:

Some attributes may be termed "*relative*" because they are associated to time and space.

3.1.2.1 Eternity

The eternity of God is usually understood as related to time. God is not limited or bound by time; with God there is no succession of events; He is above all temporal confinements, there is no distinction between the present, past, and future; but all things are equally and always present to Him. His eternity is articulated in Psalm 90:2, **from everlasting to everlasting, Thou art God.**

God's eternity expands backward to infinity and forward to infinity. The eternity of God is related to His eternal rule in His universal Kingdom (Psalms 102:12) and His name the continually existing One. Time is not unreal or nonexistent with God, while He sees everything as eternal now, in relation to mankind and creation, sees a succession of events in time.

3.1.2.2 Immensity

The Immensity of God could be defined as that perfection of the Divine Being by which He exceeds all spatial restrictions and yet is present in every point of space with His whole Being.

But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heavens and the heaven of heavens cannot contain You. How much less this house which I have built?

1 Kings 8:27 MKJV

Solomon built a magnificent temple but he acknowledged that God could not be contained in a temple, contrasting to human bodies that are bounded and limited to space, God in His immensity is not limited or localized, in His entire Being He fills all places, but not to the same degree. There are also relative accolades that are related to creation, that is, they reveal some aspects of God's person in His dealings with people and creation.

3.1.2.3 Omnipresence

Omni comes from the Latin word *omnis*, meaning – all. Omnipresence means God is universally present, it can thus be defined that God in the entirety of his essence with no diffusion or expansion, multiplication or division, infiltrates and fills the creation in all its parts.

Where shall I go from Your Spirit? Or where shall I flee from Your presence? If I go up into Heaven, You are there; if I make my bed in Sheol, behold, You are there. If I take the wings of the morning and dwell in the furthest parts of the sea; even there shall Your hand lead me, and Your right hand shall hold me. If I say, Surely the darkness shall cover me, even the night shall be light around me. Yea, the darkness does not hide from You; but the night shines as the day; as is the darkness, so is the light to You.

Psalms 139:7-12 MKJV

The psalmist states that there is no escaping God's presence. In the definition it is noted that God is present everywhere in the entirety of His person and it goes against the idea that God is in heaven and only His authority is on earth. There is a difference between immensity of God and the omnipresence of God. Immensity highlights the transcendence of God and stresses that He is not bound by space, while omnipresence highlights His immanence, filling all space, including earth. The omnipresence of God gives the believer comfort as no calamity can come to pass him that God is not present with him; it is also a warning to the disobedient person that he cannot escape the presence of God.

3.1.2.4 Omniscience

The English word omniscience comes from the Latin words *omnis*, meaning "all," and *scientia*, which means "knowledge"; consequently it means that God has all knowledge. God knows all things actual and possible, past, present, and future, in one eternal act.

A few things to draw attention to about God's omniscience:

- God knows all things that exist in authenticity (Psalms 139:1–6; 147:4; Matthew 6:8; 10:28–30). The psalmist recognized the omniscience of God because God knew his actions, thoughts and his words before he even spoke them, God knew entire life (Psalms 139:1–4).
- God knows all the possible outcomes concerning things that have not yet occurred. Jesus knew what Tyre and Sidon would have done had the gospel been preached to them (Matthew 11:21).
- God knows all future events for He is eternal and knows all things in one eternal act, events that still lies in the future to man are an "eternal now" to God. He knew the nations that would govern Israel (Daniel 2:36–43; 7:4–8), and He knows the events that will yet transpire upon the earth (Matthew 24:25; Revelations 6–19).

- God's knowledge is intuitive, immediate, not coming through the senses; it is simultaneous, not obtained through observation or reason; it is actual, complete and according to reality.

3.1.2.5 Omnipotence

Omnipotence indicates that God is all powerful, but it doesn't suggest that God misuses His power and that He can and does do anything or everything at random. God can do all things that are in harmony with His nature and Person - thus in harmony with His perfections. God is also known as the Almighty, which means the Mighty One or to be strong because God is Almighty all things are possible.

***And when Abram was ninety-nine years old, Jehovah appeared to Abram and said to him, I am the Almighty God! Walk before Me and be perfect.
Genesis 17:1 MKJV***

God creates and forms unborn children, He created the heavens and the earth and nothing is too hard or impossible for Him, He does as He pleases and rules all things according to His will (Ephesians 1:11). God doesn't do anything that is not in harmony with His nature and He cannot go back on His word (2 Timothy 2:13), God cannot lie (Hebrews 6:18). God has no relationship to sin and therefore does not tempt man with evil (James 1:13)

Relative attributes of God that relate to morality:

3.1.2.6 Truth

The Bible teaches that God is truth, therefore in speaking of God as truth; it implies that God is all that He as God should be and that His word and revelation are completely reliable.

- God is the truth in His person. He is flawlessly complete and perfect as God and He is without peer (Isaiah 45:5).
- God is the truth in His revelation (Ps. 110:5; 1 Pet. 1:25; Matt. 5:18). Meaning that God is totally true in His revelation to mankind, He is reliable, He cannot lie, He speaks the truth and fulfills everything promised (Numbers 23:19). He will never abrogate His promises (Romans 3:3–4). Jesus revealed the truth of God in the flesh Jesus proclaimed, I am the truth (John 14:6).

3.1.2.7 Mercy

A universal description of mercy is the goodness or love of God shown to all mankind in Hebrew *chesed* it means “*help or kindness as the grace of a superior.*” It reveals God’s faithfulness in spite of humankind’s unfaithfulness – His pity, sympathy and love in the New Testament Greek *eleos* also is translated as a loving kindness.

God’s mercy seeks both the temporal need of mankind (Hebrews 4:16) as well as each person’s eternal salvation. His mercy extends to each and every person in the universe (Romans 15:9) free of obligation according to His sovereign choice (Rom. 9:15–16, 18). God is indeed rich in mercy, which is predominantly reflected in the Psalms.

3.1.2.8 Grace

The grace of God could be defined as the undeserving favor of God to humankind who is under condemnation. Grace delivers mankind from their enemies, affliction and adversity enabling daily guidance and forgiveness. The New Testament focuses on the provision of salvation in Jesus Christ. Grace is reflected in God providing mankind with salvation (Romans 3:24).

The grace of Jesus Christ allows believers to have a positional standing before God (Romans 5:2); through grace Jesus Christ brought life instead of death (Romans 5:17); the grace of Christ surpasses the sin of Adam and bestowed spiritual gifts to all believers; Jews and Gentiles alike are accepted by God through His amazing grace (Ephesians 3:2).

3.1.2.9 Justice

God is a God of justice and righteousness, God is entirely correct and just in all of His dealings with mankind, His justice is in accordance with His law and it is thus related to mankind's sin as God's law replicates God's standard, for this reason God is righteous and just when He judges mankind's disobedience to His revealed law.

God's justice falls into two categories **the rectoral**¹⁷ justice, God is the moral ruler imposing His moral law in the world, He judges between right and wrong promising rewards for the obedient and punishment for the disobedient (Psalms 99:4; Romans 1:32).

The distributive justice of God speaks about the implementation of the law in both rewards and punishment (Isaiah 3:10, 11; Romans 2:6; 1 Peter 1:17), which is both positive, which is God's remunerative justice, dispensing rewards for obedience reflecting His divine love, and negative which is His retributive justice, expressing God's wrath in which He punishes the wicked (Genesis 2:17; Deuteronomy 27:26; Galatians 3:10; Romans 6:23).

Given that God is just and righteous; the reprimand of evildoers is fair because they receive the just penalty due to them for their sin.¹⁸ God is thus not the same as humankind; He is set high above His creation as He is not bound by His own

¹⁷ Rectoral: Relating to God as governor or ruler of men. (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/rectoral)

¹⁸ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 29-34.

creation through time and space. There are multiples of creations of God in various dimensions and universes that would take humans eternities to explore. Peter Tan has drawn attention to the fact that God created more than what the physical eye could see, his studies suggested an interesting fact concerning the existence of Spiritual Universes.¹⁹ These Spiritual Universes consist of spheres of light that radiates from all the worlds God created and reaches right to the Throne of God. Human activity in this present generation and times that have passed is but a tiny dot in all the activities of the Spiritual Universes.

An intermediate sphere or an earth sphere exists between the spheres of Light and Darkness, the heavens and creations of God can be classified into three main categories of the First Heaven containing planetary spheres that belong to the particular solar systems, the Second Heaven containing the celestial spheres which belong to the space between solar systems and the Third Heaven containing the God-spheres which radiate directly outwards from the Throne of God Himself.

Spiritual growth in humankind is thus not only progression in glory alone but also in dimensions until the dimension of God is reached, where all dimensions known to humankind such as time, space, unipresence etc. disappears because God is outside of all the dimensions which He has created.

God is able to manifest Himself in any part of the Spiritual Universe without leaving His throne. This manifestation takes a spiritual form with all the glory of God as tailored to the specific glory realm of the place where the revelation of God is unfolded.

Angels and spirits in the highest realms also acquire a measure of this ability to project their presence in a spiritual form without leaving their places of domicile. In the Spiritual World God created: time, space and reality are not as unbending as in

¹⁹ Tan, P (2007) *The Spiritual World*. Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism, p. 15.

the Physical World and part of progression in the Spiritual World humankind should break free from their three dimensional thinking to move into the image and likeness of God, the way He created humankind to be.

God is Spirit and His creation is primarily spirit and therefore from the perspective of the spiritual it is the material world that is not of solid substance, the only real and solid things in the spiritual realm are those made up of spiritual substance. As seen in the Book of James all material things appears to be made up of vapors, fragile as it is about to vanish away.

Go to now, ye that say, To day or to morrow we will go into such a city, and continue there a year, and buy and sell, and get gain: Whereas ye know not what shall be on the morrow. For what is your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away.

James 4:13-14

One can thus understand why it seems foolish to God and the Spiritual World that humans who were created and born to live in the Spiritual World spend their time, energy and lives hoarding material riches for themselves, it is thus only the spiritual condition of the earth and mankind which is the true reality in the Spiritual World, as everything material even the physical body of mankind will cease to exist, it will return to the first state of man, the dust of the earth out of which man was created.

4. THE SPIRITUAL IMPORTANCE OF THINGS IN THE SPIRITUAL REALM

Mankind was created to be seated in heavenly places, created to be joined to Jesus in His death and His resurrection – therefore being joined to Jesus by choosing Him as Lord and savior and being baptized into the Lord Jesus mankind are lifted up with Jesus seated in heavenly places.

Once a person chooses Jesus he starts to live in a new realm, the spiritual realm – the realm of everlasting life, the person thus live in the earthly as well as the heavenly/spiritual realm. Before the foundation of the world Jesus had already

chosen humankind to be joined with Him, to be adopted by Himself to inherit His Kingdom.

Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenlies in Christ; according as He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before Him in love, having predestined us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to Himself, according to the good pleasure of His will,

Ephesians 1:3-5 MKJV

Therefore I also, hearing of your faith in the Lord Jesus and love to all the saints, do not cease giving thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers, that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him, the eyes of your understanding being enlightened, that you may know what is the hope of His calling, and what is the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints, and what is the surpassing greatness of His power toward us, the ones believing according to the working of His mighty strength which He worked in Christ in raising Him from the dead, and He seated Him at His right hand in the heavenlies,

Ephesians 1:15-20 MKJV

God planned to reveal the designs and structures of His celestial Kingdom and also that heaven manifests in its fullness upon the earth as in the beginning in the Garden of Eden. Nothing separated God from man or divided heaven and earth with the creation of mankind in the Garden of Eden, Adam was able to see his spiritual clothing and he walked with God in the evenings all on the early realm.

Ana Mendez Ferrell²⁰ states that it is the spiritual world, which is the more superior realm, that affects, transforms, modifies, rules and structures the natural world, that the history of the natural world is determined by what occurs in the spiritual world. Mankind thus simultaneously moves in two realms, linked together the natural and the spiritual.

²⁰ Ferrell, Dr Ana Mendez (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. USA: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p 29.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

God granted Daniel (Daniel 9:21-23) understanding of the structure and designs that would bring Israel back to God and release them from captivity. Daniels' prayers activated Gabriel and God gave him the understanding to mobilize the heavens. Today still, it is God's plan to grant His children the ability to understand the structures and designs to mobilize the heavens and bring the glory of that what is in heaven to earth, to manifest the power and love of God to each and every person. Satan on the other hand would like to keep people in deception of why they were created, he does not want mankind to reach their full spiritual potential within the Body of Christ and therefore he utilizes everything in his power to withstand the knowledge of mankind's spiritual inheritance.

The Spiritual World focuses on the Truth of the Lord and individuals absorbing this truth of God into their very being and substance and not merely the mental knowledge of the truth, to comprehend the Spirit World and how God created it to function, one need to understand the concepts thereof. This will help mankind to grow and develop into the plan and purpose which the Creator God created them for.

Servant hood is the indicator of growth in the spiritual realm:

But it shall not be so among you. But whoever desires to be great among you, let him be your servant. And whoever of you desires to become first, he shall be servant of all.

Mark 10:43-44 MKJV

The spiritual world focuses on the inner cause and source of results where the physical world focuses on mental acquisition and outward results; it is a spiritual law that when a person receives impartation of God's life and light the person is inwardly transformed into a new being:

So that if any one is in Christ, that one is a new creature; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.

2 Corinthians 5:17 MKJV

Only once this impartation of God reaches the subconscious, transforms one's actions and forms part of one's daily lives practicing the truth received, without having to constantly think before doing one knows that it has been absorbed in man's very being. In the spirit world, as one seeks the Lord the glory of God will shine from one's face, just as Jesus' on the mount of transfiguration and Moses when he came down the mountain with the ten commandments, to fully comprehend the spiritual significance of man one needs to grasp how mankind was created in the image of the Lord God.

5. THE UNIQUELY, ENIGMATICALLY CREATED CREATURE CALLED MANKIND

Humankind was created to reign with God on earth, to have dominion and authority in the seen and the unseen world.

So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.

Genesis 1:27-28

Mankind was chosen before the foundation of the earth to be a part of the most glorious era of the Church, Jesus said in John 15:16 that He has chosen man.

Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.

John 15:16

Imago Dei is the Hebrew word for the Latin phrase for the image of God, meaning image, shadow or likeness of God. Mankind thus occupies a higher place in the created order because mankind is imprinted with godlike characteristics. Mankind will reach their greatest fulfillment, pleasure and wholeness when God's plan for

them realizes in their lives to its fullest potential, thus being fully developed and expressed.

This great fulfillment and godlikeness could also be mankind's greatest pitfall, because the hubris of mankind often creates confusion of **being like** God with **being God**. Mystery writer Nevada Barr states: "*It was a number of years of crashing and burning before I made the discovery that I was not God. Finally I realized that though I was not God, I was of God.*"

Theologians have debated in what way man was created in the image of God and how man could be godlike, the answer lies in the description of God in Genesis one, if man could take a snapshot of God, what would that reveal about humankind being created in God's image. Mankind is creative because God is creative; each and every human is able to create things, artists creates portraits, poets, writers, philosophers and lawyers make things with ideas and the compelling use of words. Doctors make people healthier; consultants make organizations better.

Manufacturers make things with raw materials; chefs make things with fruits, vegetables, meats and spices. Every human has the capacity to make things, to create, because human kind is all made in the image of a creative God.

As mentioned before, mankind is primarily spiritual because God is Spirit and each and every human acquires spiritual aptitudes and capacities. Mankind's spiritual nature, even though it is unseen, is as real as man's physical nature. Nurturing man's spirit is as important as eating, drinking and exercising are to their physical body.

Communication was imprinted within man from the communicative God's because God communicates. Anthropologists agree that the emergence of symbolic language, first spoken, and then written, signifies the sharpest break between

animals and humans. The human ability to think and reason, to use language, symbols and art far exceeds the abilities of any animals.

A fourth truth about you is that you are intelligent because God is intelligent: "*In the beginning was the Word [logos, a Greek word meaning reason, or logic] and the Word was with God, and the Word was God*" (John 1:1). Logical sequential thought flows from the orderliness of God's mind. As a result, though we are not all intellectuals, we each possess a mind and a way of thinking and learning, so Jesus commanded us to love God with our minds (as well as our hearts and all our strength). Because of God's intelligent image imprinted on our lives, though we possess different kinds of intelligence, each of us is to develop our mental capacities to their fullest.

As seen in the attributes of God, His very essence is relational, and that essential quality has been imprinted on humankind. God said let's create man in our image – the – "**our**" in this verse suggests the relational nature of God (Genesis 1:26). This capability for a relationship with God extends to humankind, which is why God created Eve for Adam because "*it is not good for man to be alone.*"

Because God is just and the moral ruler mankind is morally responsible to Him:

And Jehovah God commanded the man, saying, You may freely eat of every tree in the garden, but you shall not eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. For in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die.

Genesis 2:16-17 MKJV

Natural laws governs the universe, while universal moral laws govern humankind's behavior, Scriptures teaches that these laws are universal and written on the hearts of humankind so that they will keep the commandments of the Lord.

To fully realize what it means to bear the image of the Almighty God one is struck with the grandeur of possibilities but also the tragedy of unrealized potential. To be fully human is to fully reflect God's creative, spiritual, intelligent, communicative, relational, moral and purposeful capacities, and to do so holistically and synergistically. All humans possess these godlike capacities, the potential to express them distinctively as God's image has been imprinted uniquely in each and every person, in God's infinite creativity there are no duplicates, He has created only one of each individual never to be repeated again.²¹ Each person was created by God so unique that not even one's fingerprint patterns is the same; it is even more unique than DNA.²²

5.1 Created by Love in the Image and Likeness of God

God created humankind out of His pure and perfect love in His image and likeness. All the creatures God created in the sea, air and earth was created after their own kind, but when God created mankind He created mankind according to His kind, thus in the image of God Himself. Love sometimes tends to make a person do something he wouldn't usually do – especially when the person is in love with someone, this love that one human being has for another isn't even close enough to the love that God has for His children, He loved man and because of Love He did something unique no one before or after Him has ever done, out of pure love He sent His son to die for the sins of mankind, therefore He gave mankind a second chance through Jesus after the fall – to be reborn with the seed of the Messiah. God also states that nothing on earth or in the heavens can separate God's love for man (Romans 8:28-39)

Nature and revelation alike testify of God's love, He is the source of life, of wisdom, and of joy, which is even represented in nature. Think of their marvelous adaptation

²¹ Made in the Image of God (www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq)

²² How Fingerprints Works (www.science.howstuffworks.com/fingerprinting1.htm)

to the needs and happiness, not only of man, but of all living creatures. The sunshine and the rain, that gladdens and refreshes the earth, the hills and seas and plains, all speaks of the Creator's love. It is God who supplies the daily needs of all His creatures. In the stunning words of the psalmist:

***The eyes of all wait on You; and You give them their food in due season.
You open Your hand and satisfy the desire of every living thing.
Psalms 145:15-16 MKJV***

The Word of God reveals His character. His infinite love for mankind was declared by God Himself, when Moses prayed and asked God to show him His glory, the Lord answered, that He would make all His My goodness pass before Moses (Exodus 33:18-19). God in all His glory passed before Moses, and proclaimed, "**The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, long-suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin**" (Exodus 34:6-7a). He is "**slow to anger, and of great kindness,**" "**because He delighteth in mercy.**" (Jonah 4:2; Micah 7:18). God has bound mankind's hearts to Him by unnumbered tokens in heaven and in earth. He has sought to reveal Himself to man, Satan blinded the minds of men, so that they looked upon God with fear; they thought of Him as severe and unforgiving.

Satan led men to conceive of God as a being whose chief attribute is stern justice, one who is a severe judge, a harsh, exacting creditor. He pictured the Creator as a being who is watching with jealousy to discern the errors and mistakes of men, that He may visit judgments upon them. It was to remove this dark shadow, by revealing to the world the infinite love of God that Jesus came to live among men.

"...Fundamentally because love is the most basic similarity we all share with our Creator God, who is our Father and who is LOVE. Because God is Love, He is all truth, all wholeness, all goodness, all peace, all fullness, all life. Love is the central characteristic of the human race as God created us in His Own Image. Love is the

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

*lifeline between human beings. It is the deepest experience of contact and communion which two people can have with each other...*²³

Jesus' life; His heart went out in compassionate sympathy to the children of men. He **took man's nature, that He might reach man's wants**. The poorest and humblest were not afraid to approach Him. Even little children were attracted to Him. They loved to climb upon His knees and gaze into the pensive face, benignant with love. Jesus did not suppress one word of truth, but He uttered it always in love.

He exercised the greatest tact and thoughtfulness, kind attention in His interaction with the people. He was never rude, never needlessly spoke a severe word, or gave needless pain to a sensitive soul. He did not criticize human weakness. He spoke the truth, but always in love. He condemned hypocrisy, unbelief, and iniquity; but tears were in His voice as He uttered His scathing rebukes. He wept over Jerusalem, the city He loved, which refused to receive **Him who is the way, the truth, and the life** (John 14:6).

They had rejected Him, the Saviour, but He regarded them with pitying gentleness. Jesus' whole life on earth comprised of self-denial and thoughtful care for others. Every soul was precious in His eyes. While He ever bore Himself with divine dignity, He bowed with the tenderest regard to every member of the family of God. In all men He saw fallen souls and made it His mission to save. Such is the character of Christ as revealed in His life, the character of God. **It is from the Father heart of God that the streams of divine compassion, manifested in Christ, flows out to the children of men** (1 Timothy 3:16).

God is a Spirit and therefore He created humankind primarily as spirit, mankind thus have everything they need, as received from God to live a spiritual life, to grow

²³ Consiglio William Dr (1991) *Homosexual No More. Practical Strategies For Christians Overcoming Homosexuality*. USA: Scripture Press Publications, p. 52.

intimately closer to God and to hear God's voice, because every person who comes to Jesus is joined to the Lord and becomes one spirit. **This is a clear indication of God's love for His children, where the Creator of all things, the Holiest of Holies, the King of Heaven and Earth joins Himself in spirit with each of His children.**

But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.

1 Corinthians 6:17

God created the earth – dirt, He then took some of the very fine particles of that material known as dust and formed Adam, all living things are fundamentally composed of carbon atoms. When Adam sinned he consequently experienced not only physical death but also spiritual death, which is separation from God. All human beings are born with a sinful, corrupted nature and sin in thought, word, and deed.

Man's state of sin has so infected his will that he is unable to choose God's provision of redemption in Jesus Christ without the work of the Holy Spirit in his understanding. As this thesis is based on the Word of God as truth the theistic creation will be discussed which holds to Scripture that God is the life source, the originator and maintainer of all forms of life. He is the one who created all to reproduce after its kind. God created the heavens and the earth, the universe and the galaxies: Genesis 1:1 **In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.**

God created the archangels and the angelic hosts: Colossians 1:16-17 **For all things were created in Him, the things in the heavens, and the things on the earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers, all things were created through Him and for Him. And He is before all things, and by Him all things consist.** Revelation 4:11 states: **O Lord, You are worthy to receive glory and honor and power, because You created all things, and for Your will they are and were created.**

God created the fish of the sea, the fowls of the air, the beasts of the field and every living creature, (Genesis 1:21-25) He saw that it was good and He blessed them saying that they **should be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters of the seas and let the fowl multiply in the earth**. God said to the earth to bring forth the living creature after its kind, cattle and creepers and its beasts of the earth after its kind; and it was so.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was in the beginning with God. All things came into being through Him, and without Him not even one thing came into being that has come into being.

John 1:1-3 MKJV

The final creative act of God was man, the highest creation of God on this earth:

And God said, Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creepers creeping on the earth. And God created man in His image; in the image of God He created him. He created them male and female. And God blessed them. And God said to them, Be fruitful, and multiply and fill the earth, and subdue it. And have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the fowl of the heavens, and all animals that move upon the earth. And God said, Behold! I have given you every herb seeding seed which is upon the face of all the earth, and every tree in which is the fruit of a tree seeding seed; to you it shall be for food. And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the heavens, and to every creeper on the earth which has in it a living soul every green plant is for food; and it was so. And God saw everything that He had made, and behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.

Genesis 1:26-31 MKJV

God is an infinite being and has many communicable and no communicable characteristics that are in view here. Man is most certainly neither omnipotent nor omniscient like God, but he does share to lesser extent God's creativity, vision, passion, ability to love, mercy, etc. qualities that are part of His image and likeness.

When God created Adam He shaped Adam to both act and look like Him, but it is obvious that God and Adam are separate and distinct beings, it also highlights the fact of how far mankind has fallen from their first state.

Mankind is the direct creative act of God, a divinely created being, the crowning glory and masterpiece of God's creation this however creates the question of what man is.

5.2 What is man?

what is man that You are mindful of him, and the son of man, that You visit him?

Psalms 8:4 MKJV

What is man, that You should magnify him, and that You should set Your heart on him, and visit him every morning, trying him every moment?

Job 7:17-18 MKJV

O Jehovah, what is man that You take knowledge of him! Or the son of man, that You esteem him?

Psalms 144:3 MKJV

One could wonder why mankind is so important to God and why has God given Him so much authority, therefore one would look into how man was created:

5.2.1 Man, a Created Being

The study of man is called anthropology from the Greek words anthropos, meaning "man," and logos, meaning "word" or "discourse," therefore, anthropology are a dissertation about man. The term anthropology can be the study of the doctrine of man from a biblical standpoint or it can refer to the study of man in his cultural environment. The former procedure will be engaged in this study

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

The first man - Adam was created approximately six thousand years ago and every last human being on the planet is a descendant of Adam, hence humans are all created beings.

And God said, Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creepers creeping on the earth.

Genesis 1:26 MKJV

Mankind will never become gods in that they can never through their efforts attain godhood, **mankind is not evolving to a higher order or existence and will never be a god nor be equal to the Almighty God.**

The origin of man has been a discussion of great controversy and shares a variety of views by both Christians and non-Christians. Non-Christians generally hold to atheistic or humanistic evolution; some Christians argue for a arbitrate view suggesting God began the process but did it through evolution, hence, they hold to theistic evolution. Other Christians argue for some kind of creation, either *divine fiat* (act of God) or some form of "*developing creation.*"

Atheistic evolution: The founder of the evolution theory was Charles Darwin and it was later refined by others; it is an endeavor to explain the origin of matter and life apart from God and states that there was no divine intervention in the origin of man, animals, and plant life.²⁴ All that is needed, according to naturalistic evolution, is atoms in motion. A combination of atoms, motion, time, and chance has fashioned what currently exists. Naturalistic evolution is the theory that the universe is many billions of years old and that after a long period of time, all galaxies, stars, planets, and life on earth evolved.

The doctrine of evolution, as spelled out in Darwin's *The Origin of Species*, are:

²⁴ Naturalistic Evolution (www.conservapedia.com/Naturalistic_evolution)

- Variation results in some offspring being superior to their parents.
- A struggle for existence eliminates the weaker, less fit varieties.
- A process of natural selection is constantly at work by which the fittest survive.
- Through heredity, new and better qualities produced by variation are passed on and gradually accumulated.
- New species come into existence by this method, after the passage of sufficient time.

The insinuations of atheistic evolution are noteworthy, because if there is no God who has created the world it would mean that man is not answerable to God regarding any moral structure; in fact, if atheistic evolution is true then there are no moral absolutes to which man must adhere.

Theistic evolution: Theistic evolution goes out from the viewpoint that God supervised the process of plants, animals, and man gradually evolving from lower forms. Theistic evolutionists in general accept the findings of science; their endeavor is to harmonize the evolutionary hypothesis with the Bible.

The irony of theistic evolution is that it is rejected by both strict evolutionists and Biblicists alike and humanistic evolutionists have sharply criticized theistic evolutionists, they are not taken seriously in scientific matters. Problems surrounding theistic evolution includes: If humankind evolved then Adam was not a historical person and the analogy between Christ and Adam in Romans 5:12–21 breaks down. In addition, the theistic evolutionist must take a poetic or symbolic approach in interpreting Genesis 1:1–2:4 for which there is no merit. Further, the idea that humanity is derived from a non-human predecessor cannot be reconciled with the overt statement of man's creation in Genesis 2:7.

Progressive creationism: This theory which is also called the day-age theory is partly based on Psalm 90:4 and 2 Peter 3:8 in discarding a literal six-day creation. This theory suggests that the days of creation are not to be understood as days of twenty-four hours but as ages. Traditionally, the day-age theory held that the days were equivalent to geological ages. Nonetheless, this posed several problems: the fossil record did not reveal this and the creation of plants bearing seeds prior to the creation of land animals posed a problem as some seeds depended on insects for pollination and fertilization.

Progressive creationism deems to be a more serious attempt to reconcile the Bible with science. With regards to science, progressive creationism complements the antiquity of the earth according to the teaching of science; but at the same time, progressive creationists recognize the direct creation of man and general species in consideration of Genesis 1–2. They, however, allow for “*intra*kind” development (microevolution) within species while rejecting “*inter*kind” development (macroevolution). Problems surrounding progressive creationism: Exodus 20:10–11 sketches a similarity between a person working six days and resting on the seventh and God creating six days and resting on the seventh. The similarity demands twenty-four hour days. In addition, this theory would mean there was death before the Fall because of the time period while Genesis indicates there was no death until Adam sinned.

Gap theory: The doctrine of this theory places a lengthy period of time between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2, to accommodate for science. Enabling gap theorists to hold to the antiquity of the earth yet recognize the words of Genesis 1 and 2 literally, holding fast to twenty-four hour days of creation. The doctrine teaches that there was an original creation, some places the gap prior to Genesis verse 1; others place it between Genesis verse 1:1 and 1:2 and as a result of Lucifer’s rebellion and fall, the earth became chaos. The phrase “formless and void” (Gen. 1:2) describes the

chaotic earth that God judged. Scientific evaluation claims that millions of years took place between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2, which would this be in agreement this doctrine. Problems surrounding the gap theory are that the syntax of Genesis 1:1–2 does not allow for a gap. Verse one is an independent clause. Verse two is composed of three circumstantial clauses, explaining the condition of the earth when God began to create and it is connected to verse 3. There is no break between verses 1 and 2. The gap theory also depends on **formless and void** meaning evil or the result of a judgment; but its usages in Job 26:7 and Isaiah 45:18 do not suggest this.

Gap theorists also draw a distinction between the Hebrew verb *bara* (Genesis 1:1), signifying it means creation *ex nihilo* (out of nothing), whereas *asa* (Genesis 1:7, 16, 25, etc.) means a refashioning, a study of these verbs reveals they are used interchangeably; *asa* does not mean to refashion. **The gap theory is not built on exegesis but is rather an attempt to reconcile the Bible with the visions of science.** Two words are worthy of consideration in the book of Genesis, “created” and “made”. The word “create” means to make something out of nothing. The word “make” means to fashion or form as a potter forms something creative. God created man as to his spirit and soul:

The burden of the Word of Jehovah for Israel, says Jehovah, who stretches forth the heavens, and lays the foundation of the earth, and forms the spirit of man within him.

Zechariah 12:1 MKJV

The foundation for the twenty-four-hour days in creation is the biblical account of Genesis 1 and 2.

- Mankind was directly created by God (Genesis 1:27; 2:7; 5:1; Deuteronomy 4:32). Genesis 1:27 is the general statement, while Genesis 2:7 presents further detail of how God created man while also explaining God's manner of

creating - He created man out of the dust of the ground. Jesus Christ confirmed the same truth in Matthew 19:4.

- God created the male and female genders (Genesis 1:27), they did not evolve from inferior forms of life. God gave them their gender by creating them male and female thus these declarations would disallow any form of evolution.
- God created in six twenty-four-hour days. Several indicators in the creation account exist to validate this thesis. (1) The Hebrew word day (*yom*) with a numeral always designates a twenty-four-hour day. (2) The phrase evening and morning (Genesis 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31) emphasizes a twenty-four-hour day. To propose any form of a day-age concept involves rejecting the normal meaning of these words. (3) Exodus 20:9–11 gives emphasis to a twenty-four hour creation by analogy to the command for man to labor in six days and rest on the seventh day even as God did.
- God created man as a unique being. If man evolved, he is only a higher form of animal, without moral sensibility or accountability. Scripture presents man as a moral creature, answerable to God, man also is a soul and thus has an eternal concept (Genesis 2:7, mankind is created in the image of God (Genesis 1:26), which is hardly a statement appropriate to one who is the product of any form of evolution.²⁵

Man owes his existence to God and therefore he is a dependent being. He is dependent on God for His very life for it is the breath of God that gave man life in the first place. God formed him as mentioned previously from the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living soul (Genesis 2:7). It is in God that man live, move and have one's being (Acts 17:23-31).

God created mankind as an intellectual being which has self-consciousness and self-determination allowing man to be able to reason, this factor is important because it

²⁵ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 103 -106.

renders man capable of redemption. But this facet involves many natural elements; **personality reveals man's ability to exercise dominion over the world** (Gen. 1:28) and to develop the earth (Gen. 2:15). All aspects of man's intellect would come under this category. Man was created with imagination and has the ability to express thoughts in words.

Man was created with a personality. Man is far more superior to the animal creation who are creatures of habit and instinct and has a free will with the ability to choose which makes him a responsible being. God desired a creature that would respond to Him out of a free will, and the free will of all humans is respected and honoured by all spirits. It is the law of God and spirits cannot bypass the free choice given to men. God created within man a moral nature, in original righteousness also referred to as knowledge, righteousness, and holiness. This original righteousness and holiness was lost through the fall but is restored in Christ. Ephesians 4:24 highlights that the new self of the believer is in the likeness of God, that the new being of man have been created in righteousness and holiness. Colossians 3:10 declares that the new self is **being renewed to a true knowledge according to the image of the One who created him**, a reference to Genesis 1:26.

Even though mankind has a sinful nature and evil heart, man can respond to the influence of the Holy Spirit, God placed within man a conscience which gives him a moral sense, knowledge of self in relation to a known law distinguishing right from wrong. Conscience is fallible, because man's knowledge has been perverted through sin, it does not form a perfectly sound basis of judgment, therefore God gave the gift of the Holy Spirit, who brings the conscience into line with the Word of God (Romans 9:1).²⁶ Conscience also tells mankind that the only way to possibly escape the penalty of which God's infinite justice must demand for having breaking His laws would be His forgiveness²⁷ which helps man to come to the point of repentance.

²⁶ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J (2007) Teaching Manual 1 B, Module 1-5. Pretoria South Africa: Self Published, p. 4.

²⁷ Hunt, D (1996) In Defence of the Faith. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p 44.

Man is a love being, for the brute universe with all of its glories cannot respond to the love of God, man was created by love, for love and to reciprocate love.

Man was created as a triune being, spirit and soul are distinguishable but indivisible and these are housed in a physical body. There are three different words both in Hebrew and in Greek pertaining to man's tripartite being. In Hebrew, *Ruach*–Spirit, *Nephesh*–Soul, *Beten* or *Geshem*–Body, in Greek: *Pneuma*–Spirit, *Psueche*–Soul, *Sima*–Body. Paul refers to the threefold nature of man as the carnal (1 Corinthians 3:1-3), the natural (1 Corinthians 2:14) and the spiritual (1 Corinthians 3:1). The body of man relates to the material world through the five senses of sight, smell, hearing, taste and touch. The soul uses the five senses of the body as its agents in the investigation of the phenomena of matter and historical research, its self expression and communion with the outside world.

The gates or the entrance to the soul are imagination, conscience, memory, reason, and the affections. Sight in the body corresponds to the imagination of the soul being the eye by which the soul sees the entrance or the gate of the soul. The gate of conscience matches up to the gate of smell, by which the soul detects the presence of good and evil while the gate of memory corresponds to the gate of hearing by which the soul recalls what is heard.

The gate of reason corresponds to the gate of taste, which permits the soul to compare facts as the taste compares foods and the gate of affections corresponds to the gate of touch, being the hand by which the soul feels the person of the one it loves.

The spirit of man obtains impressions of outward and material things through the soul and body, the senses of the spirit are the spiritual faculties of faith, hope, reverence, prayer and worship, in the un-fallen state of mankind the spirit was

illuminated from heaven, but with the fall of man sin closed the window of the spirit and pulled down the curtain and the chamber of the spirit became a death chamber, which it remains until the life and light giving power of the Holy Spirit floods the chamber of death with the life and light of the new life in Jesus Christ. For this reason the unregenerated man or natural man, cannot understand the spiritual things until he has been renewed.

The natural man's spirit is not only darkened but his will stands as a guard, preventing the entrance of the Holy Spirit, only when the will surrenders through the power of the Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God will the Holy Spirit be able to enter and take up residence in the spirit of man.

The essential attributes of a spirit are reason, conscience, and will. A spirit is a rational, moral, and therefore also, a free agent, when God made man after his own image, God endowed him with those attributes which belong to His own nature as a spirit. Man is thereby distinguished from all other inhabitants of this world and raised immeasurably above them. He belongs to the same order of being as God Himself and is therefore capable of communion with his Maker.

The spirit of man is also the necessary condition of his capacity to know God and therefore the foundation of his religious nature. If mankind were not like God, they wouldn't have been able to know Him and they would have been as the beasts which perish.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

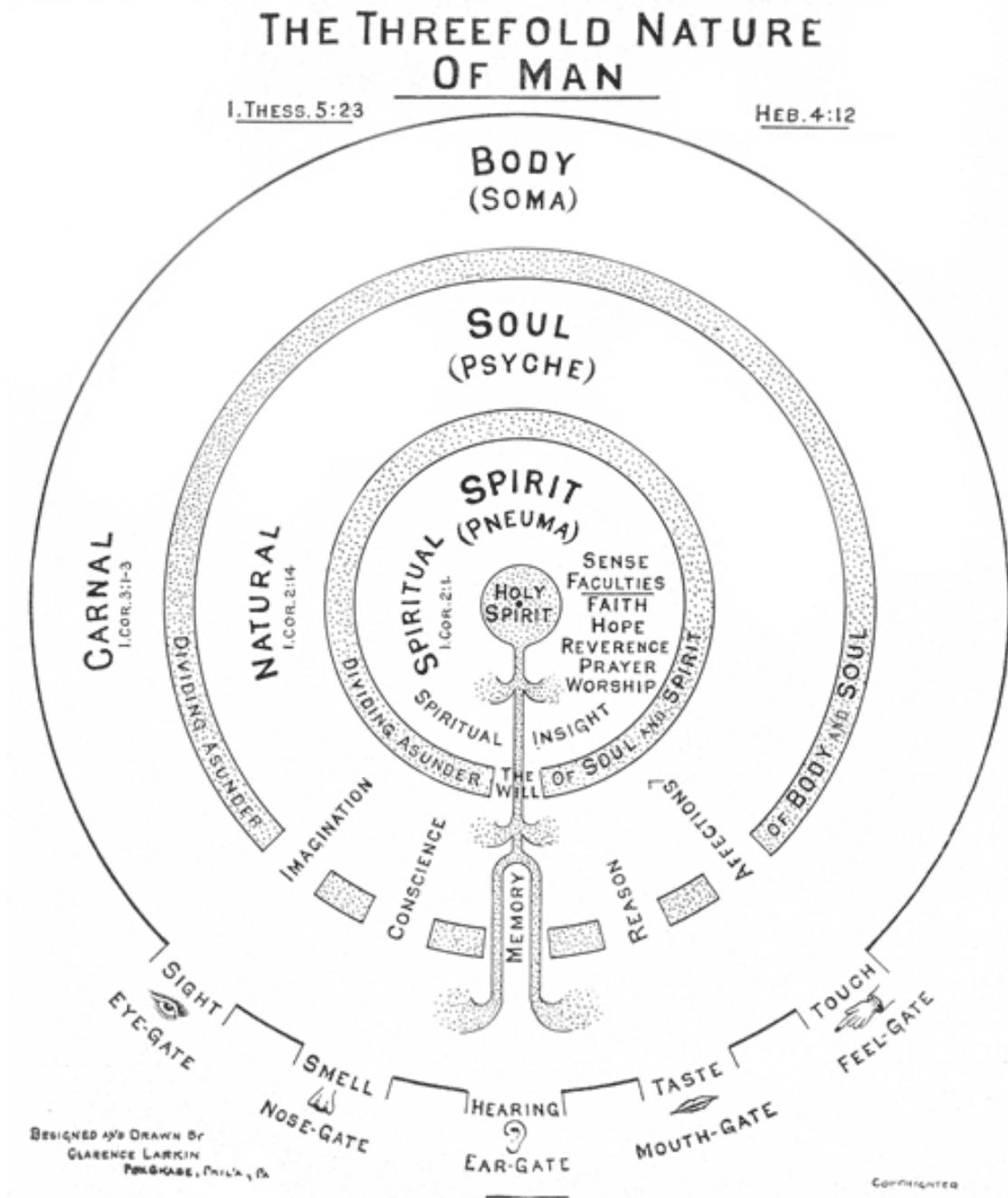


Figure 1: Threefold Nature of Man²⁸

²⁸ Threefold Nature of Man (www.tripartiteman.org/historical/larkin.html)

The battlefield of good and evil is in and for the soul of mankind!

The Holy Spirit should thus not only take up residence in the spirit of man but He should also have access to the soul and body of man, only then will mankind become sanctified, only when a Christian is Spirit filled in spirit, soul and body can holiness be achieved as it is a condition thereof. A healthy spirit and soul needs a healthy body and therefore the body cannot be given over to carnality and the lusts of the flesh, as the soul and the spirit will suffer and the whole man becomes spiritually sick.²⁹

God is the God of all spirits and the spirit is the eternal part of man that is able to worship God who is Spirit:

***And they fell upon their faces and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin and will You be angry with all the congregation?
Numbers 16:22 MKJV***

It is the lamp of the Lord as seen in Proverbs 20:27: **The spirit of man is the lamp of Jehovah, searching all the inward parts of the belly.** The believer's spirit, when joined to the Lord, becomes one with the Holy Spirit (1 Corinthians 6:17). Man received his soul as God breathed into his body which was formed of the earth, the breath of life included both spirit life and soul life.

5.2.2 Three theories surrounding the origin of the soul

5.2.2.1 The theory of pre-existence

All souls existed previously and enter the body some time after conception. This theory has absolutely no foundation in Scripture. This view, has its roots in non-Christian philosophy; it is taught in Hinduism and was also held by Plato, Philo, and Origen. This theory teaches that in a previous existence men were angelic spirits,

²⁹ Larkin, Clarens (1918) Dispensational Truth. USA: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p. 98.

and as punishment and discipline for sin, they were sent to indwell human bodies. The problem with this view: there is no clear statement of Scripture to support this view (although the idea may have been presented in John 9:2); no one has any recollection of such an existence; the doctrine of sin is not related to Adam's sin in Genesis 3 but to sin in an angelic sphere.³⁰

5.2.2.2 The theory of Creation

Every soul is created by God some time after conception. It teaches that the person receives their body from the parents but the soul from God. Bible revelation and human experience shows that the sinful nature of Adam - character traits and likenesses of the parents are seen in every child.

This view is held by Roman Catholics and many Reformed Christians, among them Charles Hodge. There are two reasons for this view: it maintains the purity of Christ, with this view Christ could not inherit a sinful nature from His mother; a distinction is made between a mortal body and an immortal soul, parents may propagate a mortal body but only God can produce an immortal soul. The problems with this view are: it necessitates an individual fall by each person because God can create only perfection; it does not account for the problem of why all men sin.³¹

5.2.2.3 The theory of the Traducianists

The human race was created "*in Adam*" as pertaining to soul and body and that both are the result of natural reproduction. This theory seems to be most consistent with the Word of God. The scholars believe that the immaterial is created in and with the material. Therefore, for the traducianist, there is never a time when the body is without a soul.

³⁰ Hodge, C. Anthropology, The Origin of the Soul
(www.audiowebman.org/start/books/charles_hidge/vol_2/vol_0203.htm)

³¹ Hodge, C. Anthropology, The Origin of the Soul
(www.audiowebman.org/start/books/charles_hidge/vol_2/vol_0203.htm)

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

Traducianists argue against “*anthropological creationism*” which asserts that God creates the immaterial which is the soul/spirit directly and then places it in the material body at or sometime after conception. Traducianists believe that God ceased from *ex nihilo* (“*out of nothing*”) creation on the sixth day and since then all creation is done indirectly. Traducianists also argue that a belief in “*anthropological creationism*” evidences gnostic or dualistic leanings, implying that the body is a lesser entity than the soul.³²

The problems with this view however are: how parents can pass on the soul, which is nonmaterial and Christ must then have partaken of the sinful nature of Mary if traducianism is true. The strengths of traducianism are as follows.

It gives an explanation of the depravity of man. If the parents pass on the nonmaterial nature then it explains the propagation of the sin nature and the tendency, from birth, of every human being to sin. The sin nature cannot be explained if God creates each soul directly. Traducianism also explains the heredity factor—the intellect, personality, and emotional similarities of children and their parents. If creationism were correct the similarities should not be as prevalent and noticeable. The Scripture seems to affirm the traducian position (Psalms 51:5; Romans 5:12; Hebrews 7:10).³³

This thesis deems to recommend the writings concerning *Ex Nihilo* for the furtherance of knowledge and understanding.³⁴

The Bible is clear that the human race was representatively in Adam and when he sinned and fell, the whole human race fell with him. All souls come into existence by the co-operation of the Creator and parents. Though God is a Spirit, He is spoken of

³² Traducianism (www.reclaimingthemind.org/wordoftheday/traducianism/)

³³ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 107 -110.

³⁴ De Villiers, Prof Dr PR (2007) *How God Created, A Scientific Approach to God's Creation*. Karenpark: Zondervan Publishing House.

as having soul and His soul is grieved over man. Spirit and Soul are associated with God; distinguishable but indivisible.

5.2.3 Origin of the nonmaterial part of Man³⁵

5.2.3.1 Dichotomous view

Dichotomy comes from the Greek word *dicha*, which means “two,” and *temno*, “to cut.” Thus, in this view man is a two-part being, consisting of body and soul.

The nonmaterial part of man is the soul and spirit, which are of the same substance; however, they have a different function. The support for the dichotomous view is: (a) Genesis 2:7 affirms only two parts. God formed man from the dust of the ground, breathed life into him, and he became a living soul (Job 27:3). (b) The words soul and spirit may be used interchangeably. Compare Genesis 41:8 with Psalm 42:6, and Hebrews 12:23 with Revelation 6:9. (c) Body and soul (or spirit) together are mentioned as constituting the entire person (Matthew 10:28; 1 Corinthians 5:3; 3 John 2).³⁶

5.2.3.2 Trichotomous view

Trichotomy comes from Greek word *tricha*, meaning “three,” and *temno*, “to cut.” Hence, man is a three-part being, consisting of body, soul, and spirit. The soul and spirit are said to be different both in function and in substance. The body is seen as world-conscious, the soul as self-conscious, and the spirit as God-conscious. The soul is seen as a lower power consisting of man's imagination, memory, and understanding; the spirit is a higher power, consisting of reason, conscience, and

³⁵ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 107 -110.

³⁶ Trichotomous vs Dichotomous views of Man
(www.christianity.stackexchange.com/questions/8847/trichotomous-vs-dichotomous-views-of-man)

will. The support for the trichotomous view is: (a) Paul seems to emphasize the three-part view in desiring the sanctification of the entire person (1 Thess. 5:23). (b) Hebrews 4:12 implies a distinction between soul and spirit. (c) 1 Corinthians 2:14–3:4 suggests a threefold classification: natural (fleshly), carnal (soulish), and spiritual (spiritual).³⁷

5.2.3.3 Multi-faceted view

Man's nonmaterial nature can be seen as multi-faceted, as there is a number of terms that describe mankind's non-physical nature.

Heart: The heart describes the intellectual (Matthew 15:19–20) as well as the volitional part of man (Romans 10:9–10; Hebrews 4:7). **Conscience:** God has placed within man a conscience as a witness, because of the fall the conscience may be seared and unreliable (1 Timothy 4:2); nevertheless, it can convict the unbeliever (Romans 2:15). In the believer it may be weak and overly scrupulous (1 Corinthians 8:7, 10, 12).

Mind: The unbeliever's mind is immoral (Romans 1:28), blinded by Satan (2 Corinthians 4:4), darkened and vain (Ephesians 4:17–18). Once a person made the choice to receive Jesus in their lives, the believer receives a renewed mind (Romans 12:2) that enables him to love God (Matthew 22:37). **Will:** The unbeliever has a will that desires to follow the dictates of the flesh (Ephesians 2:2–3), while the believer has the ability to desire to do God's will (Romans 6:12–13). At conversion, the believer is given a new nature that enables him to love God with all his **heart, mind, and will.**^{38 39}

³⁷ Trichotomous vs Dichotomous views of Man
(www.christianity.stackexchange.com/questions/8847/trichotomous-vs-dichotomous-views-of-man)

³⁸ Humanity (www.theopedia.com/Humanity)

³⁹ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 111.

5.2.4 Material Part of Man

Scripture makes a division between the material body and the nonmaterial soul and spirit (2 Corinthians 5:1; 1 Thessalonians 5:23). As indicated previously in Genesis 2:7 the body of man was formed from the **dust of the ground**, the word play of Adam and dust of the ground reminds man of his origin - he is of the earth.

A chemical analysis of the human body discloses that man's components are those of the earth: calcium, iron, potassium, and so forth, when man dies the body again unites with the dust from which it originated from (Genesis 3:19; Psalms 104:29; Ecclesiastics 12:7).

The purpose of the body includes:

The body is the prison house of the soul, a view kept by the Greek philosophers who placed a great dichotomy between the body and soul. Soul being nonmaterial was good; the body was material and evil. In this view, the body was therefore depreciated but on the other hand, it is unbiblical to place this kind of dichotomy between the material and nonmaterial. The Bible does not refer to the body as fundamentally evil. In fact, the Song of Solomon in its entirety focuses on the value of the human body and the bliss of married love and sexual expression. Divine revelation makes it clear that man is a unity - **one being** and the material and immaterial can be separated only by physical death.

The body is the only part of man that is important - this view is called hedonism and represents the opposite of the preceding view. Hedonists suggest a person should seek to please the body by doing what he enjoys doing. This philosophy is a denial of the soul. The testimony of Jesus Christ invalidates this view inasmuch as Christ spoke of the enormous value of the soul as distinct from the body (Matthew 10:28;

16:26). Other Scriptures also affirm the existence of the soul (2 Corinthians 5:8; Ecclesiastics 12:7).

The body is the partner of the soul. The body is the means of glorifying God since it is the temple of God (1 Corinthians 6:19). The body is not to be the master so that the believer caters to it in self-indulgence, nor is it to be an enemy that needs to be punished. The body is to be submitted to God (Romans 12:1) in order that Christ may be glorified in that body (Philippians 1:20). Ultimately, the believer will be rewarded for deeds done in the body (2 Corinthians 5:10).

The human body is a house, built to be indwelt by someone - so man was build to be indwelt by the Spirit of God.(2 Corinthians 5:1) Jesus spoke of unclean spirit's living in a house in Matthew 12:42-45 and the human body is also referred to as being a tabernacle (2 Corinthians 5:1-4; John 1:14; 2 Peter 1:13). A tabernacle is a tent and both Christ's body, as well as humans' bodies are likened to tents which is a significant thought because of the fact that mankind are pilgrims. At man's death the temporary tent will be taken down and dissolved, as the spirit and soul depart.

The human body is a temple (2 Corinthians 5:19; 1 Corinthians 3:16; 6:19-21; John 2:21; 1 Kings 8:27-28) and the body of Jesus was also linked to a temple. It is to be a habitation of God by the Spirit, teaching the same truth as that of the tabernacle (Ephesians 2:21-22). Man need's to present this purchased body to the Lord and keep the temple clean, pure and holy for His dwelling (1 Corinthians 6:20; Romance 12:1; Hebrew 10:22).

Today in the so called liberal thinking and liberation theology, as well as the breakdown of moral standards and changing sexual standards Satan defiles the temple of the Holy Spirit and one of the most effective ways to do so is through sexual immorality. When sexual intercourse takes place outside of wedlock, strong demonic spirits of lust and perverted sex can pass from one body to another, there is

however other ways Satan attacks the body – usually by placing the desire in man's mind.⁴⁰

The human body is also linked to a sheath (Daniel 7:15) in which the spirit is placed like a sword. At death, the sword of the spirit is with draw from the sheath and the sheath decays. The human body is earthy (1 Corinthians 15:47; Psalm 103:14; Genesis 2:7; 3:19) and has the same ingredients in it as the dust of the earth. It is a body of humiliation (Philippians 3:21; Job 19:25-27) and sin has subjected man's body to sickness, disease and infirmity. The Bible reveals God's purpose for man as being fourfold: relationship, character, function and reproduction.

Through Scripture God's desire for fellowship and communion with man is revealed. Right from the beginning God has been seeking fellowship with man:

And they heard the voice of Jehovah God walking in the garden in the cool of the day. And Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of Jehovah God in the middle of the trees of the garden.

Genesis 3:8 MKJV

Sin hindered man's relationship with God right from the beginning and ever since (Isaiah 59:1-2). It is only from the New Covenant that God's purpose of relationship with man is fully accomplished, after the new covenant God indwells each believer making fellowship constantly available (John 14:16-20, 23).⁴¹

Mankind is the only creatures in the creation of God who receives the Holy Spirit, which is God's own Spirit (Romans 8:9; 1 Corinthians 12:13; Ephesians 1:13-14), the only part of creation where God used His own hands to put man together, the God of the universe bowed down from the heavenlies to blow the breath of life into the nostril of man.

⁴⁰ Subritzky, B (1985) Demons Defeated. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd, pp 13-14.

⁴¹ Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J (2007) Teaching Manual 1 B, Module 1-5. Pretoria South Africa: Self Published, pp. 14 -15.

God the Father wanted His children to look like Him on the inside; He wanted mankind to bear the family image and likeness but also His character which is one of the main thoughts in the word "image". Jesus is described as being the express image of His Father's Person (Hebrew 1:3). The Greek word translated image in that verse is pronounced *charater* and it is the word from which the English word "character" is derived.

God wants man to receive a share of His divine nature (2 Peter 1:4-7), to be conformed to the image of His Son (Romance 8:28-29), and to be changed in to His image by the Spirit (2 Corinthians 3:18; 4:4). Since it was disobedience that broke man's relationship with God, it is necessary that man's character be changed, restored and made just like God's own nature.

God the Father wanted His children to function in a family, He wanted man to share in His dominion, to do this God told man to subdue, which means to conquer an enemy (Genesis 1:28). Satan was the only enemy at that time, and man's first encounter with him - man lost (Genesis 3), he lost his dominion and came under bondage to Satan, sin, sickness and death. Only through Christ, who has conquered all, can man's dominion be regained.

God the Father wanted His children to reproduce more children to be in His family and therefore He told Adam and Eve to be fruitful, multiply and replenish the earth (Genesis 1:28) according to their kind. He created man to be an heir to His kingdom, to have dominion over the rest of His creation, with the fall of man, mankind lost a lot of the initial authority and dominion God gave mankind.

6. MANKIND FALLING FROM GRACE

Scripture is clear about the fact that man fell from how he had been created. Men were created in the image and likeness of God but at the fall, when sin and death entered into the world, the image of God in man was corrupted.

God has created Adam and humanity perfectly in His image and likeness, in what He looks like and how He acts, but the fall of sin corrupted that image. When Adam and Eve listened to the cunning words of the Serpent they died immediately, known as the spiritual death and yet it took Adam 930 years to finally succumb to physical death.

Jesus' teachings sheds light on what mankind's appearance would be like after his resurrection and the appearance Adam had before the fall. When Jesus took His disciples Peter, James and John to the Mount Hermon, He was transfigured before them, His face shone like the sun and His clothing became as white as light.

And He was transfigured before them. And His face shone as the sun, and His clothing was white as the light.

Matthew 17:2 MKJV

The light of Jesus, who is the source of light, emanated through His clothing, in the days of Tribulation Jesus will return on a horse and the believers in Christ will return with Him, Revelations gives an account of what man would look like:

And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white. For the fine linen is the righteousness of the saints.

Revelation 19:8 MKJV

It is clear from this verse that the covering will be light and luminous, thus the resurrected body of man will be enveloped in garments of light. This theory was also confirmed by Jesus when He said the righteous will shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of the Father (Matthew 13:43) and also revealed in the Old Testament as seen in Judges 5:31 and in the book of Proverbs.

But the path of the just is as the shining light, that shines more and more to the perfect day.

Proverbs 4:18 MKJV

Jesus also said that in the resurrection man will be like the angels, there are many verses referring to the angels' glorious appearance. One of the most revealing examples is found in Daniel and Revelations.

In Daniel chapter ten, an angel detained by the prince of Persia appeared to Daniel, which described the angel having a body like beryl, a face like the appearance of lightning, eyes like torches of fire, arms and feet like burnished bronze in color and the sound of his words like the voice of a multitude (Daniel 10:5-6). John gave an account of angels in Revelations and he also described them as clothed in shining linen.

It is therefore clear from Scriptures point of view that the resurrected body of man will be clothed in light, as in the likeness of God who is clothed in light (Psalms 104:1-2), since Adam was created in God's image he must have lost the light at the fall. The Jewish interpretation held that Adam and Eve were first clothed in garments of light and then later in garments of skin.

The Hebrew word for light is "**aleph vav resh**" **rut** and the word for skin is "**ayin vav resh**" **rug**. Most people are aware that each Hebrew character has a numerical value. Thus, Aleph (t) = 1, Bet (c) = 2, etc. up to Tav (,) = 400 (1-9, 10-90, 100-400). Each letter can be combined together with other letters to represent a larger number (i.e. Mem + Gimel dn together equal 43, 40 + 3). What is little known about Hebrew is that the ancient form of each letter represented a pictograph, or word picture. So, for example, *Aleph* represents an *ox* or *bull*, *Bet* represents a *house*, etc.

The only difference between the Hebrew words for light and skin is one letter: *Aleph* (t) for light and *Ayin* (g) for skin. Numerically, Aleph = 1 and Ayin = 70. The difference between them is 69, represented by the Hebrew letters Samech (x) and Tet (y) or yx. The pictograph of Samech is a *prop*, meaning, *to support*. The

pictograph of Tet is a *snake*. Putting the two together, yx means, *to support the snake!* By supporting the snake or going along with the snake's arguments and ways, Adam and Eve lost their skins of light and had to be given skins of flesh.

And so it is that whenever mankind supports or goes along with the snake's arguments or ways they lose some of God's radiance in their lives and become more animalistic and debase in their nature.

As mentioned above, the letter Aleph represents an ox or bull, and means *strength, leader, or first*. The letter Ayin is represented by an *eye* and means to *see, know or experience*. Thus, when Adam and Eve, the *first* people on Earth ate the forbidden fruit their eyes were opened and they began to know and experience good and evil.

Midrash Rabbah - Genesis XX:12, describes the garments of skin:

“AND THE LORD GOD MADE FOR ADAM AND HIS WIFE GARMENTS OF SKIN (‘OR), AND CLOTHED THEM (III, 21). In R. Meir's Torah it was found written, ‘Garments of light (or): this refers to Adam's garments, which were like a torch [shedding radiance], broad at the bottom and narrow at the top. Isaac the Elder said: They were as smooth as a finger-nail and as beautiful as a jewel. R. Johanan said: They were like the fine linen garments which come from Bethshean, GARMENTS OF SKIN meaning those that are nearest to the skin. R. Eleazar said: They were of goats' skin. R. Joshua said: Of hares' skin. R. Jose b. R. Hanina said: It was a garment made of skin with its wool. Resh Lakish said: It was of Circassian wool, and these were used [later] by first-born children. R. Samuel b. Nahman said: [They were made from] the wool of camels and the wool of hares, GARMENTS OF SKIN meaning those which are produced from the skin. R. Levi said: The Torah teaches you here a rule of worldly wisdom: spend according to your means on food; less than you can afford on clothing, but more than you can afford on a dwelling. Spend according to your means on food, as it is written, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat (Gen. II, 16). Less than you can afford on clothing: AND THE

LORD GOD MADE... GARMENTS OF SKIN, AND CLOTHED THEM. More than you can afford on a dwelling: for lo! they were but two, yet they dwelt in the whole world.”⁴²

The Soncino Zohar of Bereshith, via medieval Jewish writing describes how the rabbis interpreted the original garments of Adam and Eve.

“AND THE EYES OF BOTH OF THEM WERE OPENED. R. Hiya says, their eyes were opened to the evil of the world, which they had not known hitherto. **Then they knew that they were naked, since they had lost the celestial lustre which had formerly enveloped them, and of which they were now divested.** AND THEY SEWED FIG LEAVES. They strove to cover themselves with the (delusive) images from the tree of which they had eaten, the so-called “*leaves of the tree*”. AND THEY MADE THEMSELVES GIRDLES. R. Jose said: ‘When they obtained knowledge of this world and attached themselves to it, they observed that it was governed by those “leaves of the tree”. They therefore sought in them a stronghold in this world, and so made themselves acquainted with all kinds of magical arts, in order to gird themselves with weapons of those leaves of the tree, for the purpose of self-protection.’ R. Judah said: ‘In this way three came up for judgement and were found guilty, and the terrestrial world was cursed and dislodged from its estate on account of the defilement of the serpent, until Israel stood before Mount Sinai.’ **Afterwards God clothed Adam and Eve in garments soothing to the skin, as it is written, HE MADE THEM COATS OF SKIN (rug 'or). At first they had had coats of light (rut 'or), which procured them the service of the highest of the high, for the celestial angels used to come to enjoy that light; so it is written, “For thou hast made him but little lower than the angels, and crownest him with glory and honour” (Ps. VIII, 6). Now after their sins they had only coats of skin (rug 'or), good for the body but not for the soul.**”⁴³

⁴² Skins of Light and Flesh (www.yashanet.com/studies/judaism101/sidebars/ohr.htm)

⁴³ Skins of Light and Flesh (www.yashanet.com/studies/judaism101/sidebars/ohr.htm)

The Soncino Zohar, chapter Shemoth (Exodus) further comments on how Adam was originally clothed with light, so that he could be in the Garden of Eden, if he didn't have that he would not have been able to be in God's presence.

“Observe that man's soul does not ascend to appear before the Holy King unless she is first worthy to be attired in the supernal raiment. Likewise, the soul does not descend into this world until clad in the garments of this world. Similarly, the holy heavenly angels, of whom it is written, **“Who makest thy angels into winds and thy ministers into flaming fire”** (Ps. CIV, 4), when they have to execute a message in this world do not come down to it before they clothe themselves in the garments of this world. The attire thus has always to be in harmony with the place visited; and the soul, can only ascend when clad in ethereal raiment. **Adam in the Garden of Eden was attired in supernal raiment, of celestial radiancy. As soon as he was driven from the Garden of Eden and had need of forms suited to this world, “the Lord God”, Scripture says, “made for Adam and for his wife garments of skin (rug 'or), and clothed them” (Gen. III, 21). Formerly they were garments of light (rut 'or), to wit, of the celestial light in which Adam ministered in the Garden of Eden. For, inasmuch as it is the resplendency of the celestial light that ministers in the Garden of Eden, when first man entered into the Garden, the Holy One, blessed be He, clothed him first in the raiment of that light. Otherwise he could not have entered there. When driven out, however, he had need of other garments; hence “garments of skin”.**

“So here also *“they made residual garments to minister in the holy place”*, so as to enable the wearer to enter the Sanctuary. Now, it has been already taught that a man's good deeds done in this world draw from the celestial resplendency of light a garment with which he may be invested when in the next world he comes to appear before the Holy One, blessed be He. Apparelled in that raiment, he is in a state of bliss and feasts his eyes on the radiant effulgence. So Scripture says: “To behold the graciousness of the Lord, and to visit early in his temple” (Ps. XXVII, 4).

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

Man's soul is thus attired in the raiment's of both worlds, the lower and the upper, thereby achieving perfection. Of this Scripture says: "*Surely the righteous shall give thanks unto thy name*"; *to wit, in this world - The upright shall dwell in thy presence*" (Ibid. CXL, 14); namely, in the other world."⁴⁴

This theory is not only confirmed by the ancient Jews but also by the ancient Christians, Church father Arnobius⁴⁵ wrote that robes of light are realities and conformed to spiritual bodies, Methodius⁴⁶ another Church father also referred to garments of light in his works, radiating permanent beauty, wanting nothing of the brightness of light, and instead of a dress, clothed with light itself. From these teachings there is little doubt that the early church interpreted the resurrected bodies of believers to be such that they would emit light and shine like the sun, knowing that Jesus came as the second Adam, and currently mankind is in the corrupted image of the first Adam, one could conclude that when God made the first Adam, in his uncorrupted state his earthly body radiated light in a manner similar to the bodies man would have in their resurrected state.

After Adam and Eve sinned they discovered that they were **naked**, there appears to be word play occurring in the Hebrew texts indicating that they were not merely naked but possessed the quality of being prudent, wise or crafty. Before the fall they were wise, but because of their **disobedience** to God's command they were unfaithful which led them to see their nakedness, the result of losing their robes. The Greek word for naked is *gumnos*⁴⁷, this word is used to describe Peter before he swam to shore to meet Jesus after the resurrection, he wasn't completely naked as he only took off his outer garment but the same word for naked is employed in the Greek Septuagint of Genesis 2:25.

⁴⁴ Skins of Light and Flesh (www.yashanet.com/studies/judaism101/sidebars/ohr.htm)

⁴⁵ Arnobius Against the Heathen, V7

(www.aren.org/prison/documents/religion/Church%20Fathers/Arnobius%20Against%20the%20Heathen,%20v7.pdf), p. 22.

⁴⁶ Methodius (www.studylight.org/his/ecf/view.cgi?pn=2&sid=ant&aid=06-13&file=anf06-125&)

⁴⁷ Strong's Concordance 1131, the short meaning: wearing only the under-garment, bare.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

As seen from the Bible's point of view, it does not necessarily mean naked in the absolute sense – it could mean poorly clothed, ill clad or without proper covering. The word play thus demonstrates that they were unashamed because of the covering that they had and not simply because they were unaware of their lack of clothing.

It can be stated that before the fall they weren't naked in the absolute sense thereof, but they were naked after the fall. Before the fall Adam and Eve were wise, their disobedience led them to see their nakedness realizing that they **lost their light**.

God is the origin of light, keeping in mind that man is created in the image of God; one knows that it is God that is responsible for the light in mankind. **God is a man of fire, and light radiates from within Him.**

Take note that God is Light – in Him there is no darkness!

And the city had no need of the sun, nor of the moon, that they might shine in it, for the glory of God illuminated it, and its lamp is the Lamb.
Revelation 21:23 MKJV

Scientists have proven that DNA emits light, in the 1923's a Ukrainian Biologist Alexander Gurwitsch discovered that onions and yeast produced an ultra weak photon emission the discovery was later confirmed independently by Russian scientists around 1950. Biophoton is the emission of light from DNA⁴⁸, discovered by Dr Popp and the Marburg group stating that the essential source of non-equilibrium biophoton emission is the DNA. Researches from Kanazawa University of Japan confirmed that not only does living creatures emit light it also absorbs it.

⁴⁸ Biophotons The Light in our Cells, Marco Bischof, 2005
(www.transpersonal.de/mbischof/englisch/webbookeng.htm)

DNA would seem to be like an electronic capacitor which stores tiny amounts of electricity and then discharges it, but they do not produce their own energy, which is very similar to man – man does not produce his own light but it is absorbed from God and then reemitted. Upon the fall, when Adam sinned the Holy Spirit absconded from him and his direct connection to the source of light was broken. When the very essence of God is absorbed it is obvious that man's whole body would be filled with God's magnificent light and that it would be emanating in large amounts, similar to the shining angels who have access to God's light and energy.

Moses spent forty days face to face with the Lord, as a result of being exposed to the light source, his face emanated light which provides evidence that God energizes mankind's DNA with His light.⁴⁹

Apart of losing their light is also losing their image in God. Adam was deceived by Satan and with the deception he lost his real image.

Man wasn't originally created with any evil within him – because of the fall – man got corrupted and evil gained entrance because of self will. To follow man's own will and not the will of God is defined as sin – to miss the mark.

Just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin and so sin spread through all men (Romans 5:12), the effects of the Fall are numerous and far reaching. Sin has affected every aspect of mankind's being. It has affected their lives on earth and eternal destiny.

One of the immediate effects of the Fall was that mankind was separated from God. In the Garden of Eden, Adam and Eve had perfect communion and fellowship with God. When they rebelled against Him, that fellowship was broken. They became aware of their sin and were ashamed before Him.

⁴⁹ Hamp, D (2011) *Corrupting the Image, Angels, Aliens and the Antichrist Revealed*. USA: Douglas Hamp, pp 45-63.

They hid from Him (Genesis 3:8-10), and man has been hiding from God ever since. Only through Christ can that fellowship be restored, because in Him we are made as righteous and sinless in God's eyes as Adam and Eve were before they sinned. "God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God" (2 Corinthians 5:21).

Because of the Fall, death became a reality, and all creation was subject to it. All men die, all animals die, all plant life dies. The "*whole creation groans*" (Romans 8:22), waiting for the time when Christ will return to liberate it from the effects of death. Because of sin, death is an inescapable reality, and no one is immune, for the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus the Lord (Romans 6:23). Worse still, mankind not only dies, but if they die without Christ, they experience eternal death.

Another effect of the Fall is that humans have lost sight of the purpose for which they were created. Man's chief end and highest purpose in life is to glorify God and enjoy Him forever (Romans 11:36; 1 Corinthians 6:20; 1 Corinthians 10:31; Psalm 86:9). Hence, love to God is the core of all morality and goodness. The opposite is the choice of self as supreme. **Selfishness is the essence of the Fall**, and what follows are all other crimes against God. In all ways sin is a turning in upon oneself, which is confirmed in how mankind live their lives. Mankind calls attention to themselves and to their good qualities and accomplishments.

Mankind minimizes their shortcomings, seeks special favors and opportunities in life, wanting an extra edge that no one else has, display vigilance to their own wants and needs, while being ignorant to those of others. **In short, mankind places themselves upon the throne of their lives, usurping God's role.**

When Adam chose to rebel against his Creator, he lost his innocence, incurred the penalty of physical and spiritual death, and his mind was darkened by sin, as are

the minds of his successors. The apostle Paul said of pagans, “*Since they do not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God, He gave them over to a depraved mind*” (Romans 1:28). He told the Corinthians that “*the god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers so that they cannot see the light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God*” (2 Corinthians 4:4). Jesus said, “*I have come into the world as a light so that no one who believes in me should stay in darkness*” (John 12:46). Paul reminded the Ephesians, “*You were once in darkness but now you are in the light of the Lord*” (Ephesians 5:8). The purpose of salvation is “*to open the eyes [of unbelievers] and turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God*” (Acts 26:18).

The Fall produced in humans a state of depravity. Paul spoke of those “*whose consciences are seared*” (1 Timothy 4:2) and those whose minds are spiritually darkened as a result of rejecting the truth (Romans 1:21). In this state, man is utterly incapable of doing or choosing that which is acceptable to God, apart from divine grace. “*The sinful mind is hostile to God. It does not submit to God's law, nor can it do so*” (Romans 8:7).

Without the supernatural regeneration by the Holy Spirit, all men would remain in their fallen state. But in His grace, mercy and loving-kindness, God sent His Son to die on the cross and take the penalty of mankind's sin, reconciling man to God and making eternal life with Him possible. What was lost at the Fall is reclaimed at the Cross.⁵⁰ Genesis describes the entrance of sin into the realm of humanity, but it does not give an account of the origin of sin. It was an historical event confirmed by Jesus' own testimony (Matthew 19:3-5).

And He answered and said to them, Have you not read that He who made them at the beginning "made them male and female",

Matthew 19:4 MKJV

⁵⁰ How did the Fall affect Humanity (www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html)

Adam and Eve were tested in the Garden, free to eat the fruits from all the trees except the tree of knowledge of good and evil (Genesis 2:16-17), the reason for the test was to determine whether or not they would believe God and obey Him. God's purpose in the test was to give Adam and Eve knowledge of sin through obedience by not eating the fruit of the tree of knowledge.

They however came to gain knowledge of good and evil, but they attained the knowledge in the wrong manner.

The temptation in Eden came through the serpent (Genesis 3:1) Satan, the devil who inspired Cain to kill his brother (John 8:44), he is called the serpent of old (Revelations 12:9; 20:2), and the allusion in Romans 16:20 indicates that the judgment of Genesis 3:15 refers to Satan, not simply the serpent. The serpent was crafty (Genesis 3:1), hence, Satan would be crafty in conducting his test. His strategy can be summarized in three phases.

1. Satan raised uncertainty concerning God's Word (Genesis 3:1). The temptation created suspicion about the goodness of God and it raised a question whether God was dealing wisely and fairly with Adam and Eve. Eve submitted to the temptation in that she exaggerated God's prohibition by her response to Satan (Genesis 3:3). God had said nothing about touching the fruit.
2. Satan lied by saying that Adam and Eve would not die (Genesis 3:4), he made a categorical denial of God's earlier statement; Satan said, "*You surely shall not die!*"
3. Satan only told them a fraction of the truth (Genesis 3:5). Satan told them they would be like God, knowing good and evil if they ate the fruit. It was true they would know good and evil, but Satan did not tell them the rest, he did not tell them about the pain, suffering, and death that would occur through their sin. The test was in

three areas, **the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the boastful pride of life** (1 John 2:16; Matthew 4:1–11).

The results of the sin:⁵¹

1. Judgment on the serpent (Genesis 3:14). Earlier the serpent had been a noble creature; as a result of the judgment it was changed in form and shape. Because the serpent exalted itself it would now be forced to crawl on its belly and eat the dust of the earth as it crawled along.
2. Judgment on Satan (Genesis 3:15). This verse was addressed to Satan, not the serpent. There would be hostility between Satan's seed (unbelievers and possibly demons) and the woman's seed (believers, but specifically Christ). "*He shall bruise you on the head*" indicates Christ delivered a death blow to Satan at the cross (Colossians 2:14–15; Hebrews 2:14). Christ would have a major victory. "*You shall bruise Him on the heel*" suggests Satan would have a minor victory in the fact that Christ died; nevertheless, that death became Satan's own defeat.
3. Judgment on the woman (Genesis 3:16). The woman would experience pain in childbirth, the pain (Hebrew *yizabon*) a woman would go through in childbirth is similarly used of Adam's labor (Genesis 3:17).

Both man and woman would suffer in their respective roles. The desire of the woman would be toward her husband, this phrase might mean (a) sexual desire (Song of Solomon 7:10), (b) desire for security under her husband's authority, or (c) desire to rule over her husband (Genesis 4:7). A final aspect of the judgment upon the woman was that the husband would rule over her.

⁵¹ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 114.

4. Judgment on the man (Genesis 3:17–19). The first judgment was against the ground, as the earth would no longer spontaneously produce its fruit but only through hard labor by the man. The second judgment on the man was death. Adam had been made from the elements of the ground. The death process would return the man to the dust from which his body had been taken.
5. Judgment on the human race (Romans 5:12). The result of Adam's sin was passed on to the entire human race. All humanity now became subject to death.
6. Judgment on creation (Genesis 3:17–18). All animal and plant life would be affected by the sin of Adam. Animal life and nature would resist the man. Animals would become wild and ferocious; plant life would produce weeds to hinder productivity. All creation would groan with the effect of the Fall and anxiously long for the day of restoration (Romans 8:19–21).

In conclusion to this section the **consequences of the body** after the fall were physical death, pain, hard labor, various afflictions and sufferings. Mankind would be able to use their senses and capacities to serve self, sin and Satan, doomed to die and return to the physical elements of its creation. **Consequences on the internal parts** was that the soul maintains a corrupted personality in identity with God, seems to have assumed the internal actions and decisions God originally assigned to the spirit of man: intellectually man could use and evaluate knowledge to do their own will and to decide their own religion, unable to know or please God.

Will of man is corrupted to serve the interest, appetites and desires of self, sin and Satan, unable to do God's will, held in the bondage of Satan's deceptions. Emotions is corrupted to experience feelings of anger, hate, love, fear, peace etc., flow from self, sin and Satan's deceptive rule. **The spirit of man** died immediately at the fall and no longer functions to have the capacity to know God, obey Him or commune with Him in a pleasing manner, unable to worship God in spirit and truth, the correct

spiritual understanding of God is no longer possible unless the spirit is restored to life.⁵²

7. DOCTRINE OF SIN

7.1 Definition of Sin

When a person transgresses the law of God it is known as sin. The Greek word *parabasis* means “*overstepping, transgression.*” God gave Moses the law known as the Mosaic Law to heighten mankind’s understanding of His standard and the seriousness of transgressing that standard (Romans 4:15). Thereafter, when God said, “*You shall not bear false witness,*” a lie was seen to be what it is - an overstepping or transgression of the law of God (Romans 2:23; 5:14; Galatians 3:19). Sin is thus the failure to conform to God’s standard.

The Greek word *hamartia* means “*miss the mark,*” “*every departure from the way of righteousness*”, consequently, it means that all people have missed the mark of God’s standard and continue to fall short of that standard and His glory (Romans 3:23). This involves both sins of commission as well as omission, knowing or unknowing. Thus the failure to do what is right is also sin (Romans 14:23). Sin is a principle within man, it is not only an act but also a principle that dwells in man. Paul refers to the struggle with the sin principle within (Rom. 7:14, 17–25).

For we know that the law is spiritual, but I am carnal, sold under sin. For that which I do, I know not. For what I desire, that I do not do; but what I hate, that I do. If then I do that which I do not desire, I consent to the law that it is good. But now it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwells in me.
Romans 7:14-17 MKJV

⁵² Bubeck, Mark I (1998) *Raising Lambs among Wolves*. USA: Paternoster Publishing, p. 117.

All of mankind comprise of this sin nature (Galatians 3:22). Hebrews 3:13 refers to it "as the power that deceives men and leads them to destruction." Jesus also refers to sin as a "condition or characteristic quality" (John 9:41; 15:24; 19:11). Sin is rebellion against God, and rebellion against God is as the sin of witchcraft.

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idol-worship. Because you have rejected the Word of Jehovah, He has also rejected you from being king!

1 Samuel 15:23 MKJV

Anomia is another Greek word for sin meaning "lawlessness" (1 John 3:4) it can be explained as a "frame of mind" denoting lawless deeds (Titus 2:14) and is a sign of the last days, meaning "without law or restraint" (Matthew 24:12). Sin is wrongful acts toward God and man and Romans 1:18 refers to "ungodliness and unrighteousness of men." Ungodliness refers to man's failure to obey God and keep the commandments related to Him (Exodus 20:1–11); unrighteousness is seen in man's failure to live righteously toward his fellow man (Exodus 20:12–17).

Sin entered the human race through Adam, it is present in the life of every individual from the time of his birth and it is the inward root of all the actual sins that defile the life of man, sin is the corruption of mankind's whole nature so that there is nothing within the natural man that can give them merit in the sight of the Lord.

7.2 The Christian and Sin

The Christian's conflict with sin, according to 1 John 2:16, arises from three areas.

because all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.

1 John 2:16 MKJV

- **The world**, known in Greek as the *kosmos*, represents that which is hostile to God; it is lost in sin, completely at odds with anything divine, ruined and depraved. Believers in the Lord are warned not to love the world nor the things in the world (1 John 2:15). An indication that there is both a material element as well as a philosophy to be avoided, John further indicates that the world lures the Christian to sin through the **lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the boastful pride of life** (1 John 2:16). This world as will be explained in the next chapters, lies under the control of Satan (1 John 5:19) and manifests itself in foolishness (1 Corinthians 3:19), immorality (1 Corinthians 5:10), and hostility toward God (James 4:4). The Christian is to reckon that he has been crucified with regard to the world (Galatians 6:14).
- **The flesh** is the willing instrument of sin, and is subject to sin to such a degree that wherever flesh is, all forms of sin are likewise present, and no good thing can live in the flesh. The term flesh may be used in a material sense, it is frequently given a nonmaterial meaning to refer to "*the old nature of the flesh...that capacity which all men have to serve and please self...the capacity to leave God out of one's life.*" The flesh as a capacity for sin is described in Paul's Christian experience in Romans 7:17–20. It involves lust and controls the mind (Ephesians 2:3); it governs the life of the non-Christian (Romans 8:5–6). The solution to the dilemma of Romans 7:25 is the power of the Holy Spirit (Romans 8:2ff) and a renewed mind (Romans 12:1) that reckons the flesh crucified (Romans 6:6).
- Satan is a real, personal being who opposes the Christian and seeks to make him ineffective in his Christian life, as it will be seen in the next Chapter. He is a formidable enemy of the Christian since he is intent on devouring Christians (1 Peter 5:8), the Christian is called on to resist the devil (James 4:7). This can be accomplished through putting on the armor for a spiritual battle (Ephesians 6:10–17).

God has made ample provision for the Christian to keep him from the path of sin through, the **Word of God**, He gave Believers a “*God-breathed*” Bible that is profitable for “*training in righteousness*” that the believer may be “*equipped for every good work*” (2 Timothy 3:16–17). Knowledge of the Bible can keep the believer from a life of sin (Psalms 119:9–16); it is this Word that cleanses the believer (Ephesians 5:26), sanctifies the believer (John 17:17), and aids in answer to prayer (John 15:7).

The intercession of Christ, Jesus is the believer’s advocate or defense attorney when the believer commits sin (1 John 2:1). Because Christ continually lives, His intercession is effective (Hebrews 7:25). John 17 reveals the nature of Christ’s intercession for Christians: He prays for their security (John 17:11), concerning their joy (John 17:13), for their protection from Satan (John 17:15), for their being set apart in the truth (John 17:17), and that they might ultimately be with Christ (John 17:25).

The Indwelling and ministry of the Holy Spirit, in the believer’s life is crucial regarding a life of separation from sin. The Spirit’s ministry involves indwelling (Romans 8:9), anointing (1 John 2:20; 4:4), sealing (Ephesians 1:13, 4:30), empowering (Acts 1:8), filling (Ephesians 5:18), and enabling the believer to live constantly by the Spirit (Galatians 5:16).⁵³

8. CONCLUSION

Mankind’s new being is created in God’s image and thus it will emanate light when the image is fully restored. God has humbled Himself to great depths to buy back His creation after the fall of Adam, and once a person enters heaven he will know that God paid the full price and gave a mighty sacrifice in the Lord Jesus to have His created being – mankind with Him in heaven.

⁵³ Enns, Paul P (1997) *The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp . 110-116.

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

The ultimate deception that Satan so cleverly invented for Adam and Eve was to entice them to eat the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil in order to become like God, when they already were. They looked like God (Exodus 24:9-10), they had the Spirit of God and they emanated light like God. They were wise and were not ashamed, perfectly suited to have fellowship with God, when Satan deceived them he suggested things that they already had – the real deception was, that they already were like God.

The Bible teaches that sin, suffering, sickness and death are real and that the soul that sins shall die, it teaches that each soul belongs to God (Ezekiel 18:4). Jesus healed the sick and raised the dead but He never denied these things through positive thinking or possibility thinking. Mankind's deliverance from sin and death comes not by denying the reality thereof through the power of the mind but by faith in Jesus Christ who suffered the agony of the cross and paid the penalty which His own justice had pronounced upon sin.

Jesus died for man's sins and was raised for their justification, if sin and death does not exist, then the death of Christ for sins and His resurrection are merely allegories and not real events. If nothing exists except God, then the universe is God and mankind themselves are all part of God and thus divine and perfect beings, if nothings exists except God then Satan who is certainly presented in the Bible as real - is god, one could not imagine a greater delusion! The God of the Bible is separate and distinct from His creation, which He made out of nothing, creation is running down like a clock because it is separated from God by the rebellion of His creatures which includes Satan and his entourage and also his human followers, they stirred up a rebellion which caused God to pronounce His judgment upon the entire creation.

God has both unity and diversity as the Triune God, because of this God has the ability to love, commune, have fellowship and interact with His creation. The quality

of love and the capacities for fellowship and communion, by their very nature require another personal being with which to share them, God could fully share Himself with another Being equal to Him because God Himself consisted of a plurality of Beings who were separate and distinct, yet One. The Bible presents a God who did not need to create any beings to experience love, communion and fellowship; God is complete in Himself existing eternally in three Persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit individually distinct from each other yet at the same time eternally one. These three loved, communed, fellowshiped and took counsel together before the universe, angels or man were created.

The first verse in the Bible presented God as a plural being, *Elohim* (noun) which means Gods, yet a singular verb *bara* is used with *Elohim* which indicates both unity and diversity and both singularity and plurality in the God of the Bible. At the burning bush, God (*Elohim*) said to Moses, I am what I am, not we are that we are. (Exodus 3:14). Isaiah clearly presents the **deity** of Christ, the Fatherhood of God and the oneness of the Father and the Son. All three Persons are clearly seen in the following verse:

Come near to Me, hear this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning. From its being, I was there; and now the Lord Jehovah, and His Spirit, has sent Me.

Isaiah 48:16 MKJV

In the Trinity two persons are invisible – God the Father and the Holy Spirit, and one is visible, the Son of God who became man. Analogies of the Trinity is seen everywhere, the universe is comprised of three elements space, time and matter, the first two are invisible but matter is visible. Each of these are divided into three length, breadth and height; past, present and future; energy, motion and phenomena. With regards to the length, breadth and height each are separate and distinct from each other, yet they are one because each is the whole. Length takes in all of space, as do the width and height. The same with time, past, present and future are each

distinct from each other yet each is the whole, past and future are invisible while the present is visible.

Mankind itself consists of three elements created in the image of God, body, soul and spirit of which two is invisible the soul and spirit and one is visible the body, the way mankind functions as a being reflects the same analogy to the Trinity. Something is received in mankind's mind which is invisible it is expressed in speech, writing or music and it enters the present visible world and gets appreciated in the emotions which is once again invisible. Throughout the New Testament, Father, Son and Holy Spirit are each separately honored and act as God, yet only in concert with one another.

God made man perfectly holy and happy; and the fair earth, as it came from the Creator's hand, bore no blight of decay or shadow of the curse. It is transgression of God's law, the law of love that has brought affliction and death. Yet even amid the suffering that results from sin, God's love is revealed. It is written that God cursed the ground for man's sake (Genesis 3:17). The thorn and the thistle, the difficulties and trials that make his life one of toil and care, were appointed for his good as a part of the training needful in God's plan for his uplifting from the ruin and degradation that sin has bought upon the earth.

The love of God is beautiful and even breathtaking when considered rightly. God is infinite in His capacity to love, even loving fallen, rebellious sinners enough to send His beloved Son to die in their place (Romans 5:8). Of all the ways in which God's perfection far surpasses human ability and effort, the most obvious and humbling is His perfect love. An infinite and holy God loves human beings even though they are not only far beneath Him in nature and inferior to Him in character, but who also hate Him, scorn His goodness, and run from His truth (cf. John 3:19-20; Romans 1:30; 2:4; 5:10).

When Adam and Eve were in the Garden of Eden they emanated light, as the fullness of God's glory reflected in their very being just as Jesus on the mount of transfiguration. God commanded out of His abundant love that Adam and Eve should not to eat of the Tree of Knowledge of good and evil, which illustrates the same concept as the cup of devils taught about in 1 Corinthians 10:21 that man should not partake in. When Adam and Eve drank of the cup of the world, the same knowledge people is pursuing today, they lost their light, their image in Christ – the more mankind eats and drinks from the cup of the world – the darker they become just as Adam and Eve in the garden, where God had to slay an animal to make clothes of skin for them as they found themselves naked - in loss of the light of God. If one eats of the bread of life, the tree of Life – mankind will emanate light as Adam and Eve did before the fall.

In the spiritual realm there is the term that the - opposite of what happens in the earthly realm happens in the spiritual realm – when Adam was alive he committed sin and subsequently died in the spirit, he lost the body that Jesus had after His resurrection, Jesus had to die to restore the body Adam had before he committed sin and his spirit was cut off from God as the life and light source as God warned would happen. To come into the fullness of the image of God which He created in man is sanctification, because God instructed man: **be holy for I am Holy**. God's purpose and plan is that mankind should take up and live in His image, the more mankind becomes like Christ the stronger their fellowship with God will be, man will intimately know God and man will know what God's specific plan for man would be.

The purpose of God creating mankind was for mankind to live in the image of the Almighty God. So that each believer would love the Lord with all his heart, soul and mind and his neighbor as himself (Matthew 22:37-39), from there man will be able to make disciples and be a fisher of men sharing the Gospel of the great news of the Lord Jesus Christ with unbelievers, with parents and children so they would be able to fulfill a healthy family structure as God intended it to be. Because God

Revelational Knowledge Pertaining to the Creator's Plan and Purpose of the Magnificently, Enigmatically and Uniquely Created Being called Mankind (Adama)

created each person in His divine image He knew every living person before they were born (Jeremiah 1:5, Psalms 139). The true God, who is the Creator of everything that is created, lives in the glorious place called heaven. 2 Chronicles 30:27 *"Their voice was heard, and their prayer came up to his holy dwelling place, even unto heaven."*

The description of heaven cannot even enter in the minds of people. His ultimate purpose of His creation is to choose a group of obedient people to live with him, to enjoy His glory forever. Isaiah 64:4 *"For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waited for him."* Isaiah 64: 5 *"Thou meekest him that rejoiced and worked righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways:' God became a man and preached the gospel (good news) of the kingdom of heaven."* Matthew 4:23 *"And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people".* Mark 16:15 *"And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature."* Those who loved God and believed the Gospel followed His steps in obedience.

1 Pet 2:21 *"For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that you should follow his steps":* 1 Pet 2:22 *"Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth. These are the chosen of God to inherit his kingdom. They will become joint heirs with Jesus Christ."*

God has called each person by name and He will never deny or reject His own Spirit which is alive in each and every believer. Man was created to glorify God!

-----oOo-----



Chapter Two

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His children, Humankind

Evil cannot be adequately conceptualized in the abstract. It can be experienced only in particular forms.¹

- Gregory A Boyd

1. INTRODUCTION

Satan was once in the very presence of the Almighty God, acting as a covering cherub, he was the chief of all angels (Ezekiel 28.14) but at some point Satan became self-deluded, filled with pride he thought that he could ascend up to the very throne and magnitude of God (Isaiah 14:13-14).

¹ Boyd, Gregory A (1997) God at War. USA: Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data, p. 145.

Iniquity was found in his heart and he was cast out of God's presence (Ezekiel 28:15-16) to become the prince of the power of the air (Ephesians 2:2) which he still is to this **very day** – warring against his enemy humankind. He then set out to trick the very first humans who God created in His own image (as seen in Chapter One), Adam and Eve.²

Because of Satan's intense hatred for God and His children he is using everything in his power to destroy and defile the image of Christ; for the purpose of this thesis the emphasis will be on the deceptions Satan uses specifically to destroy children. The enemy is fighting for the souls of the children and he is determined to take them to hell with him, he hates God and all who side with Him. He doesn't want humankind to find out about God and His way of salvation. Satan works overtime to keep mankind from maturing spiritually. If this happens, despite his best efforts, he tries to keep humans from becoming effective in their god-given destiny and in their warfare against him.

The Holy Spirits job is to sanctify humans and their children regardless of the enemy and his efforts. Whether He succeeds or not largely depends on man's decisions to co-operate by meeting the requirements of God's conditional promises.

From the moment Satan was removed from his high position with God, Satan hated mankind. Why? Because he knew mankind was going to take his place as those in close relationship and fellowship with God. Satan was, and is, in a rage.

God had already allowed for the possibility of man exercising his freewill in disobedience, He had prepared the Lamb, slain from the foundation of the earth³, since, by His own Law a man's life had to be paid for, or redeemed with blood. God "bought" mankind back from the authority of Satan.

² Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. USA: Douglas Hamp, p. 279.

³ See Revelation 8

For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

1 Corinthians 6:20 KJV

knowing that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, silver or gold, from your vain manner of life handed down from your fathers, but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot;

1 Peter 1:18-19 MKJV

According to astrologers humanity has currently entered the Age of Aquarius, the sign of the *Water carrier* or the *Gardener*, thus an age of planting seeds. The stars of the heavens were created for signs and Jesus foretold that special signs would appear in the heavens in the last days. What Jesus spoke of signals and signs that would warn mankind of the end of the age and had nothing to do with horoscopes, Zodiac influences or predictions of human foibles and fancies. He gave man a warning! Man is thus caught up in another deception – the signs of astrology.

And when these things begin to happen, then look up and lift up your heads, for your redemption draws near.

Luke 21:28 MKJV

Something to this generation more than to any other, the heavens have revealed yet another strange, frightening, fascinating phenomenon. It is been said that mankind is not alone in the universe that other beings exists out there, capturing mankind's attention and imagination or titillating their curiosity. Once again mankind's attention is drawn to the sky.

It is from there that mankind's help will come from, where the Bible originally declared that salvation comes from - above, as Jesus will come down from the sky as seen in the verse above from Luke.

Satan is using all these different kinds of deceptions to mislead man from the love and compassion of His Creator.

He is using the alien agenda to defile the image of God in man, stating that man has much to learn from these beings as they are superior to mankind. It is evident that a vast reservoir of knowledge still lies beyond man's reach which continues to remain untapped. The paradox is that although mankind's knowledge doubled the last few decades – **so has the awareness of their ignorance.**⁴

Hollywood glamorises these scenarios, alerting to man's dreams and nightmares reflecting the truth in a spate of contemporary films making it off as entertainment and make belief. They seem to reflect very adequately the seamy and sexual side of American society. It's been known for many years that illicit sex is Hollywood's best selling merchandise because of this an avalanche of movies majoring on obscenity, vulgarity, sodomy, voyeurism, transvestity and bestiality has been hits in the cinemas. This agenda is also found in the music industry as the rest of media as the image of Christ is being defiled with immoral scenes, getting worse as time progresses.

Dr Thomas⁵ states that one of Satan's strongest weapons against humanity is to twist and pervert man sexually, sex out of the will of God is thus one of Satan's most powerful weapons, and since he cannot hurt God Himself he attacks humans who God loves dearly. Satan uses illegitimate sex and orgasm to implant his ideas into a victim's mind.

In this chapter the focus will be on the plans and strategies to defile mankind's image in Christ and their relationship with their Creator. Satan is creating an environment without discipline for children which imposes a great problem for healthy families as the heart of the Lord is.

⁴ Thomas, Dr I.D.E (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy, Satan's Last assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House, pp. 6, 7, 47.

⁵ Ibid, p. 171.

This thesis will witness to the realness of **Demons**, their **Hierarchy, Stratagem, workings and influence** on humankind per se, as well as on individual Christians **and their bloodlines**. Since this Chapter is a lesser part of the thesis, only fragments of informative reflection will be portrayed to expound the Demonological content and significance.

The Twentieth Century basically observed a complete turnaround in attitudes toward the reality of demons. In the first part of the century, their reality was commonly denied; while in the latter part, it is much more readily and universally confirmed. The increase in the number of Witches and Astrologers as well as the sales of accompanying paraphernalia undisputedly contributed to the change in attitudes about the reality of demons. The media, movies and books on the Extraterrestrial have created a more favourable climate for the acceptance of demons.⁶

Scripture unmistakably confirms the reality of demons, though not all who profess Christianity admit the validity of this evidence. Jesus Christ Himself throughout His ministry on earth delivered people from demons and He instructed His disciples to do the same by giving them the authority to cast out demons.

And when He had called to Him His twelve disciples, He gave them authority over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all kinds of sickness and all kinds of disease.

Matthew 10:1 MKJV

Jesus never corrected anyone for the acceptance of the reality of demons, seeing as the Lord does not and cannot lie He would not have accepted a lie or be found guilty of propagating falsehood. God wants humankind and their child to live holy lives because He is Holy, Satan and his Kingdom will resist mankind's every effort in sanctification, **Hagiasmos** is the Greek word of sanctification, a life of separation unto God - the holy life resulting from that separation is God's will for each and every

⁶ Ryrie, C (1999) Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 179.

Christian believer (John 10:10b). Therefore the normal Christian life is lived in the context of on-going Spiritual Warfare to obtain an abundant and conquering life. The Darkness in which mankind walks is two-fold, the human source is the hardness of the human heart (2 Corinthians 3:19; Ephesians 4:17-19) and the supernatural source, the mind-blinding work of Satan, the god of this world (2 Corinthians 4:3-4). Satan does not want humankind and especially their children to **see the Light of the Gospel of the Glory of Christ, who is the image of God.**

In this thesis it is an object to address an argument, which is especially persuasive amongst scholars and layman alike, namely what exactly entails the 'demonic', what does it include, what is the aim, how does it affect humankind in their children and most importantly where does it fit into the panoramic wickedness of the 'end times', as Scripture teaches that the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night (1 Thessalonians 5:2. Highlighting the fact again, as a presupposition, that Jesus Christ is Christian believers' Eschaton and as the Body of Christ is continuing His Ministry of Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance in this world today; the argument is unashamedly Theological in nature.

This thesis believes that the Demonological is intrinsically linked to Satan, sin and evil as bound into the larger realm of Spiritual Warfare. There is an increase in activity in the satanic realm all over the world, an uprising of the Occult, Spiritism, Satanism, New Age Thought, New World Order, Cults and UFO;s – the abduction phenomena.

The entertainment media with all its blatant and tasteless exposure is influencing societies, youths, even babies, with a devastating destruction on families, cultures and morality, creating an era of where the youth grows up unholy, destroying Christian ethics.

Vera Alder boastfully proclaims: “*The Jesus era, the ‘Age of ignorance’ is ending. The Age of the Christians is over. A bright New Age is dawning*”⁷

Satan is prohibited by God and cannot exercise authority where God does not allow it, however the kingdom of darkness is wherever Satan exercises his dominion which is in total opposition to the Kingdom of God in nature, character and purpose. The king thus represents his kingdom, as it contains and displays the nature and character of the king.

Daniel’s prophecy confirms the fact that there are princes of Satan’s kingdom behind the princes of the world kingdoms. (Daniel 8:20-21; 10:10-13, 20-21, Ezekiel 28:1-19; Isaiah 14:4-23). Satan and his demons hates the Bible, God’s Book of Doctrine of Truth as they know it is the guide and reference source for practicing Christians, therefore they encourage the human followers, knowingly or unknowingly to follow a radical type of spirituality which excludes the doctrine of the Truth of the Word of God. The seething anger and resentment of Satan for God’s Word proceeds from his diseased mind and is instilled in the minds of his human followers.

Every sinner seeks freedom from guilt, they thus seek a religion or cult that is non-judgemental, one where mankind does his own thing, unburdened by conscience – and it is this specific area where Satan manipulates the minds of adolescents pulling them into a life of lies and deceit. A person or child would reject conscience if the Holy Spirit is not within them, but another spirit. Demons would persuade the unbeliever that he is god, that there are no rules, that the unbeliever is the judge of right and wrong thus that he alone is the lawgiver.

It is therefore imperative that Christians are aware of the Doctrine of Demonology especially in the light of the many false religion, cults and dangerous forms of Demonic Science in existence.

⁷ Adler, Vera (1972) *The Initiation of the World*. York Beach, Me.:Samuel Weiser, Inc.

Parents should be aware of the deceit behind it and know that Satan and his demons will try to capture the minds and souls of their children. Therefore man should be aware of Satan's strategies and plans corrupting the youth of today as the **Doctrine of Demonology are taught by demons, about demons which lead to demons.**

so that we should not be overreached by Satan, for we are not ignorant of his devices.

2 Corinthians 2:11 MKJV

2. WHY WAS EVIL EVER CREATED?

Many scholars have asked the question of why God would have placed the tree of knowledge of good and evil in the Garden of Eden when He knew that if man ate from it, it would result in death and separation. The ability to choose is another aspect of being created in the image of God Himself, everything God created was good, nothing had any defect of any kind, when man was created God declared it to be very good. Adam was given a choice; his very own will to choose whether he would obey God or disobey God by eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

I am Jehovah, and there is none else, no God besides Me; I clothed you, though you have not known Me; that they may know from the rising of the sun, and to the sunset, that there is none besides Me. I am Jehovah, and there is none else; forming the light and creating darkness; making peace and creating evil. I Jehovah do all these things.

Isaiah 45:5-7 MKJV

Upon reading this verse in Isaiah one could very easily come **to the incorrect conclusion that God created evil, GOD DID NOT CREATE EVIL**, on the contrary what the verse really speaks of is God's creating of the ability to choose. By forming light and making peace God made a distinction between right and wrong thus thereby by default darkness and evil came into existence because **darkness and evil is the absence of light and peace which God have formed.**

In the book of Matthew it is said that a good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit (Matthew 7:15-18), one could then ask the question of how evil originated. When God created the angels and all the glorious beings he originally created, there was no sin or evil in the world. But as free moral agents they had the power of choice, not between good and evil but between **following the will of God or their own will**, as long as Satan chose the will of God there was no evil in the world, but the moment he chose to follow his own will, he fell and when he persuaded others to follow him he introduced evil into the world. The root of sin can thus be seen as **selfishness**.⁸

Creatures although created in the image of God are less than God; therefore they will think thoughts and do deeds unworthy of God and thus evil by definition. One could then ask why God would give man this dangerous ability to choose, why if He is only good, would He allow evil of any kind in His world, the answer to this is that God wanted a meaningful relationship with mankind. Without ability to choose to love or hate, to say yes or no it would have been impossible for mankind to receive God's love and to love Him in return for real love must come from the heart, there could also be no real praise and worship if it weren't voluntary.

If mankind had no choice they would have been robots who cannot choose to say or do anything they weren't told to do, a relationship with a robot would be meaningless and it would hardly be glorifying to God. Loving and praising God should come from beings whose hearts have been captured by God's love and who genuinely love Him in return, a being who has the choice of not loving and praising God but even of hating and denigrating Him. While giving man the power of choice made love possible it also opened the door to all manner of evil – it is mankind's own personal choice that he thinks evil thoughts and do wicked deeds.⁹

⁸ Larkin, Clarens (1921) *The Spirit World*. USA, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate, p. 14.

⁹ Hunt, Dave (1996) *In Defence of the Faith*, Biblical answers to challenging questions. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp. 204-205.

Douglas states that to fully comprehend this, one need to go back to the stage before creation, when there was only God who existed as His own dimension. There was no space, no dimension or reality outside of who God intrinsically is, meaning that there was nothing before God - because God created everything.

God is Light (1 John 1:5), the light pertaining to God isn't something that was created as seen in Genesis 1:3, but God's intrinsic light. The quality of light emanating from God is inherently and inseparably part of His quintessence. When God thus created a space or dimension outside of Himself which wasn't automatically filled with His light, the probable absence of light was created by default which God called darkness, physical light was then created by God in order to fill the space.

GOD IS GOOD, NO SIN OR EVIL OR IMPERFECTION IS IN HIM (Exodus 34:6), the Bible defines good as what is in accord with God's will, desire and plan and therefore any divergence from what is defined good is by definition evil. When God desired to give man and angels the option to follow Him or to disobey thus giving them free will, He must have by default created the potential for them to completely exercise their own free will by not choosing the good, one cannot choose something that does not exist. If Adam only had the good to choose from then he wouldn't have had any choice at all. Evil are not physical and the same goes for ideas, it may involve physical acts but it begins in the mind with nonphysical thoughts. Evil can thus be defined as any action or choice that is contrary to God's desire.

Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology¹⁰ defines it as: "*what is right was what was ordained by God and what is wrong was what was proscribed by Him, deviation from this paradigm constitutes what is evil.*" The Merriam Webster dictionary defines it as morally reprehensible, sinful and wicked. The Hebrew word for evil is *ra* (רָעָה).

¹⁰Evil (www.biblestudytools.com/dictionaries/bakers-evangelical-dictionary/evil.html)

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

One of the most extensive references to Satan is in the prologue to the book of Job. Satan questioned Job's relationship with God suggesting that he only served God because of all the benefits he received from serving Him. God responded by allowing Satan to test Job by destroying everything he possesses, including his children and his own health (Job 1:12-22, Job 2:6-8). In light of this many exegetes contend that Satan is God's public prosecutor or the one in charge of quality control, they interpret Satan as merely performing the duties assigned to him by God when he puts Job through his testing. This understanding **mistakenly makes God the author of Job's evil**, in this theory God was not considered perfectly good in the early stages of Israelite religion, called the "demonic in Yahweh" theory. Boyd¹¹ makes six considerations that seriously call this theory into question.

It is clear from Scripture as a whole that God is good and perfect; He is among other things perfectly holy, righteous, loving and just. (2 Samuel 22:31, Psalm, 48:1, Matthew 5:48, 1 Chronicles 16:10)

He is the Rock; His work is perfect. For all His ways are just, a God of faithfulness, and without evil; just and upright is He.

Deuteronomy 32:4 MKJV

To hypothesize that evil had its origin in God deliberately contradicts the central teaching of Scripture concerning the character of God.

Carl Jung had a lot of theories; the Jungian model regarding the psyche of mankind is also a model for understanding conception of God as having gone through different stages of development presupposes a historical critical understanding of the Old Testament that is, for many highly questionable.

¹¹ Boyd, Gregory A (1997) God at War. USA: Library of Congress Cataloging in Publicatio Data, p. 145.

In this view the Old Testament material must be organised according to a chronology which postulates that all of the material portraying evil as something that God opposes come late, after the exile when the Israelites had come under the strong influence of Persian Zoroastrianism, a lot of scholars question this whole scheme and on very good grounds.

Even if the standard historical critical chronology is accepted for the Old Testament literature there is still complications with the demonic in Yahweh theory. In the Old Testament two motifs are examined, the cosmic warfare between good and evil and the Yahweh as warrior against evil. It is hard to see how these two motifs could coexist or be harmonised in any sense with the view that God causes all things good and evil, that would let to the suggestion that these authors conceptualise God fighting against the evil He Himself caused which totally contradicts the whole suggestion or theory. This point thus **clearly and strongly argues and disagrees** with the demonic in Yahweh theory as it is clear from the Old Testament that God fought against His various enemies.¹²

As the question arose above about Satan performing the duties God gave to him when he tempted Job, it is not clear that this work portrays Satan as a member of good standing with God. God asked Satan where he came from to which he replied, from going to and fro on the earth, and from walking up and down on it (Job 1:7, Job 2:2) it is thus a natural assumption to make that there was an element of surprise on God's part and an uncontrolled dimension to Satan's activity, the fact that God asked Him where he came from implies that it was not a duty God had assigned to him as he was roaming about.

In this verse Satan isn't as harmless as the defenders of the demonic in Yahweh theory hints. Satan's question to God as to Job's authenticity had nothing to do with Job; he was the unfortunate victim in Satan lifting his hand against God questioning

¹² This Thesis **does not agree** with the Demonic in Yahweh Theory.

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

God's wisdom in the way He orders His creation. Satan does not appear to be an angel having any intent on following orders from God when he carries out his own destructive desires with excessive meticulousness, the eagerness of wanting to destroy Job is clearly seen in Job 1: 11 and Job 2: 4-5

Even in this verse one can clearly see that the character Satan portrays is not in line with the will and character of God.

And Satan answered Jehovah and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man has he will give for his life. But indeed put forth Your hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse You to Your face.

Job 2:4-5 MKJV

Lastly, when God finally speaks to Job He does not defend His supposed right to inflict evil on people indiscriminately as the demonic in Yahweh theory would suggest. His conversation with Job is to help Job understand that neither Job nor his friends are in a position to understand the happenings in the immeasurable cosmos God has created. He also states that neither Job accusing God nor his friends accusing Job are correct, the Lord emphasises how far beyond human comprehension the works of God is. He does not stress how far beyond human comprehension His character is, nor does He suggest He has the right to do whatever He wants to whoever He wants.

God makes it clear that He does not contain evil and that His character is set against evil, the conversation does however state the perplexing task God has of sustaining and controlling the world against the evil forces continually threatening it.¹³

¹³ Boyd, Gregory A (1997) God at War. USA: Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data, pp. 145 – 148.

3. GOD AT WAR AGAINST THE FORCES OF DARKNESS

God is completely sovereign and able to handle evil forces and keep them at bay, this is clearly evident in Jesus' ministry.

Through Jesus' warfare ministry one can find that mankind is making a common modern assumption that life in the spiritual realm is fair – it is simply wrong. God's will is not the only will on earth or in the world in between (the spiritual realm) and thus there is no guarantee that either of these spheres will exhibit more justice than injustice. In Jesus' view, as in apocalyptic though the world in the spiritual realm is characterised by warfare and the earth is part of its battleground, thus people and even innocent children could sometimes be casualties of this war.

According to Boyd¹⁴ **there is no suggestion in the Gospels that Jesus believed that demons or evil angels were carrying out a secret providential plan of God,** despite themselves. Jesus treated every case of demonization as an instance of spiritual rape: an alien force had illegitimately and cruelly invaded a person's being. Boyd quoting Brown: "*Demoniacal possession is not so much the result of a league with Satan as an expression of bondage under Satan's dominion*". Deliverance in when Jesus had done it was a sign of the coming Kingdom of God, not a sign of various individuals' moral improvement, the Kingdom of God advances as the victims of the kingdom of Satan are freed.¹⁵

Jesus treated people possessed by a demon as casualties of war, as if they were the victims of an involuntary possession. Many Western Christians assumes that the spiritual realm is supposed to be fair, that God would not allow a person to be demonized unless they deserve it.

¹⁴ Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God at War*. USA: Library of Congress Cataloging in Publicatio Data, p. 201.

¹⁵ *Ibid*, p. 199.

When a person is demonized it is assumed that the person must have willed the evil spirit to occupy them, or must have done something for example dabbled in the occult which opened a door for them to be demonized.

Demonized people are thus seen through the eyes of others to be fundamentally bad people, since God is good – it is assumed that if an evil spirit invaded someone it must be that person's fault but the Gospels as well as the book of Job oppose this one-dimensional way of thinking. Demonic beings - like humans are free beings who are able to influence others, they are thus morally responsible. They can fight with each other and victimise humankind quite apart from the will of God. Just as evil adults victimise children against their will and God's will and despotic political powers victimise their subjects against their will and God's – so demonic spirits can in fact victimise people against their will and against the will of God.

The spiritual realm is not so different from the physical realm. People misuse their freedom and power and thereby victimise others – it is for this very reason that life on earth is often full of conflict, deep pain and sickening injustice and the same goes for the spiritual realm.

It is for this reason that Jesus dedicated His ministry to getting these “**spiritual rapists**” off their victims **by deliverance, by healing or by both**. He wasted no time seeking a hidden divine will behind evil, asking how God could do this or why He allowed it or trying to get people devoted to give over to God's supposed secret plan for their lives in the face of evil. Jesus stood up against the cruel tyranny of a world ruler, the prince of the world, oppressing God's people. Jesus sought to give back to people and to win back for His Father what the enemy had stolen and destroyed, He was about restoring humanity to its rightful place of dominion over the earth, empowering them to rise up against the thief who had stolen from them.

God wants His people to rise up and be empowered against the evil forces that bring about pain, death and destruction. He teaches that all things are possible to those who believe and are willing to pray, this includes delivering people and children from tenacious demons like the demon possessing the young boy in Mark 9:23-27. The reliance on the power of God alone and having faith in God praying persistently is the means by which God's power is manifested and the Kingdom of God is established - this is what set Jesus' deliverance and healing ministry apart from the various deliverance and healing activities of his contemporaries, it is thus reliance on the Holy Spirit, activated through faith and prayer that would set God's children ministry above that of their generation today.

When faith is strong and prayer persistent the enemy is utterly powerless against the onslaught of the Kingdom of God, but when faith is weak and prayer is lacking demons that are strong and deeply entrenched in a person they can apparently succeed in resisting deliverance.

God is at war against the satanic kingdom destroying His children, in Matthew Jesus after asking His disciples who the people say He is used Peter's confession of faith that **Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of the living God** (Matthew 16:13-16), to teach His disciples an important lesson about the future of the church.

And I also say to you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it. And I will give the keys of the kingdom of Heaven to you. And whatever you may bind on earth shall occur, having been bound in Heaven, and whatever you may loose on earth shall occur, having been loosed in Heaven.

Matthew 16:18-19 MKJV

Peter's name is used as a launch pad as the name Peter means *Petros* – **rock**. To make sense of this verse Hades was the term used for the underworld, the realm of darkness and death in Hellenistic culture. In using this term here Jesus was most probably referring to the whole of the satanic kingdom.

The phrase gates of Hades are a symbolic reference to the fortified walls of the satanic fortress, enclosed to keep opposing forces out therefore the need to be overcome. Jesus could also be referring to the centre of power of the satanic kingdom as the gates of a city in the ancient worlds were usually where officials resided and important military decisions were made. Saying that the gates will not be able to prevail against the church – gates are defensive structures to keep an enemy out not an offensive weapon used to overcome an enemy.

Jesus portrays the church to be on the offensive and Satan's kingdom to be on the defensive, saying that it is the Kingdom of God which attacks the kingdom of Satan. Jesus is saying that He is going to build His church on the rock of His divinity – the confession Peter made that **Jesus is the Son of the Living God** and the way this church is going to be constructed will be by knocking down the gates of Satan's fortress. Jesus thus teaches that the church will be involved in the same battle and warfare work Jesus was involved in Himself all the way through His ministry – based upon the rock thus ministering in Him authority and His accomplished victory the church is to storm the fortress of Hades and knock down its gates.

The second part of the verse Jesus gives the keys of the Kingdom of heaven to all who confess His divine son-ship, so whatever they bind and loose on earth will be bound and loosed in heaven. It is thus clear that the church is an essential part of the kingdom building activity. Giving the keys to the kingdom to His church means that whatever the church binds and locks up when it knocks down the gates of Hades will be bound and locked up in heaven and whatever is unlocked and set free will be free in heaven – thus referring to the churches' spiritual authority to bind demonic forces and set people free.

The body of Christ should be about what Jesus was about, aggressively breaking down satanic fortresses wherever it is found. May it be in people's lives, families, churches or societies, the church should expand the rule of God on the authority of

the Lord Jesus Christ by binding evil and setting people free. **The body of Christ should have a character to live out a theology of uprising against the occupying, tyrannizing powers of the satanic forces.** When the church opts instead for a theology of resignation and attempts to accept is as from God when Jesus fearlessly fought as coming from Satan, the church exists in radical contradiction to its significant vocation.

Jesus not only attributes all evil to the work of Satan but **He explicitly rejects the assumption that God's will is behind evil events.** Jesus and His disciples operated within an intense warfare worldview, they were certain about the reality of Satan and his demonic angels as they were certain about the reality of God and good angels. They were convinced that these two kingdoms were engaged in mortal combat with each other and they were sure that Jesus was the decisive player in this war; they knew the sovereignty of God had to be established over against formidable forces of evil by faith and prayer.

Jesus and His disciples understood all the evil in the world, from barren trees and threatening storms, to illness and diseases to demonized little children and sinful behaviour, ultimately due to the work of the satanic kingdom, therefore they knew that their central mission was to oppose the work of darkness and overthrow the satanic kingdom.

There is no suggestion that God has some higher good purpose behind or above evil as though Satan and his demons were secretly carrying out God's will, **Satan is not an agent of God but the enemy against God.** God's rule isn't found in evil, behind it or above it, for it is assumed all evil ultimately comes from Satan, God's rule is found in opposing evil. **For Jesus and His disciples the problem of evil is plainly the problem of overcoming evil by the power of God.**

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

Mankind should thus start thinking like Jesus and stop trying to search for the particular reason behind all particular evils, thus searching for the particular reason God must of had in decreeing or allowing certain evil events – they should know that God’s will is not behind it, this way of thinking should be replaced with the questions how can this diabolical work of the enemy be overthrown and how can the works of God be manifested.

Mankind should change their classical philosophical assumptions about God and the world and perhaps reason that it is mankind’s unwittingly adopted assumptions that are not consistent with that of the New Testament and what Jesus was about that is the reason for the traditional bewilderment over the problem of evil.¹⁶

Modern Christians should opt to the reasoning of the New Testament writers to expect evil and fight against it, to stop trying to intellectually understand evil but rather be grappled with overcoming evil.

It is therefore crucial to know that apart from Jesus Christ man can do nothing but one should understand and know who the enemy is, to be able to withstand the deception and attacks from the enemy – in order to fight back!

The war between God and Satan **is essentially about mankind**, when Adam and Eve disobeyed God; Satan acquired authority over the world system. He tempted them, and they fell. From the moment he was removed from his high position with God,¹⁷ Satan hated mankind as mankind took his place in close fellowship with God.

The way was prepared for mankind to be redeemed, ensuring mankind a place in the Kingdom of God and that His purchase of man was effective thorough Jesus Christ. This redemption however, comes with one stipulation: mankind must **choose**

¹⁶ Boyd, Gregory A (1997) God at War. USA: Library of Congress Cataloging in Publicatio Data, pp. 234-236.

¹⁷Isaiah 14:12-24, Ezekiel 28:12-19.

whether or not to be set free of the enemy's captivity. Mankind can decide to accept or reject God's redemption, but God made it available for everyone.

For God so loved the world that He gave His only-begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life.

John 3:16 MKJV

The war is about **mankind's mind**, as the battle rages in the realms of the soul and spirit. It goes on in man's thoughts. The places of infiltration are buried in man's belief systems, distorted by their ancestral inheritance (of curses and ungodly traditions), and latent within the wounds to their soul and spirit. The army of the father of lies, Satan directs a continuous stream of propaganda to the minds of mankind, coming not only directly into their thoughts but also through the eye and ear gates.

You are of the Devil as father, and the lusts of your father you will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and did not abide in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks of his own, for he is a liar and the father of it.

John 8:44 MKJV

And He said to them, Take heed what you hear. With that measure which you measure, it shall be measured to you. And to you who hear, more shall be given.

Mark 4:24 MKJV

Unsaved people have no awareness that this barrage of thoughts may not be their own. If they did, they would try to defend against it. Once saved by the Blood of the Lamb, however, defending against the temptations and lies becomes possible if the Believer is willing to enter the battle.

Therefore God has given man the Helmet of salvation, for protection of their minds. The onslaught of thoughts through Satan and his demons can be reduced and

filtered by having the Truth of the Lord Jesus Christ protecting the Believer's minds. Paul teaches that a Believer should take every thought captive in able to control the thought stream going through the mind, mankind isn't helpless victims in this battle, God teaches to be in charge, to be over-comers. Paul writes:

For the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds, pulling down imaginations and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought into the obedience of Christ;

2 Corinthians 10:4-5 MKJV

The verse states that man should "*take charge!*" and expose the lies of Satan! To be careful of what is allowed to circulate through the mind. Examine every thought carefully. Be active. Ask the question, "*How does this thought stack up against the measuring stick of Christ, i.e., Holiness?*", "*Is it involved with bringing life and life more abundantly, or is it involved with death: with stealing, killing and destroying lives?*"

The War is also about mankind's Body, besides the main arena of warfare over the mind, Satan attacks mankind's bodies in an attempt to stop progress and because of his hatred against mankind. These attacks can take many forms. He brings addictions of all types, i.e., food, drink, drugs, medicine TV, pornography, sex, etc. He brings worldly diseases in various forms — "*normal*" types of sickness to unusual and "*rare*" plagues. He initiates accidents, injuries, and premature death to the body, over and over again.

Be sensible and vigilant, because your adversary the Devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking someone he may devour;

1 Peter 5:8 MKJV

Therefore it is important to remember, the unsaved person has no defence, he is helpless. This thesis thus deems it necessary to shed light upon who Satan is and

how he attacks mankind and their children – to educate those who did not yet meet the Lord Jesus Christ and create an opportunity to meet Him. To educate the Believer to renew his mind and recognize that he is in a war with an enemy who has targeted him and his loved ones. He needs to learn of deceptions in the world concerning proper care and maintenance of his body. He has to know that he is on the winning side and that weapons are available to enforce the victory. Then, he has to decide to use these weapons. It is best however, if he first learns his position in the battle and is trained to use the weapons.¹⁸ The armour and its importance will be discussed in Chapter Five

4. SATAN, THE ADVERSARY'S KINGDOM

Satan is directly spoken of in the Bible, over 200 times; in Genesis chapter three he enters the realm of human activity. He is known as the adversary, an oppressor of good people, he had the audacity to tempt Jesus in the dessert but it is also predicted in Revelations that Satan will be incarcerated. Satan hates to be exposed and therefore he hides and conceals himself as an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14)

Satan is a personal spirit being, he controls a vast and highly structured kingdom of personal spirit beings who have the same wicked intent and purpose as Satan in opposing God's will and plans. It is a kingdom of darkness centring its strategies against mankind. These spirit beings are very structured, organised and disciplined who serve under Satan's control (Ephesians 6:12).

Satan is the commander and chief of the forces of darkness. **He is the supreme strategist** and under him is a highly organised system carrying out all his wishes and plans. The first level under Satan is a group of commanders **called principalities or princes** each with different levels of authority. In Daniel chapter

¹⁸ Kylastra, Chester and Betsy (2000) Restoring the Foundations. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp 68-70.

ten, insight is gained into their workings and power, an angel of God was delayed to deliver a message to Daniel, due to the fact of the prince of Persia's resistance, only after the arrival of Michael the archangel, the angel God sent was able to deliver the message to Daniel. Satan has a prince in every nation whose responsibility is to carry out Satan's plans against that specific nation. Under this prince are other princes with the specific mission to guide Satan's plans against the political, educational or the entertainment structure.

The **next level under the principalities is the powers**, numerous and somewhat less independent and powerful than the princes. Yet as their name suggests, they are powerful beings which launches powerful attacks against believers in the Lord Jesus. **After the powers comes the rulers of darkness**, more numerous; yet they are the real work horses on the command level, **directly under them is a vast final level of spirit beings called spiritual wickedness or wicked spirits in high places**. The kingdom of Satan is a formidable invisible, highly organised, wicked system of evil which mankind should stand up against in battle.¹⁹

4.1 The Person Satan

Satan became the prince and god of this world because of the sin of mankind; he therefore manipulated humankind to attain that authority which God originally gave to mankind. By obeying Lucifer Adam gave away the authority over creation that God had given Adam, all that was under Adam's authority fell when he fell (see Chapter One, the dominion mankind was given because of the fact that man was created in the image of the Most High God).

The whole world is under the authority of the evil one (1 John 5:19), only when a person accepts Jesus could he take up authority over wickedness, but only through Jesus (This will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter Five).

¹⁹ Bubeck, Mark I (1975) *The Adversary, The Christian Versus Demon Activity*. Chicago: The Moody Bible Institute, pp. 70-72.

Satan is not by any means equal to God as he is a created being; he falls under the authority of his Creator the Lord God, but Satan had the right because of sin to challenge Jesus when he claimed that all the power and wealth of the world was all been handed over to him when he tempted Jesus in the desert (Luke 4:6).²⁰ John says that the enemy is a thief whose mission is to steal and destroy everything God gives to His children.

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10 KJV

In Ezekiel Satan's origin and identity is found (Ezekiel 28:12-19), before his fall he was known as Lucifer, he is a person and not a principle of evil which many scholars claims him to be. He walks, roars (1 Peter 5:8) and is to be chained (Revelations 20:1-3). He was created by God as an "*anointed cherub that covereth*" – he was the guardian or protector of the Throne of God, created perfect in all his ways. It's also written that he walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Fire is often used to represent the presence of Jehovah, the burning bush, sacrificial fire, fire of incense, pillar of fire and in Hebrews 12:29 for our God is a consuming fire. Cherubs attended to the holiness of God, and were represented by two golden figures of two winged living creatures. Satan was the anointed cherub or *mimshach* in the Hebrew language, used only once in the Old Testament which signifies outspreading – as of wings, he was thus created a very powerful being.

Satan was created to attend to the holiness of God now he is doing everything to try to destroy it.

In him was the fullness of **wisdom and the perfection of beauty**, he must have been a gorgeous creature to look upon but it was this very beauty of his that caused the **pride** that led to his downfall. Satan was covered with a garment with the most

²⁰ Kraft, Charles H (2012) I Give You Authority. Minnesota, Chosen Books, p. 23.

rare and precious gems the sardius, topaz, diamond, beryl, onyx, jasper, sapphire, emerald, turquoise all woven in gold (Ezekiel 28:13). He dwelled in the Garden of God that could refer to Paradise of God on high not the earthly Eden as Satan dwelled on the Holy Mount of God (Ezekiel 28:11-19).

The workmanship of your tambourines and of your flutes was prepared in you in the day that you were created.

Ezekiel 28:13b MKJV

Satan's whole begin was created to make music, this accounts for the tremendous use of music Satan makes today, damning souls through music when he used to direct praise to God with music. Dr Sumrall quoting D J Dwight Pentecost wrote: *"Musical instruments were originally designed to be means of praising and worshipping God. It was not necessary for Lucifer to learn to play a musical instrument in order to praise God. If you please, he had a built in pipe organ or he was an organ. That's what the prophet meant when he said "the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes" Lucifer, because of his beauty, did what a musical instrument would do in the hands of a skilled musician, bring forth a paean of praise to the glory of God. "Lucifer didn't have to look for someone to play the organ so that he would song the doxology – he was the doxology!"*²¹

The verse in Ezekiel has a fore view of the Antichrist under the title of the King of Tyrus, as the Antichrist is to be the incarnation of Satan, Ezekiel in this piece of Scripture describes Satan's original glory from which he fell.

A description of the cause of Lucifer's fall is given in Isaiah 14:12-20. Lucifer, son of the morning was his splendid title when he was created; he is also referred to as King of Babylon in verse four – there has never been a king of Babylon like the one here described so the depiction must be that of a future king of Babylon. The Antichrist is to have the Capital City of Babylon rebuilt and the prophet Isaiah in this

²¹ Sumrall, Dr Lester (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance*, Volume One. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing, p. 14.

verse foretold the time of the Antichrist, indwelt by Satan in that day when he shall be king of Babylon. This also gives reference to the obsession with Babylon in the media nowadays and musicians referring to it in their music and in the props being used in their concerts.

Some scholars interpret that Lucifer was placed in charge of the world when it was created and fit for habitation and it was then that Satan said in his heart:

For you have said in your heart, I will go up to the heavens, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north. I will go up above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Isaiah 14:13-14 MKJV

Justifying as mentioned above the claim Satan had that this world belongs to him and that he had the power to transfer the kingdoms of the world to Jesus (Matthew 4:8-9) it also accounts for the persistent war Satan is waging against God to retain his possession of the earth even still today.

Upon Satan's unwillingness to rule the earth as a subordinate and determined to rule it independent of God, he put **his own will in opposition to the will of God which led to the origin of sin** as it was treason in the eyes of God. In his strive to exalt himself above God Lucifer became Satan which means Adversary, to try and justify himself he accused God and in accusing the Lord he became the Devil for devil means the Accuser – Lucifer became both Satan and Devil which answers the question of why God created the Devil, **God did not make the Devil, he made himself.**²²

Satan still has access to the Throne of God, he together with his angels are not imprisoned in Hell. The angels referred to in Jude 6, 2 Peter 2:4 as being imprisoned

²² Larkin, Clarens (1921) *The Spirit World*. USA, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate, pp. 8-12.

are a special class of angels whose sin caused the Flood. Satan and his angels are at liberty to roam the earth.

Although Satan roams the earth he is far from forcing mankind to sin, he plays the part of the tempter teasing man with evil desires to which he is not only susceptible but inclined to. CS Lewis said: *“there are two equal and opposite errors into which our race can fall about the devils. One is to disbelieve in their existence. The other is to believe and to feel excessive and unhealthy interest in them. They themselves are equally pleased by both errors and hail a materialist or a magician with the same delight.”*

Satan is the **deceiver** and **adversary** of God’s people, very subtle in his methods deceiving even the elect, as he is the light bearer – Lucifer, he comes as an angel of light to deceive.. He has knowledge of the Word of God that are of universal interest to humankind and cunningly deceives mankind into false doctrines. These doctrines includes false teachings and time setting stealing the blessed hope of the Church of the Lord’s return as seen in Millerism, Seventh Day Adventism and Millennial Darwinism. Preventing mankind from turning to the Lord for healing, he invented systems of Christian Science and New Thought falsely satisfying the craving of the human mind to know what is going on in the Spirit Word, Satan therefore also invented Spiritism. Instead of trying to wipe out the Church by violence and persecution his tactics includes seducing the Church into conformity to the world, he tries to better an “Age” God has doomed to destruction, currently his purpose is to build up a magnificent civilisation deceiving the Church into believing it can bring in the a new age without Christ, by betterment of society.

He hopes that the gospel of social service would replace the Gospel of Grace by diverting people’s attention to secondary things in order for them to neglect the primary work of soul saving, thereby delaying the evangelisation of the world and

postponing the Return of the Lord and Satan's own confinement in the Bottomless Pit.

Satan likes nothing better but to defame and slander God's people, he is called a **murderer and liar**, he was a murderer from the beginning, not upholding the truth, for there is no truth in him. Lying is his native tongue for he is the father of lies. Satan is also known as the **destroyer, the Prince of Darkness, a roaring lion and the evil one**.

You are of the Devil as father, and the lusts of your father you will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and did not abide in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks of his own, for he is a liar and the father of it.

John 8:44 MKJV

This warfare between good and evil existed in the Bible since the first book Genesis 3:15 up to last Revelations 20:10. Satan tempted the first humans with the fruit of the truth of knowledge of good and evil which resulted in the fall when they ate of it. Satan tried to prevent the birth of the promised seed which causes Cain to kill Abel, to bring in destruction of the human race Satan gets the fallen angels to marry the daughters of men which resulted in the flood. To destroy the unity of the race Satan suggested the Tower of Babel which resulted in the confusion of tongues. Throughout the **Old Testament Satan is seen trying to frustrate the plan of God for the redemption of the race**. When Jesus was born it was Satan who provoked Herod to kill all the male children at Bethlehem under the age of two years. Satan even tried to overcome Jesus after being weakened for fasted for forty days by suggesting He should throw Himself down from the pinnacle of the temple, other attempts were the people who wanted to throw Jesus from the hilltop of Nazareth and the two storms on the sea of Galilee.

Hindered by these Satan renewed the fight through Priests and Pharisees and achieved getting Judas to sell out his Master. Satan wanted to kill Jesus by physical

weakness before He could reach the Cross and make atonement for sin, upon the crucifixion Satan thought that he had conquered, but when Jesus arose from the dead Satan's fury knew no bounds. In all likelihood Satan and his angels contested the Ascension of Jesus Christ, the history of the Christian Church is but one long story of uncontainable conflict between Satan and God's people.

As mentioned before, Satan as seen in the Bible still has his abode in the heavenlies and he still has access to the throne of God. But the time will come when he will be cast out of the heavenlies to the earth (Revelations 12:9-12), there shall be great anguish on the earth because of Satan's rage, which will be exercised through the Beast and the Antichrist (Revelations 13:2-8) for then his time will be very short because at the end of the tribulation period the Beast and the False Prophet will be casted alive into the Lake of Fire, an angel from Heaven will seize Satan and bind him with a great chain, already forged and cast him into the Bottomless Pit, where he shall remain for thousand years (Revelations 20:1-3) at the end of that time he shall be loosed for a little time and then with his angels be cast into the Lake of Fire prepared for him in the long ago to spend the ages of the ages (Revelation 20:7-10, Matthew 25:41).²³ Satan is thus already a defeated foe; God manifested on the earth through Jesus and He already won the battle.

Satan has power and is the absolute monarch over the realm of demonic beings, he has the power to oppose the mightiest of angels Michael, when he disputed Satan about the body of Moses he did not dare to bring slanderous accusations against him and said "The Lord Rebuke you" (Jude 9). He has the power to keep people in bondage, cause sickness and suffering and he has the power of death (Hebrew 2:14), he traps mankind and injects wicked purposes into mankind's hearts. He can personally enter and control a person as seen in the case with Judas, Satan entered him when he took the bread (John 13:27) at the Last Supper.

²³ Larkin, Clarens (1921) *The Spirit World*. USA, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate, pp. 20-21.

He is constantly seeking to take away the understanding of the Word of God and places false teachers and prophets among God's people usually within their inner circle. He torments God's servants and hinders them from carrying out their desires to follow God, he can also physically stop the Lord servants by various means and he accuses believers before Christ.

4.2 The Satanic Trinity

Satan counters, perverts and copies everything God does, just as God sent His son Jesus into the world, so Satan will send the Antichrist into this world and just as God was in Jesus, Satan will incarnate himself in the Antichrist.

The mystery of Godliness (see Chapter One) lies in the fact that God manifested in the flesh. While the mystery of Iniquity lies in the fact that Satan will manifest in the flesh (2 Thessalonians 2:7).

And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifested in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen by angels, preached among nations, believed on in the world, and received up into glory.

1 Timothy 3:16 MKJV

With Satan mimicking God's every move one can see from Scripture that Satan through the Antichrist would mimic all the things of the Lord Jesus Christ, though the manipulating and beguiling works.

Christ's church was the Ecclesia, translated from the Greek word *ekklesia*, with the *ek* meaning "out" and the *kaleo* meaning call. An *ekklesia* or calling out wasn't just an assembly; Jesus used this term for a very good reason, in the Classical Greek

ekklesia meant “an assembly of citizens by the crier, the legislative assembly”.²⁴ Satan will also have a church which will be called the Synagogue of Satan (Revelations 2:9; 3:9). Christ will have a Bride (Ephesians 5:25-27) and the Antichrist will have bride called the Mystic Harlot Church (Revelations 17:1-16), Christ has a Cup called the Communion Cup (1 Corinthians 10:16), and the Antichrist has the cup of Devils (1 Corinthians 10:21), Jesus’ ministry lasted for three and a half years and He died at the age of thirty three, the Antichrist will reign for three and a half years and will be die the same age as Jesus did.

The Godly Trinity is the Godhead of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, the Satanic Trinity will include the following members the **Dragon** which will be the Anti-God, thus the false manifestation of the father, the **Beast** is the Antichrist, the son of perdition begotten of the Dragon who appears on the earth, dies and is resurrected and given the throne by his farther the Dragon. The False Prophet is the Anti-Spirit, he proceeds from the Dragon father and the Dragon son and his speech is like the Dragon’s. The Satanic Trinity is the false imitation of the Divine Trinity.

5. DEMONOLOGY

An astounding amount of Literature titled as Demonology, is tainted with errors that may well owe their origin to the “**father of falsehood**”. Most of these teachings are designed to lead mankind into Satan’s service, especially the practical purpose parts which could be called ascetical and mystical demonology.²⁵

The issue of faith is not that God’s wrath is directed against man, because it is not, it is directed against mankind’s lack of faith, faith is the obedience demanded by God.

²⁴ The Church, the *ekklesia* (www.hisholychurch.net)

²⁵ Demonology (www.newadvent.org/cathen/04713a.htm)

Demonology pertaining to the unquestionable status of bondage and torment, fetters of iron, blinding of eyes, stopping of ears, infirmities, all of it disappeared when Jesus proclaimed:

***And He began to say to them, Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your ears.
Luke 4:21 MKJV***

By introducing Demonology, the following statements will be upheld.

- In the light of the above-mentioned, this thesis chooses to take the view: “to believe the Gospel.” Therefore if the Word of God says that Christians are in Christ and the fullness of Christ is within them that would mean that Christians are the instruments through which the Lord is continuing His Kingdom right now on the earth, God is before all things and by Him all things consist (Colossians 1:17). Mankind is complete in God and He is the head of all.

***And you are complete in Him, who is the Head of all principality and power,
Colossians 2:10 MKJV***

- Under Satan’s control there is a vast host of evil spirit beings. In Scripture, they are called angels, authorities, principalities, powers, rulers of darkness, wicked spirits, and demons (1 Peter 3:22; Ephesians 6:12; 1:21; 3:10; Romans 8:38; Titus 3:1; Colossians 2:5,10; Daniel 10:13, 20-21; Luke 22:53; Colossians 1:13). These titles suggest different ranks and levels of authority in Satan’s kingdom.
- This Chapter holds that there is a specific Hierarchy in the kingdom of Darkness and that it is intelligently structured and operated to bring to fullness The Master Stratagem from the spiritual past unknown, epitomised in the headship of Satan (Lucifer) and to be revealed at a specific time, the time of the reign of the antichrist.

- Since Christ has conquered Satan both personally and representatively, Jesus has delegated His authority to the Church.
- The Church, which is the body of Christ (Spirit filled Christians) has been given power of attorney, the right to use His Name and to continue the ministry of Christ on earth.
- God has given Christians the responsibility to **raise their children, the generations to come in the fullness and righteousness of Christ**. To raise them in the fear of the Lord and the Truth concerning the works of Satan so mankind and their generation will not be destroyed by evil supernaturalism through a lack of knowledge.

The ministry of the Church, which is every single believer in Christ, could be summarized in the Lord's commission to the Apostle Paul.

in order to open their eyes so that they may turn from darkness to light, and from the authority of Satan to God, so that they may receive remission of sins and an inheritance among those who are sanctified by faith in Me.
Acts 26:18 MKJV

In conquering Satan and all his hosts on the Cross of Calvary Jesus has made complete victory available for every believer. He stripped Satan of His authority and Jesus is Lord over all principalities and powers - He is the "**Strong Man**" who has overcome. Jesus' victory can be seen in His life, death and resurrection, the Bible declares that all principalities, powers and authorities are subject to His control (1 Peter 3:22; Ephesians 1:21-23; 3:9-10; Matthew 28:19-20), He has all the power in Heaven and Earth.

The believer can rejoice in Christ's full and complete victory over Satan's entire kingdom of darkness, all was conquered and defeated and are now subject to Him. **God has given Christ to be Head over all things to the Church**. He must reign until all enemies are put under His feet (Psalm 110:1-2; 1 Corinthians 15:25-26).

What Jesus Christ did on the Cross of Calvary was for God, and for His Church. He delegated **authority** to the Church corporately and to believers individually (Mark 9:38-39; 16:15-20; Acts 19:13-18; Matthew 24:14; Luke 22:26-30).

It is important to remember, especially in the light of ministering to children:

- The believer's battleground is utterly personal, because Satan seeks to attack the believer in the three areas of his being. He attacks the body and the soul to reach the spirit (1 Peter 2:11). It is a spiritual battle and therefore Satan cannot fight the battle alone because he is not omnipotent. Satan's primary field of battle is the mind of mankind; **therefore children should be armed with the knowledge of the Truth which is the Lord Jesus Christ.**
- The whole of the kingdom of Darkness including all the spirit beings, as well as those humans influenced by Satan, are involved in this warfare. As the believer recognised his position in Christ and fulfils his responsibility then there is no ground upon which the kingdom of Darkness can work.

Abstain from every appearance of evil. And may the God of peace Himself sanctify you, and may your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blamelessly at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Thessalonians 5:22-23 MKJV

There are two separate Hebrew words used to refer to demons, *tamunefal* and *nefsheraa*. The first half of the word *tamunefal*, *tamu* means "one who is buried or dead" which would be a fallen angel – a devil, which obviously can't be buried. The latter part *nefal* is the singular for *nephilim* – the offspring of the sexual unions between fallen angels and woman. It thus means "a dead *nephal*" added meanings are "a hidden abortion, polluted, defiled and unclean spirit". The second word *nefsheraa* is also compound *nefesh* animal soul and *raa* evil. The word thus literally means an "evil animal soul" or "the soul of an evil beast"; it could also be translated

as a “disembodied soul, deformed, wicked, a hungry soul, an evil soul.” Regrettably the Hebrew words for devil are still sometimes interpreted in English translations as “demon” by those who simply do not know the difference which could cause much confusion.²⁶

5.1 Demonic Beings

Derek Prince²⁷ a renowned Bible teacher brings forth two questions that arises when people become aware of the existence of demonic beings, namely what creatures they are and what their origin is.

A lot of people deny the existence of such beings, brushing it off to be just a theory and not reality, but Jesus Himself taught the existence of Satan and demons. Jesus casted out demons and He also taught His disciples to cast them out (Matthew 10:1).

Demons could be described as disembodied spirit beings with a strong craving to inhabit a physical body. Their first choice of inhabitation seems to be a human body but they could also enter the body of an animal rather than remaining in a disembodied state (Luke 8:32-33). Even though demons have no bodies they have personality traits:

Since demonic beings belong to the same class of beings as angels and Satan, all these creatures have much in common.²⁸

Dickason²⁹ also states that there are a lot of parallels with angel personalities except that demons have perversion of person and powers. Demons where also created in the image of God, they have intellect, sensibility, a will, and a moral responsibility.

²⁶ Klein, J and Spears, A (2007) *Lost in Translation*, Volume 1. USA: Selah Publishing Group, LLC, Tennessee, p. 99.

²⁷ Prince, Derek (1998) *They shall Expel Demons*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, pp. 97-98.

²⁸ Ryrie C.C. (1999) *Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth*. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 184.

It is clear from Scripture that Demons aren't just indefinable forces or concepts that exists in the mind of man, they exist and they are living, functioning spiritual beings with a mind, specific characteristics and a will of their own – their reality doesn't depend of the existence and ability of humankind to conceive them.

5.1.1 The Characteristics of Demons

They have a will: In the book of Matthew a demon said that he would return the person he inhabited, referring to it as his house (Matthew 12:44), he thus exercised his will to make a decision and follows up with a consequent action.

Demons possess intelligence, they have knowledge that is derived from the spiritual realm, the demon in the synagogue of Capernaum directly discerned that Jesus was the Holy One of God before a word was spoken (Mark 1:24). They have observed human beings in almost every conceivable situation; therefore they can accurately predict what individuals will do in most cases – as their longevity gives them an added dimension to their native intelligence. Their intelligence does however vary and their knowledge is limited.

Demons had supernatural insight into the identity of Jesus as the Son of God (Mark 1:14, 34) and they knew of His great power (Mark 5:6-7), they thus cleverly deceive mankind by withholding necessary information for salvation (1 John 4:1-4) and masquerading as messengers of light (2 Corinthians 11:13-15). They also know how to corrupt sound doctrine (1 Timothy 4:1-3) and how to distinguish between believers and non-believers. (Revelation 9:4). They have knowledge of the future or of hidden things.

²⁹ Dickason, C.F (1975) *Angels Elect & Evil*. Chicago: Moody Press. P, 171.

And it came to pass, as we went to prayer, a certain damsel possessed with a spirit of divination met us, which brought her masters much gain by soothsaying:

Acts 16:16 KJV

Despite their knowledge, it is limited and their plans will be overthrown by God. They know their own eventual doom (Matthew 8:29), they develop and promote systems of doctrine (1 Timothy 4:1-3) and they also know what the plan of Salvation is even though they cannot accept it.

Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.

James 2:19 KJV

Demonic beings also **exhibit emotions** as seen in the verse above, which is evidence of a mark of strong emotion, fear and trembling when confronted with the judgement of God, as they are well aware of the truth about God.

Horrobin described that in his ministry he has seen demons express the whole range of emotions that people can also feel. Sometimes they express deep anger at being exposed; other times they whimper pathetically at the thought of being cast out. He notes: "*We have come to realize that many people whose emotions are out of balance, or even out of control, are like that because of demonic control of their feelings.*"³⁰

Demons are **disembodied spirits**, they do not have a body of their own, they are able to exist outside of a body as the territorial spirits do, but they express themselves more effectively by occupying the body of a human being, which is more preferable, or even an animal. **When a demon takes up residence in a human body or an animal they are contravening God's intentions for His creation.**

³⁰ Horrobin, P (2003) Healing through Deliverance. United Kingdom: Sovereign, p. 86.

Being disembodied creatures, however, introduces a dimension into the understanding of deliverance ministry that is absolutely vital, **when people die, demons don't**. They are completely unaffected by the death of their host!

Demons have to leave the hosts body, but they are then *free to carry on their work in someone else* whom they will try to occupy.

They know who rebuke and exorcise them, **self awareness** is another trait, the Legion of demons possessing the man in the country of Gadarenes was aware of his identity as well as those who inhabited the man along with him (Mark 5:9), by this verse one could also conclude that demons have **the ability to speak** as he answered Jesus giving his name as Legion for they were many who occupied the man. Other events are also accounted in the three gospels as well as in Acts were demonic beings speak out through the vocal cords of the person they are inhabiting. **Demons are liars and they have doctrines**, they are not honest about their names, numbers or strength and they **vary in wickedness and power**.

Demons promotes Satan's system of the lie, causing men to forsake the light of God's Word, they opposes the truth of God – mostly in the hearts and minds of mankind causing them to stumble and fall and to doubt God and who God is.

Because of Satan's rebellion demons are morally and spiritually unclean, everything about them is twisted their intellect, sensibility and will – because they used all of these against God. They are termed *unclean spirits* in the Bible and spiritual forces of wickedness (Ephesians 6:12):

And when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.

Matthew 10:1 KJV

The term unclean an evil is moral – their immorality is often manifested in the sensuousness of those they control or influence.³¹

“This may explain the desire of the possessed to live in a state of nudity, to have licentious thoughts and to frequent such impure places as tombs.”³²

And when he went forth to land, there met him out of the city a certain man, which had devils long time, and ware no clothes, neither abode in any house, but in the tombs.

Luke 8:27 KJV

This same concept is found reflecting in demon inspired false teachings and teachers (2 Peter 2:1-2, 10, 13-14, 18).

Demons however are subjected to Jesus and the true Disciples of Christ are given authority over them.

The two theories surrounding the origin of demons according to scholars is the association with the fallen angels who rebelled against God, or that demons are disembodied spirits of a pre Adamic race that perished under judgement of the Lord God, these theories aren't clearly recorded in Scripture. There is also no suggestion in the Bible that demons descended from the heavenly regions, but that they pass through the planes of the earth (Matthew 12:43-44). **Demons are not the spirits of deceased people.**

5.1.2 Evolution of Meaning of the Term “Demon” in Greek

³¹ Brand, Prof Dr Connie (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness Volume 1(Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Self- Published., pp. 1313-1328.

³² Unger, Merrill F. (1952) Biblical Demonology. Wheaton, Illinois: Scripture Press, p. 67.

The Greek word for demon is *daimonion* derived from the word *daimon*, Greek mythology explains that there are two main orders of gods who dwell in the heavenlies the higher is called the *theos* and the lower called *daimon*. *Daimons* specific function was rumoured to assign each human being the destiny appointed for him by the *theoi* (plural form for *theos*, the demons was thus on a lower, earthy level dominated by the gods on the higher levels.

A second stage in the development of the term *daimon* appears in post-Homeric usage when demons were conceived of as intermediaries between the gods and men. In Hesiod these mediators are the spirits of the good men of the Golden Age, who are appointed attendants and guardians of men by Zeus and are often conceived of as executors of his will.³³ The Philosophers give striking expression to belief in these intermediary agents. Plato asserts that “*The deity has no intercourse with man; but all the intercourse and conversation between gods and men are carried on by the mediation of demons.*”³⁴ The view also finds expression that every man from his birth is accompanied by a special dai[mon] (daimon).

This *daimon* of the individual is evidently regarded as separable from the man himself, and not identifiable with his soul or spirit.

Attic writers, especially, make reference to *agathos daimon* (a good demon). At this stage, “*although the demons are regarded as being inferior to the gods, they do not appear to be conceived of as morally evil, unless, indeed this may be inferred of some of them by contrast with the good demons...*”³⁵ A third stage of development in the term *daimon*, came when the Greeks began to view demons as morally imperfect beings, like man, some good, some evil. This step in the gradual lowering of the concept of the word was the result of an effort to exalt the gods and to make their

³³ W.M. Ramsay, Hastings’ Dictionary of the Bible, I, 140a.

³⁴ Plato, (1909) Symposium. Cambridge: W. Heffer and Sons, pp 202-203.

³⁵ Langton, E (1049) Essentials of Demonology. London: The Epworth Press, p. 87.

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

intermediary demons responsible for the passions and scandals attributed to them in the popular mythologies.

While Plato endeavoured to divest the gods of evils and scandals and to heighten the people's idea of them, his disciple Xenocrates³⁶ sought to maintain his master's teaching on the subject of the sublime character of the gods by a development of his teacher's notions about demons, making these intermediary agents, whom he conceived as the departed souls of men, the real perpetrators of evil. "*Xenocrates introduced a new idea into Philosophical Theology in that he was the first to distinguish expressly between good and evil demons, and he emphasized their mediating position. They are now held to mediate the whole intercourse between gods and men, particularly by means of oracles. They have superhuman power, but even the good demons have not perfect moral purity.*"³⁷

The final stage in this process of development is reached where, as in the Septuagint and the New Testament, all demons are evil and members of Satan's kingdom as his active agents (Matthew 12:22- 30). **Early Christian writings also abound with evidence that all demons are evil.**

Scholars states that demons inspired Greek mythology and rose up evil men.

They sacrificed unto devils, not to God; to gods whom they knew not, to new gods that came newly up, whom your fathers feared not.
Deuteronomy 32:17 KJV

Similar emphatic teachings concerning the evil character and ubiquitous activity of the demons appear in practically all the Christian writers of this period – Tertullian, Clement of Alexandria, Origen, Cyprian, and Eusebius, to mention but a few.

³⁶ Langton, E (1049) Essentials of Demonology. London: The Epworth Press, p. 88.

³⁷ Ibid, p. 88

Scripture reveals the levels of demonic beings in Ephesians six. Fallen spirits are essentially and irretrievably evil, malevolent creatures – angry at God for the loss of their estate in heaven, their prime motive is to destroy the object of God’s love and affection – mankind.

The irony and tragedy in today’s time and age is the fact that the less the church teaches about demon power the more control Satan takes over society. Most of the world is already possessed by Satan and his demonic entourage while the rest does not believe in his existence – Satan makes very sure that the two never meet. The Church should stand up and not just preach the good news to the ends of the earth but also cast out devils by the power of the Lord Jesus Christ.

According to Sumrall³⁸ there are specific areas where the demonic influences modern life:

- 1) World of apostate religion
- 2) World of business
- 3) World of politics
- 4) World of crime
- 5) World of occultism
- 6) World of disease
- 7) World of morals

Spiritism is quite popular nowadays, which means communication with familiar spirits which is nothing else but demonism which is forbidden in Scripture (Deuteronomy 18:10-11).

³⁸ Sumrall, Dr Lester (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance*, Volume One. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing, p. 34.

***But the Spirit expressly says that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits and teachings of demons, speaking lies in hypocrisy, being seared in their own conscience, forbidding to marry, saying to abstain from foods which God has created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the truth.
1 Timothy 4:1-3 MKJV***

Paul warns man about these practices in the verse above, the referral made – forbidding to marry does not refer to celibacy but to the abrogation of the marriage relation, the practice of *free love* and the doctrine of *affinities*, which Spiritism leads to. The referral to abstain from meats is not a reference to fasting, but the requirement of a vegetarian diet. It is a well-known fact that a "vegetable diet" renders the body more susceptible to spiritual forces than a meat diet.

It was through Eve and not Adam that Satan sought to destroy the human race. The reason may be that the nervous and impressionable character of women is better adapted to demon influence, or easier to entice. The revival of "**Spiritism**," or "**demonism**," is one of the "**Signs of the Times**," and should be a warning to every true believer in God of the coming end of the Age. The "**demons**" belong to the "**Powers of Darkness**." They are not few in number, but are a great multitude of hosts, in the service of Satan. Their central camp or abode is the "**Bottomless Pit**" from which they "sally forth" at the command of their leader (Revelations 9:1-11).

5.1.3 The Power of Demons over the Human Body

Dickason³⁹ explains: "*An evil spirit inhabiting a man resisted two of the seven sons of Sceva. He 'leaped on them and subdued all of them and overpowered them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded'* (Acts 19:16, vv. 14-16). The man of Gerasenes (Gadarenes, KJV) was controlled by many unclean spirits, 'and no one was able to bind him anymore, even with a chain' (Mark 5:3). He had broken all shackles and chains and was uncontrollable." Demonic power is often manifest in viciousness, as the same man was gashing himself with stones.

³⁹ Dickason, C Fred (1975) *Angels, Elect and Evil*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 175-176.

who had his dwelling among the tombs. And no one could bind him, no, not with chains because he had often been bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been torn apart by him, and the fetters broken in pieces. Nor could anyone subdue him. And always, night and day, he was in the mountains and in the tombs, crying and cutting himself with stones.
Mark 5:3-5 MKJV

One man's son had the marks of an epileptic. Jesus cast out of him a demon who had thrown him often into fire and into water (Matthew 17:14-20).

It seems demons promote self-destruction in their victims!

Demons cause dumbness (Matthew 9:32-33), blindness (Matthew 12:22), insanity (Luke 8:26-35), suicidal mania (Mark 9:22), personal injuries (Mark 9:18), impart supernatural strength (Luke 8:29) and inflicts physical defects and deformities (Luke 13:11-17). Once they gained control of a human body it seems that they could come and go as they please. The *devilish* character of demonic beings can be seen in the way they make use of their victims, as they are used as instruments of unrighteousness.

Do not yield your members as instruments of unrighteousness to sin, but yield yourselves to God, as one alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness to God.

Romans 6:13 MKJV

Demons also use their victims to broadcast the "*doctrines of demons*" and to teach heresies (1 Timothy 4:1; 2 Peter 2:1), it is unmoral and immoral and it leads to vicious and inhuman conduct. It seems that demons take possession of humankind for the purpose of physical sensual gratification, exposing the cause of the wreck of the Pre-Adamite Earth, ***the sin of sensuality*** – it also accounts for the desire of the **victim to live in a state of nudity and to have lustful and licentious thoughts.**

Today there seems to be an increasing tendency towards yielding to "seducing spirits", it may explain for the immodesty of fashionable attire and

the craze of dancing seductively, which is heavily promoted in the media. This is extremely evident in the lives of children, as girls from a very youth age wears overly sexualised clothing and dance seductively even from under the age of ten years. The purpose of demons in families is often to alienate husband and wife and to break up homes by preaching the doctrine of "free love". The demon has the power, once he gained control of his victim, to derange the mind and body, as well as the person's health. If deliverance through Jesus is not obtained the victim will be lost and bound in Satan's kingdom.

God specifically teaches in His Word that mankind cannot partake of Satan's kingdom and of His Kingdom, therefore mankind needs to understand the methods Satan uses to entrap God's children.

But I say that the things which the nations sacrifice, they sacrifice to demons and not to God. And I do not desire that you should have fellowship with demons. You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons; you cannot be partakers of the Lord's table and of a table of demons.

1 Corinthians 10:20-21 MKJV

This verse in the Bible proves that behind all heathen worship⁴⁰, there is the "spirit of Demonism," or "devil worship"⁴¹ and accounts for the "wild orgies" and voluptuous and licentious mode of worship of the heathen. Satan's angels are portrayed as "wandering spirits", "lying," and "wicked spirits." They are invisible and bodiless and therefore they're able to enter homes and hear the secrets of the family or see every act of impurity. Consequently they can give information through to mediums known only to the individual himself. They can reveal the past and to a limited extent have enough insight to foretell the future.

⁴⁰According to the online Merriam Webster Dictionary: Heathen meaning an unconverted member of a people or nation that does not acknowledge the God of the Bible (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/heathen)

⁴¹Heathen Worship (www.christadelphiansisters.org/ESTSEP.HTM)

The "demons" are different as they simply embody themselves in human beings, take ownership of their personality and use them for their own base and unclean purposes. The "wandering spirits" do not enter in and take possession of the person; they merely exercise an outward "control," as in hypnotism, when the medium has passed into the hypnotic state the wandering spirit directs what is to be said.

5.1.4 The Relation of the Spirit world to the Natural World

Demons can produce deceptive "miracles", like their leader, the devil; they may interfere in the laws of nature. Satan works "all power and signs and lying wonders" through the Antichrist. The counterfeiting works that Satan's performs through the Antichrist is similar to those of Christ, the same three words are used in Jesus' miracles (Acts 2:22) and the apostles' miracles (Hebrews 2:4) are used in the Satanic demonic miracles (2 Thessalonians 2:9) **Power** (*Dunamis*), **Sign** (*Semeion*) and **Wonder** (*Teras*).

The miracles that demons performs are lying (*Pseudos*) and it is not in accord with Scripture as it is used against God

For they are spirits of demons, working miracles, which go forth to the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that day, the great day of God Almighty.

Revelation 16:14 MKJV

Although demons are capable of performing miracles there is a limit to what they can duplicate. The magicians of Egypt seemed to duplicate some of God's miracles through Moses, but they were unable to match others (Exodus 8:5-7, contrast vv. 16-19). The magicians recognized that the greater power came from God (Exodus 8:19).

“Modern miracles are not necessarily fakes. They might be real, but they might be false, counterfeits of demons.”⁴²

And the magicians said to Pharaoh, This is the finger of God. And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen to them, as Jehovah had said.

Exodus 8:19 MKJV

A lot of the miracles and strange phenomena of Scripture could be explained once there is an understanding of the relation of the Spirit World to the Natural World. In Joshua chapter 6:1-27, the Israelites were told to march around the walls of the City of Jericho for six days and on the seventh day they were to compass it seven times and blast on a ram's horn, which would be the signal for them to shout and the walls would fall down enabling them to take over the city.

Some scholars tries to explain the phenomena as an earthquake, but only the walls fell down, no dwelling house was disturbed nor any persons killed and the part on the wall where Rahab lived – which were protected by the red cord which hung from the window – a type of the Blood, was not thrown down, but such an earthquake has never happened before or after. Some claim that the vibrations caused by the sounds of the trumpets and shouts of people caused the walls to fall.

In Joshua 5:13 when Joshua was about to besiege Jericho he was met by a "Man" with a drawn sword in His hand.

And it happened, when Joshua was beside Jericho, he lifted up his eyes and looked. And, behold, there stood a Man in front of him with His sword drawn in His hand. And Joshua went to Him and said to Him, Are You for us, or for our foes? And He said, No, but I have come as the Commander of the army of Jehovah. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth. And he worshiped and said to Him, What does my Lord say to His servant? And the Commander of Jehovah's army said to Joshua, Take your shoe off your foot, for the place on which you stand is holy. And Joshua did so.

Joshua 5:13-15 MKJV

⁴² Dickason, C Fred (1975) *Angels, Elect and & Evil*. Chicago: Moody Press, pp. 177-179.

This Man as seen in the verse above was the same Man Moses encountered at the “*burning bush*”; He was Jesus before His incarnation. Jesus gave Joshua instructions of the part he had to play in taking the city for God. The armies of heaven, under the command of their Captain, the Lord of Hosts, assisted Joshua and when the people fulfilled their part, at the sound of the Trumpet the invisible angelic army threw down the walls except the part where the house of Rahab was.

Another confirmation is found in First Chronicles:

And the Philistines still again made a raid in the valley. And David asked again of God. And God said to him, Do not go up after them. Turn away from them, and come on them over against the weeping trees. And it shall be, when you hear a sound of marching in the tops of the weeping trees, then you shall go out to battle. For God has gone forth before you to strike the army of the Philistines. And David did as God commanded him. And they struck the army of the Philistines from Gibeon to Gezer.

1 Chronicles 14:13-16 MKJV

The angelic army of the Lord went before the army of David and smote the Philistines that day.

Before Jesus was born, three wise men from the East saw an unusual star in the heavens, which indicated to them the nearness of His birth. They expected the King of the Jews to be born in a palace and went to King Herod, but the star directed them to Bethlehem. The star went before them and stood over where the young boy was laying and after that the star disappeared.

When they had heard the king, they departed. And lo, the star which they saw in the east went before them until it came and stood over where the child was.

Matthew 2:9 MKJV

The star can only be explained as an angel who assumed the form of a star, for it was known in that time that angels were busy visiting the earth. Angel Gabriel announced the birth of John the Baptist to Zacharias (Luke 1:11-17) and the birth of Jesus to Mary (Luke 1:26-35), it was also an angel who announced the birth of Jesus to the Sheppard's. The wise men from the East must have been acquainted with the prophecies relating to the Messiah's coming and it was long foretold that the sign would come as a "star out of Jacob.

I shall see him, but not now. I shall behold him, but not near. There shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Scepter shall rise out of Israel, and shall strike the corners of Moab, and destroy all the sons of tumult.

Numbers 24:17 MKJV

The star then was the most appropriate form the angel could assume to arouse the interest of the wise men. In actual fact only a star angel would be able to move about in the heavens and guide them to the exact spot where the child Jesus lay. This interpretation is confirmed by other instances in which angels assumed a star form.

And the fifth angel sounded. And I saw a star fall from the heaven to the earth, and it was given the key of the abyss.

Revelation 9:1 MKJV

The Apostle John saw a star fall from Heaven, not a literal star, for in the same sentence he says, to him (the star) was given the key of the Bottomless Pit.

Angels are not only sent to minister to the children of God (Hebrews 1:13-14) but also to minister in other ways. The Cherubim were placed as guardians over the Garden of Eden, to protect the way to the Tree of Life (Genesis 3:24). Two angels were sent to deliver Lot and destroy Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:1-29). At Bethel Jacob saw the angels ascending and descending (Genesis 28:10-19). As Elijah lay under a Juniper tree hopeless and praying that he might die, an angel brought him bread and water (1 Kings 19:4-8).

Elisha was overwhelmed at Dothan and the angelic hosts were sent to deliver him, which they did by smiting the enemy with blindness (2 Kings 6: 13-18). The Angel of the Lord smote in one night 185,000 of the army of Sennacherib the King of Assyria (2 Kings 19:32-36). When Daniel was thrown into the lion's den by the king, God sent an angel to close the lions' mouths (Daniel 6:19-22).

An angel warned Joseph to flee into Egypt with the child Jesus and when to bring Him back (Matthew 2:13, 19). After Jesus fasted for forty days angels came and ministered unto Him (Mathew 4:11), at the close of His sufferings in Gethsemane an angel appeared to strengthen Him (Luke 22: 43). It was an angel that liberated the Apostles from prison (Acts 5: 19, 12: 5-10). At the close of "The Great Tribulation" the Son of Man, Jesus shall "*send His angels with a great sound of a Trumpet, and they shall gather together His elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.*" (Matthew 24:31). At the end of the Age the angels shall come forth and separate the wicked from among the just (Matthew 13:47-50), and when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from Heaven, His "*Mighty Angels*" shall come with Him, and carry out His vengeance upon them that didn't know God and didn't obey the Gospel of the Lord Jesus Christ (2 Thessalonians 1:7-8).

Lastly, as the heavens are peopled with the Principalities, and Powers of Evil, and Paradise - the abode of the "*Righteous Dead*" is now in the "Third Heaven," Believers shall need the convoy of "*Good Angels*" as to protect the believer from these evil and malicious Spirits, when at death the Soul takes its flight to Paradise.

5.1.5 Man's Relation to the Spirit-World

Man in his physical and spiritual makeup, was made for two worlds, the Physical and the Spirit world, man was made in the "Image of God" and God is a Trinity. The Tabernacle was a tent surrounded by a court, the court was enclosed by a curtain fence. The tent was divided into two parts, one twice the length of the other, by a

"veil" or curtain, the larger part was entered from without by a curtained doorway, and contained the "Table of Shewbread," the "Altar of Incense," and the "Seven-Branched Candlestick." This part was called the "Holy Place." The smaller part was entered from the "Holy Place" through the "veil" or dividing curtain, and contained the "Ark of the Covenant," on the lid of which, between the "Cherubims," God took up His residence in the "Shekinah Glory", known as the "Most Holy Place."

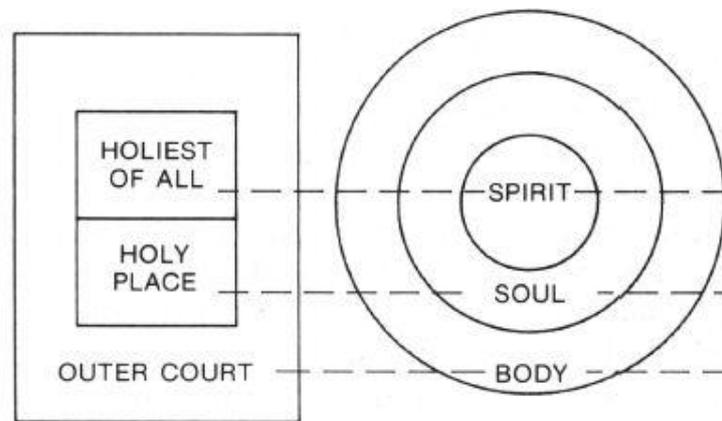


Figure 2: Three parts of Tabernacle relating to tripartite man⁴³

There were no windows in the Tabernacle, and the only entrance was through the curtained doorway into the type of the "Threefold Nature of Man." The "Courtyard" represents his Body, the "Holy Place" his Soul, and the "Most Holy Place" his Spirit, and as there could be no communication between the "Courtyard" and the "Most Holy Place," only through the "Holy Place," so there can be no communication between a man's Body and Spirit only through his Soul.

⁴³ What is Transformation

(www.google.co.za/imgres?start=107&sa=X&rlz=1T4ADRA_enZA416ZA431&biw=1280&bih=755&tbm=isch&tbnid=Ge5OaA09DcVWfM:&imgrefurl=http://www.lsmradio.com/hearing-of-faith/pdf/whatis/Aug99whatis.pdf&docid=iKDK13iZt3-M0M&imgurl=x-raw-image:///c50d3d0d684eee19527bc7e104ab3bbb7d16cc1d3704575ffc638e074f842af2&w=1779&h=769&ei=JI5bUr2mII SphAeghoGQAQ&zoom=1&iact=hc&vpx=2&vpy=192&dur=1742&hovh=147&hovw=342&tx=188&ty=99&page=4&tbnh=113&tbnw=264&ndsp=39&ved=1t:429,r:31,s:100,i:97)

After the Tabernacle was completed it remained empty of the "*Presence of God*" until the Spirit of God descended and took up His abode in the "*Most Holy Place*." Thus a man may be complete as to body, soul and spirit, but his spiritual nature will remain unregenerate until the Holy Spirit enters and takes possession of the spirit compartment of his nature, which happens when a person is born again.

The "*soulish body*" of man can hear, and speak, and think, and feel, it must have some "tangible" form. It is not a "ghostlike" structure. There are doubtless limitations in its use, or there would be no need for it to recover its "physical" body at the Resurrection. That there is such a thing as the "Soulish Body" is brought out in the story of the "Rich Man and Lazarus." Luke 16: 19-31. The story is not a Parable, but a description by Christ of something that really happened in the other world to his own personal knowledge.

It declares that both Lazarus and the "*Rich Man*" died and were buried. That is, their bodies were left on the earth. What happened to them in the "*Underworld*" then is descriptive of what happened to them in their "*disembodied state*." In that state they were conscious and the Rich Man recognized Lazarus, which he could not have done if Lazarus had not a body, not his "physical" body, he left that on the earth, but his "*soulish*" body.

This is proof that the "*soulish*" body is not simply a body, but that in its outward form and appearance it conforms to the earthly body of the owner; otherwise he would not be recognizable in the other world. Again the "*Rich Man*" could see, and feel, and thirst, and talk, and remember, proving that he possessed his senses and had not lost his personality. This proves that there is no break, as "*Soul Sleep*," in the Continuity of Existence, or consciousness, in passing from the "*Earth-Life*" to the "*Spirit-Life*." Sleep in the Scriptures always refers to the "Body," not to the "*Soul*," and the expression "*Asleep in Jesus*" refers to the Believer only.

This thesis finds it important to note that the person has a relation to the spirit world, to the soul through the human spirit. The soul and spirit is the everlasting part of mankind, through Jesus a person thus receives eternal life.

People can thus respond and be affected by the spirit world either by the Lord's angels or the demons of Satan.⁴⁴

5.2 The Fallen Angels

For if God did not spare sinning angels, but thrust them down into Tartarus, and delivered them into chains of darkness, being reserved to judgment.

2 Peter 2:4 MKJV

And those angels not having kept their first place, but having deserted their dwelling-place, He has kept in everlasting chains under darkness for the judgment of a great Day; as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities around them, in like manner to these, committing fornication, and going away after other flesh, laid down an example before-times, undergoing vengeance of everlasting fire.

Jude 1:6-7 MKJV

The fallen angels are the angels that committed fornication of an uncharacteristic nature the illegitimate sexual intercourse of angelic beings with strange or other flesh as in the days of Noah which caused the great flood. These angels are in prison and reserved in chains for judgement. The deeds of these angels were documented in Genesis six, the fact that Scripture mentions the sons of God saw the daughters of men (Genesis 6:2) distinguishes between the **whole Adamic race – MEN** and the son's of God, meaning **spiritual beings**.

To fully comprehend the impact of this one need to identify the son's of God. In Job 38 verse 7 reference is made to the sons of God, who were there before mankind was created, from the usage of the word one can conclude that sons of God refers to angels.

⁴⁴ Larkin, Clarens (1921) *The Spirit World*. USA, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate, pp. 30-89.

And a day came when the sons of God came to present themselves before Jehovah. And Satan also came among them. And Jehovah said to Satan, From where do you come? Then Satan answered Jehovah and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.

Job 1:6-7 MKJV

Satan appeared among these sons of God which could suggest that they are fallen angels, as the angels of God who wasn't in a fallen state already had access to the presence of God which can be seen in the Old and New Testament (Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel and Revelations). This together with the fact that Jesus refers to the devil and his angels (Matthew 25:41) leads to the conclusion that Genesis chapter six is talking about fallen angels, the princes and principalities of Satan's kingdom.⁴⁵

Four names are used in the Old Testament in the book of Genesis ***Bne-Ha-Elohim*** rendered - sons of God, ***Bnoth-Ha-Adam*** - daughters of men, ***Hans-Nephilim*** - giants, and ***Hog-Gibborim*** - Mighty Men.

In the New Testament ***Bne-Ha-Elohim*** has a different meaning as to that referred to in the Old Testament as the New Testament refers to sons of God when a person accepted Jesus as their personal Saviour and has gone through the New Birth - such people are then known as the sons of God, in other words they are God's children and they inherit the Kingdom of the Lord (John 1:12. Romans 8:14-16, Galatians 4:6, 1 John 3:1-2).

In the Old Testament it is used in Genesis 6:2-4, Job 1:6, 2:1, 38:7 – son of God indicates a being brought into existence by a creative act of God like Adam and the angels, Adam's descendants were brought on by natural means after Adam's image and in his likeness (Genesis 5:3). **All men born after Adam therefore are the sons of men and only by being born again (John 3:3-7), which is a new creation; a person can become the son of God in the New Testament sense.**

⁴⁵ Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. USA: Douglas Hamp, pp 95-101.

So that if any one is in Christ, that one is a new creature; old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new.

2 Corinthians 5:17 MKJV

Scholars argue the fact that these angels could bring forth offspring, referring to what Jesus preached when the Pharisees asked Jesus who would be a woman's husband in heaven if she married his brothers after her husband passed away.

For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in Heaven.

Matthew 22:30 MKJV

What is clear from the verse is that angels do not marry, but it does not constitute therefore that they are sexless and do not have the power of procreation – only that it is not the nature of holy angels to seek such relationships, also it does not state that if they had the power that they would not exercise it in a fallen state. Angels were created in masse and they are immortal – they never die and thus do not have to multiply and there is no necessity for them to marry among each other. Marriage is a human institution God established to prevent the extinction of mankind. Mankind in a fallen state also exercises the power of procreation, whether in or outside the bounds of marriage.

Angels are usually referred to as the masculine gender; the Bible refers to ***Bne-Ha-Elohim***, sons of Elohim (God) but never ***Bnoth-Ha-Elohim***, daughters of Elohim. The assumption is that angels are thus of a masculine gender, it is unlikely that angels by sinking lower due to falling, would acquire sexual power of which they had previously been impoverished. Angels and humans beings are members of the family of God, which creates a certain kinship between them.

Although angels are spiritual beings with celestial bodies, their bodies aren't ghostly as in the sense that their bodies are more ether, for they do have a materialistic form

and can fly (Daniel 9:2, Revelations 14:6-7), they can also take the form of a man and could eat Lot's unleavened bread (Genesis 19:1-3), mankind is also a spirit being, clothed in a material body of flesh and hereafter as redeemed mankind to have a spiritual body such as the angels.

And according as we bore the image of the earthy man, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly Man.

1 Corinthians 15:49 MKJV

Mankind is not only created in the spiritual image of God but also in a sense in the physical image of God. If mankind was made in the image of God and after God's likeness it would be understandable that when God manifested Himself to men He took the form of mankind. Jesus could not have appeared in any other form and be Godlike, when the assumption is that His incarnation was the necessary law of His being.

When the Apostle speaks of Jesus as being in the *form of God*, and taking upon Himself the *form of a servant* and being made in the *likeness of men* (Philippians 2:5-8), he simply meant that Jesus took upon Himself human nature and subjected Himself to its limitations, as the form of a servant is the same as the form of his master, though his knowledge may be less. When Jesus ascended He ascended as a **MAN**, and He is now in Heaven the **MAN CHRIST JESUS** (1 Timothy 2: 5).

Jesus told His disciples that he that saw Jesus, saw the father (John 14:18-11), He was a revelation of God in His person as well as His works. As no mortal man on earth would be able to look on the person of God and live (Exodus 33:18) it was necessary that Jesus should veil His deity in human flesh, the veil of the flesh became transparent on the Mount of Transfiguration and three of Jesus' disciples beheld His glorious Heavenly form. It is also understood from Genesis that Adam and Eve must have been covered with a sort of veil to hide their nakedness.

It is argued that if mankind could fall below the brute creation in yielding to lust it could be true for fallen angels. The fall of man did not sever completely the communication of angelic beings with the human race, there is no reason why fallen angelic beings could not be attracted by the beauty and comeliness of the females of the human race, inferior, but not so far removed from them, and desire to have intimate companionship with them.

In Revelations 12:7-12, when Satan and his angels are cast out of the Heavens onto the earth there will be great "woe." As this will be in the midst of what is known as the "*Tribulation Period*," it says, as it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be also in the Days of the Son of Man (Luke 17:26-27), it may be that this new invasion of the earth by "Fallen Angels" will be attended with like conduct on their part as that of the Fallen Angels of Noah's day.

6. THE PRINCIPALITIES OF THE KINGDOM OF DARKNESS AND THEIR SPECIFIC AIMS TO DESTROY THE CHILDREN OF MANKIND

6.1 Exegesis of the Names and Meaning of the Principalities and Powers

It is important to be aware of the practice of the demonological forces, it deems immanent to exegete the background of the Forces as a means of understanding the outflow and practices of the whole demonological co-existence in the **power crisis** existing in the Twenty First Century.

As per the Merriam Webster online Dictionary⁴⁶ **power** can be defined as:

- 1a. (1) ability to act or produce an effect
- (2) ability to get extra-base hits
- (3) capacity for being acted upon or undergoing an effect
- b. legal or official authority, capacity, or right

⁴⁶ Merriam Webster Online Diary (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/power)

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

- 2a: possession of control, authority, or influence over others
b: one having such power; specifically: a sovereign state

Wink⁴⁷ however states “*we do not think in terms of spirits, ghosts, demons, or gods as the effective agents of powerful effects in the world.*”

Modern man would look for non spiritual or material causes when they experience “*bad luck*” and tend to assume that what their forefathers called Powers were merely little-understood manifestations of material laws of physical power, perhaps even various forms of psychic power,⁴⁸ whatever residue that cannot force into material categories, man will tend to regard as ‘superstition.

Some scholars presume that the Powers are literally a variety of unseen demonic beings flying around the sky occasionally targeting some luckless mortal with their malignant payload of disease, lust, possession, or death.

Mankind does not find it viable to believe in the real existence of demonic and angelic powers; as Satan has already blinded their minds, misleading them to believe that these entities are mere fantasies fabricated by the prevailing believe system.

It is thus evident that what Biblical writers meant by power and what is generally meant by power is unequal, disproportionate and inconsistent, as it projects the same word but a different meaning. One’s own Social categories of power cannot be applied when trying to understand the New Testament’s conception thereof.

Wink⁴⁹ recommends that mankind: “*must instead attend carefully to the unique vocabulary and conceptions of the first century and try to grasp what the people of that time might have meant by power, within the linguistic field of their own worldview*

⁴⁷ Wink, W (1984) Naming the Powers. Philadelphia: Fortress Press, p. 3.

⁴⁸ Ibid, p. 3.

⁴⁹ Ibid, p. 4.

and mythic systems. It is a virtue to disbelieve what does not exist; it is dangerous to disbelieve what exists outside our current limited categories.”

6.2 The Principalities of Satan’s Kingdom

These **Principalities** are Secondés to Satan. As second-in charge, they receive direct commands from Satan himself. They hand the commands over to the **Powers** and **Rulers of Darkness** (both Spiritual and Physical Entities) from whence it is activated and coordinated to hand over to the spiritual wickedness in high places, from where it is taken to the **familiar** and **servient spirits** known as **evil spirits** to execute Satan’s wishes.

It is also important to note that Satan and his army aren’t known by only one name. Some Scholars propose that there is an intermediary between the Principalities and Satan, **Beelzebub** (The Fly) the so-called **General** of Satan’s army. Since

Beelzebub, another name for Satan himself, others question the separate existence of such an intermediary and reckon that Satan gives his own command to the Principalities. For this thesis such detail is not relevant since the highest secrecy within secrecies is kept in all rebellious conspiratorial Control Systems (Hierarchies).

It must be mentioned though, that in the practice of “*bloodline-deliverance*’ it has been found productive to cut the victim loose from the Top of the Hierarchy down to the lowest level where Generational Involvement in the Occult – either Secret Societies or overt Satanism was indicated. Thus this thesis holds that Beelzebub could be seen as General Commander to Satan.

These Princes could be seen as Generals-of-a-sort to Satan and they are Supernatural beings with a vision to steal, kill and destruct. Their main goal is to

*An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the
Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind*

fight, attack and destroy God's children, the Christians. **They hate Christians as they do hate the Lord.**

They apparently inhabit the Second Heaven, above the earth together with Satan – they occupy the fourth plane directly underneath the transcendental plane of Satan, which is the thirteenth level. Since Satan is not omnipotent and omniscient, these mighty Demonic Angels control the whole world for Satan.

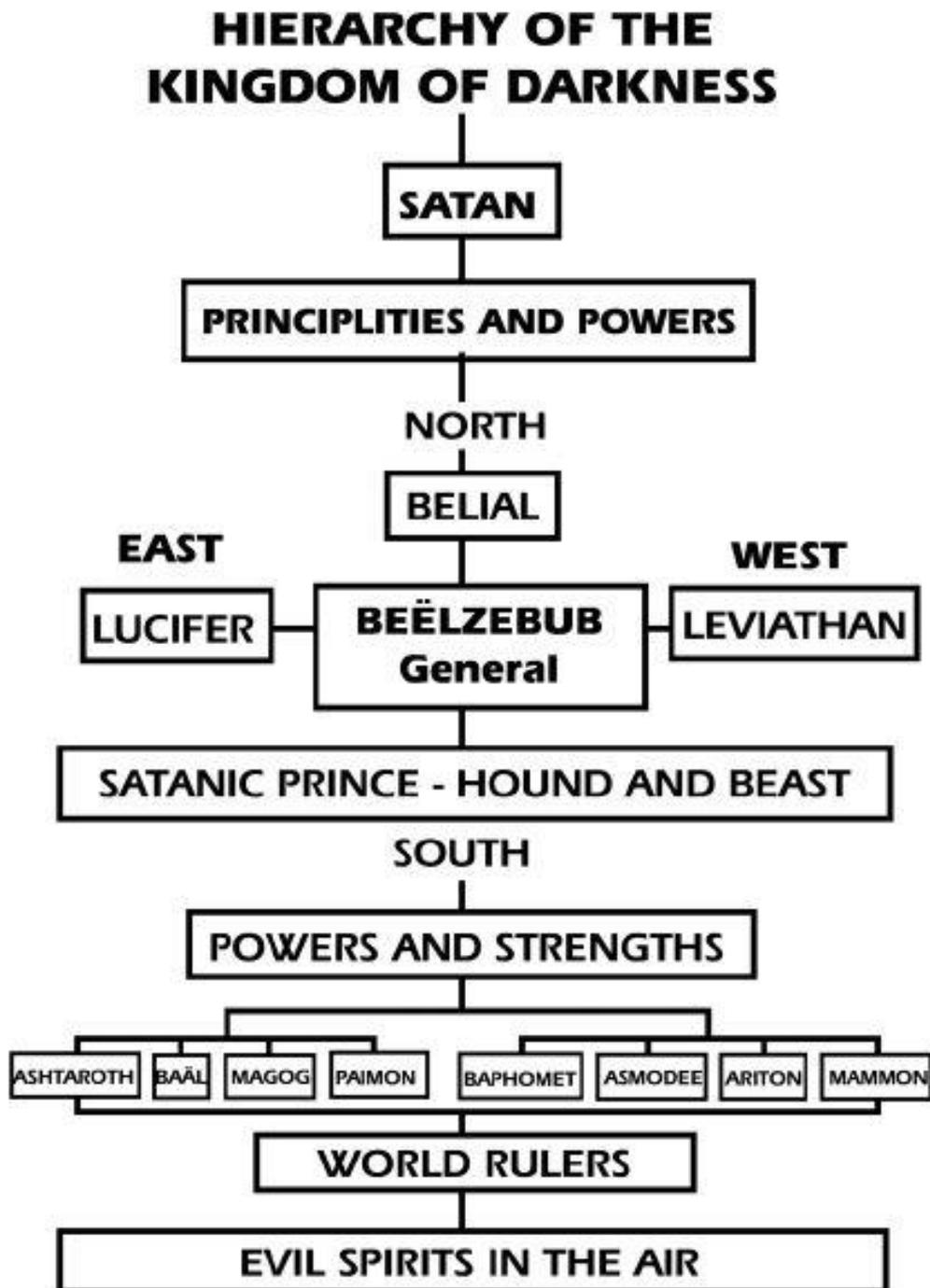


Table 1: Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Darkness.⁵⁰

⁵⁰ Brand, Prof Dr Connie (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies

6.3 The Four Separate Principalities

As depicted in the Table, this can be seen in the Organogram of Satan's kingdom, the four Elemental Princes as seen in contemporary Occultism is:

- BELIAL Prince of the North / False Lion / **Earth**
- LUCIFERIC Prince of the East / APPOLLYON / ABBADON / **Air** (In Celtic Religion known as Lugh).
- SATANIC PRINCE of the South / Hellhound / The Beast / **Fire**
- LEVIATHAN Prince of the West / Dragon / Serpent / **Water**

These princes dominate five world areas: Religion, Occultism, Finances, Politics and Sex. It is clearly seen in the tomb pictures in ancient Egypt that the four sons of Horus were actually the four Principalities of Occultism. Egyptian signs and symbols are used quite often in modern day culture; it is evidently seen in the **doll range Monsters High** which will be discussed later in this Chapter.

The Four Elemental Princes as seen in Egyptian Mythology is thus:

- East, Air: Tuamutef/Duamutef (with a jackal head).
- South, Fire: Akeset/Amset/Imsety (with a human head).
- West, Water: Qebhsennuf/Qebhsnuf (with a hawk head).
- North, Earth: Mestha/Hap/Hapi (with an ape head)

There were also Egyptian gods and goddesses who represented the four directions:

- East: Bast, Min, Osiris, Ra (**sun-gods**)
- South: Nekhebet, Sekhmet (gods of **terror / war / battle**)

to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness Volume 1(Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Self- Published., pp. 1313-1328.

- West: Ament, Hathor, Neith, Anubis, Temu, Sebek, Nephthys (gods and goddesses of **blood-lust / underworld /destruction**)
- North: Buto, Shu, Mehueret, Isis (**moon / earth / mother gods**)

6.3.1 A Biblical View on the Principalities

Jesus Christ referred to Satan as the god of this world, thus for God's perfect Will to be established on earth, there has to be no murder, theft, child molestation, incest, abduction, etc. God's perfect Will, will only be seen when Revelation 11:15 comes to pass.

And the seventh angel sounded. And there were great voices in Heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world have become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of His Christ. And He will reign forever and ever.

Revelation 11:15 MKJV

These four Principalities dominate the world by giving command to instruct millions of evil beings, which is the spiritual and human followers of Satan through the lesser demons – this happens on a daily basis. It is unequivocally important for Christians to submit daily to the Lord in prayer and to ask for Godly, Holy Spirit inspired protection against the kingdom of Darkness and to lead a sanctified life (Matthew 6L13).

Before the Satan rebelled against God, the Princes were mighty angels of God; they rebelled with Satan and today serve Him (and themselves) in the highest positions in the **Evil Government** as the **immoral governors of the world**.

Because Satan was in the very presence of God, he clearly knows what God hates and abhors, this makes him very dangerous as it is exactly that knowledge that he uses against God to defile mankind with sin, because God hates sin, and rob their

children from the blessings and fellowship of God. It seems that Satan is even more dangerous today than two thousand years ago, considering the following points:

- There are more people on earth today to oppress and possess.
- Satan has got 2000 years more experience in warfare against mankind.
- Through progressive scientific research into the spirit realm, he and his co-workers, Demonic Entities, Principalities and Powers, World-rulers, Nephillims and possibly Hybrids – has gained increasing power and skills. Many scholars states that as there are apparently numerous scientific laboratories and underground basis under the authority of this Kingdom of Darkness (spiritual as well as physical).⁵¹

This thesis deems important for all parents to know that the principalities are actively busy defiling children; they usually start the defiling process with the parents so that the iniquities of the parents could carry over to their children.

6.3.2 Appollyon's Specific Aims to Destroy Children

Appollyon's, (known as the Prince of the East/Celtic Religion known as Lugh) primary purpose, work and goal is to get humankind **not to worship and serve God**. Therefore he has to prevent and resist true worship of God the Father and God the Son and the God the Holy Spirit..

6.3.2.1 Characteristics of Appollyon, detecting the workings of this principality in children

- He is known as the False Angel of Light – Light Bearer. He manifests and disguises himself as an angel of light, causing children to follow his ways as it appears to be “good”.

⁵¹ Brand, Connie M.J (1998) Geestelijke Oorlogvoering, Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë. Unpublished.

- He is a Lying Spirit, thereby disguising the truth. He prompts children to lie.
- He is a Twister and Turner – switch darkness to light. He infiltrates the minds of children and the youth and twists and turns the truth.
- He causes sin.
- He blots out guilt conscience, causing children to listen to the voice of **self and Satan**, searing the conscience with the effect that the child will not be able to know right from wrong.
- Leads humankind into heathen religions / Eastern Mysticism, which includes cults (See the following Chapter on Cults).
- Leads humankind into idolatry, which includes self worship. Children identify with what they see in the media and symbols on the clothes they wear, it becomes who they are – their identity. They usually identify with a demonic being.
- He causes fear - especially children and the youth, physical fear as well as the fear of not feeling good enough and worthless, personally as well as in their peer groups.
- He causes illnesses linked to Occultism.
- He is a deceiver **per excellence**.
- He is the father of all falsehoods.
- He the false healer (it takes the place of Jesus Christ), in Africa it manifests as Sangoma's – alternative healers.
- He has got status in the Medical World today. (The Medical Oath of Hippocrates are taken in the name of Appollyon).

Appollyon is very active today in promoting and implementing false religions and worship. He and his hordes also work directly with false doctrines, Church division and adamantly try to remove Jesus Christ out of his position as Saviour according to the Bible. Appollyon is responsible for “*doctrines of demons*” and through his lies he prevents humankind to make a **commitment** to the Triune God and to stick to their commitments to Jesus Christ. His aim is to ruin and destroy Christian vision. By

destroying Christian vision he destroys generations, as children will not be brought up in a healthy Christian orientated family structure.

Appollyon prevents, resists and destroys financial support and promises coming to the true Church of Jesus Christ and His ministries on earth, since he works together with Mammon⁵². Methods used by Appollyon is to cause disunity, gossip and strife in the Church through flattering tongues, back-biters, back-stabbers, slanderers, gossipers, hindering spirits and twisters-and-turners to stir up radical problems to prevent people from giving and tithing. It also causes disunity in the family when one of the spouses gets addicted to gambling, working long hours to bring in more money etc. thus when money starts to rule a person live.

Appollyon is very active to send out demons against Christians to make them prayerless and spiritually “dry”. He cherishes and instigates sin and spiritual pride as well as activates criticism in the body of Christ. A family unit is also seen as the body of Christ – criticism between spouses, between parents and children and between siblings can cause a lot of hurt and resentment, breaking up the family unit.

For the true Christian Church, the number one Enemy to warfare against - would be Appollyon and his hordes since he carries the **spirit of disunity** as well as a **spirit of dualism**. He is apparently behind the main reason for arguments without reason, jealousy, pride, delusions of grandeur, haughtiness, arrogance, stupidity and destruction of marriages, relationships, family, ministry and **LIFE**.

It is important to note that Appollyon is a **destructor**. He works together with the Powers of Baal and Ashtaroth and his primary goal is **IDOLATRY** – enticing humankind in worshipping money, status, sex, sport, music, calling, wife, child, etc. by destructing he parents enticing them with worldly “*appare*” he destroys their generation.

⁵² A personification of riches as an evil spirit or deity.

His purpose is dual:

- To get humankind into **HELL**.
- To restrain and prevent humankind to do **anything** in aid of the Triune God.

In Greek Times, Appollyon was a Greek Prince/god. Some consider him to be the most prominent and important in Greek Mythology, he was gigantic and clothed in iron with a fear-inspiring presence. He was in control of the *muses, the arts, drama, literature, music, mimic, healing, as well as being an orator*.

If one keeps all of Appollyon's purposes and goals in mind it is quite easy to identify his hand in the destruction of the children and the youth.

In the occult, according to Helena P Blavatsky, Appollyon was a contemporary of Jesus, more perfect in nature and he was worshipped the same as God. He had the ability to raise people from the dead, he would discern at a glance, between real and apparent death and raise the dead in an instant. Appollyon was regarded "*equal to Jesus*", also in commanding terrestrial and elementary spirits; he was superior in ability to astral project. Some Occultists under the influence of Appollyon used the Freemasonry invocation and secret "*name*" (Jabulion) to astral project.⁵³

According to New Agers, Applollyon's god-like attributes symbolises the struggle between intellect and passion or mind and body. It sends out flashes of lightning, which symbolises **oracle powers of divination**. He carries a bow and arrows because when he started off, he was a **storm god**. He is known for animal drives that involve suffering or being torn apart and he is represented by the **WEREWOLF**. The werewolf is used by satanic hierarchy as the destructors, murderers and disciplinarians.⁵⁴

⁵³ Blavatsky, Helena P. *Isis Unveiled*.

⁵⁴ Brand, Prof Dr Connie (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness Volume 1(Three Volumes)*. Waterkloof, Gauteng: Self- Published

In almost all of the supernatural movies and television shows, werewolves are often used, usually depicted as beautiful young men/woman. The mysteriousness of these creatures entice young people to imagine them as lovers, or creatures to be loved and cherished, this is a false depiction as these creatures in the realm of Satan is extremely cruel and evil – a depiction of a demon - Appollyon.

Members of his Cult would take part in rituals with live serpents, which were taking place at night or in a cave or in the unfathomable depths of the forest (The serpent force is always the feminine force at work). In him the two sexual forces are always in a struggle. He eats of the Tree of Knowledge. In modern day Psychology he is the Integration of the Id and Super-Ego in Freudian language.

He is also seen as the symbol of the sun, representing new life, rising from the ashes of fire, he appears unexpectedly to fill the vacuum of a bleak life. He is identified as the dawn sun, rising brilliantly through the greyness of first light.

He declares life as well as death in the spiritual realm. (Hence the healer and destructor, death), the breaths of life emerge from the throat of the Phoenix. His origin is from the Divine Isle of Fire in Egyptian Mythology. He is also the symbol of re-birth – therefore the New Agers see him as the **epitomé of reincarnation**.

6.3.3 Abáddon's (Hebrew Name) Specific Aims to Destroy Children

Although Abáddon and Appollyon are seen in Scripture as one and the same - Abáddon (Hebrew) and Appollyon (Greek), in their application in the **hierarchy of darkness**, there is a vast difference in their functions.

Their names have the same meaning: **ETERNAL DESTRUCTION!**

Abáddon is deemed to be the polluting demon, especially foul smelling when deliverance is done. His goal is to pull the youth into clubs and discothèques around the World – places where sexual immorality is rampant, as he is the instigating power behind it and responsible for the strobe light used in clubs and disco's. He is responsible for instigating drugs through the air-con systems during Concerts or performances, together with the flow of alcohol and other drugs these satanic rock concerts serves the goal as “alter calls” for Satan.

Satan's chief goal towards children and the youth is the destruction of their innocence!

6.3.3.1 Characteristics of Abáddon detecting the workings of this principality in children

- To turn the mind of children and the youth into chaos and confusion, as Satan is the author thereof.
- Shattering the youths thought life, capturing their thoughts and keeping them focussed on the workings of Satan. Where God states that the mind should behold that what is good and acceptable to God (Philippians 4:8)⁵⁵
- To sow doubt. Especially around whom God is and what the child's identity in Christ is.
- To mislead. Misleading children and the youth from God and their salvation, misleading them from the Truth and the Light which is in Jesus.
- To divide.
- Strife and arguments.
- The breaking up of families.

⁵⁵ ***Finally, my brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are honest, whatever things are right, whatever things are pure, whatever things are lovely, whatever things are of good report; if there is any virtue and if there is any praise, think on these things.***

Philippians 4:8 MKJV

- Divorce.
- Involvement in Occultism.
- Addictions to drugs, alcohol, sex and power.

Abáddon corresponds with Leviathan, the Dragon, the Prince of the West (to confuse Christians, Satan is giving his names to his underlings – the Christian Minister / Counsellor will be led by the Holy Spirit to discern and to know the correct names to use. Other members of the Kingdom of Darkness working together with Abáddon are: the Powers of murder and blood lust; Molech; Marduk; Nimrod; Thor; Odin; Koki; Grendle; Athena; Mars; Valhalla; Morrigan; Trolls – all of them gods of warfare and destruction. Also of importance is Ashtarte; Dagon; Hades; Hecate; Three fates of Hecate; the Grim Reaper; Janus; Janvier and Kush the god of confusion.

As the destructor, Abáddon's main goal is to defile children and the youth especially Christians. His aim is to cause Christians to become unholy – so that they cannot stand before God and they are devoid of the Holy Spirit, when this happens a Christian's fellowship with God's suffers and he then prevents the Christian to repent. Thus keeping the Christian in a continual state of un-repenting sin, promoting a **spirit of blame shift**, causes a Christian to become alienated from Jesus Christ, the Christians source of Power.

Children has the ability to minister to their peers as well as their parents and grandparents, there are many cases where children have shared the gospel with adults and the adults came to the Lord Jesus, keeping the child or the youth in an un-repenting state, blame shifting one another children become caught up and stuck in sin, they grow up without the protection and freedom which is in Christ. A person without the empowerment of the Holy Spirit is spiritually neutralised and thus no threat to the Kingdom of Darkness. Such a person will be ear-marked by helplessness, hopelessness, fruitlessness, aggression, worthlessness, passivity and defilement.

He works together with Satan to provide foul thoughts and deeds in humankind and their children. **He promotes bad habits, adultery, fornication, incest, homosexuality, lesbianism, bestiality, pornography and paedophilia.** It is important to note that the Principalities appear in different cultures under different names, but in essence and character they remain the same – Satan aims to confuse all the time, **as he is author of confusion.**

Abáddon aims to integrate children and the youth into Satan's world system, he wants to lure the youth into alcoholism, thereby robbing them of their will – causing them to lose control of their minds. To achieve this goal he works closely with Bacchus⁵⁶ the demon of addictions, such as (on) drugs, smoking and alcohol. Entangling the youth in addiction Satan finds it much easier to control them, for his diabolical perverted ends.

By getting the youth addicted to sex, drugs, alcohol, religion, pleasure, perversion, blood-lust and power, the victims are open to be controlled and manipulated by the Kingdom of Darkness – human as well as spirit beings. To achieve this Abáddon sends his powers of lust and addiction to wherever there is **a right** or open door either in the victims own life or in the life of his **Bloodline** (generation / family). His deeper aim though is to maximise the **ADDICTION** by multiple evil spirits of bondage, the deeper aim is always progressive.

Abáddon is also the main principality behind **Rock music** and drugs, which also includes the Christian rock and rap music, he promotes prostitution, drugs and nymphomania in little girls, which is also enhanced by promiscuity in the music and media industry – when he sends out demons to afflict children in this area there is plus minus fifty thousand evil spirits with the mission – of **NO MERCY!**

⁵⁶ Satan's Seven High Ranking Principalities of hell (www.unsignedmysteries.com/usm167314.html)

When a child is caught in the web of Abaddon, Asmodee (sex) and Mammon (money) either themselves or through their bloodlines (from their parents), this principality has a very strong hold over the child.

Children are raised without discipline and boundaries; it causes them to search for these boundaries in all the wrong places – without discipline and boundaries children are an open target for the Kingdom of Darkness.

He works on Christians by causing discontent and frustration about their belongings and marriages, friendships, children, relationships, work and callings - by disrupting the family unit in this manner it could cause children to feel unworthy; they feel that they are failures in the eyes of their parents. It also causes rejection which causes great issues in children's lives, even throughout their adult lives. Christian's principles as seen through Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are changed to a materialistic World View.

If then you were raised with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God. Be mindful of things above, not on things on the earth.

Colossians 3:1-2 MKJV

It is important for parents to realise that by trespassing on the principles of the above-mentioned, Christian will lose the opportunity to hear the voice of the Holy Spirit by recklessly spending money for greedy purposes; Christians will come under the control of Mammon and will receive the "*germ of the corporate ladder*". This is a progressive path that will eventually lead the victim away from God and the victim's family. Once a workaholic, the lust for money and power can lead to divorce, alcoholism, perversion, etc.

One of the main aims of Abaddon is to get people hooked to **GLUTTONY** through the **lusts of the flesh** which work through the stomach and sex organs.

Girls from a very young age become obsessed with food and their weight, it creates a lust for food which causes the child to overeat, and the outflow of these afflictions causes conditions like bulimia and anorexia. One of the characteristics of Abaddon is that **HE IS VERY PERSISTENT** – parents should thus pray for protection over their children by the Blood of the Lord Jesus against this principality and his entourage and flee temptation.

This thesis puts emphasis on the destructor - **APPOLLYON/ABADDON** because it deems it imperative to reveal Satan's conspiracy and goal of destruction against the children of mankind.

6.3.4 Prince of the West Leviathan (The Dragon, the Snake)

Leviathan's primary purpose, aim and goal is to **MANIPULATE, CONTROL, BEGUILE, SEDUCE, ABORT AND INTIMIDATE** humankind and their generations.

With conception the influence of this Principality is already evident in the unsaved or the sinful-saved. He entails confusion of the mind, smoke screens to veil the spiritual ears and eyes of mankind, hindering them to see the glory of the Lord, he also veils the mind so the glory of the Gospel of the Truth cannot shine through and lead to freedom.

Leviathan brings people in doubt enabling him to mislead and deceive them, to bring strife and stir up arguments to cause family relations to break up.

He is seen as the strong man concerning Occultism. All Secret Societies are veiled under the cover of Leviathan. As previously mentioned, he works together with Abaddon and he is without fear.

Entities Working Together with Leviathan:

- Python the spirit of Abort
- Jezebel the spirit of Intimidation, Control and Murder
- Numerous Water Spirits: the whole spectrum of sexuality – Isis, Marine, Asmodee, Poseidon, Succubus, Oncibus, Sirene, etc.

The Dragon evicts fire literally and figuratively – he instigates the fire of turmoil and strife and anger. The methodology of LEVIATHAN is to sear the conscience, to cause cold blood with no repentance. The utmost goal of LEVIATHAN is to abort the Church, marriage, the mind of men as well as all relationships. His cause is to upset a person without reason or cause.

In that day Jehovah with His great and fierce and strong sword shall punish the sea-monster, the darting serpent, the sea-monster, that twisting serpent; and He shall kill the monster in the sea.

Isaiah 27:1 MKJV

6.4 The Job Functions of Demons

The primary function of all demonic powers is to follow Satan's agenda to destroy mankind. Fallen angels, demons and/or evil spirits are to serve Satan in the fulfilment of his rebellion against the living God and His creation man. Demons' mode of operation can be understood as being the reverse of that of angels:

- Serve and worship Satan.
- Rejoice in Satan's works.
- Execute Satan's wishes.
- Negatively affect the affairs of nations.
- Undermine the work of the Church.
- Specifically oppose and attack believers.

- Punish Satan's enemies.
- Perform extraordinary acts to advance Satan's cause.
- Attack personally each and every human being and child.
- Take legal right over the bloodline of a generation (family) where sin, transgression and iniquity prevail.
- Since Satan and his Demonic Hierarchy have ownership of sin, strongholds (bondage) take place where sin occurs as a pattern (habit) individually and/or generational.

The specific of how these objectives are carried out and fulfilled are many and varied. The hatred that demons have for God's people is very intense and can sometimes be seen expressed by people taken over by the demonic, especially in their active opposition and persecution of God's people. Demons sometimes have particular job functions.

- To bring sickness in general (spirits of infirmity);
- Other spirits of infirmity are highly specific to particular conditions – e.g. only causing cancer or paralysis.
- It is also very common to find spirits active in a family line, causing the same symptoms from generation to generation. Deliverance from a spirit of infirmity running down a family line not only has far-reaching consequences for the present-day victim but also for the future generations.
- Some spirits affects children's minds, controlling their thought processes, causing them to not function as God intended.
- Children affected by MIND-CONTROLLING demons find it very hard to understand spiritual truth. The cause most of the time can be attributed to Freemasonry in the bloodline.
- Demons hold people and children in bondage to experiences of the past through their emotions.

These job functions are often governed by the entry point it was given into the child's life. Once a demon with a specific job function has entered a child, it remains loyal to that function throughout its term of occupation. Since this thesis doesn't include an exploration in the job functions of the Demonic, brief mention of the functions will have to suffice for now.

6.4.1 Demons are Well Organised and are under Higher Authority

Although the repercussions of Satanic/Demonological influence imply some chaotic interference Satan's Kingdom is not a kingdom of chaos. This is not the case because Satan was once also part of the well organised Hierarchy of Angelic power before his fall. Now in organizing his own Hierarchy of Demonic power he is merely **imitating the angelic realms**. Satan is the author of chaos and confusion but his chaos is highly organised and designed to destroy mankind.

The ruling spirits over a nation are well-organised with a Hierarchy of control over different regions, cities, towns and districts. In some towns, for example, their presence can be felt as a person moves from one area to another. In addition to territorial ruling spirits, there are functional ruling spirits over both countries and towns, with specific job functions of inciting particular forms of behaviour that are contrary to God's purposes for man – for example, spirits that encourage sexual abuse, homosexuality, pornography, violence and greed. Within the lives of individuals there are often well-organised structures of demonic control, especially with those who have been demonised a long time, **even from earliest childhood**.

What Satan has claimed for himself he does not give up lightly.

In many cases it is found necessary with severely demonised people to unpick carefully the demonic structure and loose the demons from each other's control before they could be loose from the individual. It seems that very few demons who operate on their own. They are allowed to use their "*initiative*" within the bounds of their instructions. Each one is under the authority of a higher power until; ultimately, one reaches Satan himself – the pinnacle of the structure of the powers of darkness. Lesser demons also seem to be in fear of those above them in the hierarchy.

Demons are given rights by man through sin, unless that sin is repented of, demons will legalistically hang on to the ground they have been given. One of the most common reasons why demons do not leave Christians is the fact they have a right to be there, which they will legalistically hang on to. The practice of Freemasonry is idolatry. Idolatry is an anathema to the living God. The commandments warn that the sins of the fathers in this respect will be visited **on the children for three or four generations.**

You shall not make to yourselves any graven image, or any likeness of anything that is in the heavens above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. You shall not bow yourself down to them, nor serve them. For I Jehovah your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the sons to the third and fourth generation of those that hate me,

Exodus 20:4-5 MKJV

If during those four generations there is further idolatry, a New line of demonic control is established (See Chapter Three on Idolatry).

6.4.2 Demons Work Together in Families

In the New Testament Jesus talked about the spiritual power of agreement between two or three believers.

Again I say to you that if two of you shall agree on earth as regarding anything that they shall ask, it shall be done for them by My Father in Heaven.

Matthew 18:19 MKJV

Demons use this exact same principle and work together to entrap a child. One of the most common examples of a family of demons is the group that controls rejection. The ruling spirit of rejection which can enter a child even in the mother's womb is usually supported by a ***spirit of fear of rejection*** and a ***spirit of self-rejection*** as well.

The spirit of fear of rejection rides into the emotions to prevent the child who have been rejected from going into circumstances where further rejection might occur. That is how the child is responding inside, but in reality it is the demon that is afraid that the person might feel accepted, for that would undermine the power of rejection.

There are many other powerful groupings that are often encountered. Other regions will also have their own demonic groupings that are typical of the culture and religious background of the indigenous races. In a person who has become demonised, a demon that is already in residence will attempt to strengthen its power base by inviting others to come in as well. For example, a ***spirit of lust***, which enters through the eyes, might then encourage the person to get involved in sexual sin. As a result a ***spirit of fornication*** will enter. And once this demonic doorway is open it acts like a demonic tube down which the enemy can pour his workers – which will affect children being born from that bloodline.

7. A PRACTICAL EXPLANATION/DESCRIPTION OF THE METHODS OF DESTRUCTION AS SEEN IN THE AIMS OF THE PRINCIPALITIES TO DESTROY THE YOUTH

Satan uses a specific pattern of operation against humankind which is found throughout Scripture, discovered throughout history and experienced by both believers and unbelievers all the way through the ages. From the verse below it is clear that Satan attempts to draw mankind into disobedience to God, which is also clear when he tempted Eve to be disobedient towards her Creator.

And Satan stood up against Israel and provoked David to take a census of Israel.

1 Chronicles 21:1 MKJV

This thesis does not deem to expose all the methods of destruction, but the most important ones in the modern times to get children caught up in the web of Satan's destruction.

Found here is Satan's main strategy, his primary target and his essential purpose. **His main strategy of temptation is deception.** David was moved by Satan to have a census, just like Eve he had no idea where the idea originated but it seemed to be correct and a logical thing to do, David felt disturbed about it but he went ahead with the plan, Joab the military commander voiced his opinion that David's decision wasn't right, when God's judgement fell upon Israel David immediately realised his wrongdoing and repented (2 Samuel 24:1-10).

From this it is clear that mankind's sin has a dual source – a person's wrong choice thus out of the will of God and a supernatural source which comes down to Satan's temptation. A seed of evil thoughts and imaginations are planted into the minds and hearts of mankind intensifying the evil that is already there (Acts 5:1-13, 2 Corinthians 7:5).

Satan and his demons approach mankind with a false impression which is the essential meaning of deception and is almost always his launching pad. Once a person accepted the deception and fell for the lie, a stronghold is established in a person's life (Ephesians 4:27).

Leaders are the main target for the deception; Satan moves in deception against people in all levels of leadership may it be political, military, economic, religious, educational, media, family or any other kinds of leaders as the leaders control the destiny of humanity. When a national leader sins, all his followers and the world is affected, **when a family man sins, his entire family is affected**. If Christian leaders sins, a church, Christian institution or a Christian home is damaged or possibly paralysed and at some degree the victims of sinful actions by Christian leaders exploited by the media discredits God's church. The **main purpose** for this deception is to **dishonour God** by bringing shame and judgement upon His children.⁵⁷

7.1 Corrupting the Image of Christ

From the very beginning Satan already launched an attack to corrupt the image of Christ; during the days of Noah the sons of God took human wives and fathered offspring known as Nephilim.

There were giants in the earth in those days. And also after that, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men, and they bore to them, they were mighty men who existed of old, men of renown.

Genesis 6:4 MKJV

In the media today this is a recurring topic, even music by famous artists has this as an underlying theme. This is also found in certain cults people gets involved in as discussed in the next chapter.

⁵⁷ Murphy, Dr Ed (1992) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Nashville Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers p. 13

An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind

The fact that the fallen angels created offspring means that spiritual beings can touch man. Scripture describes spirits touching, moving, throwing or disrupting humans, in Job a spirit passed by that couldn't be seen but was felt by the body (Job 4:15-19). Other examples can also be seen in Genesis 19:1, where the angels came to Sodom the evening, 2 Samuel 24:17 David saw the angel striking people, 1 Kings 19:5 an angel touched Elijah when he lay sleeping under a tree, In Daniel 6:22 an angel shut the lions mouths and in Acts 5:19 an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors and brought them out.

Angels who resides in the spiritual realm can thus materialise themselves in the physical realm. Angels and demons have the ability to materialise in the earthly realm and them being able to produce some kind of genetic material is consistent with Scripture. Jesus warned that at the time of His coming conditions would be as they were in the days of Noah (Matthew 24:37). Just as demons mixed their seed with humans in the days before the flood, so too will they mingle their seed with humanity in the days before the second coming of Christ. One of the methods used to desensitise people to this idea is the media.

Madonna has a song that was never released on CD of having sex with a spirit; Kesha is another young star claiming to have had sex with a ghost.

A few quotes made by Kesha:

"It's about experiences with the supernatural... but in a sexy way," she told Ryan Seacrest on his KIIS FM radio show.

"I had a couple of experiences with the supernatural. I don't know his name! He was a ghost! I'm very open to it."⁵⁸

⁵⁸ Kesha on having sex with a ghost: "I had sex with a ghost" (www.jezebel.com/5946786/keha-on-having-sex-with-a-ghost-i-had-sex-with-a-ghost)

She said: "I've got a song called 'Supernatural', that song was about having sex with a ghost. I lived in this flop house at Rural Canyon and there was this weird energy that lived there, and it used to keep me at night and wake me up. And it progressed into this dark, sexual spirit. "It did scare me but that's part of the fun of it."⁵⁹

Another singer falling into this category is Katy Perry featuring Kanue West they came out with a song about sex with aliens, mixing the seed of humans with the seed of demonic beings. Because man is the temple of God's Holy Spirit Satan's plan is to defile God's temple, one of the most effective ways to do so is through sexual immorality.⁶⁰

What happened in the days of Noah has a direct correlation of what it is going to be in the last days, Jesus stated that:

***But as the days of Noah were, so shall be the coming of the Son of Man.
Matthew 24:37 MKJV***

If Satan can destroy the image of man in Christ he can ward off his own destruction.

As a result of the fall of man through sin, the image of God man was created in was blemished, mankind's spiritual composition was compromised, Satan is moving in to destroy and kill what is left of the image before mankind could come to the Lord Jesus to have his spiritual genetics restored.⁶¹

⁵⁹ Kesha speaks out on having sex with a ghost (www.celebuzz.com/2012-11-24/keha-speaks-out-on-having-sex-with-a-ghost-it-did-scare-me-but-thats-part-of-the-fun-of-it/)

⁶⁰ Subritzky, Bill (1985) Demons Defeated. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd, p 14.

⁶¹ Hamp, Douglas (2011) Corrupting the Image. USA: Douglas Hamp, p. 17.

7.1.1 The sexual iniquities root as an axiom of Post Modern Youth Problems

As parents it is important to understand the principle that if and/or when a person engages in any type of sexual iniquity – they **WILL** open themselves and their generations up to a curse.

The following is a "*shortlist*" of some of the doorways of involvement in sexual iniquity - these are the "*branches*" of the **ROOT** of sexual iniquity.

- Sex with opposite sex outside of marriage (fornication, adultery)
- Sex with the same sex (sodomy, homosexuality)
- Incest
- Sex with demons (can manifest in dreams)
- Sex with children
- Pornography.
- Sexual pleasure with brutality (sado-masochism)
- Sex with animals (bestiality)
- Harlotry
- Prostitution
- Molestation
- Rape
- Illegitimate children (Deuteronomy 23:2)
- Masturbation
- Strip shows
- Blue movies and/or pornographic material on computers
- Cybersex

The following two examples of sexual sin will result in tow ten-generational curses:

- Illegitimacy

- Incest related sin (the Ammonites and the Moabites were conceived out of incest)

To go back ten generations in a family line speaks of an awful lot of people to take into account and the probability is that almost all people has some illegitimacy and incest in their family line within the last ten generations. To understand soul/spirit ties it is best to turn to Scripture, it teaches that the consequences of the occult and sexual iniquities is worse than others.

Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.

1 Corinthians 6:18 KJV

A spirit and soul tie is the **knitting together** of one person's soul with the soul of another, which can be a wonderful blessing in a Godly relationship – marriage, or cause terrible destruction if made with the wrong person. This spirit/soul-tie connection can be made through associations, spiritual transference, and soulish transference - the most common way being through relationships.

With regards to children, parents needs to understand that the stronger the spirit/soul-tie, the more the child become like the one to whom he or she are attached to or even the peer group. Spirit/soul-ties can be formed between two people, or amongst a group of people in relationship with one another.

The strength of the spirit/soul-tie will depend on the loyalty, fidelity, and covenants made with a person, group, friendship, sexual union. Spirit/soul-ties can be likened to being "*chained*" or "*linked*" to another person or group. The chains can vary in thickness, depending on the strength of the bond.

A few examples to aid in understanding include:

7.1.1.1 Spirit/Soul ties in Friendship

David and Jonathan had an incredible friendship that brought forth life. They covenanted with each other as friends and brothers. In this type of spirit/soul-tie, the stronger the bond, the deeper and longer the relationship will last between the two.

No one has greater love than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

John 15:13 MKJV

Ruth and Naomi had a similar relationship. Each one stays faithful, considerate, unselfish, even though he/she might lose out. In deeply sincere friendships and relationships, the two souls receive strength and encouragement from each other, as well as security and love. The best and most strengthening friendships are those based on loving and following after God and His Ways.

7.1.1.2 Spirit/Soul ties in a Group or Community

Spirit/soul-ties within a Godly group or community - people who are seeking to know and love God and follow after His Ways - can be so helpful in encouragement, instruction, strengthening, and so forth. Man was not created to walk this journey alone, children needs healthy friendships and relationships to develop and learn, they need the fellowship of believers - the Body of Christ. This type of community can bring forth tremendous **LIFE**, as exemplified throughout the Book of Acts.

And the multitude of those who believed were of one heart and one soul. And not one said that any of the things which he possessed was his own. But they had all things common.

Acts 4:32 MKJV

However, again parents must heed to the warning. **Un-Godly spirit/soul-ties can be extremely dangerous and damaging.** Examples would include:

- Cults/sects - such as Jim Jones and David Berg. Organizations - such as Freemasonry (refer to the next Chapter)
- Churches - those with un-Godly and false teachings [Babylonian Roots].

The unity people have with others is an expression of the spirit/soul-ties with them, the more intense the involvement, the stronger the spirit/soul-tie. A spirit/soul tie can be created with people with whom individuals live, work, and associate with - as well as those to whose leadership a person submits to. For children it can spur out to their peers and those who have authority over them.

Because of the important and influential role people has on ones live, relationships and friendships have to be scrutinize very carefully, one's family included.

When a person is bound to someone who is controlled by false motives or selfish desires, then the spirit/soul-tie between them will cause the selfish one to abuse and manipulate the other. Man can in reality control another person through spirit/soul-ties, because the mind, will, and emotions of these two people are open to each other. In an un-Godly relationship, this spirit/soul-tie can place a child in emotional and intellectual bondage and can cause them to say and do things that cause them harm.

In **any relationship where Jesus is not Lord, an un-Godly spirit/soul-tie develops**. God requires first place in the hearts of man, therefore parents should teach their children to love the Lord with all their heart and their entire mind in order for them to have healthy relationships with others.

When a child's strongest spirit/soul-tie is with God, then there is a **Godly covering and protection** that enables the child to resist the forming of un-godly spirit/soul ties. The word "*cleave*" is used often in the Scriptures, it means to "*bring close together, follow close after, be attached to someone, or adhere to one another as with glue*". A child should be taught to cleave unto the Lord, find his strength, love and fellowship first with God and then with others.

Thou shalt fear the LORD thy God; him shalt thou serve, and to him shalt thou cleave, and swear by his name.

Deuteronomy 10:20 KJV

7.1.1.3 Spirit/Soul ties – sexual snares

Pre marital and extra marital sex can tie the spirit/soul to many sex partners, the spirit/soul tie is then scattered as if the other partners have pieces of the person's spirit/soul (heart). A relationship that originates in righteousness and holiness brings forth blessed and holy fruit. The opposite also holds true - a relationship originating in sin and adultery, brings forth bad fruit. God created the woman in such a way that the first man she has intercourse with, will rule over her.

Her spirit/soul are created in such a way as to react to the man by nurturing him, loving him and to be his fountain of gratification and blessing all his life. The control a spirit/soul tie gives to a man to rule over his beloved, can often be so strong that he can abuse and insult her - but nevertheless, she is totally bound to him. She can be abused physically and verbally, but she cannot, and oftentimes will not, leave the man.

In the case of harlotry, prostitution, and having many sexual partners, these people's spirit/ souls are totally spread amongst all their sexual partners. Their thoughts and emotions are constantly drawn back to their previous experiences and so they struggle to surrender themselves to their marriage partner. If a woman has sexual relations with several men, her spirit/soul seeks out every one of them. Her spirit is scattered and torn apart. A man's spirit is so built that for each woman he enters, his spirit is built to find, protect, bless, nurture and provide for that woman

People, whose spirit/souls are scattered among many sexual contacts, struggle to communicate sexually with their marriage partners. They are not satisfied by their partner and cannot give themselves totally. They not only look for gratification with other sex partners, but also experiment with indecent sexual practices that develop into perversity. It also leads to lust in other areas of their lives - lust for power,

wealth, alcohol, drugs, and so forth. It weakens their characters and they cannot resist temptations.

Relationships with these people always end in frustration and failure. Fantasy and imagination play a significant role which can lead to chronic masturbation, even after salvation.

Having many sexual partners may be portrayed by the society as "*cool*" and normal but the consequences of "*cheap*" sex are very expensive. Children lacks education on the spiritual side of sex, normally schools and the church would educate children about sex and the physical dangers surrounding it but not the spiritual dangers associated with it.

Lust and sin are gratifying for the moment, but man pays a high price later in shame, guilt, humiliation, anger against self, anger against God, and sorrow. It is very difficult for a person who is deeply involved in lust and self gratification to see that he deceives himself in the name of "*cheap thrills*".

Such a person usually lives a life of denial and he cannot admit that he has done anything wrong in his unchaste past. In his mind there is no sin from his past that needs to be dealt with and he does not want to change his future.

He does not want to make a decision to change his life, because he is enslaved by lust. Years of sin have weakened his character to the point where his desire for good has been destroyed and his decisions to change have been made increasingly difficult.

***They hatch adders' eggs and weave the spider's web; he who eats their
eggs dies, and that which is crushed breaks out into a viper.***

Isaiah 59:5 MKJV

During sexual intercourse transference of evil spirits takes place. If a child has been molested, the same spirit is transferred to the child and that spirit attracts other spirits. Many times any form of sexual abuse will result in addiction to masturbation. Lust and perversity are also transferred, as well as many other evil spirits.

It is very clearly seen through homosexual contacts. Homosexual spirits are very strong and many struggle to get free. Satanists also know the power of sexual contact - therefore it forms a very important part of their rituals [this is also why in ancient paganism there were temple prostitutes].

7.1.2 Pornography

Spirit/Soul-ties are also formed by fantasy and imagination. The act takes place in the thoughts (Matthew 5:28). These ties must also be cut. Masturbating while viewing the pictures, photographs, and cybersex forms strong spirit/soul-ties and the pictures need to be destroyed in the physical as well as the spirit/soul the area where visions and dreams come from which can be occupied and defiled by demonic fantasies.

7.1.3 Destructions via the sins of the flesh

By far, sins of the flesh are the **door that is most frequently opened** to invite the enemy in for destruction. This is especially true when the sin is repeated and becomes a pattern, leading to a lifestyle of indulging the flesh. Sin does not have to be "*exotic*" to provide an opening for demons. Weakness of the flesh and demons **co-labor together** to keep a vicious cycle going when people sin, the demons enter influence a person to continue to sin in the same way. They usually work by putting persistent, deceptive thoughts into the person's minds.

The following list contains some very common areas in which children indulge in their carnal appetites.

Anger: children give themselves permission to vent their anger⁶² on others. Anger can lead to violence, adding to the legal ground.

Fear: The Bible says "*fear not*."⁶³ Fear and worry often lead to sinful ways of coping. Since there are as many types of fear as there are possible ways to be injured or killed, there are many opportunities for demonic entry.

Greed/Covetousness: The Bible teaches not to covet, and it gives a warning about the severe consequences if a person does.⁶⁴

Jealousy/Envy: Envy is rottenness to the bones. It will make one sick.⁶⁵ James speaks of lusting to envy. Lust and envy can work together.

Rebellion: Ephesians speaks of walking in disobedience (rebellion), first Samuel states that rebellion is "*as the sin of witchcraft*," abhorrent to God.

Pride: This, the original sin of Satan, leads to many wrong actions. It is often the sin most hidden from man.

Lust: Satan tries to arouse lust. His strategies are subtle.⁶⁶

Gluttony: *Aim* magazine reported that as much as 73 percent of the America population is overweight. This is a serious national health problem.

Gossip: This sin gives Satan rich opportunity to work.⁶⁷

Strife: James states that where envying and strife [is], there [is] confusion and every evil work.⁶⁸ God hates those who sow strife/discord

Bitterness: In Hebrews, God commands to allow no root of bitterness.

Self-Righteousness: "*I am right and everyone else is wrong*." This sin distances a child from others in the church, at school, in the family etc, and most importantly from God.

Criticizing, Blaming, Judging: In this sin, one's own life is often held up as the standard of rightness. Others are put down or seen as the cause/reason for everything being wrong.

⁶² Ephesians 4:26-32, Colossians 3:8, James 1:19-20

⁶³ Luke 12:32, John 12:15, 2 Timothy 1:7,

⁶⁴ Exodus 20:17, 1 Timothy 6:9-10.

⁶⁵ Proverbs 14:30 .

⁶⁶ Jude 14:3. Also 1 John 2:15-16.

⁶⁷ 1 Timothy 5:13.

⁶⁸ James 3:16.

Unforgiveness: God makes it very clear that forgiveness is an absolute requirement for freedom. The story of the unjust servant shows that if one does not forgive, God allows the tormentors (demons included) access to us.

Illness and Accidents – it is important for parents to pray for protection if their children are sick, Illness provides an opportunity for demons to enter. In these two forms of physical trauma — illness and accidents — defenses are lowered, the will is weakened, and the ability to pray for oneself is lessened. Demons love to take advantage of a child's vulnerability. **Anything** that a child is in bondage to is a potential open door for Demonic Oppression.

In accidents, during the time of shock and trauma, demons take advantage of the child's weakened defences to "swarm" into their soul realm. Demons of "*shock*," "*trauma*" "*depression*," "*accident*," etc., will move right in, ignoring the fact that "*it isn't fair*." They sometimes are able to set up additional accidents, starting a cycle of "*accident proneness*."

7.1.4 Emotional Trauma

Emotional trauma is another common, yet unrealized, potential open door. A traumatic emotional or physical experience fractures the defenses that normally keep demons out. Many children experience, at one time or another in their lives, the emotional trauma of loss. Common examples are the breakup of a relationship, divorce, unexpected death, job loss, and abuse. Other more severe forms of emotional and physical trauma include violence, rape, and ritual sexual abuse.

When any of these occur in childhood, it can lead to fractured or multiple personalities as part of the child's "*coping*" mechanism for survival. Any or all of these personalities may also be oppressed by demons. This can complicate the job of ministering to these people considerably, as the minister needs the wisdom of the

Holy Spirit to discern when he is dealing with a part of the personality and when it is a demonic entity.⁶⁹

7.1.5 Passive or Trance State of Mind – the Spirit of Passivity

Under normal circumstances, the mind has a protective wall around it, provided by the will — which is man's ability to say "No" to what is wrong, and "Yes" to what is right. When one gives up his will in a passive or trance state of mind, the door is opened for demons to invade. The person may become partially or even completely controlled by the demonic.

There are three main ways that a person allows their minds to enter the passive state that makes us so vulnerable to demons:

Trances: When the mind is neutral, open, and unguarded (i.e., hypnosis).

Induced Mental States: Voluntarily letting go, usually through drugs, chants, music (rock and roll), meditation [yoga or TM (mantra)], watching TV (which can produce a trance).

Anaesthesia: When used during operations.

The experience of being anesthetized — though different from either self-induced passivity or a trance state — is similar in that it leaves the mind unguarded. In reality, it is a "*drug induced*" passivity or trance. When minds are passive because of anaesthesia, a strong prayer covering is essential.

7.1.6 Occult Involvement

Occult involvement is the major form of idolatry (Exodus 20:3-6). The word "*occult*" means "*hidden*." Occult involvement means looking for knowledge and/or power in

⁶⁹ Friesen, James G. Friesen (1991) *Uncovering the Mystery of MPD*. San Bernardino, CA: Here's Life Publishers, Inc.

"hidden" sources, sources other than the true and living God. This eventually leads to allegiance or worship to those other sources. Participation in occult activities amounts to rebellion against God. It is frequently driven by a **lust for power** through knowledge and control.

Occult involvement, like drug use or sexual sin, **is progressive**. It takes more and more to be satisfied. People start out with something mild, such as astrology, and progress to something more serious and eventually end up in witchcraft. This level of involvement puts a person into contact with demons.

Demons can enter even when one dabbles in the occult areas in **ignorance**. Unfortunately ignorance of the law of God is no excuse. If an ancestral sin or curse is in operation, it takes very little particularly in the occult area, to provide an opportunity for demon entry.

God hates the occult. This is clear through many scriptures, where God strictly forbids involvement therein. A person or child renounce all desire for psychic (demonic) gifts and abilities and affirm that he wants only the gifting of the Holy Spirit to operate through him.

7.1.7 Halloween, a form of Idolatry

Trick or treat comes from pagan cults - worshippers of Satan. The earliest celebrations were held by Druids in honour of Shamhain, lord of the dead. They believed that Shamhain called together wicked spirits, fairies, witches and elves to harm people. To exorcise yourself of these ghosts, you set out a food treat. If you didn't, they would trick you. Druids might even ask **for your child to sacrifice**.

Jack-o-lantern is the ancient symbol of a dammed soul. Today Satan worshippers have their highest Sabbath mass on the eve of October 31st; it ends on November

1st. To obtain the greatest power, perform the greatest sacrifice; humans are preferred above animals. This is the time to proclaim powers for control and leadership of the satanic realm of world systems.

Haunted houses are good places to get demons of fear, rebellion and unclean spirits. Orange, black and red are considered to be the Devil's colors. Children get demons when they surrender to Satan and partake of his worship. To mask is to obscure the true identity of the reveler so that he/she can commit sin in secret. In 800 A.D. All Saints Day was established on November 1 to honor all dead saints; by praying to the dead saints man goes into the act of necromancy which God forbids him to do.

7.1.8 Destroying a Healthy Family Structure

Families are very important to God as God is the Father of families, Satan however is particularly set on destroying a healthy family structure; families in these modern times could only have one present parent. Causes being one parent trying to make ends meet by working long hours, divorces, separations or even death etc. Children need personal attention, loving relationships with people who take time to care about them. If this is lacking a child could be troubled.

Almost everything imaginable has been blamed for causing youth to be troubled: weak discipline at home and in school, a pervading disregard for authority, leniency in the juvenile justice system, violence on the television, divorce, drugs, alcohol, sexual and violent music lyrics, child abuse, poverty, pornography, mental disorders, and even physiology. **All of these suspected culprits boil down to: rejection, neglect, and parental unconcern.** Admittedly this is a generalization and there will be exceptions as in any case but it is strongly believed to be the rule.

These children, male or female mistrusts others, lacks adult supervision to provide emotional support and to model suitable behaviour, they have primitive social values,

turns to peers to find acceptance and approval these troubled children would do almost anything to find acceptance and love, and has virtually no relationship with God.

The following is a general profile of the typical troubled young person:

1. Lives for instant gratification, postponement of rewards is unacceptable.
2. Exhibits learned behaviours. Attitudes and behaviour patterns are learned from others, a shocking and discouraging sign of the lack of mature, adult role models.
3. Extremely self-centred. The universe revolves around the child and it is expected that the world should contribute to the child's pleasure.
4. Finds comfort and a measure of fulfilment in delinquent behaviour. Delinquent acts bring few feelings of guilt or remorse.
5. Peer group surrounds the child which usually reinforces the behaviour; the child is self-centred but usually not independent.
6. Has a weak conscience and is less affected by guilt than the average person.
7. Suspicious of anyone representing the "establishment." The child is not anxious to develop relationships with those who uphold the standards against which the child has rebelled.
8. Learned to use people without becoming attached to them. People become "tools" in the child's quest for meaning.
9. The Law is not respected nor, tradition, or people in authority positions.
10. Capable of loyalties and selfish love. The bases for the child's friendships are difficult for the average citizen to understand, but these are realistic relationships for troubled youth.
11. Achieved proficiency in "conning."
12. Usually has a stable personality.
13. The child has the belief that his/her behaviour is all right. From the child's perspective, the motives are justified and behaviour is reasonable.
14. Usually not upset about delinquent life, except when caught.

15. Not interested in changing; little thought is given to how to straighten out.
16. The child is not mentally "sick" or out of touch with reality.
17. Strives to achieve recognition as an adult by doing adult "things."
18. Emotionally immature. Emotions run to extremes—elation to depression, submission to defiance.
19. Tends to be either loud: uninhibited or quiet and cunning.
20. The child lives by his/her own set of rules and follows behavioural guidelines often set by a gang or peer group.
21. Accepts pleasure as his guiding life-principle. Self-centred, materialistic, and status-oriented values scream, "I want it, and I want it now!"
22. Enjoys shocking people with extreme speech and behaviour; refinement is resisted.
23. The child is lonely. The gang or peer group does not meet his/her needs for love and self-worth.
24. The child may use delinquent behaviour to get attention.

Most scientist do agree that the culture a child grows up in has an effect on them, there are three cultural influences home, school and peer group. Any unhealthy influences in these cultural areas could thus promote attitudes, values and actions leading to anti-social behaviour.⁷⁰

A distorted family is usually the background of a delinquent, a bad home breeds antisocial attitudes; most children cannot emerge unscathed from families featuring alcoholic parents, promiscuous mothers and or sisters, single parents, drug abusing brothers, unemployed fathers of a combination of the above. Discipline in distorted homes is usually extremely stern and harsh, these extreme permissiveness communicates the lack of concern and love and the strictness is usually uninformed and cruel and inconsistent.

⁷⁰ Dwight, S and Veerman, D () Reaching out to Troubled Youth, pp 28-29.

Today's cultural patterns of life puts children and families after everything else, such as making money, achieving recognition, and fulfilling civic and social obligations. Parenting is to be done, but it happens in the "spare time" parents have left. A child needs consistent, good discipline which is carried out in love, consisting of common understanding between children and parents. Regardless if the child comes from a family where both parents are there or a broken home, the key ingredient in every family is the relationship between parent and child.

If the parent is loving, considerate, and understanding, the child will be able to grow and mature in almost any kind of family structure.

Although family is an important role in a child's life, far more noteworthy is the presence of a caring adult who loves God. Ideally every child should have parents who model and teach love for God.

Only take heed to yourself and keep your soul carefully, lest you forget the things which your eyes have seen, and lest they depart from your heart all the days of your life. But teach them to your sons, and your sons' sons. Remember the day that you stood before Jehovah your God in Horeb, when Jehovah said to me, Gather the people to Me, and I will make them hear My Words so that they may learn to fear Me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and they may teach their sons.

Deuteronomy 4:9-10 MKJV

Peers are the second major influence after families on young people they influence values, how young people relate and talk to others. In these peer groups almost every area of a young person's life is talked about, from ideas about themselves, parents, school, and trends, to attitudes about sex, drinking, drugs, and disobeying the law. When young people have problems at home, these associations become extremely important, often to the point where the family is no longer seen as a reliable source of advice or information. When a young person's needs aren't met at home, the next step is to seclude him/herself emotionally from the family and attach

to friends, it doesn't matter what kinds of people these friends are, as long as they accept him or her.

Parents usually wants to understand why their youngster's acts out the way they do, usually delinquent acts express needs or provide unorthodox ways to address problems. A lot of delinquency is the result of homes out of divine order, neglect or hate for the children and abuse of children hardens their hearts and leaves a child unable to enter society and fulfil his or her divine purpose.

7.1.8.1 Delinquent Personalities

People who are hurting and do not completely forgive; allow Satan's demons to minister to them and build a demonic personality in their mind and body, this personality is not normal and it usually is not pleasant. Total forgiveness of others and oneself is healing to both the body and mind.

The common denominator in all delinquent personalities is the almost total **lack of Godly principle**. The root cause of most personality disorders is **serious rejection**, the ultimate rejection is the murder of the unborn – attempted abortion which failed or at nine months where the parents wish the child would die before or at birth would result in the child feeling unwanted, such a person will spend their whole life to try to get people to accept them. If a feeling of acceptance cannot be achieved, the person will become increasingly more removed from normalcy, becoming more bitter and eventually rebelling against all authority.

Abused children could hardly trust anyone, not even God. They cannot comprehend true love, therefore they cannot accept nor comprehend the love of Jesus, and they cannot understand abiding help and therefore cannot understand the work of the Holy Spirit. God does not promise a live without pain or loss but He

shows mankind to respond to all parts of life from the knowledge of the Truth of the Bible.

8. CONCLUSION

The best-known Old Testament reference to Satan is in the prologue of Job, where Satan, appearing before God, disputes Job's integrity and urges God to test him. The prophet Zechariah sees a vision in which Satan is represented as the accuser of a high priest named Joshua; in the latter, Satan incites King David to take a census of Israel. If asked to identify the first biblical reference to Satan or the devil, many Christians would refer to Genesis 3. In this narrative of the fall, Eve is tempted by a "serpent." Although the word *Satan* does not appear in the text, it is traditional to see his influence behind the serpent. Isaiah describes the monarch's desire to elevate himself above the stars and become like God and his subsequent downfall and humiliation.⁷¹

There is thus little doubt that the biblical writers believed in the existence of Satan and demons, this conviction helped these authors for what they experienced in their lives, the critical question facing modern readers of the Bible is whether such a belief is credible and meaningful today, people and even Christians wonder if they can still endorse with integrity the belief in the existence of a personal devil and demons and if it has any value for Christians living at the end of the twenty first century.

Since the enlightenment, Western thinking has been dominated by a worldview that is unsympathetically to supernaturalism in any form, belief in spiritual entities whether good or evil is often regarded as a vestige of primitive superstition that has no place in the modern world. It is undeniable that the intellectual tradition of the West is unsympathetic to belief in spirits, but it would be a serious mistake to think that modern scientific discoveries have shown such a belief to be erroneous. The

⁷¹ Page, S (1995) Powers of Evil, A Biblical Study of Satan & Demons. Michigan: Baker Books, pp 11, 38.

simple fact of this matter is that the question of the existence of incorporeal beings cannot be proved or disproved by scientific methods. The question is not one that science is capable of answering, as the query is philosophical and theological in nature.

Believing in Satan and demons may be a significant role in preserving belief in the goodness of God. Satan and his angels may not be at the centre of biblical revelation, but they represent an important aspect of the portrayal of the fallenness of creation and its need for redemption. Of special interest is the prominence of the demonic in the New Testament teaching concerning the mission of Jesus. The reality of Satan and demons are supported by the authority of Scripture and of Jesus Christ Himself. Those who regard the Bible as divine revelation and who believe that Jesus was infallible, cannot simply disregard what they both teach with regards to evil spirits.

This thesis thus sees the reality of Satan and his demons as revealed in the biblical representation of them, it is helpful for modern day Christians to be aware of the kingdom of Darkness, certainly there is dangers associated with such beliefs, but sober and sensible conviction concerning the existence of the Principalities and Powers can be very beneficial. Such convictions encourage a realistic assessment of the depth and extent of corruption in the world and within the human heart. Christians who take the demonic seriously are not likely to embrace naive views about human progress, nor to trivialise their own moral lapses, the person who discerns a satanic dimension in the evils in the world can hardly rest content with the status quo.

The belief that Satan ultimately stands behind evil provides a powerful incentive for combating it, if the present state of the world is viewed as due in part to forces that are inimical to God, then the various expressions of evil may be attacked without fear that one is opposing God.

*An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the
Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind*

Finally, acceptance of the biblical view of demonic precludes a defeatist attitude in the face of evil. The Christian who takes the demonological teaching of the Bible seriously can confront temptation and evil with confidence, knowing that Jesus Christ has already defeated the forces of evil and their ultimate doom is assured.

Christians need not fear the power of Satan and his demons because the demonic power of evil is consistently inferior to the power of God and each Christian has this power and authority when they have been washed in the glorious Blood of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Victor. Christians must learn how to have authority over wicked spirits instead of being mastered by them.

Victory over sin by the Blood of Jesus, deepens a person in strength as the person overcomes the temptation to sin (Romans 6:11-13) and as victory over the world (1 John 5:4-5) is increasingly known by faith in the Son of God. Christ revealed that in the future Christians will reign with Him!!

-----oOo-----

*An Exposé of the Plans, the Strategies and the Method of Defiling and Killing of the
Relationship Between God and His Children, Humankind*



Chapter Three

Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate Authority

"Music was made to serve a holy purpose, to lift the thoughts to that which is pure, noble, and elevating, and to awaken in the soul devotion and gratitude to God. What a contrast between the ancient custom and the uses to which music is now too often devoted!"

Christian Education

1. INTRODUCTION

Pertaining to the strategies and influence of Satan onto the youth it is extremely necessary to note that Satan's plan includes the defiling of the child since the in-utero stage, through the toddler stage, preschool, school and adolescents via the venue of sound and sight - that is the senses.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Satan knows very well how God put the brain together of humankind (mind), the utmost importance of emotions and how emotions react to the sound of words and music, Satan deems to ruin the building blocks of the godly imagination, by replacing it with false imaginations by using idols from the very beginning of childhood escalating into the teenage and adolescent phase.

God intended His children (mankind) to develop through imitation. Thus, the small child will look at his or her parents to see how to lift a spoon, to walk, to talk to react etc. Satan is using that very same **god-given** gifts to attain the opposite of God's purpose, since children are very impressionable, easily influenced and most often more than willing to be led onto the path of idolatry and destruction for the deceived purpose to be "*part of it all*".

The above mentioned statements refer to Chapter One pertaining to mankind in the image of God. The following chapter will expound the deadly weapon of darkness being used against mankind as the children of God being destroyed by idolatry.

Idolatry was the typical sin of the Gentiles in Scripture, opposed to the service of the living God, its fundamental error was in giving "*reverence and worship to created things instead of the Creator*". "*Idols*" could refer to the images of the gods (Acts 7:41; Revelations 9:20) or the gods behind the images (1 Corinthians 8:4, 7; 10:19). The term idolatry shares this "*ambivalence of meaning*." It could refer to the worship of the idol itself as a god or of the spiritual being represented by the idol. Both are idolatry and both are forbidden by God (Exodus 20:3–5).

Both also invite evil religious spirits to make their presence known. Paul regards idols as "*mere nonentities, yet he recognizes that demonic forces lurk behind them, so that to take part in a pagan sacrificial feast is to become partners with demons*" (1 Corinthians 10:19–21).

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Because of this demonic dimension to all forms of idolatry, Paul warns believers to steer clear of idolatry (1 Corinthians 10:14; cf. v. 7; 5:11; Ephesians 5:5; Colossians 3:5). If missionaries ignore or are unaware of this demonic dimension to idolatry, they will face serious problems both in the evangelization of idolaters and in leading the new converts to victory in Christ. Both power and truth encounter will have to occur.

Sexual immorality and idolatry are strongly connected in the Bible. This is often true today as the phallic symbols which can be seen in temples across the world. As a result, the typical idol worshiper in biblical times committed both a religious sin and a sexual sin whenever he participated in specific religious ceremonies. This was especially true when the religion featured cultic-ritual prostitution, like the worship of Aphrodite, the love goddess of Corinth. In the broadest sense, "***idolatry is the worship of anything which usurps the rightful place of God.***" Thus Paul speaks of "*the ruthless greed which is nothing less than idolatry*" (Colossians 3:5).

Children very easily identifies with what they see on television, thereby mimicking their actions. When the movie Karate Kid came out – children wanted to participate in karate, they played out scenes in the movie and karate "*chopped*" everything they could find to "*chop*". Today their idols tend to be pop and rock stars.

They have built the high places of Tophet, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire; which I did not command them, nor did it come into My heart.

Jeremiah 7:31 MKJV

People would react quite drastically if they heard that children are being burned alive and sacrificed to demons, yet this happened in Scripture. In the Southern Kingdom of ancient Judah during the time of the prophet Jeremiah, God's chosen Jewish race had sunk to the lowest depths of depravity. Thanks to the introduction of pagan Baal worship, Jehovah was left in the dust by His rebellious and hard-hearted children.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Hordes of pagan “gods” filled the land, each more brutal than the last - Ashtoreth, Chemosh, Molech. They demanded blood, fire and the tortured death of innocent children. Their worship was celebrated with a mass sexual perversity unknown since Sodom and Gomorrah. Just south of Jerusalem lay the Valley of Hinnom, where the night skies were continually lit by the flames of human sacrifice:

***Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters to demons, and shed innocent blood, even the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed to the idols of Canaan; and the land was defiled with blood.
Psalms 106:37-38 MKJV***

At the high place of Tophet (the word “*Tophe*” has to do with the beating of a drum) the pagan priests carefully constructed stairways, altars and fire pits for the frenzied rites of Molech worship. An enormous, hulking metal image of this horned demon was the centrepiece of this appalling place.

As the drums pounded like enormous, overworked hearts ready to burst, musical instruments of all kinds were hysterically blown and trumpeted to drown out the throat-shredding screams of dying children. Worshipers added their own howls to the chaos as they sang and wailed “*hymns*” to the demons that were devouring their precious young. It’s no wonder that Hinnom eventually became known as “*Gehenna*” - a term synonymous with Hell.

Today the music still plays while the children go up in smoke – spiritually and physically. Once perceived to be only a distasteful social phenomenon, Rock & Roll is really one of the most **enslaving, destructive and deceptive** “*devil-tools*” of all time. It changes and moulds to the times, it calls evil good and good evil. It changes titles and terms of description to deceive genuine Christians. Blatant Satanism in music is easy to detect, it is more dangerous when it is covered as people do not detect the dangers hiding underneath, and ignorance is no excuse.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Rock & Roll are the modern equivalent of the Valley of Hinnom as seen in the Bible. The rock concert stage today is the “*High Place*” of Tophet. The rock stars are the priests and the youth are the sacrificial babes. By giving up their awesome responsibility to spiritually guard and protect their children, parents are literally **throwing their kids into the fire as the music muffles their screams**. Today more than ever, Christians needs the discernment of the Holy Spirit, mixed with the righteous anger of the Lord, to keep their children out of the snares of the kingdom of darkness.

This thesis deems it important for parents to know that music may be many things but it is **NEVER** neutral. Rock defenders point to dead objects like an axe or a butcher knife and say, “*Those things can be used to chop wood, cut cake or kill your mother-in law it’s the intention of a person’s heart that makes the difference the same holds true for music.*” **This is not true for music!**

This chapter deems to inform parents to realise that as long as Satan’s rock is in their houses, their children is **NOT** in a right relationship with God.

Spiritual demons are unleashed through music. Christians must wake up and realize that there is something **IN THE MUSIC** provoking mankind because this is a **SPIRITUAL** matter. Some people recognized this fact over thirty years ago when rock first arrived. There is something in the **BEAT** of this music that fires up those who listen to it and releases primitive lusts within them. The spiritual power behind the music is from Satan, (Luke 4:5-7) **NOT** from God, (1 Corinthians 14:33).

And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it. If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine.

Luke 4:6-7 KJV

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

***For God is not the author of confusion, but of peace, as in all churches of
the saints.***

1 Corinthians 14:33 KJV

The preachers who boldly stated in 1957 that rock's beat was demonic were hooted at and shouted down. But they were right then, and they're still right today. If sceptics want proof, it can be found in the lyrics and lifestyles of the musicians. But it's also in the fruits from the Rock/Rap tree - the kids who listen to the music and attend the concerts. The "proof" is wailing ambulances, police wagons, handcuffed teenagers and kids beaten bloody because they refuse to stop worshipping demons - the gods of rap and rock.

At the very core of Rock & Roll music is the steely rule of rebellion. It has always been so, and will never change as long as rock exists.

Godwin¹ states that if a person is an avid fan of Heavy Metal, "Christian" Rock, rap, or several other forms of today's supposedly "safe" popular music, PAN is the god person worships. **He is the god of Rock & Roll**, a Greek deity. "*Pan is represented as more or less bestial in shape, having the horns, legs and ears of a goat*". The entire rock world is a massive cult dedicated to him. Multiplied millions of young people are being sacrificed to this master demon as they pass through the fires of rock.

***Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace,
with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.***

2 Timothy 2:22 KJV

¹ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA :Chick Publications, p. 3.

2. IDOLATRY AS AN INSTRUMENT TO CURRUPT AND DEFILE AND MISLEAD

2.1 Idolatry as seen in South Africa

The word idolatry comes from the Greek word *eidololatria*. It is a compound word, *eidolon*, “idol” and *latreia*, “worship” or “service.”

You shall not make to yourselves any graven image, or any likeness of anything that is in the heavens above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. You shall not bow yourself down to them, nor serve them. For I Jehovah your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the sons to the third and fourth generation of those that hate me,

Exodus 20:4-5 MKJV

The Voortrekker Monument is considered by some white South Africans to be the “church” that the Voortrekkers had promised to build to the glory of God when they vowed that, if He gave them victory over their enemies, they would proclaim the day a Sabbath and build a temple to honour His Name. The architect Gerhard Moerdijk however confirmed the fact that the monument is both an “alter” and a “shrine”. The Voortrekker Monument is a **visual spiritual idol** for the “Afrikaner” – *South Africa’s National idolatry*. However good the intention and no matter what the role of the Church, the spiritual forces unleashed on the land through these centenary celebration activities were given legitimate access by the people, through their wholehearted endorsement of these events.

In the monument itself emphasis is placed on the sun in the structure of the monument, the monument is so positioned that the sun’s rays fall on the cenotaph once a year and a massive sun-wheel is placed above this altar all this indisputably points to idolatry.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Idolatry is also sustained by sacrifice and inevitably the powers behind the strongest forms of idolatry demand blood, these sacrifices and offerings appease the powers of darkness and usually exalt the position and glory in the kingdom of darkness to the person bringing the sacrifice. There was a lot of bloodshed in the “boer” war, which can be seen in the History of South Africa.

White South Africans idolise their family names, they see their forefathers as the heroes who migrated from Europe to establish themselves in South Africa. Because of the root of idolatry the whole Afrikaner race is caught up in the snare of the spirit of idolatry. The spiritual effect of idolatry in a family (familiar spirit) abides in the family; it opens the doors to the occult and dark kingdom. The children of today do not have the high regard for the Voortrekker Monument as their parents but because of the familiar spirit of idolatry in their families, children are drawn to idolatry – to worship something - which manifests in the worshipping of idols in music and the media.

It would take a progressive revelation of the Holy Spirit for mankind to understand and appreciate how God feels about idolatry. That is, if at all possible to know and share how He views it when mankind corrupt and defile their spirits, minds and emotions with that which is imitated from hell, entertained by man’s carnal nature and maintained by the ministry of demonic spirits.

The sole objective of Satan and the powers of darkness are to corrupt, defile and mar the image of God in His creation. He knows that the righteous requirement of the Kingdom of God is that judgement must be handed down from the Throne of God on all that has been corrupted by his foul influence. Life and Death have no part in each other, neither Light with Darkness. Fellowship with demons will provoke the wrath of God if appropriate repentance is not brought and the Blood of the Lord Jesus applied to atone for such disobedience.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Once the powers of darkness have imprisoned people by seducing them into practicing idolatry, the effects of the covenants with evil spirits set in and take their toll. In order for God to gain access to a nation, a righteous priesthood must raise up to counter the satanic priesthood that serves at the idolatrous altars which sustains the covering of darkness over a region.

Possibly the greatest tragedy of the impact of idolatry is that it locks God out of the lives of individuals, families, communities and nations. Because idolatry is a marriage between men and spirits, God cannot and will not violate the union between them as it was made with the consent and active participation of the men in question, which results in consequences for the generations to come.

The end result of idolatry is social disorder, which starts with family breakdown and divorce and is further characterised by a culture of single parenting dysfunctional children and ultimately utter confusion, as individual seek identity in every alternative notion that presents itself.

Possibly the foremost legacy **South Africa's national idolatry** is the collapse of family life, which is the starting point of all other social decline. Family breakdown in white South Africa has become common place in the last forty years, with very few children having the benefit of growing up in a stable and secure home environment. The biblical value system that upheld traditional family life has also been eroded and replaced with a humanistic rationalism that allows for every form of relational experiment in an effort to find a way out of the social morass, which is the fruit of the idolatry of our fathers.²

² Woods, D (2006) Reaping the Whirlwind of National Idolatry. South Africa: A division of New Holland Publishing, pp. 196,245-246.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

A more controversial aspect to the phenomena of family breakdown is the fact that God Himself withdraws His protection from the institution of marriage and family. Scripture shows that this is one of the judgements that come upon a people that have given itself to idolatry. Ironical though it seems, God cannot defend marriage and the family where people have made covenants with the powers of darkness, because through idolatry He has been excluded from the lives of such people. He does not have a stake in it. By virtue of the idolatry, other spirits replace the covering that would have been provided by the Spirit of God. God is locked out of the equation. At the height of Israel's apostasy Jeremiah told them:

Then I will cause the voice of gladness to cease from the cities of Judah and from the streets of Jerusalem, and the voice of joy, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride. For the land shall be desolate.
Jeremiah 7:34 MKJV

Woods states that this can be summed up as follows:³

- “God’s command that mankind may have no other gods but Him, stems from His passion and jealousy to keep man from the corruption that sets in when cohabiting with demons and the powers of darkness. Scripture evidently demonstrates that idolatry is nothing other than communion with the powers of darkness. Nothing invokes the anger of God and offends Him as much as idolatry. It corrupts man and brings God’s judgement on all who offend Him in this way.
- The association of idolatry with elements of creation is a key to understanding the wide influence of idolatry and the strategy of the powers of darkness in using creation to seduce men into idolatry. Mankind have exchanged the truth of God for the lie of Satan and worshipped and served the creature rather than the Creator.

³ Woods, D (2006) Reaping the Whirlwind of National Idolatry. South Africa: A division of New Holland Publishing, pp. 247-249.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

- This also provides information that is valuable for use in intercession and spiritual warfare when men and communities are brought before God in prayer. Prayer can be more effective if information on how the powers of darkness gained legal entry is acquired. This information can then be used when exercising priesthood in intercession and spiritual warfare.
- Idolatry amounts to collaboration between men and the powers of darkness. Men seek spiritual favours, power, economic advantage or the like; and spirits oblige in exchange for tenancy rights to the lives of individuals, families, communities and nations.
- This collaboration is secured through the function of the priesthood and it generates a covering of darkness. This can affect entire geographical regions when the priesthood acts on behalf of communities or nations and officiates the transaction from a “*high place*” or altar that has been raised for the purpose. The powers of darkness are given legal access to control, manipulate and influence entire populations and regions from these points.
- Idolatry amounts to a “*marriage*” between men and spirits. While men may have been seduced into the agreement, it requires a systematic process to deal with the full consequences of idolatry. The spiritual structures that were raised must be dismantled by repentance and renunciation to revoke the covenants. Only then can the spirits that were invoked by the idolatry be evicted. Ultimately a spiritual “*divorce*” must be declared if the full affects of idolatry are to be reversed.
- Idolatry affects the Church adversely. If it is not countered by a strong, disciplined and consecrated priesthood of Believers, it corrupts and ultimately derails the influence of the Church in society. To achieve this, an informed approach to prayer, intercession and spiritual warfare is required. It demands a thorough knowledge of the community and nation in which one is called to work. The influence of idolatry in the foundations of the nations has withstood the Gospel. This is especially true of many Third World nations.

Appreciation of this fact can enable ministers of Christ to make progress where others have failed in the past. In our day this same influence can be seen to be overpowering the Church in areas where Christianity had previously given rise to strong moral values in society. Consequently some now speak of a 'post-Christian' Europe and America. This is nothing less than the influence of unchallenged idolatry in the fabric of these nations."

And be watchful in all that I have said to you. And make no mention of the name of other gods, neither let it be heard out of your mouth.

Exodus 23:13 MKJV

2.2 Idolatry in the Old Testament

The Old Testament accounts for more cases about the idolatrous practices of the surrounding pagan world than the New Testament, as it was the outflow of what started in the ancient world. There are some twenty-five Hebrew words used for idols and three or four used for idolatry. The New Testament confines itself to a few basic words for both idols and idolatry; the five most common ones will be discussed.

First is *eidolon*, the word more frequently used for idols and "*several of its cognates.*" Second is *eidolothyton*, used specifically for meats offered to idols. Third is *eidololatria*, idolatry. It is also used in Paul's well developed polemic against idols and idolatry in 1 Corinthians 10:7–33. Fourth is the word *kateidolos*. It appears only in Acts 17:16 in the context of Paul's difficult ministry in Athens. He found the city "*full of idols.*" Lastly, there is the word *eikōns* used in Romans 1:23, one of the apostle Paul's strongest condemnations of all idolatry and image worship, man is making an image of God as a corruptible being – that is why idolatry is such a great sin, as man cannot create God, for He is the Creator and He is incorruptible.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

***and changed the glory of the incorruptible God into an image made like
corruptible man, and birds, and four-footed animals, and creeping things.
Romans 1:23 MKJV***

Paul states that humanity in general “*exchanged the glory of the incorruptible God for an image (eikōns) in the form of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed animals and crawling creatures.*” One Hebrew word for idols is derived from *zana* meaning “*to have illicit intercourse. Its sexual connotations suggest the involvement of cultic prostitutes, a regular feature of Canaanite pagan worship (and later Greco-Roman cults).*”

In the Old Testament, the dangers represented by idols and idolatry reflected the area of major concern by God and His appointed leaders. Intermarriage with pagans were prohibited because of the religious and moral corruptions that it would bring forth into Israel. The terrible destruction of the cities and peoples of Canaan by the Jews which God commanded was essentially because of the total commitment of these peoples to idolatry and the unbelievable religious and immoral practices associated with it, which included, heterosexual and homosexual ritual sexual orgies and human sacrifice. Worshippers primarily sacrificed their own children

Contemporary Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA) of children in modern Satanism and satanic cults seems connected with the popular revival of ancient paganism rooted in these ancient, evil practices. The familiarity of the Hebrews with various forms of idolatry was due to various factors, Abrahams’ family were idolaters, some of its most important cultic centres were in Ur and Haran, the cities where Abraham was raised

Israel rubbed elbows with peoples totally given to polytheism and idolatry in some of the worst forms which have ever existed. The primary people were the Syrians, Phoenicians, Egyptians, Philistines, Amorites and the Canaanites. The Promised

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Land was located on the main caravan and military route from Egypt in the south to Mesopotamia in the north. The Hittites, Syrians, Babylonians, Assyrians, and Egyptians marched through the land of Palestine from one end to another for both commercial and military purposes. Joined with Israel's 400-year sojourn in one of the most idolatrous nations in history, Egypt, this exposed the Jews to all forms of idolatry and religious syncretism. As to Israel's battle with idolatry and idolatrous syncretism, there is no lack of material in the Old Testament. It begins in Genesis and continues through the minor prophets, especially Hosea, Amos, Micah, Habakkuk, and Zephaniah.

Idolatry and idolatrous syncretism was one of the worst sins of God's people, as well as combining the worship of God with elements of paganism which almost always included ritual sex. The nation worshiped other gods alongside of its worship of the true God. This syncretism included the making of images of these gods, making images to represent Yahweh symbolically, and falling down in worship before them. This is what occurred with the worship of the golden calf after the migration from Egypt (Exodus 32).

Throughout Israel's History idolatry were present, it occurred while they were in Egypt (Joshua 24:14; Ezekiel 20:1–32; 22–23), they left Egypt but it seems that Egypt haven't left them – their addiction to idolatry, rebellion against God and immorality caught up with them before they were ready to enter the Promised land and they joined the Moabites in giving sacrifices to their god and bowing before them. Israel joined themselves to Baal of Peor and the LORD was angry against Israel" (Numbers 25:1–3). God judged the nation by keeping them out of the Promised land until the entire rebellious generation except Caleb and Joshua had died in the wilderness (Numbers 26).

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Before the new generation entered the Promised land Moses gave them the final message (Deuteronomy 1-33), again reminding them **not to make any image of Jehovah** nor any image of any kind and not the intermarry with the nations of the land (Deuteronomy 4:15–20; 7:1–6) as it will cause the nation to turn away from God and serve other gods. He instructed them to tear down the other nation's alters and smash their sacred pillars and burn their graven images with fire.

Moses stated further that any person who tried to seduce the faith of a Jew to lead them into idolatry or syncretism was to be executed (Deuteronomy 13:6–16), and any Jew who worshiped any other god or served any god but Yahweh was also to be executed (Deuteronomy 17:1–7). The Jews however did not obey Moses' warnings; they settled in among the other nation, continued worshipping the foreign gods brought from Egypt (Joshua 24:14, 15, 23) and were enticed by the gods of the Canaanites (Judges 2:11–13; 6:25–32; see also Judg. 17–18) The story of Israel's repeated rebellion against God and compromise with idolatry and syncretism worsens in the rest of the historical and prophetic period of Israel's history.

Samuel battled with idolatry during his entire lifetime (1 Samuel 7:3–4) and he placed disobedience to God and idolatry in the same category.

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idol-worship. Because you have rejected the Word of Jehovah, He has also rejected you from being king!

1 Samuel 15:23 MKJV

In the final analysis idolatry was rebellion, for it constituted a violation of God's commands. The brightest period was during the long reign of David. Yet his son Solomon, who began so well, in his old age, was drawn into the worst forms of idolatry and paganism by his many women (1 Kings 11:1–9). He filled the royal gardens with the repulsive images of the gods of his wives and concubines.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

In judgment God wrenched out of his hand ten of the twelve tribes of Israel (1 Kings 11:11f).

Jeroboam became the leader of the ten separated tribes which were now called Israel, he started off well, (1 Kings 11:26–40), but soon erected two golden calves, one in Bethel and another at Dan, and forced the people of Israel to worship there instead of in the temple at Jerusalem (1 Kings 12:25–14:19). For the rest of Israel's history he came to be known as “Jeroboam, who caused Israel to sin.” Rehoboam, Solomon's son, was no better as he too caused Judah to sin (1 Kings 14:21–24), build themselves high places and sacred pillars and Asherim [symbols of female goddesses, associated with fertility and sexuality] on every high hill, but there were also male cult prostitutes in the land. “*They did according to all the abominations of the nations which the LORD dispossessed before the sons of Israel.*” Ongoing and intense spiritual warfare characterized the history of Israel and Judah from then on to the time of the Babylonian Exile.

Such spiritual warfare had been strong during their entire existence from the migration from Egypt, but now Israel became totally committed to the evils of the **flesh, the world, and the Devil**. Israel's leaders were evil, the most disreputable being Ahab and Jezebel (1 Kings 16:29–22:40; 2 Kings 9). Judah at first remained more faithful to the covenant. While some of her kings walked in the sins of Israel, others brought the people back to God, destroyed the idols, and abolished cult prostitution and child sacrifice. Most notable were the revivals under Hezekiah (2 Kings 18–20) and Josiah (2 Kings 22–23:28). Yet these revivals came too late. Judah became as vile as Israel. God determined Judah too would go into Babylonian captivity (2 Kings 24–25) because of her idolatry, immorality, and rebellion against Him.

Other prophets fighting against idolatry was Elijah, Elisha, Jeremiah and Ezekiel, the last fiercely denounced the sacrifice of children to the gods. Amos spoke out against the Canaanite high places among the people and the image worship of God's people. Isaiah grieved over the idolatry of Israel. Zephaniah "warned against the worship of astral deities, against Milcom, and against pagan superstitions (Zeph. 1:2–9).

From the above it is obvious that idolatry vested as a familiar spirit in the families and lives, causing the Israelites to fall into worshipping false gods which carried into the New Testament.

2.3 Idolatry in the New Testament

The entire New Testament world was overwhelmed in idolatry and its associated sexual immorality. Temple prostitution was rampant and some of the pagan religious rites were even more immoral than those of the Old Testament pagan nations including the Canaanites. Rome was the ruling empire but the Greek culture dominated, having their pantheon of gods. Rome took the Greek pantheon as its own and added its own maze of lower gods and spirits and those of all the peoples it conquered.

Religious beliefs ranged from polytheism and henotheism to animism and pantheism. As long as people also honoured the gods of the Greco-Roman pantheon and venerated and later worshiped the emperor, people were free to believe what they wanted and do what they wanted in worship except perform human sacrifice.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Although the early Christian church was born in such an idolatrous world, they had strong monotheistic and anti-idolatrous roots; idolatry therefore was not such a big threat as it had been to Israel before the exile.

Church members living in heathen communities received their first warnings about compromise with idols from the early Christian leaders who met at the great church council of (Acts 15:26, 29). Luke describes Paul's encounter with idolatry and paganism in Acts 13–20. Paul had to address the problem of Gentile converts eating meat which had been sacrificed to idols in 1 Corinthians 8:1–13 and 10:14–22. While he denied that idols had any real existence in themselves (1 Corinthians 12:2; Galatians 4:8; 1 Thessalonians 1:9), he knew that participation in their worship even in ignorance meant participating with demons (1 Corinthians 10:20–21). Therefore he fully recognized **the demonic spiritual warfare dimensions of idolatry**. The apostle John also warned believers against idolatry (1 John 5:21).

The Book of Revelation has much to say about idolatry, both in reference to the churches and the unbelievers. Revelation 2–3 speaks about idolatry and Satan's dwelling among the churches of Asia. Revelation 9:20 says all unbelievers in one way or another are involved in the worship of "*demons*," and "*the idols of gold and of silver and of brass and of stone and of wood, which can neither see nor hear nor walk*," (Psalm 115:4–7). Revelations also warns against the worship of the image of the beast and promises glory to those who refuse to worship the beast or its image (Revelations 13:14–15; 14:9–11; 20:4).

In essence **idolatry denies the existence of the True God** as Creator of the world and humankind and God's glory cannot be sufficiently captured in any tangible form. It is ridiculous to think that a person could carve an idol with his hands and then be afraid of what he has made or use it as an object of worship.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

A visible representation of the deity tends to restrict a person's concept of God, for he will base his concept of God, consciously or unconsciously, upon the image or picture. Finally, man becomes like that which he worships.

I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness. I saw your fathers as the first-fruit in the fig tree at her first time. But they went to Baal-peor and set themselves apart to a shameful thing; and they became abominable like that which they loved.

Hosea 9:10 MKJV

If his god is lifeless and cold, it can bring him no real hope or comfort. Only the **true and living God can fulfil the hope of eternal life.**⁴

3. THE FUTURE IS NOW: NEW AGE CULTS

And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming: Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

2 Thessalonians 2:8-12 KJV

The new age movement is coming as an unstoppable, monstrous, bone crushing steamroller. Its intent is to wipe Bible believing Christianity off the face of the earth and replace it with satanically controlled one world government, one world money system, one world dictator and one world religion. Its public relations department consists of every major rock music star in the world.

⁴ Murphy, Dr Ed (1992) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc, pp. 259-263.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

New Agers have twisted the term “*Christian*” to such an extent that Christians are pictured as wild-eyed anti love, anti-woman, anti-freedom and anti-fun religious “*nuts*”, being portrayed as turning back the clock to a Dark Age of superstitious religious hokum, forcing everyone to join their narrow minded bigotry. People behind the New Age follow in the footsteps of people such as Nero, Karl Marx and Adolph Hitler. They have put into practice what these men taught - when covering your tracks and hiding your evil works from the eyes of men, blame the Christians.

Scholars state that Nazism and the New Age is one and the same thing, every evil tyrant in History has sought to erase Bible-believing Christianity. The reason being that Satan cannot gain the all-out worship he desires from every living human being until the last unwavering and uncompromising Christian has been executed. The New Agers have a delightful euphemism for such murderous genocide, they call it “*releasing from physical embodiment*”.

The founders of the movement willingly admit that Lucifer is the primary power behind the New Age. A strange mix of spirituality and superstition is sweeping the country. First and foremost, it appears to be an explosion of human curiosity and creativity. It is a time when individuals are passionately seeking to unlock their undiscovered potentials. And while some of this may represent dreams of grandeur, for many it seems to spring from a deep desire to realize the innate goodness that lies within each person. The name *New Age* has been around for decades. Its practices have enchanted mystics for centuries. So, what’s new about the current New Age?

The time seems to be right for what New Agers refer to as a “*paradigm shift in evolutionary consciousness*.” Successful businessmen consult astrological charts. Yuppie investment bankers talk about past lives. Ethical stock purchasers question a company’s worthiness on the basis of its societal contributions. The New Age is an

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

old adage. Like medieval metaphysicians and ancient Eastern mystics, the cult of the New Age hails man and his paramount powers as the centre of the spiritual universe. For centuries, people have endeavoured to deify themselves and evoke the mysteries of spirituality

The oracles of Greece, the *Vedas* of the Hindus, and the mysteries of the Pharaohs supposed that a secret of existence lay beneath reality. In secluded woods, musty caverns, and passageways of pyramids, these cryptic truths were sought through ritual and ceremony. Today New Age cults pursue these mysteries of religion more diversely and ingeniously.⁵

The concept that eternal godhood is an attainable reality through individual human willpower is the oldest lie Satan has ever used. One could ask how New Age relates to the media and music – New Age was ushered into society through rock music, especially through the influence of the Beatles. As they were the first rock group whole-heartedly endorsing and popularising the use of drugs like marijuana and LSD. Hinduism, Eastern thought and Transcendental Meditation were instigated by them to millions of young people. Beatle George Harrison was a prime spokesman for these anti-Christian philosophies.

Through songs like “*All You Need Is Love*,” which was broadcast live via satellite to over 400 million in 1967, the *Beatles* single-handedly moulded the entire world into the New Age model. They branded into the minds of a large portion of the earth’s population the basic New Age philosophies... one world thinking, the brotherhood of man, eternal peace, etc.

This kind of “*Instant Karma*” (a John Lennon tune) had never been done before. The teaching of Karma means that what a person’s actions in life are determines the

⁵ Larson, B (1989) *Larson’s New Book of Cults*. Wheaton Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc., pp 15-18

rewards or punishment in the next life, which is the teaching of Reincarnation, see Chapter Four on Cults.

The central thought and idea of New Age is that each person himself is “**god**” which is the central thought of what is portrayed in music and the media today. New Age is deceiving people into bondage because Christians do not test the spirits (see Addendum 3 on testing the spirits) and they have little knowledge about the Word of God.

4. PAN THE GOD OF ROCK AND ROLL

PAN was the god of shepherds and flocks, of mountain wilds, hunting and rustic music. He wandered the hills and mountains of Arkadia playing his pan-pipes and chasing Nymphs. His unseen presence aroused feelings of panic in men passing through the remote, lonely places of the wilds. His name originates within the Ancient Greek language, from the word *paein* (πάειν), meaning “*to pasture*”.

With his homeland in rustic Arcadia, he is recognized as the god of fields, groves, and wooded glens; because of this, Pan is connected to fertility and the season of spring. The ancient Greeks also considered Pan to be the god of theatrical criticism.⁶

One of the famous myths of Pan involves the origin of his pan flute, fashioned from lengths of hollow reed. Syrinx was a lovely water-nymph of Arcadia, daughter of Landon, the river-god. As she was returning from the hunt one day, Pan met her. To escape from his importunities, the fair nymph ran away and didn't stop to hear his compliments.

⁶ Pan (god) ([www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pan_\(god\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pan_(god)))

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

He pursued from Mount Lycaeum until she came to her sisters who immediately changed her into a reed. When the air blew through the reeds, it produced a plaintive melody. The god, still infatuated, took some of the reeds, because he could not identify which reed she became, and cut seven pieces (or according to some versions, nine), joined them side by side in gradually decreasing lengths, and formed the musical instrument bearing the name of his beloved Syrinx. Henceforth Pan was seldom seen without it.

Pan was thus known as the god of music, it was said that this music could inspire panic (the root of the word) in any who heard it. He was a minor god of the sea. He was a god of prophesy and was also famous for being randy (Greek women with a track record were known as Pan Girls).⁷

Pan was depicted as a man with the horns, legs and tail of a goat, and with thick beard, snub nose and pointed ears. He was often appears in the retinue of Dionysos alongside the other rustic gods. Greeks in the classical age associated his name with the word *pan* meaning "all". However, its true origin lies in an old Arkadian word for rustic.

Pan was frequently identified with other similar rustic gods such as Aristaios, the shepherd-god of northern Greece, who like Pan was titled both Agreus (the hunter) and Nomios (the shepherd); as well as with the pipe-playing Phrygian satyr Marsyas; and Aigipan, the goat-fish god of the constellation Capricorn. Sometimes Pan was multiplied into a host of Panes, or a triad named Agreus, Nomios, and Phorbas.⁸

The worship of Pan began in Arcadia which was always the principal seat of his worship. Arcadia was a district of mountain people whom other Greeks disdained. Greek hunters used to scourge the statue of the god if they had been disappointed in

⁷ The Great god Pan (www.lugodoc.demon.co.uk/PAN.HTM)

⁸ Pan (www.theoi.com/Georgikos/Pan.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

the chase (Theocritus. vii. 107). Being a rustic god, Pan was not worshipped in temples or other built edifices, but in natural settings, usually caves or grottoes such as the one on the North Slope of the Acropolis of Athens. These are often referred to as the Cave of Pan. The only exceptions are the Temple of Pan on the Neda River gorge in the south-western Peloponnese – the ruins of which survive to this day – and the Temple of Pan at Apollonopolis Magna in ancient Egypt.

Pan is famous for his sexual powers, and is often depicted with a phallus. Diogenes of Sinope, speaking in jest, related a myth of Pan learning masturbation from his father, Hermes, and teaching the habit to shepherds. Pan's greatest conquest was that of the moon goddess Selene. He accomplished this by wrapping himself in a sheepskin, to hide his hairy black goat form, and drew her down from the sky into the forest where he seduced her.⁹

Today, Pan is spiritually seducing the children of mankind through music.

⁹ Horbury, W (1992) *Jewish Inscriptions of Graeco-Roman Egypt*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, p. 208.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 3: The deity Pan – god of Rock and Roll ¹⁰

¹⁰ Prof Dr Connie Brand, Research Booklet.

5. DEFILING THE IMAGE OF GOD IN CHILDREN THROUGH MUSIC

5.1 Brief History on Rock and Roll

This thesis will only look at the history of Rock and Roll in brief, in order to highlight the main message conveyed through this genre of music.

5.1.1 Early Rock: Mid 50's - Early 60's

The message: Apparently harmless music and lyrics which promoted "*good times*" and dancing the new dance fads. "*Teen Idols*" were worshiped by teenage girls and being "*cool*" was in for boys. The stage was being set for rebellion by the "greaser" image.

Music: Blend of "*Big Band*" with its powerful physical dance influence and "*rhythm and blues*", based on African rhythm patterns. Tempos and rhythm patterns were smooth and "*catchy*". Melodies created a very whimsical "*Happy Days*" atmosphere.

Main Performers: Elvis Presley, Chuck Berry, Bill Haley and The Comets, Jerry Lee Lewis, Fats Domino, Little Richard, Platters, Four Seasons, Smokey Robinson & the Miracles, and James Brown.

5.1.2 British Invasion, Motown Music, Folk Music: Early 60's - Late 60's

The message: A stronger theme of rebellion was introduced which was to be the thread through all future rock music. Free sex, drugs, and rebellion were promoted, presenting them as harmless fun, false religious cults were introduced such as TM (Transcendental Meditation). Folk groups promoted anti-establishment attitudes and appearances.

Music: British influence hardened the American music by taking out the swing beat and putting in a more frenzied pace tempo. Motown added to the driving, repetitious rhythms with its "*soul music*".

Main Performers: Beatles, Beach Boys, The Rolling Stones, The Temptations, Bob Dylan, Peter, Paul and Mary, Supremes, Simon and Garfunkle, Shirelles, Four Tops, and the Mama's and Papa's.

5.1.3 Acid or Hard Rock: Late 60's - Early 70's

The message: Huge rock concerts promoted free sex, open drug and alcohol abuse, and a total do-your-own-thing attitude – also known as Alistair Crowley's ***do what they wilt***. Lyrics preached rebellion, no morals, and no responsibilities. Drugs became synonymous with rock music. Stage violence began and there was a stronger focus on false religions.

Music: Developed more repetition and a hypnotic effect. More rhythm, more volume, and more violence became the dominant force of songs. Groups actually destroyed equipment on stage. It marked the start of "*cross-dressing*" and use of make-up by men.

Main Performers: Jimi Hendrix, Janis Joplin, The Doors, The Beatles, The Rolling Stones, Led Zeppelin, Crosby, Stills & Nash, Joan Baez, Grateful Dead, and Chicago.

5.1.4 Heavy Metal: Early 70's - Late 70's

The message: Sex, no morality, and drug abuse. Lyrics openly promote rebellion, violence, and homosexuality. Satanic messages are hidden or camouflaged by backwards masking. Also, open sex begins to occur on the dance floors of discos.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Music: Beat and volume increase, driving rhythms captivate listeners. Beat or pulse of music hypnotizes listeners as they are fed evil lyrics. Performers openly admit sexual perversion and act it out on stage, contributing to the moral decay and debasing of society.

Main Performers: Kiss, Rod Stewart, Bee Gees, The Who, Led Zeppelin, Elton John, Alice Cooper, Village People, Stevie Wonder, Black Sabbath, Rolling Stones, Eagles, Jethro Tull, and Deep Purple.

5.1.5 Theatrical Satan Rock: Late 70's - Present

The message: Violence supreme. Satan is no longer hiding his motives. Lyrics openly denounce Christianity presenting the devil as the answer. Violence, sex, rebellion, and drugs are not only promoted, but are acted out on stage. Lyrics even promote suicide. MTV brings Satan's messages into homes through rock videos.

Music: Violent, loud, abrasive. It has become a combination of Disco, Hard Rock, and 50's music. Synthesized music creates a "robot-like" sound, simulating the controlling power of rock music. Rock music has evolved into the single most **powerful tool by which Satan communicates his evil messages to our youth.**

Main Performers: Kiss, Eagles, Iron Maiden, Cindi Lauper, Black Sabbath, Judas Priest, Van Halen, AC/DC, The Grateful Dead, Michael Jackson, W.A.S.P., Prince, Boy George, and Alice Cooper.¹¹

Rock and Roll in actual fact means – **sex, fornication** – Satan uses three elements in rock and roll music to mislead and defile the youth and to destroy families: **Sex,**

¹¹ Religious Rock, The Music of Devils in the Church (www.biblebelievers.com/Rock1.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Drugs and Rock & Roll - the battle cry of an entire generation. While youngsters fight for their right to have all three, Satan is using these weapons to wipe out millions of unsuspecting souls.¹²

Sex: All the smutty and degenerate emphasis on sexual lust in rock music is designed to fire up teenage imaginations and hormones, leading to active fornication. The reason for Satan pushing the agenda for children to get sexually active is that immoral sex serves a specific purpose in the kingdom of darkness – it spreads demons as sex outside of marriage opens a person up for demonic infestation, whatever demons are lodging in either body are free to pass back and forth, attracting others at the same time. This is the reason why Scripture warns mankind against consorting with adulteresses and prostitutes in Proverbs 6:20-32 and 7:1-27.

Whoever commits adultery with a woman lacks understanding; he who does it destroys his own soul.

Proverbs 6:32 MKJV

The Apostle Paul further explains this thought of bodily and spiritual pollution through fornication as seen in the book of Corinthians one.

Do you not know that your bodies are the members of Christ? Shall I then take the members of Christ and make them the members of a harlot? Let it not be! Or do you not know that he being joined to a harlot is one body? For He says, The two shall be one flesh. But he being joined to the Lord is one spirit. Flee fornication. Every sin that a man does is outside the body, but he who commits fornication sins against his own body. Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit in you, whom you have of God? And you are not your own, for you are bought with a price. Therefore glorify God in your body and in your spirit, which are God's.

1 Corinthians 6:15-20 MKJV

¹² Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA: Chick Publications, pp. 14-15.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Wild, pre marital sex is a hallmark of both the rock lifestyle and true Satanism, witches call it “*allowing the astral forces to move more freely among us,*” but Satan’s objective is demonic infestation. Keeping children and the youth sexually pure until marriage is one of the greatest challenges facing parents today, a good start could be to pull the plug on ungodly music.

Drugs: There is a perfect parallel between drugs, rock music and bona-fide Satanism; hallucinogenic drugs are a basic part of satanic rituals and devil-orgies. Rock music has openly promoted mind expanding drugs and some of the biggest rock stars have died of drug overdoses. A person’s “*altered state of consciousness*” when they are high on drugs is just a fancy way of describing that the person plunges right into the spiritual world, where demons exist and travel, as scholars state that drugs opens up the third eye or spiritual eye..

Rock & Roll: Rock music is the first and last step in Satan’s destruction of youth. Piped in from Hell, rock’s pounding rhythms are the same as those used in voodoo rituals:

“... The follower of Voodoo seeks to incorporate a LOA (lesser god) into himself by writhing and leaping through a dance, while drums bang out complex rhythms. When just the right rhythm is found for an individual LOA, the dancer takes it up, and the LOA enters his soul. His physical and mental powers are immediately heightened; he becomes god — like himself. Animals will often be sacrificed to appease the spirits... The religion is strictly Dionysian, and dances often end in wholesale copulation...”¹³

Scripture teaches Christians:

¹³Henderson, D (1978) Scuse me While I Kiss the Sky, Jimi Hendrix Voodoo Child. New York: Bantam Books, pp. 60-61.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

***And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather
reprove them.***

Ephesians 5:11 MKJV

In the book of Matthew, as previously mentioned it states that a good tree cannot bring forth evil and a corrupt tree cannot bring forth good fruit, it thus teaches that mankind is known by their fruits, as it will be seen later in this chapter the fruits that these artists bear does not consist of good fruit, most of them also follow the teaching of Aleister Crowley – a deeply rooted occultist. Crowley wrote a book called “*The Book of the Law*” which later became the basis of Thelema, Greek for “will” consisting of three philosophical ideas:¹⁴

- 1) Do what they wilt shall be the whole of the law
- 2) Love is the law, love under will
- 3) Every man and every woman is a star.

His seeing was that there was no such thing as moral principle and that each person should do what they will – which is the underlying theme in almost all popular music today. The fruit of rock and roll is evil, this demonic music has been the major tool and vehicle through which Satan popularized suicide, drug abuse, immorality, perversions (bestiality etc.), blasphemy against God and sacred things, homosexuality, occultism, and Satanism.

Now God has said to Christians not to have any fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness. Rock and roll is an unfruitful work of darkness and Christians have no business trying to imitate those who are on the broad road to destruction.

¹⁴ Aleister Crowley: His Story, His Elite Ties and His legacy (www.vigilantcitizen.com/category/sinistersites/)

Do not love the world, nor the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him, because all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passes away, and the lust of it, but he who does the will of God abides forever. Little children, it is the last time. And just as you have heard that antichrist is coming, even now many antichrists have risen up, from which we know that it is the last hour.
1 John 2:15-18 MKJV

Therefore Christians should not love the world nor should the things of the world, those who God have called should endeavour to be holy for God is Holy.

as obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your ignorance, but according to the Holy One who has called you, you also become holy in all conduct, because it is written, "Be holy, for I am holy."

1 Peter 1:14-16 MKJV

Let Christians thus cleanse themselves from the things of this world and sanctify themselves before the Glory of the Most High God.

Then having these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all defilements of flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.
2 Corinthians 7:1 MKJV

5.2 Symbolism and Music a hidden language

All of humankind is susceptible to the influence of symbolism and symbols. Even more so the youth, it is as if they get their identity from the symbols they wear. The youth is highly impressionable. Subliminal messages carries young people linking peer groups together, t-shirt's, clothing, signs, symbols on shoes, trousers, jewellery and even on the physical body in the way of tattoos, as if it is some sort of identikit for the youth.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Even three and four year olds are extremely susceptible to group pressure reflecting the symbols and signs of the time for their age group. These features are implemented and enhanced through the mighty power of the media, the world of advertising, the world of Television, the world of picture books, the world of retail and fashion. There is extreme pressure on the youth of today to conform to the ideals and principles being set by this worldly post modernistic system, mostly organised from the Darkness's point of view.

Children are highly susceptible and that what is seen on television about sex, relationships and morals is taken up as the truth. By their childlike ignorance and innocence they could easily make a false agreement, accepting Satan's destiny for them over their lives.

Communication is a significant part of human development. By communication basic needs and wants are expressed, for it to be effective the sender and receiver each needs to understand the message being communicated and the method used to communicate, since antiquity man have sought to communicate via symbols¹⁵, wanting to overcome the boundaries of language.

Symbolism is used as a device communicating the spiritual traits of the New Age movement and the occult, retaining the same meaning today as centuries ago. Modern man is ignorant to the spiritual significance and impact of the historical marks of occultism throughout modern culture, while occultist still recognizes their power and influence.¹⁶

Mystical symbolism is placed in the face of modern culture - found in almost every music video or movie, keeping in mind that symbolism is a way of communication,

¹⁵ See Terms and Definitions.

¹⁶ A Short Guide to Occult Symbols, Carl Teichrib (www.crossroad.to/articles2/2002/carl-teichrib/1contents.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

one can thus reflect on the eloquent words of Manly P Hall a 33rd degree Freemason and prolific author, “*Symbolism is the language of the Mysteries ... By symbols men have ever sought to communicate to each other those thoughts which transcend the limitations of language. Rejecting man-conceived dialects as inadequate and unworthy to perpetuate divine ideas, the Mysteries thus chose symbolism as a far more ingenious and ideal method of preserving their transcendental knowledge.*”

*In a single figure a symbol may both reveal and conceal, for to the wise the subject of the symbol is obvious, while to the ignorant the figure remains inscrutable. Hence, he who seeks to unveil the secret doctrine of antiquity must search for that doctrine not upon the open pages of books which might fall into the hands of the unworthy but in the place where it was originally concealed.”*¹⁷

Interesting to note that in the Book of Daniel, chapter three (Daniel 3: 5-7) Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, commanded **idol worship when people heard the sound of music** and those who did not worship the idol would be burned in a fiery furnace. The image he set up projected the man, (in chapter two he had a dream of an image, his kingdom was represented by the golden head); he hid behind the worship of the image to be worshipped himself, he wanted his kingdom to last forever by centralizing worship and solidifying his power¹⁸.

That at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up:

Daniel 3:5

¹⁷ Hall, Manly P (1928) *The Secret Teachings of all Ages*. San Francisco: H.S Crocker Company, Incorporated, p. 20.

¹⁸ *The Mysterious All Seeing Eye*, David J Steward
(www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Illuminati/nwo_eye.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Occult symbols, such as the **Great Pyramid and the All Seeing Eye** are iconic **images used to represent the coming Antichrist** and his kingdom, these symbols are used to magnify and project the image of the Antichrist and people all over the world are being prepared to worship his coming. Satan cleverly stages his presence in symbols demanding mankind's worship (to him) via music, hereby mimicking the same method as Nebuchadnezzar. Carefully notice that Revelations reveals that history will be repeated, when the Antichrist comes he will demand worship of an image and those who do not worship the image of the beast would be killed.

And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.

Revelation 13:15

Satan wanted to be praised and worshipped because he wanted to be God, today he is using music to achieve the goal he had since the beginning of time. He wants mankind's worship and he will do anything in his power to rob this from God.

Satan was created as one of God's most beautiful creations as can be seen in Ezekiel (Refer to Chapter Two).

Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created.

Ezekiel 28:13

Satan's whole being was created to make music, a tabret or a timbrel is similar to a tambourine, a music instrument the Israelites used to worship God. Satan cleverly uses the purpose he was created for to deceive people into worshipping him.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Music is another form of language, a way a message is given over to another person. There is always a reason behind a song that was written. Lady Gaga, a well known pop star who refers to her fans as “little monsters” and she herself is known as mother monster stated: *there’s never a reason to do something unless it’s going to be memorable, unless it’s going to change things, unless it’s going to inspire movement. With the song and with the performance, I hope to say something very grave about fame and the price of it, I think after watching the performance and maybe studying it after you watch it on You tube you’ll see the references and the symbols come through*¹⁹

Lyrics in itself aren’t the only problem, the music itself the beats and the rhythm also has a certain affect on the brain. David Tame, author of *The Secret Power of Music* states that fast rhythm releases chemicals into the bloodstream which excites²⁰, the music is said to give a “kick”. These kicks can become a form of addiction when a young person is used to listening to fast rock music for some hours a day, as a sense of emptiness is experienced when deprived of it.

In an interview with a man known as John Todd an ex Grand Druid Witch and former member of the Illuminati he warned that witchcraft cannot be practiced without rock music, he stated that most rock groups are members of a witchcraft church and when they have made a song they would ask a witch coven or the temple to cast a spell over the song for it to become a hit and sell. When these spells are casted demons are summoned and they attach themselves to the record which the unsuspecting buyer then takes into his house. He also argues that some songs are written in a witch language, thus explaining why some of the songs heard on the radio does not make sense and cannot be understood. Songs like *Beyond the Yellow Brick Road* is an example of song in “*witch language*” – for many people the

¹⁹ The Satanic Cult behind the Music Industry Part 1 (www.youtube.com/watch?v=pqyI7bNQAqA)

²⁰ Tame, David (1984) *The Secret Power of Music*. Rochester Vermont: Destiny Books, p. 139

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

meaning of the song only came to them when they got high on drugs. John Todd quoted a person in the record label company which stated that the easiest way to get Christians to cast a spell upon them self was via music.

Certain music stirs up rebellion, witches know that it is not just the words in the song it is the music, certain chords are played on purpose, the music is hypnotic and stirs up a war like nature in young people – the supernatural is tied in with the music.²¹

In 2008, a young boy from Krugersdorp South Africa, arrived at school with at least three swords and several masks identical to those worn by heavy metal band Slipknot, he attacked his fellow scholars with a weapon similar to a Japanese Samurai sword.²² One scholar suffered fatal injuries and was declared dead at the scene, the other scholar suffered serious wounds.

Pierre Eksteen, in charge of a school support network for children told reporters that satanic music was probably the cause of the attack: *“He came here camouflaged as the guy from Slipknot. We know the wrong kind of music and drugs have bad effects. Young people need to be informed of the effects of bad satanic music”*²³

Kobus Jonker, former head of the South African Police Force’s Occult Related Crime unit until 2001, also involved in the young boy’s case, stated that people don’t just go out and murder others when listening to metal music – he mentions that it has got to do with the person’s own mental state and they choose to allow it, quoting Kobus: *“If*

²¹ The Illuminati and Witchcraft (www.scribd.com/doc/7563552/John-Todd-The-Illuminati-Witchcraft-Condensed)

²² Religion and Child Abuse News (www.religiouschildabuse.blogspot.com/2008/08/satanism-blamed-in-wake-of-krugersdorp.html)

²³ Krugersdorp school rocked by “Satanic” Killing, 18 August, 2008, Fienie Grobler (www.mg.co.za/article/2008-08-18-krugersdorp-school-rocked-by-satanic-killing)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

you know it is negative for you why don't you leave it", he also says that ninety nine percent of people will listen to metal and not go out and kill.²⁴

This raises the question if there could there be an underlying message in music giving the universal feeling that the lyrics in songs won't harm a person – as this is the universal answer people give when confronted with it. Most people listening to rock or metal would directly defend it from being satanic music without even thinking about it, could this be due to the fact that they have been brain washed by these genres of music – that it is acceptable to listen to or is has no affect on a person.

Michael D Lemonick states that: *"It's hard to exaggerate the effect music can have on the human brain. A mere snippet of a song from the past can trigger memories as vivid as anything Proust experienced from the aroma of his petite madeleine. A tune can induce emotions ranging from unabashed joy to deep sorrow and can drive listeners into states of patriotic fervor or religious frenzy--to say nothing of its legendary ability to soothe the savage beast."*²⁵

Music has deep roots in human culture right throughout history, it gives man pleasure, it could sadden, comfort and even touch mankind deeply causing life-changing experiences.

5.3 The effect of Music on a Child's Brain, Body and Spirit

According to Daniel J Levitan author of the book This is Your Brain on Music, listening to music involves sub-cortical structures like cochlear nuclei, which is the brain stem and the cerebellum, it then moves towards the auditory cortices on both

²⁴ Dr Kobus Jonker: God's Detective, Henk Lustig (www.vice.com/en_za/read/dr-kobus-jonker-420-v17n4)

²⁵ Music on the brain, Michael D. Lemonick Sunday, May 28, 2000
(www.time.com/time/magazine/article/0,9171,46157,00.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

sides of the brain. While listening to music the memory centers of the brain gets involved such as the hippocampus and lowest parts of the frontal lobe.

The cerebellum becomes involved when man taps along with music and recalling lyrics will involve language centers in the temporal and frontal lobes, while reading music involves one's visual cortex. The brain has the capacity to change therefore music also affects some of the brain's learning capacities increasing the size of auditory and motor cortex. Recent research into music localization, making use of modern imaging technologies such as fMRI and PET reveals professional musicians develops analytical processes in the left hemisphere, where other individuals process music in their right hemisphere.

Cultural influence could also play a role as to where the brain engages with music, the Japanese process their traditional popular music in the left hemisphere whereas Westerners process the same music in the right hemisphere, music and language are processed separately, localized in homologous regions of the opposite hemisphere.

Music stimulates the amygdale, which regulates emotion, (which is situated in the soul part of tripartite²⁶ man – an area Satan easily manipulates), and even the brain stem. Due to the unique nature of music it can be an effective way to change and treat man's brain.

Neurological conditions such as Parkinson's, Alzheimer's disease, stroke, brain injury, anxiety and depression have been treated effectively with music therapy²⁷ thus stating that music does have an effect on the brain.

²⁶ See Terms and Definitions

²⁷ Brainworld, Music, Rhythm and the Brain, Passion Jun M.D, 7 March 2011
(www.brainworldmagazine.com/music-rhythm-and-the-brain-2/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Rock music has also been found to cause chemical imbalances in the human body. The bass tones and driving drumbeats of modern rock have been proven to demonstrate a reaction with the cerebral-spinal fluid and pituitary gland of the brain. When exposed to rock, the adrenaline and sex glands over-secrete. Their hormonal production is pushed into over-drive. This is why concert-going crowds “*bang their heads,*” raise their fists and destroy the arena. It’s also why feelings of lust and sensuality wash over everyone there. Since the body’s hormones are imbalanced, it compensates by drawing blood sugar from the brain to bring everything back into alignment. Since blood sugar is the primary material used by the brain to feed itself, a lack of decision making ability is the inevitable result.²⁸

When a person lacks the ability to make decisions, Satan and his demons easily infiltrates the mind by afflicting impure thoughts and ideas into the mind of the person under the influence of the music.

John Diamond, an Australian doctor conducted experiments on physical strength, he used the “*stopped anapestic rhythm*” of rock music, which consists of two rapid beats followed by a long beat then a pause. Groups that use such beats include the ***Rolling Stones, the Eagles, Elton John, the Doors, Janis Joplin and Stevie Wonder,*** plus many others.

He played different kinds of music to people through headphones. When music with a **stopped anapestic beat** was played volunteers would immediately lose muscle strength and have to lower their arms. The anapestic beat seems to interrupt the natural rhythm of the heart causing stress to the Body. A direct link was found between muscle strength and music. He found that listening to hard rock causes all the muscles in the body to go weak. The normal pressure required to overpower a

²⁸ Coleman, Ray (1984) Lennon. NewYork: McCraw-Hill Book Company, p. 256.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

strong deltoid muscle in an adult male is about 40/45 pounds, when hard rock music is played, only 10/15 pounds of pressure is needed to push down the arm.

Dr. Diamond found that the stopped anapestic beat causes a "switching" of the brain, it occurs when the symmetry between both sides of the brain is destroyed. This causes stress to the body and can cause lessened work performance, **learning and behavior problems in children**, and a general malaise in adults.²⁹ A mix-up in alpha waves between the two hemispheres of the brain also results in the same brain wave synchronization found in schizophrenics and babies.

Diamond made three powerful conclusions:

- More than 90 % registered an INSTANT loss of two thirds of their normal muscle strength while listening to rock.
- Haitian voodoo drum music has the same rhythms as rock.
- Above a certain decibel level, the same muscle weakening occurs, regardless of the rhythm.

There are many factors that may influence how music affects a person. These include the intentions of the composer, the lyrics used, the instruments used and the state of mind of the listener.

A common experience observed in therapy groups and clinics is that drug users don't recover if they continue to listen to heavy metal rock music. A one-year follow-up of cocaine addicts from Sedona Villa, a branch of Camelback Hospital of Phoenix, Arizona found that none of the patients who continued to listen to heavy metal music recovered from their drug addiction.

²⁹ Can listening to music be harmful to us, Simon Heather (www.simonheather.co.uk/pages/articles/listen.pdf)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

In a study of students Dr. James Johnson of the University of North Carolina found that listening to rap music increased tolerance for and tendency to violence. It also promoted materialism and reduced interest in academic study and long term success (reported in the Arizona Republic, July 4, 1994).³⁰

A study published in the Journal of Media Psychology (2001) looked at how listening to different kinds of music affected a sample of 243 teenagers. Researchers looked at how music - **affected levels of aggression, attitudes toward women and feelings of distrust**. The teenagers were divided into three groups. One group listened to heavy-metal music with violent lyrics, one group listening to heavy-metal music with non-violent lyrics and the final group listened to easy-listening music. The researchers concluded that; *“heavy-metal music listeners exhibited more aggression and lesser regard for women.”* **The young people who listened to the heavy-metal music with non-violent lyrics developed the same negative attitudes toward women** and were angrier than the "easy-listening" teenagers.³¹

A study on blood vessels revealed that a person listening to his or her favorite music may be good for their cardiovascular system. Researchers at the University Of Maryland School Of Medicine in Baltimore have shown that the emotions aroused by joyful music have a healthy effect on blood vessel function. Music, selected by study participants because it made them feel good caused tissue in the inner lining of blood vessels to dilate increasing blood flow. On the other hand, when study volunteers listened to music they perceived as stressful which was mainly heavy metal, their blood vessels narrowed, producing a potentially unhealthy response that reduces blood flow. *“We had previously demonstrated that positive emotions, such as laughter, were good for vascular health. So, a logical question was whether other emotions, such as those evoked by music, have a similar effect,”* says principal

³⁰ Can listening to music be harmful to us, Simon Heather (www.simonheather.co.uk/pages/articles/listen.pdf)

³¹ Can listening to music be harmful to us, Simon Heather (www.simonheather.co.uk/pages/articles/listen.pdf)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

investigator Michael Miller, M.D., director of preventive cardiology at the University of Maryland Medical Center. *“We knew that individual people would react differently to different types of music, so in this study, we enabled participants to select music based upon their likes and dislikes.”*

The media is not neutral, MTV’s Founder and former president, Bob Pitman stated that: *“The strongest appeal you can make is emotionally, if you can get their emotions going, make them forget their logic, you’ve got ‘em”*, he also said that *“At MTV we don’t shoot for the 14 year olds we own them”*.

Tom Preston, MTV’s president says that music is the most global of communication mediums *“even more global than movies, because music is more pervasive than any other form of culture”*³²

About a decade ago, Dorothy Retallack performed experiments with music, plants and their combined environment. The results she found was quite interesting, she exposed one set of bean sprouts, Morning Glories and other plants to nonstop rock as they grew. Another set of plant heard placid, devotional *“religious”* music. Ten days later, the first *rock-drenched* beans tried to escape from the music by growing away from the source thereof. They were underdeveloped, wilted and eventually died. The other group however, flourished under their steady diet of *godly music*, growing **TOWARDS** the source as they thrived and blossomed.

If rock music causes plants to be underdeveloped and eventually die one could ask the question of what rock music does to people.

Another experiment with regards to music was conducted. Experiments done by Masaru Emoto on the effects of music and words on water found that where the

³² At MTV We Own 14 Year Old’s (www.youtube.com/watch?v=tRhminE9J8E)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

water was from would change the crystal structure, when it was frozen. When the water was clean and healthy it formed beautiful crystals, when it was polluted it was as if it couldn't make any structure to the crystal at all. Keeping in mind that the human body are made up of 70% of water it makes sense that mankind would also be affected, explaining some of those deep down reactions a person has when listening to certain sounds and words spoken. Music was introduced in the experiment; people naturally gravitate towards sounds which could create the felling of joy, but flinch when music seems to annoy them.

Water does exactly the same. In the experiment they exposed water samples to different music before crystallisation, the intricate forms of the crystals responded to the sounds; most were variations of delicate beauty, but a few like heavy metal were fractured.³³



Figure 4: Water crystal, pure harmonious/music positive words³⁴

³³ Water Crystals – the impact of music and intention on water and on us
(www.emilyelst.wordpress.com/2011/08/20/water-crystals-the-impact-of-music-and-intention-on-water-and-us/)

³⁴ Water Crystals – the impact of music and intention on water and on us
(www.emilyelst.wordpress.com/2011/08/20/water-crystals-the-impact-of-music-and-intention-on-water-and-us/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 5: Water Crystals exposed to heavy metal music/negative words³⁵

As this continued they then considered positive and negative language, samples were left over night with words or phrases in various languages before being crystallised. Positive sentiments like thanks and love formed elaborate and lovely crystals, while negative statements like killing and disgust so distorted the crystals they were like polluted water.

Enough evidence thus exists to clearly show that when rock is played, the body, mind and spirit of mankind suffers.

The proof that music affects the spirit of man can be found in Scripture.

And it happened when the spirit from God was on Saul, that David took a harp and played with his hand. And there was relief for Saul, and it was well with him, and the evil spirit departed from him.

1 Samuel 16:23 MKJV

King Saul was changed when the young musician David played godly music, Saul was firstly refreshed, “**RAVACH**” the Hebrew word meaning “*to breathe*” freely – thus

³⁵ Conscious water Crystals, The Power of Prayer made visible
(www.spiritofmaat.com/archive/aug1/consciouswater.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

the music refreshed Saul's physical body. Secondly Saul was "well" in Hebrew "TOWB" which means "to be (make) well, good, or better" – thus the music that David played made Saul's mind well. Thirdly the demon departed from Saul as a result of David's music played on the harp.

Godly music refreshes the body, makes the mind well and drives away evil spirits!

Ungodly music however:

- Rock has been proven to harm and destroy the body.
- Rock hypnotizes the mind.
- Rock attracts evil spirits, as anyone who has ever repented of it knows only too well, as well as people who have received deliverance from their involvement in rock and roll.

Something, as ungodly as rock music, that physically and spiritually harms a person, cannot be made holy and good by changing the lyrics as defenders of "Christian" rock claim it to be.³⁶

5.4 The beat in music

The occult is defined as the unseen and therefore it brings up a topic of great discussion and controversy when referred to in terms of music and the media. Music in itself rather has an extensive history, from the use of music to induce certain states - modes were thought to have certain qualities. There is even some evidence to suggest that the Egyptians used music as a healing tool. This anticipated the later exploitation of these techniques by figures as diverse as Sun Ra, Jimi Hendrix, the

³⁶ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA: Chick Publications, pp. 11-13.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Misunderstood, Rudolph Steiner, a variety of "new age practitioners" such as Stephen Levine.

These types of customs are utilized in Africa, India, South America and within most native cultures, including shamanic cultures from Russia to the Americas to the Pacific, which have some kind of tradition of sacred song to them.

The links run from the Russian shamanic traditions, the Australian aborigines to East Indian Gandharva Veda and Karnatak, music to Hawaiian chanting, to perhaps the most infamous occult music tradition of all, the Yoruban culture in Africa which found its expression as Voudon (Voodoo) in Haiti and Santeria throughout most of the remainder of South America. This tradition has also found its way into modern-day culture through jazz, tango, Cuban music, blues and rock and roll.³⁷

Traditionally Moslem, Hindu and Hebrew prayer is chanted and not spoken, numerous books in all these cultures regard chanted prayer as very powerful. The Western church also has a tradition of proportional chant which revolved into Gregorian chant. As years progressed every major composer from the Renaissance onward devoted their output to sacred work up to the twentieth century, including composers like Stravinsky, Messiaen. Several composers also chose subject matter of a more obscure occult or spiritual tilt. Mozart overtly wrote about Masonic principles in his opera "*The Magic Flute*"

Scriabin seemed to have been under the influence of the Theosophical movement of his day with his Prometheus Symphony; Richard Strauss "*Also Sprach Zarathustra*" is a piece dedicated to Nietzsche but also to the misunderstood principles of the founder of the Zoroastrian religion which is considered to be the first continuous monotheistic religion; in its current state it is a relatively small religion practiced

³⁷ The Occult and Music, Gary Gomes, 2004 (www.furious.com/perfect/occult.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

pretty much exclusively in Iran and in a small colony (Parsi) in Bombay, India. Erik Satie was a Rosicrucian, he applied some of the philosophies of this secret society to his piano pieces; Dane Rudhyar and Gustav Holst were astrologers; Olivier Messiaen wrote numerous pieces dedicated to his unique form of Roman Catholic mysticism.

One wonders how these musicians and composers come up with the components they add to their music pieces. Music is an auditory phenomenon which isn't visible; **it is an occult science which seems to come from everywhere**, interpreted by an audience with a wide variety of secret messages to it. **People mostly do not pay attention to words or lyrics they do not understand on some records.** This denunciation should not be taken that there isn't real occult or spiritual significance to music neither that music cannot be a conscious altering experience for some people.

Blues, rock and jazz have profound occult roots in the Yoruban and Celtic cultures. Blues originated in Africa and Jazz came out of Europe and Africa, while rock originated from Blues and old Country. Sex and drugs which usually forms part or the rock and roll genre, is represented a sacred tradition, as sex – being used properly can lead to occult enlightenment or power, same as alcohol and drugs. Power, intoxication and the creative energy of the universe – sex – are said to be difficult to withstand.

It thus seems that music can alter one's consciousness, **the repetitive beats in most rock and dance music strongly correlates with shamanism rituals**, for some it is hard to see the demonic deception in something so acceptable and thought of as so Scriptural. It doesn't take much to be controlled by music; certain music is even played in a supermarket to rush shoppers or to keep them there for longer depending on the season. Music carries a powerful influence and it **accomplishes, for the most part, just what the one who controls it wants it to.**

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Witches throughout the ages have dedicated long durations of time to music for the purpose of pleasing their god(s) and to receive more power for themselves. **Repeating lyrics in songs also seems to constitute for mantras.**

God created mankind's bodies with a natural rhythm, the heartbeat thus music listened to that doesn't make a person feel nervous would be in the following order – firstly the rhythm then the melody and lastly the beat. Music following a different sequence by putting the beat first upsets the natural rhythm of mankind's being as created by the Lord.

Christian Berdahl from Shepherd's Call Ministry states that modern music contains the exact rhythm and beats of voodoo drums. The priests use these specific beats to go into a trance opening them to possession of demonic spirits.³⁸

Music has had a key role in the occult as far back as history records. The pulse-beat of drums and rattles is vital in voodoo and most shamanism, to which rock music is closely related. "*Christian rock groups*" mimic the beat that shamans have long used to call up demons. Ray Manzarek, keyboard player for the rock group The Doors, explains the relationship between shamanism and modern rock: "*When the Siberian shaman gets ready to go into his trance, all the villagers get together... and play whatever instruments they have to send him off [into trance and possession]....*"³⁹

Godwin states: "The bridge between actual voodoo and modern rock came through a style of music known as "*the blues*." Filled with themes of fornication, murder, adultery and hopeless despair, the blues was made popular in the 1930's, 40's and 50's by dozens of black performers. Many of these men met the same violent deaths they so frequently sang about. These blues pioneers took the ancient tribal sounds

³⁸ Shepherd's Call Ministry (www.shepcall.com/)

³⁹ Music and Worship (www.demonbuster.com/music.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

of their African ancestors and turned them into a new and widespread form of musical voodoo.⁴⁰ The message was utterly negative and the music was rooted in witchcraft.” Rock stars like Led Zeppelin, the Who and the Rolling stones “*modified*” the blues into their own electrified blast, Jimi Hendrix described his band of electric blues as:

“The blues are easy to play but not to feel. The background of our music is a spiritual blues thing. Blues is a part of America. We’re making our music into electric church music - a new kind of Bible, not like in a hotel, but a Bible you carry in your hearts, one that will give you a physical feeling. We try to make our music so loose and hard-hitting so that it hits your soul hard enough to make it open. It’s like shock therapy or a can opener. Rock is technically blues-based . . . We want them to realize that our music is just as spiritual as going to church.”⁴¹

Why would a beat have to be hard enough to crack open ones soul? A story about an American missionary who took his family to Africa’s children one day played the rock records they brought with them, shocked native tribesmen rushed up to the preacher, their faces full of fear. They asked him why he allowed his children to play music that was used to call up demons during voodoo rituals.

Kwasi Dzidzornu, a young African a gifted conga drum player who was much in demand on rock recording sessions met Jimi Hendrix in London; Hendrix called him “*Rocky*”. His father was the chief drummer and a voodoo high priest in a small village in Ghana. Rocky performed with some of the biggest names in popular music such as the *Rolling Stones*, Jimmy Page of *Led Zeppelin*, and of course, Hendrix himself.

⁴⁰ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA :Chick Publications, p. 16.

⁴¹ Henderson, D (1978) *Scuse me While I Kiss the Sky*, Jimi Hendrix Voodoo Child. New York: Bantam Books,, pp. 214-215.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Early in their relationship, Rocky wanted to know where Jimi learned the voodoo rhythms and dances that he used on stage and in the studio. Hendrix wouldn't say. According to Rocky, the rhythms of Hendrix's "music" were **IDENTICAL** to those used by his father during demon raising voodoo ceremonies. Rocky said that Jimi's wild, in-concert leaps and primitive rhythmic movements were the same as those used to worship Oxun, the pagan god of thunder and lightning (a demon).⁴²

The son of a voodoo priest basically stated that Rock and Roll and a satanic song service to call up demons are the exact same thing. Rock's incredible volume, coupled with screeching dissonance and the rhythmic beat of voodoo, form a battering ram that smashes into the listener's mind and spirit.

Subliminal and back-masks pump Satan's messages into the brain, and are combined with a development called ELF (Extremely Low Frequency). These are subsonic tones that cannot be heard, but are felt in the physical body. At a rock concert a person will feel the ELF literally "moving" their internal organs around. Depending on the number of cycles per second, ELF can produce euphoria or violent, murderous reactions in those listening.⁴³

Internet author Sherry Shriner states: "*ELF and Mind Control is without a doubt, the most dangerous and deadly weapon of warfare affecting people across America today*" and "*ELF is a high tech weapon abbreviated for Extreme Low Frequency signals which mimic natural brain waves. It is not only used to brainwash and control people, it's used to physically attack them as well.*"⁴⁴

⁴² Henderson, D (1978) Scuse me While I Kiss the Sky, Jimi Hendrix Voodoo Child. New York: Bantam Books., pp. 250-251.

⁴³ Last Trumpet Newsletter, Vol. IV, Issue XIII, August, 1985, pp. 13.

⁴⁴ The ELF God (www.sherryshriner.com/elf-god.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

These beats and effects music has on the brain of mankind, opening them for demonic affliction is the spiritual attack Satan had all along to wipe out entire generations of youth, turning them against their parents and more importantly against their Creator and Loving Father God. The devil is also using the same tactics to destroy Christian youth through so-called "Christian" rock. Young believers now bow before the altar of Christian Rock just as their unsaved counterparts worship secular rock. A clean-cut image and some religious words sweeten the deception. Satan doesn't mind one bit - since he's still the one in charge.

Scientific studies also prove that voodoo beats cause dysfunction in the brain, these beats are ancient Voodoo but only introduced in Western music since the 1920's, the beats also cause an emotional excitement that seems to be rooted in the confusion that is brought on by beats that are working so effectively against the creation of God. These are the kinds of beats that result in no anointing, just coolness.

One of the problems is that exposure to certain types of music actually work against man's ability to receive wisdom and discernment from God. The more subtle evil is difficult to describe, except that it gives one of several moods that are against God. It may be a mood of rebellion, lust, sensuality, drunkenness, silliness, disrespect, or any such thing.

But worship is much more than just music or singing. Worship also includes serving, bowing prostrate, and the giving of offerings. Studies of the Old Testament prophets reveal their stand against worship of formality and not of a true sincere heart. In Romans 1:25 it can be seen that worship can be misguided. Jesus rebuked the Scribes and Pharisees for worshiping in vain, serving the created thing more than the Creator.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

For they changed the truth of God into a lie, and they worshiped and served the created thing more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.

Romans 1:25 MKJV

That which produces discord or strife is not from the Holy Spirit. Some methods convey anger. Music can be earthy and sensual even without words; it can be used to create a kind of a mind-numbing hypnotic effect. There are musical techniques that are used to send a message of relativism, drunkenness, a questioning of authority and a rebellious attitude, any technique that brings attention to the singer or musician comes from the wrong spirit. Any of these techniques make sense in the world, but don't belong among those who have been called out of the world – those who belong to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Today artists are idolised, people particularly youngsters follow them on social media sites such as twitter and Face Book, buy their clothing and perfume lines and most of all children want to be them or be around them. Idolatry is an image made of something that has been created, in this case a person. Many times the person or idol seen in the media is not who the person is in real life, most of the artists exists under another alter persona.

Music Alters children's Brain-waves, children being exposed to classical music have an increase in a part of the alpha rhythm frequency band and, greater coherence between different regions of the cerebral cortex, most pronounced in the frontal lobes. Greater coherence is thought by some workers to indicate better cooperation among brain regions but others view it as typical of augmented relaxation.

Certain types of music have been shown to have the ability to increase memory and recall. Special pieces of music which includes The Blue Danube, aid hens in laying more eggs and can help cows to yield more milk, wheat will grow faster when

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

exposed to special sounds. Putting rats into two connected boxes and piping rock into one box and Bach into the other, the rats choose Bach music over rock. They move to the Bach box. When the type of music was switched from one box to the other, the rats will move again from the rock to the Bach box.

When different groups of mice are subjected to the sound of traditional voodoo drumming which is the same as contemporary rock drumming, to Strauss waltzes, and to silence, the groups that were subjected to either silence or Strauss waltzes have no problem learning a maze, with the Strauss waltz group having a slight edge in performance.

However, the voodoo group performs progressively worse over the period of time they are exposed to the syncopated rhythms and eventually becomes so disoriented that they are unable to complete the maze at all. They become hyperactive, aggressive, and often cannibalistic; the brains of the voodoo mice have highly abnormal neuronal growth patterns and chemical imbalances in the parts of the brain that are important to learning and memory formation.

Today these same beats are found in modern pop and dancing music, thus recreating the exact pattern rock has used to defile the youth.

In today's time and age the occult is becoming an increasingly common component in television programs and music videos - orientated towards the youth. Due to the overexposure, children are more likely to **accept occult practices**; it is portrayed as exciting and exotic, entertaining a lifestyle option for young people⁴⁵ and an alternative to conventional religion.

⁴⁵ Youth Orientated TV and the Occult, Barker J, (www.watchman.org/youthandoccult.htm)

Fire is another element which is used in rock music, used in all three phases of the production thereof – live shows and concerts, song lyrics and album packaging – hinting to be the modern version of Tophet’s ancient cremations.⁴⁶ The element of fire is also evident in pop music today.

Christians without the decrement of the Lord is being deceived by “*Christian rockers*”, selling a false Jesus to the masses. This idol worship will continue to flourish until Christian parents, especially fathers as the prophets of their household, rise up in righteous anger and say, “***Enough!***” when a person receives a warning Scripture urges them to return to the path which is good – to find rest for ones soul, to heed to the warning and turn from the path of destruction.

So says Jehovah, Stand in the ways and see, and ask for the old paths where the good way is, and walk in it, and you shall find rest for your souls. But they said, We will not walk in it. Also I set watchmen over you, saying, Listen to the sound of the ram's horn. But they said, We will not listen.

Jeremiah 6:16-17 MKJV

5.5 Quotes From Famous Rock Stars

- IN HELL from In the cover song, “*The Prince*”, Metallica openly sing:

***"Angel from below . . .
I WISH TO SELL MY SOUL . . .
DEVIL TAKE MY SOUL
with diamonds you repay I don't care for heaven
so don't you look for me to cry
AND I WILL BURN the day I die."***

⁴⁶ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA: Chick Publications, p. 19

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

- Rock star, Marilyn Manson, proudly boasts:

"Hopefully, I'll be remembered as the person who brought an end to Christianity."

- Manson's "hope" for Antichrist Superstar:

"I think every time people listen to this new album maybe God will be destroyed in their heads. . ."

- Manson's "blasphemy" is not just an act. Manson readily admits there's more to the show than meets the eye:

"I don't know if anyone has really understood what we're trying to do. This isn't just about shock value . . . that's just there to lure the people in. Once we've got em we can give em our MESSAGE."

- "Music is the strongest form of magic." —Marilyn Manson
- Carlos Santana admits to being controlled by demons, and having NO concern for morality or God:

"The energy of devils and angels is the same energy; it's how you use it. It's fuel. There is a saying: If you scare all your devils away, the angels will go away with them. You know, the halo and the horns are the same thing. I mean it's OK to be spiritually horny - that's what creative genius is all about. Geniuses don't have time to think about how it's going to be received... they don't have time to think whether people like it or not, is it morally right, will God like it?"

**"...you meditate and you got the candles, you got the incense and
you've been chanting, and all of a sudden you hear this voice: 'Write this
down' " (Carlos Santana, Rolling Stone magazine, March 16, 2000, p. 41).**

- "Rock concerts are the churches of today." (Guitarist Craig Chaquico of the rock group 'Jefferson Starship.')
- "Get them while they're young and bend their minds." (Spencer Dryden of the rock group 'Jefferson Starship.')
- Twisted Sister sings, "Burn in Hell":
Bon Jovi sings in "*Homebound Train*":

**"When I was just a boy
THE DEVIL TOOK MY HAND
Took me from my home
He made me a man . . .
I'm going DOWN, DOWN, DOWN, DOWN, DOWN
On the homebound train."**

In Smash Hits magazine, Bon Jovi says: ". . . I'd kill my mother for rock and roll. I WOULD SELL MY SOUL."

- Slayer sings themselves as:
**"Warriors from the gates of hell . . .
In lord Satan we trust."**
- Slayer's albums sell in the millions! And song after song IS PRAISE TO SATAN! Their song "*Hell Awaits*" says:

**"Jesus knows your soul cannot be saved
CRUCIFY THE SO CALLED LORD
He soon shall fall to me
Your souls are damned
Your God has fell to slave for me eternally Hell awaits."**

- The group Acheron, has an album titled, "The Rites of the Black Mass". On the album Peter Gilmore, of the Church of Satan, actually reads the rites of a Black Mass, as the group Acheron, in hellish growls, sings such lyrics as:

*"Glory to thee almighty Satan . . .
We praise thee, we bless thee,
WE ADORE THEE . . .
THOU ART LORD, THOU ALONE, OH MIGHTY SATAN."*

- The group Manowar, sings in "The Bridge of Death":
*"Dark Lord, I summon thee
Demanding the sacred right to burn in hell . . .
Take My lustful soul Drink my blood as I drink yours . . .
LUCIFER IS KING PRAISE SATAN!"*
- The group Morbid Angel, sings in "Vengeance in Mine":
*"Mote it be Satan's sword I have become . . .
I burn with hate
TO RID THE WORLD OF THE NAZARENE!"*
- And to commit the ultimate blasphemy they sing in the song "Blasphemy":
**"Chant the blasphemy Mockery of the Messiah
WE CURSE THE HOLY GHOST . . .**

Blaspheme the Ghost

BLASPHEMY OF THE HOLY GHOST." ⁴⁷

6. COVERT DESTRUCTION THROUGH "CHRISTIAN ROCK"

The main reason that churches introduce rock bands into their services is the hope that if they can be as close to the world as possible, people who are unsaved won't see too much of a difference and that they will better "relate" to young people and hence has a better chance of winning them to Christ.

Scripture however states that:

Do not love the world, nor the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him,

1 John 2:15 MKJV

Adulterers and adulteresses! Do you not know that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? Therefore whoever desires to be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.

James 4:4 MKJV

Bringing rock music into a church is the same sin of desiring to be like the nations. Christians should "*not be conformed to this world*" (Romans 12:2), but be people separated from worldly practices and separated to be holy like God. In the world of biology, an example of the proverbial frog is given, a frog, when placed into boiling water; the frog will immediately jump out. However, if that same frog is put into a bowl of cool water which is slowly heated by a bunsen burner, the frog will eventually boil to death. Religious rock and roll is like the frog and the water. The term "*rock and roll*" means fornication, as mentioned before. It is a street name for sexual immorality. It has wrecked the lives of many teenagers through suicide, drug abuse, immorality, perversion, Satanism, etc. Sadly, modern Christians and church leaders are allowing this demonic music into their churches, claiming that the music is holy

⁴⁷ Rockumentary (www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/rockumentary.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

and sanctified because the lyrics are changed to include some “*religious*” words. Where is the discernment in the church? Are Christians losing their ability to discern the difference between good and evil? The fact that this demonic music even made it into the church is proof of the moral and spiritual decline affecting the church today. The Church is being invaded by hard rock, acid rock, punk rock, new wave, and heavy metal music under the guise of religious rock and roll.⁴⁸

One distressing problem about the religious rock scene is that many involved also listen to secular rock and roll. At some of the concerts put on by the religious rockers they sometime “*warm*” up their audiences by playing secular rock and roll songs. Some of these bands use album art which is similar to those use in Satanic and secular rock bands, for example the one eye sign, the triangle and signs of death. Haste the day claims to be a “*Christian Metal Core*” band but their album art reveals something else:



Figure 6: Haste the Day CD Cover, depicting death and decay.⁴⁹

⁴⁸ Religious Rock, The Music of Devils in the Church (www.biblebelievers.com/Rock1.html)

⁴⁹ Dreamer Haste the Day Album ([www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dreamer_\(Haste_the_Day_album\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dreamer_(Haste_the_Day_album)))

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

As I Lay Dying is another “*Christian Metal Core*” band, the lead singer hired a hit man to kill his wife, the fruits of these bands does not speak of the fruit of the Holy Spirit.

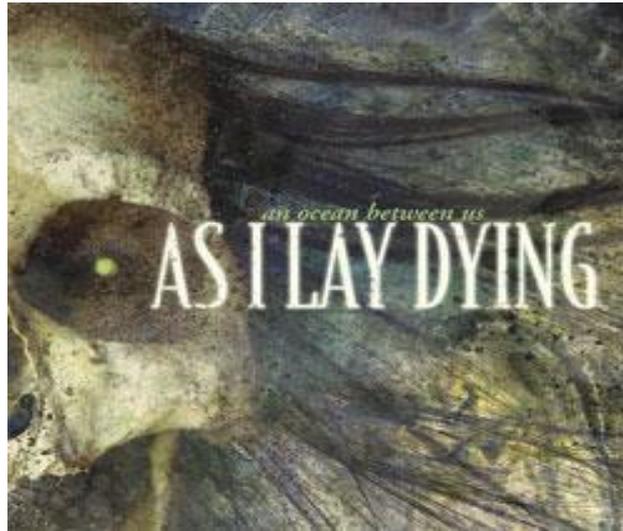


Figure 7: CD Cover: As I Lay Dying, depicting death and the One Eye symbol.⁵⁰



Figure 8: Front man of As I Lay Dying, lightning bolt representing Satan and Eagle representing Freemasonry⁵¹

⁵⁰ An Ocean Between Us (www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/An_Ocean_Between_Us), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.

⁵¹ Singer in Christian Band “As I Lay Dying” hired hit man to kill wife (www.metalinjection.net/latest-news/tim-lambesis-trial/new-details-on-as-i-lay-dying-frontman-tim-lambesis-arrest-lawyer-switchover)

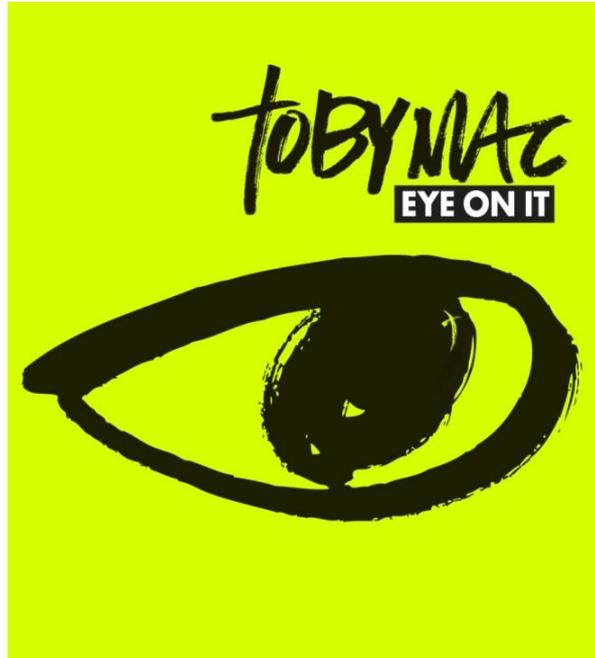


Figure 9: Toby Mac: “Christian Rapper” – one eye symbolism on album art.⁵²

6.1 The Fruit of Religious Rock

This thesis does not deem to list all the fruits of religious rock, rather to highlight that it conforms mankind to the ways of the world.

There is a definite pressure on Christians to conform to this world rather than separating them from its ungodly influence, religious rock is an imitation of secular rock and roll. Christian Rock is played at the same loud levels and give off the same nightclub bar-room atmosphere with all the coloured lights, smoke pots, and special effects, identifying and imitating the secular rock scene which indirectly giving approval to that type of morality and lifestyle. This could lead to a path of destruction

⁵² Toby Mac, Eye on it (www.rlslog.net/tobymac-eye-on-it-web-2012-wax/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

for the followers of Christian Rock – the youth, God is very clear about leading children astray as it can be seen in Matthew.

And whoever shall receive one such little child in My name receives Me. But whoever shall offend one of these little ones who believes in Me, it would be better for him that an ass's millstone were hung around his neck, and he be sunk in the depth of the sea.

Matthew 18:5-6 MKJV

God speaks to mankind in a **still small voice**, therefore one could ask why Christian rock music is played so loud, giving the same mind numbing effect as secular rock if this is not how man hears the voice of God. The effect thereof will be that man will not hear the voice of God in the smashing guitars and beating drums but on the other hand it is Satan who speaks to mankind through these beats and sounds.

And He said, Go forth and stand on the mountain before Jehovah. And, behold, Jehovah passed by, and a great and strong wind tore the mountains, and broke the rocks in pieces before Jehovah. But Jehovah was not in the wind. And after the wind was an earthquake, but Jehovah was not in the earthquake. And after the earthquake was a fire, but Jehovah was not in the fire. And after the fire was a still, small voice.

1 Kings 19:11-12 MKJV

Through Christian rock people aren't kept separate from this world, they conform to the standards of this world going into a false agreement, accepting the lifestyle of secular rock stars.

Scripture blatantly states that Christians should not have fellowship with the works of Darkness, and they should not be in agreement with demons.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Do not be unequally yoked together with unbelievers; for what fellowship does righteousness have with lawlessness? And what partnership does light have with darkness? And what agreement does Christ have with Belial? Or what part does a believer have with an unbeliever? And what agreement does a temple of God have with idols? For you are the temple of the living God, as God has said, "I will dwell in them and walk among them; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people." Therefore come out from among them and be separated, says the Lord, and do not touch the unclean thing. And I will receive you

2 Corinthians 6:14-17 MKJV

Religious rock leads its followers back to involvement with secular rock, it leads Christian youth away from a life of holiness which is ONLY found in the Source of Life, Jesus Christ.

There is no rock group totally neutral and suitable for Christian listening, as every rock group either directly or indirectly has songs with lyrics that according to God's standards encourage one or more of the following: rebellion, immorality, drug use, drinking, occultism, suicide, violence, self worship and blasphemy.

Rock music does not produce: Godliness and purity, a hunger and a thirst for Christ, a broken and contrite heart, conviction for sin, or a Christ honouring atmosphere rather the opposite thereof.

David Wilkerson, talking about the problem of Religious rock, but it also applies to Christians who partake of secular rock. *"Only the despisers of the Lord Jesus could embrace what He hates.*

Only the rebellious could purchase one of their records. Only those with a divided heart could go to one of their concerts or view one of their video cassettes. Their video cassettes are demonic and blasphemous. The spirit of mixture and confusion it

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

was born in will slowly possess you and lead you blindly to the altars of Baal. Sneer if you choose, but you have been warned".⁵³

Christians blindly defend “*Christian*” as well as secular rock, especially when they hear someone speaking against it. If Christians defended, loved and served the Lord in the same manner a lot of the problems of idolatry would not have an effect on them as it has today.

See then that you walk circumspectly, not as fools, but as wise, redeeming the time, because the days are evil.

Ephesians 5:15-16 MKJV

REBELLION: Many involved in the religious rock scene refuse to listen to correction and rebuke from Scripture. They harden their hearts and set their mind not to give up their demonic music.

Jesus answered and said to him, If a man loves Me, he will keep My Word. And My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make Our abode with him. He who does not love Me does not keep My Words, and the Word which you hear is not Mine, but the Father's who sent Me.

John 14:23-24 MKJV

Christians are a peculiar people and God wants them to live godly, separated, and holy lives in this evil world.

teaching us that having denied ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live discreetly, righteously and godly, in this present world,

Titus 2:12 MKJV

6.2 Testimonies of young People who came out of Christian Rock:⁵⁴

⁵³ Wilkerson, D (1985) Set the Trumpet to Thy Mouth. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 113-114.

⁵⁴ Testimonies of Young People and Christian Rock (www.av1611.org/crock/crockkids.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

"I was following the Lord wholeheartedly until we switched churches and I was invited to the new youth group. I had a conviction against rock music, but as I was surrounded by it, my beliefs were corrupted. This music eventually led to rebellion and moral failures. The Lord has gained victory in my life now, but the music still brings on rebellion if I listen to it. Please get rid of this music and play melodious, harmonious music!"

- A Fifteen-Year-Old Student From Pennsylvania

"'Christian rock' had made me a shallow, rebellious young Christian. It made it easy for me to get into regular rock music. When I finally submitted to God and got the rock music out of my life, I was able to see the double standard that is lived out by 'Christian rock' musicians." 'Christian rock' does not praise God and it is worse than regular rock because I think it is hypocritical. Rock is wrong and addictive and has contributed to my moral failure. I praise God for His help in releasing me from it."

- An Eighteen-Year-Old Student From Indiana

"When I started listening to 'Christian rock' I slowly started to listen to just regular worldly rock (soft rock). Then I was listening to something harder and harder. It not only led me into worldly rock, but I was getting rebellious toward my parents, and I was having sensual and lustful thoughts. I also could not memorize or read God's Word and understand it or retain it."

- A Fifteen-Year-Old Student From Nebraska

"I prayed that God would re-sensitize my spirit to discern the spirit of music. It did take a while but I'm a witness now of how rock music desensitizes a spirit.

I'm free now, PRAISE THE LORD!!!"

- A Seventeen-Year-Old Student From Ohio

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

*"I began listening to 'Christian rock,' and shortly thereafter I began a fast, steady
pace downhill. This eventually led me into a totally backslidden state.*

*I know that my own rebellion was the cause Of my fall. However, 'Christian rock'
entered into my life at a very crucial point and added fuel to the fire. I remember the
specific day and the song I listened to first. I remember feeling rebellious — like I
was going against what is considered acceptable by the standards of Godly people.*

*Within weeks, maybe months, a very apparent breakdown of my conscience,
morality, and appearance was evident. As I stated before, within two years I had
completely fallen away from the Lord.*

*Today I am serving the Lord, yet I still have a tremendously difficult time resisting the
temptation of listening to the music of my past-Christian or secular. When I hear this
music it causes me to reminisce fondly of my past, and I completely forget the
darkness I was delivered from. This dismisses the love, forgiveness, and power of
my Lord in my life.*

*I appeal to Church leaders today.... I plead with you to purge your churches, youth
groups, and homes of rock and roll. Without going into further detail of my own life, it
is my hope that the sins of my past can be used as a testimony for the glory of the
Lord Jesus Christ.*

*I pray that the devastating results of rock music will be realized in the Church before
it steals anymore of the souls of our youth."*

- A Nineteen-Year-Old Student From California

7. DESTRUCTION VIA DECEPTION SPREAD THROUGH THE MEDIA

Blending the occult with mass media is nothing new; the latest trend is to target young children with this occultic entertainment and practices. Popular forms of occultism marketed to the youth are Gothic music and clothing, vampirism, and witchcraft.⁵⁵

These occultic forms are marketed through media, music, toys and other relevant forms of entertainment. Although the gothic movement in the media somewhat reduced in popularity nowadays, it spurred into a new clique dabbling with the occult and vampirism.

Earlier television series attracting the youth to vampirism was *Buffy the Vampire Slayer*, now movies based on novels like the *Twilight* saga, television series *The Vampire Diaries* elevates their fascination with these creatures.

Disney is a major contributor in the demise of morals and upbringing in children while keeping a front of wholesomeness and goodness; children are fed a steady dose of occultism and witchcraft. Under the guise of entertainment the occult has been cleverly brought into these movies. Cannibalism was subtly promoted in the Disney movie "Alive" which featured survivors of an airplane crash who turned to cannibalism, Mickey Mouse a favorite among young and old plays a leading role in "The Sorceress's Apprentice."

The practice of including hidden messages goes right back to the early Mickey Mouse Goofy short movie animations. It stated decades ago and nearly all of the Disney movies contain subliminal references to "adult" words, and even images. Many people will argue that these occurrences are just coincidences, but how can

⁵⁵ Youth and the Occult, Baker J, (www.watchman.org/occult/teenwitch.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Disney make a "*mistake*" this many times? Occult images and adult content are subliminally placed in Disney movies; in "*The Little Mermaid*" the castle features a male sex organ, the priest who performs the marriage ceremony gets an erection.



Figure 10: Disney movie the Little Mermaid, priest getting an erection.⁵⁶

The word sex are often formed in Disney movies by water, trees or other rather absurd things, freemasonry images are clearly evident in the Beauty and the Beast. One could ask oneself why children should be exposed to adult content, things children need not be exposed to. Is this a deeper agenda to brainwash children with occult images so they won't find it abnormal in adulthood.

Fiction is another method used via the media to feed hidden messages and symbolism to the masses and innocent children. The occultist Baum, a member of the Theosophical Society was inspired by some spirit who gave him the "magic key" to write the Wizard of Oz book which came out in the 1900. L Frank Baum explained how he came to write the book: "*It was pure inspiration....It came to me right out of*

⁵⁶ Disney's naughty subliminals (www.helpfreetheearth.com/news103_Disney.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

*the blue. I think that sometimes the Great Author has a message to get across and He has to use the instrument at hand. I happened to be that medium, and I believe the magic key was given me to open the doors to sympathy and understanding, joy, peace and happiness.*⁵⁷

The book's story is full of satanic activity and satanic thinking. Oz is also known to have been used by its author as an abbreviation for Osirus.

The Grimm brothers, who were cabalistic Jews, gathered together the folk occult stories which were saturated with spells, trances and drugs. Some of the classic Disney stories are rewrites based on the Grimm Brothers' stories which are collectively dark and often very cruel.⁵⁸

The owl symbol is also widespread among Disney's important films. In Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs (1937) the esoteric owl imagery is overwhelming and appears quite a few times. The owl symbolism is also linked to a number of occult practices namely the Illuminati (1776) and the Bohemian Club (1872).⁵⁹



⁵⁷ Hearn, Michael P (1973) *The Annotated Wizard of OZ*. NY: Clarkson N. Potter, p. 73.

⁵⁸ *The Horror of Disney*, Brittini Bizarro, 24 May 2011 (www.acryliczombie.wordpress.com/2011/05/24/the-horror-of-disney/)

⁵⁹ *Walt Disney Owl Mystery* (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Figure 11: Left: Owl symbols form the landing at the top of the stairs. Right: Owl symbols form the stairs.⁶⁰



Figure 12: Left: The image of a flying owl forms the top of a coat-rack. Right: The image of owls forming the staircase.⁶¹



Figure 13: An owl forms part of the headboard of one of the dwarf's beds⁶²

The Global Elite has held secret meetings in the ancient Redwood Forest of Northern California since 1973, in an occult ritual a giant stone owl is worshipped sacrificing a human being in effigy to what they call the "Great Owl of Bohemia".

⁶⁰ Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul)

⁶¹ Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul)

⁶² Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 14: Bohemian Grove⁶³

Tracing the symbol of the owl down to its origin, one reaches ancient pagan and occult ties. The owl is associated with wisdom, occult knowledge, shamanism and other spiritual matters. The demon goddess Lilith is represented throughout history as an owl who is also associated with child sacrifice.⁶⁴

The owl is also the symbol of the Greek goddess of wisdom Athena.⁶⁵ If the owl is such a sinister occult symbol why would the creators and producers want to use it in children movies? Christian parents should consider whom their children are following when watching such programs. Dick Rolfe, head of the Dove Foundation states that: *“When you spend that much time watching something [the average American family*

⁶³ Bohemian Grove (www.worldsavingdevice.com/bohemian-grove/)

⁶⁴ Bohemian Grove Exposed (www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Wicca%20&%20Witchcraft/bohemian_grove_exposed.htm)

⁶⁵ Athena (www.greekmythology.com/Olympians/Athena/athena.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

watches six hours of television per day], you have just developed new role models and a new window on life.”⁶⁶

“No amusement can be innocent that involves the squandering of precious time that might be better employed to the glory of God and the good of man. Life is short. Time is precious. We have but one life to live. Much is to be done...”

- Charles Finney

Internet author Jason Barker says that during the time a Christian, especially a child spends focusing on plots concerning subjects that are condemned by God, that child is tacitly following the occult rather than God.⁶⁷

Instead of being entertained by the occult, Christians should follow the words of Paul:

And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

Romans 12:2

Fantasy Films such as The Lord of the Rings, Harry Potter and the Chronicles of Narnia generated a great interest in occult practices. These films featuring characters such as wizards, witches and demons earn billions of dollars at the box office. Anton Lavey, founder of the satanic church said “*fantasy was the easiest way to initiate someone into the occult*”. This philosophy was taken to the next level hundreds of films are produced yearly which deals exclusively with fantasy and magic. The movie **industry marked the occult doctrines as entertainment and fantasy**, but nothing could be further from the truth as they are exposing children to the doctrines of demons. Bookstores and libraries reveal an enormous influx of

⁶⁶ Entertainment Media – does it lead of follow society? (www.christiananswers.net/q-eden/edn-f010.html)

⁶⁷ Youth Orientated TV and the Occult (www.watchman.org/youthandoccult.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

material dedicated to subjects such as witchcraft, sorcery and ceremonial magic aimed at children and teenagers.

***Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.
Colossians 2:8***

Modern clothing lines for children also feature occult symbolism in their logos which is another principle of the New Age movement called “*hidden in plain sight*”.

These symbols have power, it is with a very specific reason that a pentagram end up on a shirt and these designers are using the influence of satanic forces to indoctrinate the next generation.⁶⁸

God is very clear in His Word that the innocent may not be harmed, He loves children and do not want them to be hurt physically, emotionally or spiritually.

***Cursed be he that taketh reward to slay an innocent person. And all the people shall say, Amen.
Deuteronomy 27:25***

One must however remember that for Satan and his demonic entourage, there is nothing more serious than **capturing the minds of children at a young age in order to mold them for the future** and he will use any method necessary to get his plan into action.

Propagandist knows no age limit for pushing a message, the younger the audience the more effective their messages will be. In a secular world marketing specialist knows that brand loyalty should be taught at a very early age and propaganda messages is yet simply another product to market. The time a child spends playing

⁶⁸ Occult influence and your children (www.threenailzz.tripod.com/id22.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

with toys is essential for their development which includes the child's mind, body and spirit therefore the selection of the right toys is exceptionally important. Playing helps children to practice skills they may need in real life.

Today's latest trend is to release a line of toys at the same time a movie appears in theaters or when a new cartoon premieres. In the past toys mostly focused on exploring the real world but today's toys focus on exploring the mystical world, this imaginative play is called vain imagination where children often exalts themselves above God, pretending to be characters which they believe to be more powerful than Jesus. Young children are enthralled by that which puzzles or even sometimes frightens them the most.⁶⁹

The newest doll line used by the adversary to attack the mind and imagination of the child is Monster High.

Children tend to idolize the toy they play with and with their vivid imagination they sometimes identify with the toy, with this doll line children identify with monsters – things that are an abomination to God as seen in the book of Deuteronomy:

There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch, Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. For all that do these things are an abomination unto the LORD: and because of these abominations the LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee.

Deuteronomy 18:10-12

The toys are the offspring of some kind of monster, ghost, werewolf, vampire or zombie made known by the entertainment media.

⁶⁹ Demonic Child Entertainment (www.demonbuster.com/demonic.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Characteristics of these “toys” include the rejection of repentance of sin as they deem there is no such thing as sin, being mindless controlled by “something else”, that there is no God and man himself is god. These toys or characters are a direct abomination to what God says in His Word; it includes witchery, talking to the dead (Necromancy) and a consulter of familiar spirits.⁷⁰

It is designed to introduce young children’s minds to New Age and occult ideas and symbols that represent the dark forces of evil. The characters of Monster High are hyper sexualized dressed in scanty outfits, keeping in mind that the target market for these doll’s are for girls under the age of ten giving them idea to be fit in - little girls have to be very sexy from a very young age. It also portrays death worship with coffin shaped lockers, cell phones, guitars and skulls.

Mixing sex and death is rooted very deep in the occult. The characters are also infatuated with superficiality; a propaganda actively promoted to today’s youth. The doll’s - known as students in Monster High are either artificial creations or zombies who do not have a mind of their own, and the theme song ends with: “Don’t you want to be a Monster too?”

⁷⁰ Monster High Official Website (www.monsterhigh.com)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 15: Three eyed girl, symbolizing the third eye⁷¹



Figure 16: Operetta Doll, emphasizing one eye⁷²

These dolls are promoted on the internet in a form of short stories of about 2 to 5 minutes. In one of these episodes found on YouTube the eye of Horus is evidently seen 1.33 minutes into the short story. Concepts associated with trauma based mind control, alter personas, duality, dissociation and certain program methods used by the Illuminate are all present in Monster High. Clearly this is not accidental and it proves that a certain agenda is being promoted linking with the exact same symbolism used in allegedly adult entertainment media. As Hitler stated, “*He alone, who owns the youth, gains the future.*”⁷³

⁷¹ Monster High Create a Monster Review (www.dollyconfessions.wordpress.com/2012/01/07/monster-high-create-a-monster-review/)

Starter Packs containing the limbs, wigs and outfits of these dolls are also available where girls could create their own monsters.

⁷² 30 Astonishing Monster High Pictures (www.creativefan.com/monster-high-pictures/)

⁷³ The Decoding of Monster High, 15 March 2013 (www.globalreport2010.com)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 17: Freaky Fridate, YouTube Video screenshot⁷⁴

Music was created by God to worship Him, it is a spiritual sacrifice⁷⁵:

By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

Hebrews 13:15

God also appointed spiritual music and songs as an effective weapon against His archenemy Satan. Satan's entourage is thrown into confusion when spiritual warriors equipped with spiritual song stand up against them.

During the past few years' movies about secret societies became quite a new trend in Hollywood, the public were exposed to major blockbuster movies featuring the

⁷⁴ Freaky Fridate (www.youtube.com/watch?v=yUmZLXX8Cz4)

⁷⁵ The Sacrifice of Praise, Collins Martin G, November 1994
(www.cgg.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Library.sr/CT/ARTB/k/573/The-Sacrifice-of-Praise.htm)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

secret societies in the centre of the story. The movies were full of exoteric symbols and some of their histories were even explained. The strategy behind this is that these societies only tell the world what they want them to know - via Hollywood and best-selling books, secret societies are being introduced to the average person, but the public is given a distorted, caricatured and romantic portrayal of secret societies – a culture of mythical lore, fascinating symbols, treasure hunts and exotic adventures.

The public believe they are actually learning facts about Freemasonry or the Illuminati and they leave the movies with a sense of wonder, fascination and admiration. Those feelings are however based on totally erroneous facts, dubious explanations and fairy tale story telling. After viewing those movies, the public has a positive predisposition concerning those orders and will be less inclined to believe and research conspiracies related to them.

One of the movies is the blockbuster adventure – National Treasure, produced by **Walt Disney Pictures**. It revolves around a treasure hunt based on clues left by prominent Masons on the Declaration of Independence. The audience is given false and distorted information about the Knights Templars and the Freemasons. Flashes of pyramids and the one eye symbolism are depicted throughout the movie.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

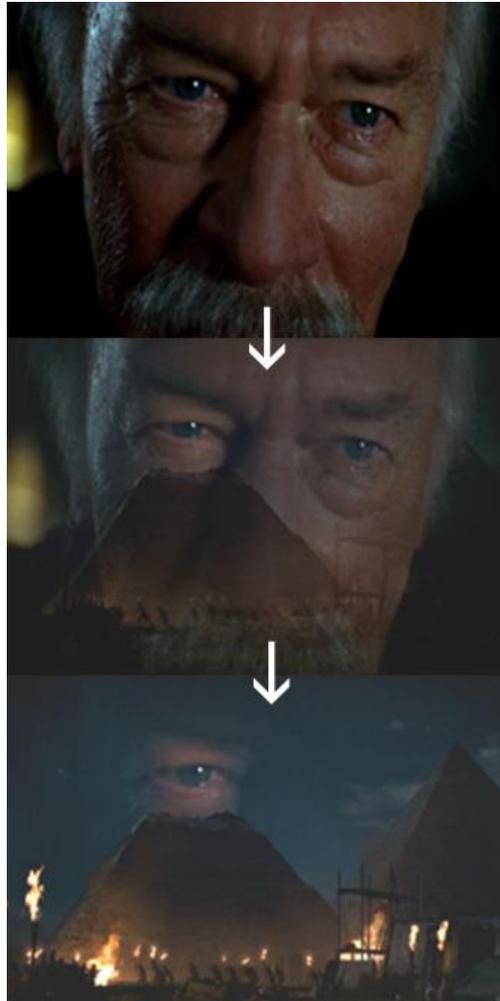


Figure 18: Transition between grandfather telling a story and the Pyramid of Gizeh into the All seeing eye of the Great Architect.⁷⁶

Movies have been used to promote various agendas, including the Vietnam war, fear of Communism, fear of Islamic terrorism, promotion of American values etc. the new agenda is to spread disinformation about secret societies and the occult. The media and especially music videos and advertising campaigns are including elements of satanic ritual abuse and mind control, Monarch Programming is a method of mind

⁷⁶ How Hollywood Spreads Disinformation about Secret Societies
(www.vigilantcitizen.com/category/moviesandtv/page/3/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

control which is used by organisations for covert purposes, a continuation of project MK-Ultra, a mind control program developed by the CIA and tested on the military and civilians and even went back further under various names such as the Nazi marionette programming. The victims of this sadistic traumatising process are called a mind controlled slave who can be triggered at anything to perform any action required by the handler. While the masses are ignorant of this situation it is claimed that over two million Americans have gone through the horrors of this kind of programming.

Although mind control isn't the core of this research it deems it important to mention the existence thereof, as mind control personas is so often found in certain celebrities' personalities, most of the young stars starts out pure and beautiful only to turn out as over sexualised individuals with strange character traits such stars are known as Monarch slaves. Therefore it will ONLY BE discussed briefly.

It is not clear who first started practicing the MPD techniques other than a defence mechanism by thus creating mind control slaves, but it is clear that the Nazis were using Electro-shock and binding to create slaves in the 1940s. German and Italian psychologists, after World War II, who were working on Marionette programming, were brought to the United States to carry on working on their research. After the original development of the Monarch program inside of MK-Ultra, it is now evidently present in the entertainment industry. Very remarkably, since the 1970's the Disney Corporation has been involved heavily in Monarch programming, and several of their films especially Alice in Wonderland and the Wizard of Oz are used as a base for Monarch programming.⁷⁷

Probably the most interesting research done on Monarch Mind Control can be found in the book by Fritz Springmeier and Cisco Wheeler, *The Illuminati Formula Used to*

⁷⁷ Monarch Mind Control (www.conspiracy.wikia.com/wiki/Monarch_Mind_Control)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Create an Undetectable Total Mind Controlled Slave, which can be read for further information on this topic.

A quote from a communist manual on how to brainwash a nation explains the reality of today's media content, degrading the nation to an animalistic reaction pattern, thus destroying the image of Christ within mankind and their children.

"The first thing to be degraded in any nation is the state of Man, himself. Nations which have high ethical tone are difficult to conquer. Their loyalties are hard to shake, their allegiance to their leaders is fanatical, and what they usually call their spiritual integrity cannot be violated by duress. It is not efficient to attack a nation in such a frame of mind. It is the basic purpose of [mind-control] to reduce that state of mind to a point where it can be ordered and enslaved. Thus, the first target is Man, himself. He must be degraded from a spiritual being to an animalistic reaction pattern. He must think of himself as an animal, capable only of animalistic reactions. He must no longer think of himself, or of his fellows, as capable of 'spiritual endurance,' or nobility..."⁷⁸

Via music and the media Satan is luring children into an animalistic state, far from the wonderfully created unique human being God created in His image.

⁷⁸ Springmeier, F and Wheeler, C () The Illuminati Formula Used to Create an Undetectable Total Mind Controlled Slave. p, 545.

7.1 The origins of Monarch Mind Control Evident in the Media



Figure 19: Monarch Butterfly, porcelain masks.⁷⁹

Monarch programming is a mind-control technique involving elements of Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA) and Multiple Personality Disorder (MPD), employing a combination of psychology, neuroscience and occult rituals to create within the slaves (victims of mind control) an alter persona that can be triggered and programmed by the handlers (person traumatising the victim). Monarch slaves are used by several organizations connected with the world elite in fields such as the military, sex slavery and the entertainment industry.⁸⁰

Monarch programming is traced back even before the Nazi marionette programming to various generational Satanist families among European royalty, the multiple personality disorder (MPD) state created by the Monarch programming techniques were used to isolate the personality involved in Satanic rituals from a public face, but without this alternate personality, the nobles practicing Satanism inevitably went insane, so it's practice spread rapidly through the occult community.

⁷⁹ Origin and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control (www.vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/)

⁸⁰Origin and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control
(www.dougriggs.org/Origins_and_Techniques_of_Monarch_Mind_Control.pdf)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

The idea behind using mind controlled slaves is to get a person to carry out commands which are of a morally questionable nature. Religion must become unfashionable by demonstrating broadly, through psychopolitical indoctrination, that the soul is non-existent, and that Man is an animal. One spiritual principle is that if you can get a person to be angry at God, you can get that person to commit any sin. Great effort is taken, via staged events to make the victim being programmed certain that God has rejected them, this technique is also pulled through to the masses or a nation, creating a feeling via the media that God has rejected them, portraying that God is cruel and the injustice of God creating a world of suffering.

Throughout times past, several accounts have been documented describing rituals and practices resembling mind control. The earliest writings which give reference to the use of occultism to manipulate the mind can be found in the Egyptian Book of the Dead. It consists of a compilation of rituals, incorporated and premeditated by today's secret societies, the book portrays methods of torture and intimidation which creates trauma, the use of potions (drugs) and the casting of spells (hypnotism), ultimately resulting in the total enslavement of the initiate. Other events ascribed to black magic, sorcery and demon possession are also related of Monarch programming.

During the twentieth century mind control became a science, where subjects have been systematically observed, documented and experimented on. Josef Mengele, a physician who worked in the Nazi concentration camps, is known to have conducted one of the first methodical studies on trauma based mind control. He is however mostly known for performing grisly human experiments on camp inmates, which included children, these human experiments on concentration camp prisoners, especially twins gave Mengele the nickname "Angel of Death". Mengele together with other high ranked Nazi's were moved to the United States to carry on with their work in developing mind control in secret underground military bases.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

The killers, torturers, and mutilators of innocent human beings were kept discretely out of sight, underground U.S military facilities which progressively became home to thousands upon thousands of kidnapped American children snatched off the streets (about one million per year) and placed into iron bar cages stacked from floor to ceiling as part of the 'training'. Some of these children would be used to further refine and perfect Mengele's mind control technologies and certain selected children who survived the 'training, would become future mind controlled slaves who could be used for thousands of different jobs ranging anywhere from sexual slavery to assassinations. The other children who were considered to be expendable were deliberately slaughtered in front of and by other children in order to traumatize the selected trainees into total compliance and submission.

A movie based on the book, Hunger Games by Suzanne Collins reflects this exact pattern of ritual abuse and training a selected few in total compliance and submission to their handlers and children are selected to fight to the death slaughtering each other in order to be the victor of the Hunger Games.

The story centres on Katniss Everdeen, age 16, whose mother fell into a deep depression upon the death of her father in a coal mining accident. Her family lives in "District 12," one of 13 districts around the Capitol in a post-apocalyptic United States. Most of the District 12 residents live in abject poverty. Katniss must illegally hunt in the woods to feed her mother, younger sister and herself. In the pre-history of the story, District 13 had rebelled against the Capitol's slavery-inducing, consumer-driven production fields and was literally bombed out of existence for their insurgency. As a result, the Capitol, under President Snow, demands a reaping, a sacrifice of two children, between the ages 12-18, from each district every year. In supreme sadistic irony, the children are forced to dress in their very best clothing for the reaping. Those who try to earn extra grain and oil for their families offer their names in the "Hunger Games."

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Against all odds, the twelve year old sister of Katniss is chosen. Katniss immediately offers herself in her sister's place. Twenty-four children are brought to the Capitol and fed the richest foods, pampered, and put on display. Each district is forced to watch the games on television. Without her knowledge, Katniss is secretly chosen to be the face of the rebellion of the districts against the capitol. What follows are the Hunger Games themselves. They are held in an arena from which there is no escape. The most sadistic forms of torture imaginable are used against the children in the games and there can be only one victor. The children are forced to kill each other and one of the girls is only twelve years old. If they refuse to kill each other, the Gamekeeper devises torturous ways in which they are forced to kill each other off. By the final book, some of the children are tortured by government officials for months on end. Mind-bending, memory forging brainwashing is included. The formerly innocent children are turned into killers which must kill or be killed.⁸¹

Mengele's research served as a basis for the covert, illegal CIA human research program named MK-Ultra, which was in operation between the early 1950's to the late 1960's. Published evidence indicated that Project MK-Ultra involved the use of methodologies to manipulate individual mental states and alter brain functions, which included the surreptitious administration of drugs and other chemicals, sensory deprivation, isolation and verbal and physical abuse. Administration of LSD on innocent human subjects were one of the most publicised experiments, which included CIA employees, military personnel, doctors, other government agents, prostitutes, mentally ill patients as well as members of the general public, in order to study their reactions. These experiments even included violent electroshocks, physical and mental torture and abuse conducted in a systematic matter on many subjects, including children.

⁸¹ The Hunger Games, Satanic Ritual for Teens (www.henrymakow.com/hunger_games.html)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Disclosed goals of the project were supposedly to create “Manchurian Candidates” to perform various acts such as assassinations and other covert missions, a method of torture and interrogation on the country’s enemies. Although claiming that the experiments ceased, some whistle blowers claimed the project simply went underground and Monarch Programming has become the classified successor of MK-Ultra. Anton Chaitkin, writer for the publication The New Federalist made the most incriminating statement to date when asked about the existence of monarch which he angrily and dubiously answered: “*We stopped that between the late 1960’s and early 1970’s*”.

Even though no official admittance of Monarch Programming’s existence has been made, some survivors were able to deprogram themselves with the help of therapists and they disclosed the horrifying details of their ordeal. Monarch slaves who were programmed to perform specific tasks are the perfect scapegoats they do not ask questions about their orders and do not remember their actions, if they are discovered they automatically commit suicide. They are ideal for high profile assassinations, prostitution, slavery and the perfect puppet for the entertainment industry they do the New Word Orders bidding thereby creating a satanic order that will rule the world.

Trauma based mind control programming can be defined as organized torture blocking a victim’s capability for conscious processing through pain, terror, drugs, illusion, sensory deprivation, sensory over stimulation, oxygen deprivation, cold, heat, spinning, brain stimulation and often, near-death, electroshock, torture, abuse and mind games which forces the person to dissociate from reality, a natural response in some to deal with the intense pain and torture.

It makes use of suggestion and or classical conditioning and behaviour modification principles to implant thoughts directives and perceptions in the unconscious mind,

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

often in newly-formed trauma-induced dissociated identities, that forces the victim to do, feel, think, or perceive things for the purposes of the programmer. The victim's ability to dissociate is a major requirement and apparently found most readily in children who came from families with multiple generations of abuse. Mental dissociation allows the programmer to create walled-off personas in the subject's psyche, which can then be programmed and triggered at will. The aim of the trauma based mind control is for the victim to follow orders with no conscious awareness, to execute acts in clear violation of the victim's moral principles, spiritual convictions, and volition.

The term monarch mind control originated from the Monarch butterfly, it is a unique species which could learn where it was born and it is able to pass this knowledge on via genetics to its offspring, this tipped off scientists that knowledge can be passed on genetically, Monarch programming is based upon the Illuminati and Nazi goals to create a Master race in part through genetics. Knowing that knowledge can be passed on genetically it is then important that parents be found that can pass the correct knowledge onto those victims selected for the Monarch mind control. When electroshock is used to induce trauma on a person it creates a feeling of light headedness, as if one is floating or fluttering like a butterfly. Symbolically the transformation of the butterfly as an insect who began life as a worm, which represents the underdeveloped potential of the victim before programming, the worm then goes through a period of cocooning, reflecting the programming and is reborn as a beautiful butterfly, the Monarch slave or new creation which will return to its point of origin.

Effectiveness of mind control programming relies on the victim's capacity to dissociate, which permits the creation of new walled-off personalities to "hold" and "hide" programming. Already dissociative children are prime "candidates" for "programming". It is said that about 75% of mind controlled slaves are female since

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

they possess a higher tolerance for pain and tends to dissociate more easily than males. Due to the severe trauma induced through, abuse and other methods, the mind splits off into alternate personalities from the core, this is formerly referred to as Multiple Personality Disorder, it is presently recognized as Dissociative Identity Disorder and is the basis for Monarch programming. Further conditioning of the victim's mind is enhanced through hypnotism, double-bind coercion, pleasure-pain reversals, food, water, sleep and sensory deprivation, along with various drugs which alter certain cerebral functions.

When a split in the core personality transpired, an internal world can be created, alter personas can be programmed using tools including music, movies – especially Disney productions and Fairy tales. The programming process uses visuals and audio which enhances the programming; using images, symbols, meanings and concepts the alter personas created in the victim's psyche can be accessed using trigger words or symbols which were inserted via programming. The most common images are trees, the Cabalistic tree of life infinity loops, ancient symbols and letters, spider webs, mirrors, glass shattering, masks, castles, mazes, demons, butterflies, hour glasses, clocks and robots – these exact symbols occurs in popular culture movies and videos to mainly desensitise the masses using subliminal and neuro-linguistic programming to construct triggers for monarch children. Popular programming movies include The Wizard of Oz, Alice in Wonderland, Pinocchio and Sleeping Beauty.

Children, as mentioned before is easier to hypnotise, they have an active imagination and Disney movies and other shows serves as the perfect hypnotic tool to get the child's mind to dissociate in the right direction as per the programmer's suggestions. Most of the Disney films are used for programming purposes and some of them are particularly designed for mind-control.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Electroencephalography (EEG) brainwaves are used to identify the mind controlled slave's level of programming, Beta 14-30 Hz – awake, normal alert consciousness, Alpha 9-13 Hz – relaxed, calm, lucid, not thinking, Theta 4-8 Hz – deep relaxation and meditation, mental imagery, Delta – 103 Hz – Deep, dreamless sleep.

Springmeier suggests that “**Alpha** is within the base control personality. It characterized by extremely pronounced memory retention, along with substantially increased physical strength and visual acuity. Alpha programming is accomplished through deliberately subdividing the victims' personality which, in essence, causes a left brain-right brain division, allowing for a programmed union of Left and Right through neuron pathway stimulation.

Beta is referred to as “sexual” programming (slaves). This programming eliminates all learned moral convictions and stimulates the primitive instinct, devoid of inhibitions. “Cat” alters may come out at this level. Known as Kitten programming, it is the most visible kind of programming as some female celebrities, models, actresses and singers have been subjected to this kind of programming. In popular culture, clothing with feline prints often denotes Kitten programming.

Delta is known as “killer” programming and was originally developed for training special agents or elite soldiers (i.e. Delta Force, First Earth Battalion, Mossad, etc.) in covert operations.

Optimal adrenal output and controlled aggression is evident. Subjects are devoid of fear and very systematic in carrying out their assignment. Self-destruct or suicide instructions are layered in at this level.

Theta – Considered to the “psychic” programming. Bloodliners (those coming from multi-generational Satanic families) were determined to exhibit a greater propensity

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

for having telepathic abilities than did non-bloodliners. Due to its evident limitations, however, various forms of electronic mind control systems were developed and introduced, namely, bio-medical human telemetry devices (brain implants), directed-energy lasers using microwaves and/or electromagnetics. It is reported these are used in conjunction with highly-advanced computers and sophisticated satellite tracking systems.”⁸²

Funding invested in the Monarch programming project do not only apply to mind controlled slaves, a lot of these programming techniques perfected in these experiments are used in the media to influence the masses, **the most advanced data on human behaviour is used to create mainstream news, movies, music videos, advertisements and television shows and a lot of this comes from Monarch programming.**

A great deal of Monarch programming and slave abuse, (as well as the drug trade) is done under three major covers or fronts: Religious Fronts, the Front of National Security and the Military, and the Entertainment fields, especially the Country Western Industry, the Rock Music Industry and Hollywood. Music and media portraying things which is based on darkness, **the kingdom of Satan distracts the Christian from his Maker.**

8. MODERN DAY OCCULTIC CULTURE

Most rock videos and even pop videos of today are full of hand signals used in witchcraft for incantations. According to Godwin⁸³ this is no rock dancing by the literal calling up of demons.

⁸² Origin and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control
(www.dougriggs.org/Origins_and_Techniques_of_Monarch_Mind_Control.pdf)

⁸³ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA :Chick Publications, p. 95.

In this section a few of the most significant and new idols will be discussed, reflected on the fruit they bare to the world.

8.1 Popular Pop Icons

The origin of the name Madonna is Latin, meaning *My Lady*, Madonna is another name for the Virgin Mary.⁸⁴

Louise Veronica Ciccone, better known as Madonna, a steamy sex object, to hordes of drooling young men across America, Canada and Europe, her soulful, heart-piercing ballads about the adolescent pains of falling in and out of love have skyrocketed her to superstar status in just a few short years. As a watered-down Marilyn Monroe clone, her movie roles have made her much more than just an immensely popular recording and video star. She has become larger than life, thanks in no small part to her crass "*bad girl made good*" image.⁸⁵

Madonna is still one of the most popular female vocalists in the world and most parents don't think twice about letting Madonna's music into their home. She was born in a large Catholic family in Bay City, Michigan on August 16, 1959; her father was an executive in the Detroit auto industry. Her mother is deceased.

Like multitudes of young Midwestern girls with more guts than sense, the big bucks hunger for bright lights and movie stardom hit her right between the eyes before she was out of her teens:

Her life was characterised by illicit relationships, she studied dancing for a short while at the University of Michigan, met a musician called Steve Bray who taught her the basics of song writing, he helped her to make demo tapes to promote at local discos. It was around that time that she became known as Madonna. Soon after she

⁸⁴ Madonna (www.definitions.net/definition/madonna)

⁸⁵ Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA :Chick Publications, p. 95.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

appeared in her first film - "A Certain Sacrifice" which featured a Madonna rape scene, later she topped that later with a group sex orgy including herself, a man, another woman and a transvestite. Her 1984 album, *Like a Virgin* pushed her to stardom, a cynical mockery of chastity became Madonna's calling card for fame and fortune. Madonna left her sleazy image behind for a Marilyn Monroe "look alike" for her video Material Girl adding artistic credibility to match her multimillion record sales. She fell pregnant out of wedlock.

In 1986, "Open your heart" music video was played over and over on MTV; Madonna stars as a peep show performer in a porno palace, dancing while men watch her perform, outside is a young boy unsuccessfully trying to get past the ticket gate, at the end of her shift the working girl meets the young boy waiting outside and sensuously kiss him on his lips, mixing the innocent with harlotry, is she singing to the youth to open their hearts to soft porn and illicit sex? Subliminal witchcraft sign language is all over the video, from the strange, stilted movements of the onlookers as they pass their hands and forearms across their unblinking eyes, to Madonna's wild "dancing". Like intertwining snakes, her hands whip back and forth, clasp and release. The video also feature the all seeing eye, as flashes of only one eye is seen throughout the video.⁸⁶

Some of the lyrics to the song:

"I've had to work much harder than this

But some things I want,

Don't try to resist me

Open your heart to me baby I hold the lock and you hold the key

Open your heart to me darling I'll give you love if you'll,

*You'll turn the key . . ."*In her concerts Madonna flashes the El Diablo hand sign and

in some point back up dancers picks her up. She mimics the infamous Baphomet.

⁸⁶ Madonna Open your heart (www.youtube.com/watch?v=snsTmi9N9Gs)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 20: Madonna 666⁸⁷



Figure 21: Baphomet and Madonna (next)⁸⁸



⁸⁷ Madonna; Vogue (The Girly Show) (www.youtube.com/watch?v=SfumklRnGyQ)

⁸⁸ Baphomet (www.abovetopsecret.com/forum/thread933893/pg1)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

A description and explanation of Baphomet:

“The goat on the frontispiece carries the sign of the pentagram on the forehead, with one point at the top, a symbol of light, his two hands forming the sign of Hermeticism, the one pointing up to the white moon of Chesed, the other pointing down to the black one of Geburah. This sign expresses the perfect harmony of mercy with justice. His one arm is female, the other male like the ones of the androgyn of Khunrath, the attributes of which we had to unite with those of our goat because he is one and the same symbol. The flame of intelligence shining between his horns is the magic light of the universal balance, the image of the soul elevated above matter, as the flame, whilst being tied to matter, shines above it. The ugly beast’s head expresses the horror of the sinner, whose materially acting, solely responsible part has to bear the punishment exclusively; because the soul is insensitive according to its nature and can only suffer when it materializes. The rod standing instead of genitals symbolizes eternal life, the body covered with scales the water, the semi-circle above it the atmosphere, the feathers following above the volatile. Humanity is represented by the two breasts and the androgyn arms of this sphinx of the occult sciences.”

In Levi’s depiction, Baphomet embodies the culmination of the alchemical process – the union of opposing forces to create Astral Light – the basis of magic and, ultimately, enlightenment. A close look at the details of the image reveals that each symbol is inevitably balanced with its opposite. Baphomet himself is an androgynous character as it is bearing the characteristics of both sexes: female breasts and a rod representing the erect phallus. The concept of androgeniety is of a great importance in occult philosophy as it is representative the highest level of initiation in the quest of becoming “one with God”.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Baphomet's phallus is actually Hermes' Caduceus – a rod intertwined with two serpents. This ancient symbol is has been representing Hermetism for centuries. The Caduceus esoterically represents the activation of chakras, from the base of the spine to the pineal gland, using serpentine power (hence, the serpents) or Astral Light.⁸⁹

Madonna is a known to be involved in Kabbalah for over 17 years, a mystic offshoot of Judaism, currently it is said that she is studying the Koran.⁹⁰ Her Super bowl halftime performance was full of esoteric and occult symbolism, the decor resembled elements of ancient Egypt and she was dressed in a way that highly resembles the ancient goddess Ishtar.



Figure 22: Ishtar the Ancient Sumerian/Babylonian goddess.⁹¹

⁸⁹ Who is Baphomet (www.vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/whoisbaphomet/#fn-12539-3)

⁹⁰ Has Madonna ditched Kabbalah for Islam (<http://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-2447973/Has-Madonna-ditched-Kabbalah-Islam-Singer-reveals-studying-Koran.html>)

⁹¹ Madonna's Superbowl Halftime Show: A celebration of the Grand Priestess of the Music Industry (<http://vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/madonnas-superbowl-halftime-show-a-celebration-of-the-grand-priestess-of-the-music-industry/>)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 23: Madonna depicted as the goddess Ishtar⁹²

Ishtar was a powerful and assertive goddess whose areas of control and influence included warfare, love, sexuality, prosperity, fertility and prostitution. She sought the same existence as men, enjoying the glory of battle and seeking sexual experiences. Madonna's portrayal as Ishtar is therefore quite interesting as one can argue that the pop singer has embodied, throughout her career, the same assertive yet highly sexual qualities of Ishtar, even achieving a state of power in the music industry that is usually reserved to men. On an esoteric level, Ishtar is associated with the planet Venus, known as the Morning Star or the Evening Star – also known as Lucifer.

It is thus clear from these facts that the fruits Madonna is portraying are not the fruit of the Holy Spirit.

⁹² Madonna's Superbowl Halftime Show: A celebration of the Grand Priestess of the Music Industry (<http://vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/madonnas-superbowl-halftime-show-a-celebration-of-the-grand-priestess-of-the-music-industry/>)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Society has gotten so desensitised that soft porn has become the order of the day in all forms of media entertainment.

Miley Cyrus is another Disney good girl that has gone bad case, at one stage she had a wholesome, sweet image little girls associated with – but now their idol is swinging around on a wrecking ball completely naked, participating in raunchy photo shoots. Miley's image has been heavily marketed by Disney since the days she took on the role of Hannah Montana – a girl who appropriately enough had a stage alter persona, with a different wig. Hannah Montana products often had butterflies on them, a slick reminder of how she was a Disney programming slave.



Figure 24: Hannah Montana, Disney.⁹³

Until 2013, Miley was signed with Hollywood Records, a record label that was founded by Michael Eisner, the CEO of Disney. Hollywood Records also owns other child stars such as Demi Lovato, Selena Gomez and the Jonas Brothers. Every artist in the record label's stable has a carefully crafted image to be marketed to its target public. Miley is now working with Britney Spears' ex-manager Larry Rudolph and

⁹³ MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

signed with RCA records – one of the biggest music labels in the world that owns the likes of Justin Timberlake, Britney Spears and Ke\$ha.

Miley's VMA performance is about a child star who was beloved by millions of young people showing what the industry has done to her. It is about shattering the innocence of her fans by having them witness her metamorphosis into one giant sex-obsessed caricature. Her over sexualized demeanour was characteristic of a Beta programming slave who had the switch turned "on". Dressed and styled to look like a bratty child, jumping around with giant teddy bears, Miley's performance was the continuing of the ongoing agenda of sexualizing everything that is related to childhood.



Figure 25: Miley Cyrus performing at the 2013 VMA's ⁹⁴

Lady Gaga is also known for flaunting imagery linked to the illuminate and Satanism, recently she revealed herself as an embodiment of the goddess Venus.

⁹⁴ MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

The association between the planet Venus and lust goes back thousands of years – since the times of Ishtar, the Babylonian goddess of sex and lust who was associated with Venus.

“As the morning star, Venus is visible before sunrise, and as the evening star it shines forth immediately after sunset. Because of these qualities, a number of names have been given to it by the ancients.

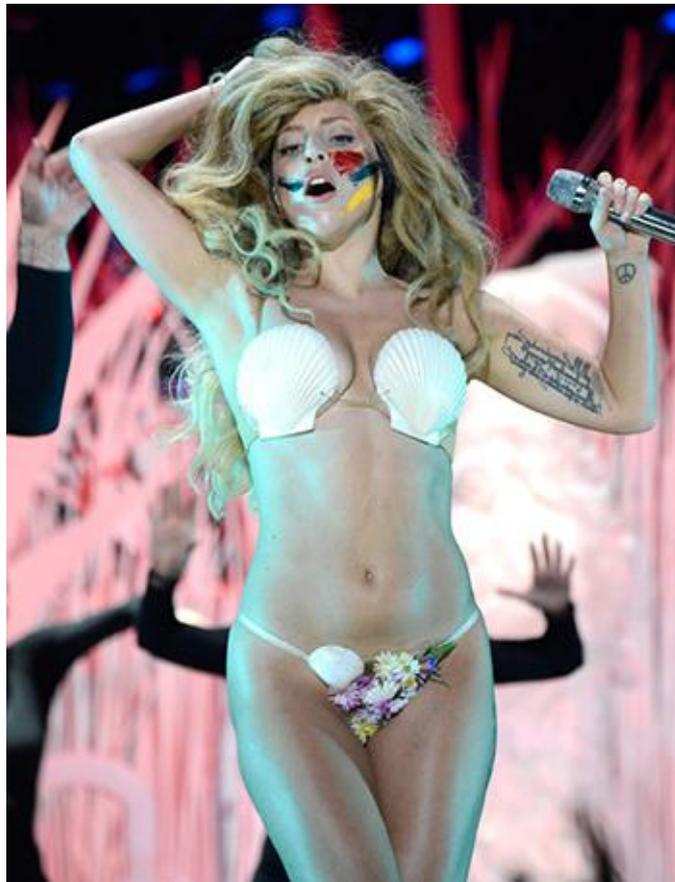


Figure 26: Lady Gaga as the goddess Venus⁹⁵

⁹⁵ MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Being visible in the sky at sunset, it was called vesper, and as it arose before the sun, it was called the false light, the star of the morning, or Lucifer, which means the light-bearer. Because of this relation to the sun, the planet was also referred to as Venus, Astarte, Aphrodite, Isis, and The Mother of the Gods.”

- Manly P. Hall, *The Secret Teachings of All Ages*⁹⁶



Figure 27: goddess Venus as depicted in “The Birth of Venus” by Botticelli.⁹⁷

Katy Perry, collaborating with Kanue West sang a song about having sex with an extra terrestrial, at the end of the music video – she has the legs of a goat – referring to Pan.

⁹⁶ MTV VMA’s 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/)

⁹⁷ MTV VMA’s 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Figure 28: Katy Perry E.T. Goat legs⁹⁸



Figure 29: Katy Perry E.T.⁹⁹

Some of the lyrics in the song:

*“You're so hypnotizing Could you be the devil? Could you be an angel?
Your touch magnetizing Feels like I am floating, leaves my body glowing
They say be afraid You're not like the others, futuristic lover Different DNA*

⁹⁸ Katy Perry E.T. (www.examiner.com/slideshow/katy-perry-e-t-featuring-kanye-west)

⁹⁹ Katy Perry E.T (www.sorceressdream.deviantart.com/art/Katy-Perry-E-T-WallPaper-203616274)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

*They don't understand you
You're from a whole other world A different dimension
You open my eyes And I'm ready to go, lead me into the light
Kiss me, ki-ki-kiss me Infect me with your love and Fill me with your poison
Take me, ta-ta-take me Wanna be a victim Ready for abduction
Boy, you're an alien
Your touch so foreign
It's supernatural Extraterrestrial
You're so supersonic Wanna feel your powers, stun me with your lasers
Your kiss is cosmic Every move is magic”¹⁰⁰*

Most music today contains satanic themes and elements, the fruits coming from these trees are fruits of darkness, corrupting the minds of youngsters displacing the truth in their life – pulling them away from the light and life which is God by keeping them busy with the things of darkness.

To confront evil is to fight it, to ignore it is sin.

***Therefore to him who knows to do good, and does not do it, to him it is sin.
James 4:17 MKJV***

Every parent, pastor, educator and youth leader reading these words should immediately seek the Lord's guidance, put on the whole armor of God, (Ephesians 6:12-18), hold tight the sharp Sword of the Spirit and go forth to cleanse and educate the youth from the destruction and defiling affects of music. The battle is spiritual (2 Corinthians 10:3-5) and it begins at home (Matthew 10:36). The alternative is the music, the flames, and spiritually dead children.

¹⁰⁰ E.T Lyrics (www.metrolyrics.com/et-lyrics-katy-perry.html)

9. CONCLUSION

Idolatry is the first commandment a person breaks before any of the others 9 are broken, when a child starts to love something else more than God that is idolatry, before any of the other can be broken – the love a person has for God would be reflected on something else – be it SELF or Satan. God is a jealous God and He does not want to share His children with the world, therefore He states that His children should live holy lives and separate themselves from the world and worldly things.

Rock comes in a package - it is a package deal! The listener doesn't just get the music alone. Over time one or more of the following evil fruits will be manifest in the life of the listener: Rebellion, Suicide, Homosexuality, Violence, Immorality, Blasphemy, Drugs & Alcohol, Occult and Worldliness. The music influences children and the youth in a negative, unbiblical way it affects their morals, values, and philosophy of life. The music mesmerizes the listener while Satan puts his ungodly lyrics, morals, and standards into the child's mind either directly or by backward masking.

One definite cause for the lack of discernment is the television set. The technology of television itself is not evil; however, TV programs are energized by either God or Satan. Most of the programs on television present morals, lifestyles, and attitudes that are contrary and opposed to the Word of God. Television is now glorifying evil, murder, violence, occultism, immorality, and perversion while at the same time Christianity and godly standards are mocked and belittled. Today millions of unbelievers sit in front of their TV sets laughing and mocking at what once was considered sacred. The tragedy of all this is that Christians are blinded and hardened as they spend hours sitting at home parked in front of their TV's getting ministered to by the devil. While Christians sit and watch shows that deep down they

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

know God would not approve of, they slowly go further from God and closer to the world.

The children are not spared either as most of the Saturday morning cartoons have evil, occultic story lines. Along with TV, other factors contributing to the loss of discernment are: little or no daily prayer life and irregular, inconsistent Bible reading. God warns in His Word:

Behold, you trust in lying words that cannot do any good. Will you steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense to Baal, and walk after other gods whom you do not know; and then come and stand before Me in this house which is called by My name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations? Has this house, which is called by My name, become a den of robbers in your eyes? Behold, I also have seen, says Jehovah.

Jeremiah 7:8-11 MKJV

Christians have not been delivered from sin and hell in order to partake of abominations. God wants His people to live holy, separated lives in this evil world. The cry through the land is for revival, but how can it come when Christians are in love with their TV's and rock music? All this is at the expense of Bible reading, prayer, holiness, and separation from evil.

The fact that witchcraft and idolatry exists in music and the media should be no surprise to a true Christian. Scripture tells us that Satan is the god of this world and has been given much power (Ezekiel 28:12-16 and Isaiah 14:16-17). He also gives that, power to people, in return for their worship (Luke 4: 6-7). What Satan NEVER tells his servants is that the eternal flames of hell await them when they die.

Christians should be vigilant and realise that Satan would use anything in his power to deceive mankind, he will send demonic beings through pop and rock stars who

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

worship him to attack the youth, in order to destroy their relationship with their parents and with God.

Satanism and Heavy Metal rock music is the same thing. There is a demonic power behind this music. The goal of rock music makers is the destruction of any who oppose them - especially Christians. Other more subtle facts are also brought out: Demon power increases its hold through "*familiar*" objects, which are anything made by, used for or dedicated to Satan (objects like rock posters, magazines, tapes and records). "*Familiars*" serve as a power base from which demonic spirits operate. Their express purpose is to maintain spiritual control over the people who own them. Backmasking in rock are some of Satan's favourite tools to gain that initial control over the listener.

Satanic blessings are placed on albums, sometimes in the form of a triangle within a circle, printed as a logo, facing downward, which represents black magic, or evil. These demons have been placed to cling to them through witchcraft spells, with the goal to gain control over the listener's mind.

Children bringing these CD's (blessed music) into a home, not only curse themselves but everyone in the home! (Deuteronomy 7:26; Joshua 6:18) The scriptural thing to do is BURN those records, tapes, posters, jewellery, rock books, magazines and other things that have been dedicated to the devil (Acts 19:13-20).

Parents should know that today's popular music is straight from the kingdom of darkness. Satan is the mastermind behind a growing number of movies and videos which is steeped in witchcraft, yet widely accepted because of the music and stars who are involved in them, kids are falling by the thousands.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Music was made to serve a holy purpose, to lift the thoughts to that which is pure, noble, and elevating, and to awaken in the soul devotion and gratitude to God. What a contrast between the ancient custom and the uses to which music is now too often devoted! How many employ this gift to exalt self, instead of using it to glorify God! A love for music leads the unwary to unite with world-lovers in pleasure-gatherings where God has forbidden his children to go. Thus that which is a great blessing when rightly used, becomes one of the most successful agencies by which Satan allures the mind from duty and from the contemplation of eternal things.

Music has two purposes: to worship and glorify God; and to edify and build up Christians. The Word of God says: "*Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord*" (Ephesians 5:19). "*Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord*" (Colossians 3:16).

Music is not necessary to win the lost but it is a form of worship and praise to God. In fact, sacred Gospel music is not for the world and it has never been meant for the world. It is for the child of God to worship and praise God. God has not ordained music to win the lost; he has ordained preaching, "*For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe*" (1 Corinthians 1:21). The purpose of sacred gospel music is not to draw the unsaved to the Lord Jesus Christ. Sacred music may at times draw the unsaved, but that is not its purpose. Its purpose is to worship and praise God and not to be used as a tool to win the unsaved. The unsaved are drawn to God by the preaching of the Word.

Since music is a form of worship it is corrupted when mixed with carnality. The worship of God must be carried out with holiness and purity. Linking worship to the demonic, sexual, rebellious style of rock and roll is nothing less than blasphemy.

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

God's demands of righteousness and holiness have never been diminished. Just as it was an abomination to offer to the Lord a blemished lamb for sacrifice, so today it is an abomination to offer to God carnal, worldly, sexual, demonic music as a praise offering.

When music has any of the following characteristics beware; you are in danger of the demonic:

- Deliberate Sensuality: This includes sexual clothing, erotic movements, flirtatious come-on's designed to sexually tease, and breathy voice designed to arouse an audience.
- Clothes that are not in line with Biblical modesty: This includes sexual, revealing clothes that suggest an unholy lifestyle.
- Unedifying speech: This includes stories, jokes, or lyrics which have double meanings or have sexual overtones.
- Extremely loud music: Thunderous decibel levels that impair hearing and drown out lyrics.

The fruits of music can be tested according to Philippians 4:8:

Finally, my brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are honest, whatever things are right, whatever things are pure, whatever things are lovely, whatever things are of good report; if there is any virtue and if there is any praise, think on these things.

Philippians 4:8 MKJV

Whatever mankind behold needs to be: **True** or represent the Truth, **Noble** or High Moral Principles, **Just** or behaving morally right, **Pure** or unadulterated, unmixed, **Lovely** or sublime, superb, **Good report**, or of Good reputation, **Virtuous**, or Moral excellence, irreproachable and **Praiseworthy** or admirable, exemplary.

Another test is the 10 commandments Exodus 20:3-17:

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*

Godly music will lead children to: worship God only, idolise no person or object, respect God's name, keeping His day, His way, honour authority, respect life, think in non-lustful ways, respect other's possessions, always tell the truth and thank God for all that a person has.

Christian Berdahl from Sheppard's Call ministry summed godly music up in the following:¹⁰¹



-----oOo-----

¹⁰¹ Godly Music (www.shepcall.com)

*Idolatry and Witchcraft in Media and the Music, Controlling and Manipulating
Mankind through Mind Defilement and Deception Creating an Illegitimate
Authority*



Chapter Four

Dismantling the Satanic Kingdom of Darkness as the Axiom and Endpoint of Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth

They provoked Him to jealousy with strange gods; with abominations they provoked Him to anger. They sacrificed to devils, not to God; to gods whom they knew not, to new ones newly come up, whom your fathers did not fear.

Deuteronomy 32:16-17 MKJV

1. INTRODUCTION

Into this whirlpool of stagnant human philosophy and perverted revelation, came the Son of God who through His teachings and example, revealed that there was such a thing as divine humanity and through His miraculous powers, vicarious death and

bodily resurrection, cut across the maze of human doubts and fears and was lifted up to draw all of mankind unto Him. It has been wisely observed that mankind are at liberty to oppose Him; they are at liberty to challenge it. But they are not at liberty to alter the essential message of the Scriptures, which is the good news that God does care for the lost souls of His children and so loved the creature called mankind that He sent His only Son that they might live through Him. In keeping with this Gospel of God's grace Jesus also prophesied the trials and tribulations which would encompass His followers, within and without the Church and one of the greatest trails He taught would be the challenge of false prophets and false christ's who would come in His name and deceive many (Matthew 7:15-23).

***For many will come in My name, saying, I am Christ, and will deceive many.
Matthew 24:5 MKJV***

The histories of heresies of the first five centuries of the Christian Church bear the accuracy of Jesus' predictions that the false prophets would come. Jesus also taught that the fruit of the false prophet would be evident, fruits from a corrupt tree could also be doctrinal, ethical and moral – a person may be ethically good by human measures but if Jesus Christ is rejected as Lord and Saviour the person's fruit is corrupt and he is to be rejected as a counterfeit. The Bible warns of false prophets, false christ's, false apostles and deceitful workers transforming themselves into apostles of Christ, for even Satan transforms himself into an angel of light and it is therefore nothing new that his ministers would also be transformed as ministers of righteousness, whose end shall be according to their works.

For such ones are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. Did not even Satan marvelously transform himself into an angel of light? Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also transform themselves as ministers of righteousness, whose end shall be according to their works.

2 Corinthians 11:13-15 MKJV

Therefore it is important not to have any impression of the purveyors of erroneous doctrines different from that held by the Lord Jesus. The Apostle Paul said that mankind should abhor that which is evil and cleave to that which is good¹. The children of God should from a Biblical perspective where false teachers and teachings are concerned have compassion and love for those who are entangled in the teaching of the false prophets but to vigorously oppose the teachings – with the ultimate goal to win a soul and not so much the argument. It is important because children can easily be misled into believing false doctrines, which could lead to the downfall of a whole nation. Jesus Christ died for all the cultists; He is the propitiation for each and every soul in the world.

And He is the propitiation concerning our sins, and not concerning ours only, but also concerning the sins of all the world.

1 John 2:2 MKJV

The kingdom of cults stretches throughout the world and continues to grow.² It is important that the truth of the Gospel is shared with cultists, because once someone is familiar with the original he will not be deceived by the counterfeit. The Gospel of Truth can provide the cultist with something no cult system has even been able to originate – ***peace*** with God and fellowship with the Father and with His Son, Jesus Christ, the Saviour of mankind.

Within the cult theological structure there is considerable truth which is drawn from Biblical sources but so diluted with human error as to be more deadly than complete falsehood. Cults have also emphasises the things which the Church has forgotten, such as divine healing seen in Christian Science, Unity, New Thought, prophesy seen by the Jehovah witnesses and Mormonism and a great many other things which will be dealt with throughout this chapter.

¹ ***Let love be without hypocrisy, shrinking from evil, cleaving to good;***
Romans 12:9 MKJV

² Martin, W (1992) *The Kingdom of Cults*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers, pp 14- 17.

Through manipulation of terminology cultists have put the Christian at a distinct disadvantage, particularly in the realm of the great fundamental doctrines of Biblical theology as it is possible for theologians to use the terminology of the Bible and Historic Theology but in an entirely different sense from that intended by the writers of Scripture. The cults capitalise on the almost total inability of the average Christian to understand the subtle art of redefinition in the realm of Biblical Theology. Human nature being what it is, it is only natural that Christian ministers as well as laymen should desire a solution to the irritating and at times frustrating problem of cult terminology, such a solution does not exist - **but as this is a spiritual conflict**, if the Christian has the knowledge and properly understand and use the definitions as a practical tool, it will rob the cultist of at least two of his advantages: **surprise and confusion**.

When a Christian comes across a cultist he should strive to direct the conversation to the problem of terminology so that the usage of terms and the cultist's authority for his un-Biblical redefinitions is defined, these definitions should be compared with the various contexts of the verses upon which the cultist draws for support of his doctrinal interpretations, the cultists should define the following: interpretation, historic orthodoxy, and then the standard doctrinal phrases such as new birth, atonement, context, exegesis, eternal judgement, etc so that there is no misunderstanding when these terms are used in the discussion.

One of the most important terms the cultist should be led to understand is the doctrine of personal redemption from sin, as most cult systems define this in an un-Biblical manner. It is the Christians responsibility to share his own personal testimony of what the Lord Jesus did in his life, how Jesus regenerated him thereby providing the necessity of such regeneration on the part of the cultist in the light of the certain reality of God's inevitable justice. The Christian should be tempered with patience and love, motivated by personal concern for the cultist eternal welfare.

In the realm of terminology, cultists are experts at lifting texts out of their respective contexts, without proper concern for the laws of language or the established principles of Biblical interpretation, which is exactly what Scripture warns against.³

as also in all his letters, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable pervert, as also they do the rest of the Scriptures, to their own destruction).

2 Peter 3:16 MKJV

2. THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN OCCULT AND CULTS:

2.1 Cults

The term cult is based on the Latin word *cultus*, which is found in English in agrarian term such as *cultivation* and in the word *culture*. The root is also used in a religious context to refer simply to any system of belief and worship. In a Christian context, the word is used to denote an inauthentic alternative to the Christian faith. That usage can probably be traced to the early twentieth century with Ernst Troeltsch's⁴ *The Social Teaching of the Christian Church*, in which he defined a cult as a mystical religion that appeals to the intelligentsia.

The term cult is applied to a wide range of groups. There are historical cults, such as the ***Cult of Isis***, non-western cults studied by anthropologists, such as the ***Melanesian cargo cults***, and a host of contemporary cults that have caught the publics' attention during the past fifteen years. Merriam Webster's Third New International Dictionary provides several definitions of cult⁵, among which are:

³ Martin, W (1992) *The Kingdom of Cults*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers, pp 23- 24.

⁴ Troeltsch, Ersnt (1931) *The Social Teaching of the Christian Church*, Volume One. London: The Macmillan Company.

⁵ Cult (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/cult)

- A religion regarded as unorthodox or spurious... a minority religious group holding beliefs regarded as unorthodox or spurious...
- A system for the cure of disease based on the dogma, tenets, or principles set forth by its promulgator to the exclusion of scientific experience or demonstration...
- A great or excessive devotion or dedication to some person, idea, or thing...
 - a. the object of such devotion...
 - b. a body of persons characterized by such devotion, for example, "*America's growing cult of home fixer-uppers.*"

These broad definitions do not accurately reflect the concerns generated by contemporary groups often regarded as cults. The following definition focuses these concerns. **Cult: a group or movement exhibiting a great or excessive devotion or dedication to some person, idea, or thing, and employing unethically manipulative techniques of persuasion and control designed to advance the goals of the group's leaders, to the actual or possible detriment of members, their families, or the community.** Unethically manipulative techniques of persuasion and control are included but are not limited to: isolation from former friends and family, use of special methods to heighten suggestibility and subservience, powerful group pressures, information management, suspension of individuality or critical judgment, promotion of total dependency on the group and fear of leaving it, etc.

Contemporary cults, then are likely to exhibit three elements to varying degrees: **members' excessively zealous, unquestioning commitment to the identity and leadership of the group, exploitative manipulation of members; and harm or the danger of harm to members, their families and/or society.**

Since cults tend to be leader-centred, exploitative, and harmful, they come into conflict with and are threatened by the more rational, open, and benevolent systems

of members' families and society at large. Some gradually accommodate to society by decreasing their levels of manipulation, exploitation, harm, and opposition, while others, nonetheless, harden their shells by becoming totalistic, elitist, and isolated. These groups tend to dictate at times, in great detail how members should think, act, and feel; claim a special, exalted status (for example, "**occult powers**", and "**a mission to save humanity**") for themselves and/or their leaders; and intensify their opposition to and alienation from society at large.

Because the capacity to exploit human beings is universal, a cult could arise in any kind of group. Most established groups, however, have accountability mechanisms that restrain the development of cultic subgroups. Some religious cult leaders, for example, began their careers in mainstream denominations from which they were ejected because of their cultic activities. Cults, then, are generally associated with newer, unorthodox groups, although not all new or unorthodox groups are cults.

According to this perspective a "**new religious**," "**new psychotherapeutic**," "**new political**," or other "**new**" movement differs from a cult in that the use of manipulative techniques of persuasion and control to exploit members is much more characteristic of the latter than the former "**new movements**." This distinction, though unfortunately ignored by many students of the subject, is important in order to avoid unfairly labelling benign new groups as cults and conversely, giving bona fide cults the undeserved respectability of terms such as "**new religious movement**". The perspective put forth here focuses on the psychological processes, in contrast to some religiously based perspectives which focus on the doctrinal deviations of cults. According to this statement, a group may be deviant and heretical without necessarily being a cult.⁶

The term cult has also evolved in the work of psychologists, sociologists and anthropologists, who frequently use the word to describe religious structure or belief

⁶ Cults Questions and Answers (www.cslog.org/studyindex/studycult/cultqa.htm)

patterns with meanings unique to their disciplines. Another usage for the word cult is found in the secular cult awareness movement – sometimes referred to by critics as the anti cult movement. The international Cultic Studies Association (*ISCA, formerly known as the American Family Foundation*) of Bonita Springs, Florida, is a interdisciplinary network of academicians, professionals, former group members and families who study and educate the public about religious groups and cults.

Specifically, they provide information about social-psychological influence and control, authoritarianism and zealotry found in cultic groups, alternative movements and other environments. They use the word “cult” within the context of the following ten traits, as per Walker⁷:

Submission to Leadership – Leaders tend to exert absolute control, frequently portraying themselves as prophets of God (or even God Himself), such individuals demand submission even if changes or conflicts occur in ideology or behaviour.

Polarised Worldview – Cults usually view the outside world through paradigm of existential conflict, in which the group must be isolated from the hostile and contaminated world outside.

Emphasising Emotion over Thought – Emotions, intuitions and mystical insights are typically given priority over rational conclusions.

Emotional Manipulation – Cult leaders frequently manipulate group and interpersonal dynamics to influence responses. (This type of manipulation may be very subtle and take the form of questions or suggestions that evoke emotional responses such as fear, guilt or false sense of obligation designed to trigger compliance with the leasers’ desires.)

⁷ Walker, JK (2007) *Today’s Religions and Spirituality*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp. 9-11

Denigration of Critical Thinking – Some cults characterise any independent thought as selfish and rational use of intellect as evil.

Restrictive Soteriology – Salvation, enlightenment or fulfilment can only be realised in the group.

Situational Ethics – Any action or behaviour is justifiable as long as it furthers the group's goals. The group, or leader determines absolute truth, which then supersedes all outside juridical laws.

Preeminence of the Group – The group's concerns typically supersede an individual's goals, needs, aspirations and concerns. Tremendous pressure is exerted upon individual members to conform to the norms of the group.

Condemnation of Apostates and Critics – Members are frequently allowed no contact with former members or critics of the group. This prohibition is often even levied against members who make critical comments of the group or its leader.

Isolation from Non-members – Contact with non-members, even family, is frequently restricted to proselytic encounters.

Cult: In addition to the usages mentioned above, mainstream Christians often define a cult as a group who presents an inauthentic form of Christianity that seriously deviates from the essential doctrines of classical Christianity. In most cases, the group in question claims to be Christians or compatible with Christianity but the organisation's aberrant beliefs concerning central doctrines of the faith result in group being classified as unorthodox, or cultic. In this sense, the term cult primarily has a doctrinal or theological meaning and could be used to describe pseudo-Christian groups or forms of counterfeit Christianity.

“**Mathematical formula**” to identify four patterns often evident on the cults in terms of theology deviation:

- **Addition** – Pseudo Christian groups often add to Scripture, either by introducing supplementary works to the canon of Scripture (e.g., the Book of Mormon), receiving additional “revelations” from God (e.g., the apocalyptic revelations of David Koresh), or stating that the Bible cannot be understood apart from the indispensable literature or teachings of their group (e.g., the reliance of Jehovah’s Witnesses upon literature from the Watchtower Society). (Deuteronomy 4:2, Revelations 22:18).
- **Subtraction** – Pseudo Christian groups subtract from the humanity of Christ (e.g., the Gnostic Heresy) or the deity of Christ, either through an Arian denial of his deity (e.g., New Age devotees who attempt to achieve Christ consciousness). (2 Corinthians 11:3-4).
- **Multiplication** – Pseudo Christian groups multiply the requirements for salvation, reaching that Christ’s atoning work on the cross and resurrection is not sufficient. Good works, law keeping and earning favour are also compulsory for one to receive eternal life – rather than salvation by grace through faith in Christ alone (e.g., the sabbatarian groups who require observance of the Jewish Sabbaths, dietary laws, tithing, etc., as preconditions for receiving eternal life)(Galatians 1:6-8; 2:16).
- **Divisions** – Pseudo Christian groups often divide their followers’ loyalties by teaching that one cannot be loyal to God without being loyal to their leader, group or organisation. This characteristic, sometimes called the “*only true church syndrome*”, leads followers to believe that there is no salvation outside of that organisation or leader. This creates another “*mediator between God and men*” besides Jesus. This conditions often results in the worst kind of spiritual abuse, as followers feel they must stay and endure whatever the group demands because there is no salvation elsewhere. (1 Timothy 2:5).

2.2 Occult

The term occult comes from the Latin *occultus*, referring to that which is hidden. In a general sense, the term occult can be applied to any attempt to gain supernatural knowledge or power apart from God of the Bible. The word is generally used to describe secret or mysterious supernatural powers and magical rituals. Occultic groups typically exhibit the following distinctive characteristics.

- 1) Secret knowledge or wisdom can be attained using techniques that transcend the five human senses.
- 2) Such techniques usually involve contract with supernatural forces or energies
- 3) The goal of obtaining such power is to exercise control over events, humans, or natural forces.

New Age: The New Age is a recent and developing belief system in North America encompassing thousands of autonomous (and sometimes contradictory) beliefs, organisations and events. Adherents of the New Age often borrow their theology from pantheistic Eastern religions and their practices from nineteenth century Western spiritualism and occultism. The term New Age is used herein as an umbrella term to describe organisations that seem to exhibit one or more of the following beliefs:

Pantheism: All is one and all reality is thus part of the whole (monism) and the one is identified as God. Thus the universe (including humanity) is God, which is seen as an impersonal, all encompassing force.

Reincarnation – Humans never die, but instead continually develop themselves through a succession of lives.

Reality Manipulation – Humans can alter or create their own reality or values through a transformed consciousness or altered states of consciousness.

In all cases, the use of words such as cult, occult and New Age are merely intended to provide a very basic doctrinal taxonomy. The use of these categories and terms in no way implies that the followers or leaders of these organisations or religions are evil or immoral people. It simply means that such groups promote doctrines or practices that may be considered outside the boundaries of historic, biblical Christianity.⁸

The widely accepted definition of a cult is a group of individuals who share a set of religious or quasi-religious beliefs, often imposed by a charismatic leader, which tend not to conform to society's norms and may be considered fanatical.⁹ Groups who fall into this definition prefer the less contentious title of "*new religious movement*", because over the last fifty years the word "*cult*" has become linked with brainwashing, mass suicide and even murders. Cults have always attracted controversy and it is not a new phenomenon. Humanity has formed secret societies and secular groups to try to make sense of the world for centuries.

Most of the time, the strong belief of cults have sprung from dissatisfaction with mainstream religions, although the influence of Christianity, Hinduism, and Buddhism can be seen in many of today's cults. Ancient cults such as the Knights Templar and Rosicrucian's also had links to Christianity, but their secretive ceremonies and allegiance to powerful leaders set them, apart from the rest of society.

A great deal of a destructive cult depends on the merits of the "*charismatic leader*," if there is one. A dictatorial cult leader is as potentially dangerous as a dictatorial political leader, if not more so, because members are subjected to their guru's every craze, which is often portrayed as being inspired by some form of "*higher power*", followers are told that they will only reach salvation if they obey the leaders every

⁸ Walker, JK (2007) *Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp. 9-11.

⁹ Moran, Sarah (1999) *The Secret World of Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. England: CLB International, p.10

word. Not only is destructive cults dangerous for their individual members, but for society as a whole.

Some cults in particular those that have gained disrepute over the years, started out with a belief system that many would consider only slightly different to the norm, but under the influence of various infamous gurus, spiralled out of control when power, sex, and money were introduced into the equation.

A relatively new phenomenon in the world of cults is the growth of the Militia movement and the far right in the USA. These groups, such as the Posse Comitatus and Michigan Militia, display some classic similarities with older types of cults. They generally have a charismatic leader, they have a definite belief system, and many of them base their ideas on a form of fundamentalist Christianity.

Cult members are growing in numbers, **even under the youth because they feel that mainstream society is failing them.** People join cults for a variety of reasons. The popularity of so-called "*accepted*" religions is declining, and the interest in mysticism, new age teachings and the occult is undoubtedly increasing, especially under children. In the West, spirituality are hidden under the joys of wealth and material gratification, people seem to be searching for a spiritual aspect to their lives, when religion fails to supply this there are numerous cults around which appear to promise either guaranteed salvation, or at least a close-knit community of like-minded friends.

Anti cult groups and ex cult members are issuing warnings of the dangers of cult membership, while others would argue that their lives have become more fulfilled by joining a cult, with their beliefs and way of life are as valid as anybody else's.

Groups monitoring cults have identified specific types of people who are more likely to be targeted by recruiters and **the youth seem to be predominantly susceptible.**

When youth are at a stage of making life altering decisions it is often easier for them to be given an identity than to forge one for themselves. Groups such as the UK-based INFORM and the American Cult Awareness Network deem they can recognize a pattern in the recruiting techniques, initiation programs, and fundraising activities of most cults, and they tour schools and colleges, informing young people about different cults' recruiting methods and alerting them to possible dangers.

Today, cults continue to generate much criticism, which has led to some maintaining that their members are persecuted and others going as far as suing for damages. But these groups and their extraordinary leaders are bound to attract publicity—indeed, some court it—and this is likely to be adverse when their beliefs are practiced in such a way that they not only contradict society's norms, but are sometimes illegal.

The media and music industry is popularising cults, making it attractive by exposing the youth to their initiations and rituals. In this thesis only a few of the most popular destructive cults will be explained in deeper detail to illustrate and shed light upon the deceit and destruction of involvement in any cult.¹⁰

3. TYPES OF CULTS

The types of cult that exists can be classified as suggested by Dr Margaret Singer who observes the following types of cults:¹¹

- Eastern Religious
- Christian Aberrational
- Satanic

¹⁰ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, pp. 10- 11.

¹¹ Cults Questions and Answers (www.cslorg/studyindex/studycult/cultqa.htm)

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

- Occult/Witchcraft/Voodoo
- Spiritualist
- Racist
- Zen And Sino/Japanese Philosophical-Mystical
- Flying Saucer And Outer Space
- Psychotherapy
- Mass Therapy Or Transformational Training
- Political
- New Age
- Commercial
- Communal/Self-Help

Some of the cults discussed in this thesis are examined under nine basic points of doctrine, based on the **Word which is the Truth of God**. This thesis does not deem to explain all the cults which exists but to point out that cult involvement eventually leads to Satan as it is based on unbiblical doctrines.

1. **God:** Christians believe in the Personal, Almighty Triune God – God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit who is the Creator of heaven and earth. The Sustainer of His creation by His infinite power; He is the Life giver and the Source of Light.

And this is life eternal, that they might know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent.

John 17:3 MKJV

2. **The Trinity:** The Bible teaches that there is only one God, eternally existent in Three Persons, God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. From the beginning all Three Persons were present, as God said that mankind should be created in “***Our Image and likeness***” (Genesis 1:26).

3. **The Person of Jesus Christ:** Christian believe in the Biblical teaching of Jesus: the deity of the Lord Jesus, in His virgin birth, in His sinless life, in His vicarious and atoning death, in His bodily resurrection, in His ascension to the right hand of the Father, in His personal future return to this earth in power and glory and His eternal reign for all eternity.

4. **The Holy Spirit:** Christians believe in the Personal Holy Spirit, the Third Person of the Divine Trinity, co-equal in honour, power and glory with the Father and the Son. Regeneration by the Holy Spirit is essential for personal salvation and in the sanctifying power of the Holy Spirit, enabling the believer to live a holy life.

And I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, so that He may be with you forever,

John 14:16 MKJV

5. **The Work of Jesus Christ (The atonement):** The only means of being cleansed of sin is through repentance and faith in the precious blood of Jesus Christ. For this very reason Jesus the Son of God came, only the sinless Saviour could pay the full price for mankind's sin.

But God commends His love toward us in that while we were yet sinners Christ died for us. Much more then, being now justified by His blood, we shall be saved from wrath through Him. For if when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.

Romans 5:8-10 MKJV

6. **Christ's Resurrection and Promised Return:** Jesus died on the cross when He gave up His spirit, and He rose again – He was resurrected from the dead (Luke 24:39). He will return again with His second coming to the earth in power and glory as the Judge of the living and the dead, Jesus is the King of

Kings and the Lord of Lords (Revelations 19:16), and all of creation will acknowledge Him as Lord and every eye shall see Him (Revelations 1:7).

that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of heavenly ones, and of earthly ones, and of ones under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

Philippians 2:10-11 MKJV

7. **Salvation by Faith, Sin and judgement, Heaven and Hell:** Salvation by faith means that Believers in Christ are saved from the penalty of sin which is death, without the Lord Jesus Christ.

For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Romans 6:23 MKJV

Christians will be ultimately saved from the presence of sin through the regenerating power of the Holy Spirit and by Faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. (John 3:16; John 1:12; 1 John 5:11-12; Romans 5:1; Romans 6:23)

and has raised us up together and made us sit together in the heavenlies in Christ Jesus, so that in the ages to come He might show the exceeding riches of His grace in His kindness toward us through Christ Jesus. For by grace you are saved through faith, and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.

Ephesians 2:6-9 MKJV

All of mankind, born from the line of Adam was born with sin; it is in the very DNA of mankind.

for all have sinned and come short of the glory of God,

Romans 3:23 MKJV

Therefore God sent forth His only begotten Son, Jesus Christ as the perfect sacrifice, God Himself took upon Him the clothing of flesh – He took upon Him

the life of a human being who was created from the dust of the earth – to reconcile man to his Creator. To break down the consequences of the fall and give mankind back their original place as God has intended it to be from the very beginning. Therefore if one believes in the Lord Jesus, repent one's sins He will forgive and give the gift of eternal live to that believer.

Therefore repent and convert so that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord.

Acts 3:19 MKJV

Jesus answered and said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Unless a man is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

John 3:3 MKJV

There will be a resurrection of the saved and the lost, one to the everlasting life and the latter to everlasting damnation, there is thus a Heaven and a Hell.

And I saw the dead, the small and the great, stand before God. And books were opened, and another book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead in it. And death and hell delivered up the dead in them. And each one of them was judged according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the Lake of Fire. This is the second death. And if anyone was not found having been written in the Book of Life, he was cast into the Lake of Fire.

Revelation 20:12-15 MKJV

But as it is written, "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard," nor has it entered into the heart of man, "the things which God has prepared for those who love Him."

1 Corinthians 2:9 MKJV

8. **Man:** Mankind was created by God for His glory (also see the First Chapter One), the Fall of mankind brought mankind into a state of sin, man is therefore a born sinner

***Therefore, even as through one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin, and so death passed on all men inasmuch as all sinned:
Romans 5:12 MKJV***

***If we say that we have not sinned, we make Him a liar, and His Word is not in us.
1 John 1:10 MKJV***

However the good news, ***The Gospel*** is that Jesus came to the earth ONCE to pay the penalty for mankind's sin

***He Himself bore our sins in His own body on the tree, that dying to sins, we might live to righteousness; by whose stripes you were healed.
1 Peter 2:24 MKJV***

God gave man freewill, He could take up the opportunity to accept the Jesus the Saviour of mankind or he could reject Him – but it can only happen in this life. There is NO second chance and mankind's choice now determines his eternal destiny.

***And as it is appointed to men once to die, but after this the judgment, so Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many. And to those who look for Him He shall appear the second time without sin to salvation.
Hebrews 9:27-28 MKJV***

Those who do not accept the Lord as Saviour will be casted into the everlasting fire, prepared for Satan and his angels (Matthew 25:41). They will have to pay the price of sin themselves, which is permanent separation from God – eternal death.

9. **The Bible:** The Bible is the inspired and only infallible and authoritative written Word of God.

All Scripture is God-breathed, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness,

2 Timothy 3:16 MKJV

Sanctify them through Your truth. Your Word is truth.

John 17:17 MKJV

The teachings taught in cults are contrary to the teachings taught in the Word of God. The common denominators, although they differ widely in the cultic teaching are however the following:

- *Extra Biblical Revelations:* A document which is usually written by the founder or cult leader is placed alongside the Bible, claiming a special revelatory standing for it.
- *A false basis of salvation:* This is usually believed to be salvation by works.
- *Uncertain hope.*
- *Presumptuous Messianic Leadership:* The human leader is elevated to a Messianic level.
- *Doctrinal ambiguity:* The stress is commonly sub-rational, emotional, vaguely mystical and without a clear understandable basis.
- *The claim of Special Discoveries.*
- *The Christology is defective.* Denying the basic Biblical teachings concerning the nature and work of Christ.
- *Segmented Biblical attention.* Usually only a few verses or portions from the Bible is emphasised used to support a particular teaching while the rest of the Bible is ignored.
- *Enslaving organisational structure.* A monolithic, merciless and entangling organisational structure is created and the loyalty appealed to is something other than Jesus Christ.
- *Financial Exploitation*
- *Denunciation of others*

- Syncretism. Support of a mixture of ideas currently popular.

3.1 Christian Science

According to the Online Oxford Dictionary¹² Christian Science is: the beliefs and practices of the Church of Christ Scientist, a Christian sect founded by Mary Baker Eddy in 1879. Members hold that only God and the mind have ultimate reality, and that sin and illness are illusions which can be overcome by prayer and faith. It is a system of combating disease, etc., without medical treatment by mental effect of a patient's Christian faith.

A closer study of the cult, shows that it is neither Christian nor scientific, even though they claim to hold to the Biblical beliefs it is the very opposite of what Jesus taught.

Mary Baker Eddy was the founder of the Christian Science movement, contrary to the claims that she enjoyed robust health; medical evidence revealed that she greatly relied on morphine as a medication; her life was marked with frequent illness of both an emotional and physical nature.¹³

She claims to have fallen in February 1866 and were given three days to live, she allegedly read Matthew 9:22 on the third day and were completely healed, having discovered Christian Science¹⁴, a revelation directly from God. History however reveals that she copied the writings of Dr Phineas Parkhurst Quimby's book Science and Health, works she claimed to be original to her was copied verbatim from Dr Francis Lieber's manuscript, on the writings of the Philosopher Hegel.

¹² Christian Science (www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/Christian-Science)

¹³ Christian Science, Christian or Cult (www.rapidnet.com/~jbeard/bdm/Cults/science.htm)

¹⁴ What is Christian Science (www.christianscience.com/what-is-christian-science#basic-teachings)

Baker's worth was estimated at her death to exceed three million dollars, mostly derived from her "*Science and Health, with Key to the Scripture*" book sales. Although her teachings taught that matter was an illusion of the mortal mind, she benefitted from the material comforts derived from denying their very existence.

"*Christian Science deserves the title of cult since it departs from plain Bible teaching on major doctrines and the movement also adopts a potentially deadly view of how to deal with sickness,*" Beverley, professor of Christian Thought and Ethics at Tyndale University, said in an email to The Christian Post.¹⁵

Craig Branch, director of the Apologetics Research Centre, agrees, saying that although Christian Science claims "*to be the true understanding of Christianity,*" "*they have a different God, a different Jesus, a different authority, a different gospel, different salvation.*"

Scholars state that in Christian Science, "*matter is an illusion. It's pantheistic – followers 'evolve' to become one with God, and there is only one reality, which is God is good,*" it is also believed that man mankind is incapable of sin, sickness and death, according to *Science and Health*. "*God or good never made man capable of sin.*" The denial of the reality of physical disease and sickness has led parents to keep their sick children from proper medical care. This sometimes results in death.

Applying the nine basic points, one can shed light on the beliefs of Christian Science:

- **Beliefs of Christian Science**
 - **God:** To Christian Science believers God is an impersonal Principle, God is all, the soul or mind of the spiritual man is God, the divine Principle of all

¹⁵ Cults in Culture: Christian Science – A Deadly Religion Part 7 (www.christianpost.com/news/cults-in-culture-christian-science-a-deadly-religion-part-7-64940/)

being. All that exists according the Eddy's philosophy is "*Mind*" which is "*God*", and "*it*" is "*Good*".

- **The Trinity**, is out rightly denied, Life, Truth and Love constitutes a Triune God.
- **Jesus Christ's Deity is denied**, seeing that physical existence is denied by Eddie, she categorically denied the virgin birth of Jesus as it was seen that Jesus the Galilean prophet was born from the virgin Mary's thoughts of life and its manifestation, she conceived a spiritual idea of God and called it Jesus. (The First Church of Christ, Scientists and Miscellany). Jesus as material man was not Christ, but simply an illusion of the mortal mind. The physical death of Jesus was also denied, she believed that there was no material body to be diseased and therefore no need of healing, death is taught to be an illusion, that there is no death.
- The **Holy Spirit as Third person in the Trinity and His deity is denied**; Eddy defined the Holy Spirit as "*Divine Science – the development of Life, Truth and Love.*" She mistakenly referred to **Christian Science as the Divine Comforter**.
- Christian Science denies the existence of sin, because God is seen as all, they deem no room for His opposite. By denying the existence of sin, there is **no need for redemption and the atonement of Jesus Christ** for mankind's sin is therefore also denied.
- Jesus' resurrection and second coming is spiritualised in the same way as His death. This is a **denial that Jesus has overcome death and that He will return**.
- As there is no sin, there is **no need for salvation**. Salvation isn't seen as personal deliverance from sin, rather boundless freedom and sinless sense. Seeing as there is no sin, there is no need for judgement. There is no evil – and it can be overcome by denying its verity. Satan is non-existent and there is no heaven or hell.

- **Man is seen as spiritual and perfect**, incapable of sin, man is not matter which is made of flesh and blood. The spirit of man is seen as un-fallen, in the image and likeness of God and therefore what is possible for God is possible for man as man is God's reflection co-existent and co-eternal with God. They also believe that man was not created from the dust of the earth, but from Spirit.
- Their whole belief system **denies the Word of God**. Eddy appointed herself as the "*divinely appointed interpreter*" of the Bible – but she considered it to be full of textual errors, made up of metaphors, allegories, myths and fables.

Christian Science thus claims to remove the error of sickness of the mortal mind through prayer. Eddy held the view that prayer to a personal God hinders spiritual growth, when evil is encountered the reality thereof is denied; when they experience misery they affirm its non-existence. Christian Science is an imitation of the Gospel but bears no similarity to the historic Christian faith as taught in the Word of God.¹⁶

*Prayer of Renunciation against **PRIDE, IDOLATRY and SELF WORSHIP** in the cult of Christian Science:*

Heavenly Father, I know that Satan and his kingdom stand in arrogant opposition to You and all of Your ways of righteousness and truth. When I note hostile attitudes toward the things of God in _____'s life, I know that he/she is being deceived by the kingdom of darkness. I stand against the control and deception in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. I renounce and tear down those strongholds of darkness promoting hostility to spiritual truth in _____'s life. I stand against the arrogance, self worship, pride and idolatry involved in this cult. I ask You to evict them from _____'s presence. I look to You, heavenly Father, to soften _____'s heart by the work of Your Spirit and to draw _____ to Yourself, give them a heart of humility.

¹⁶ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp, 19-24.

3.2 Eastern Religious Cults

Eastern religious cults have infiltrated the West quite successfully, especially under the youth. People have been attracted to Eastern sects for their “spiritual” outlook and emphasis on the need to discover the inner man, an inner contentment independent of material things. The examination of their beliefs in this thesis will only concentrate on the certain underlying ideas common throughout Eastern thought, their beliefs includes that there is no distinction or diversity in the Universe, everything material is seen as an illusion (*Maya*), their basic mission is to find release (*Moksha*) from this diversity and to experience the essential oneness of the Universe with oneself (*Samadh*).

Eastern Religion is based on an “*experience*” and their practices are basically different methods used in an attempt to achieve the ultimate experience of enlightenment.

3.2.1 What do Eastern Religious Cults Believe?

- **God** is seen as the source of all being, an impersonal God, He is everywhere. Brahman – the “god” of the universe is not separate from the universe, God is in the devotee’s hearts and if one looks into oneself He will be found. God manifests “itself” resulting in an illusion mankind could see all around them, time is non-existent but God manifests itself in time periods or eras. It is believed that there is no beginning nor end of time, for God is time and these manifestations of time periods will forever continue, this is the basis of the doctrine of reincarnation.
- **Eastern cuts deny the Trinity.**
- **Jesus** is seen as a manifestation, an avatar i.e. a personal incarnation of “*God*” and like Buddha, Krishna etc – merely a transmitter of enlightenment These incarnations of God in history was known as ***Bhakti Yoga*** movements,

in Hindu Yoga is the term used for different roads to enlightenment. Bhakti Yoga involves religious devotion and service to a spiritual master through whose grace an individual can be granted enlightenment.

- **The Holy Spirit is not acknowledged as in Biblical terms.**
- **The devotees do not believe in the atonement of Jesus**, they believe an impersonal “*God*” is incapable of being offended, atonement in their view is thus nonsense.
- Eastern religions **apply the second coming of the Lord upon themselves** as they themselves are “*god*”.
- Salvation, or in the devotees of Eastern Cults, the term Enlightenment is used, is the experience of “**Oneness**” with all things. Mankind is one in essence with the universe and salvation would be the realisation thereof. Their belief in an impersonal “*God*” leads to the fact that there cannot be sinned against “*Him*”, **sin is seen as ignorance which prevents mankind from realising his “oneness”** with everything else, which could only be overcome with reaching enlightenment – failure thereof leads to reincarnation. Various methods are used to attain this mystical merge of self-consciousness into “*God*” where the devotee no longer sees himself as an individual but one with all things. **Hell is thus seen as reincarnation to a lower state of being.** There is thus no heaven or hell, as in the Biblical terms, their aim is reaching permanent or “*God*” consciousness
- **Mankind is seen as the Universal soul** (Atman), one in essence with all things.
- The **Bible is seen** as authentic Scripture, similar to Eastern Religious Cult literature, the Bible is also interpreted in terms of Eastern philosophy – being a means in attaining enlightenment. Emphasis is placed on the experience when they disagree with the Bible, as words and ideas are seen as useless. The three best known Eastern Cults is Transcendental Meditation, The Divine Light Mission and The International Society for Krishna Consciousness.

Eastern Cults places importance on meditation, chants and prayer to reach enlightenment and thus has nothing in common with Christianity as can be seen in the nine basic points listed above.¹⁷

3.3 Freemasonry

Most Westerners are aware that a secret society of male-dominated "lodges" with links to local businesses exists. For some the Freemasons are noteworthy for their charitable works, mainly for underprivileged children while the truth concerning the Freemasons and their past is a lot more complex than either preconception gives them acknowledgment for. Freemasonry is probably the largest of all secret organizations today, and it is also very wealthy. Being a very secretive society makes it difficult to establish their numbers, but it is thought that there are nearly six million fully initiated Freemasons world-wide.

The Catholic Church is principally scornful of the movement and Pope Clement XII decreed that Catholics couldn't join the Freemasons in 1738, anyone who did would face excommunication. Baptists are also discouraged from becoming involved with Freemasonry; it is banned in China, Greece, and some South American countries. Notwithstanding established religious figures damning their society as heretical and dangerous, Freemasons supposedly believe their ideals are tied closely to the Christian Church.

The origin of Freemasonry is said to be during the time of building King Solomon's Temple. Their progress to higher degrees is based on the symbolical building of King Solomon's temple. Later in the English Middle Ages, it started as a trade union, a mutually beneficial organization for members of the itinerant building trade. This original idea is maintained up to today; emphasis is placed on helping fellow members in need and numerous men join Freemasonry to further their business

¹⁷ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp, 25-28.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

interests. Most lodges have recruited representatives of all the major professions. When the building of churches and cathedrals began to slow down, the organization slowly disbanded, but it was revived in its present form in the eighteenth century, when a group of four lodges was created and bound together as the Grand Lodge of England in 1717.

The organization was moulded into a secretive society rather than an open trade union, and exists in this way even today. A newcomer cannot ask to join, he must wait to be nominated, and a selection procedure follows. Initiation ceremonies are said to range from the intricate to the bizarre, borrowing heavily on Rosicrucian and even occult practices. Although revealing the secrets of the Lodge is allegedly punishable by having your eyes gouged out, your bowel or heart ripped from your body, or removal of the tongue practices that Masons deem as being purely symbolic, some ceremonial details have been made public.¹⁸

Freemasonry is found in almost every walk of life, which includes many religious denominations – only atheists are prohibited from joining. The movement was popularised due to the participation in Masonry by many American Presidents and English Royalty.

Freemasonry as it is known today dates its organisation from 1813, when it was constituted in three principle degrees: Entered Apprentice, Fellow Craft and Master Mason, a number of degrees exists behind this including the sublime degree of the Holy Royal Arch and Rose Croix of Heredom, which is recognised by the Grand Lodge, situated in England.¹⁹

¹⁸ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, p. 22.

¹⁹ *Freemasons: The Silent Destroyers – deist religious cult based on the Knights Templers* (www.bilderberg.org/masons.htm)

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

In the first degree the person to be initiated swears upon the Bible and supposedly the presence of God that he will keep the secrets to be revealed to him, under the penalty of having his throat cut and his tongue torn out by the roots. And extract from the initiation:

“These several points I solemnly swear to observe, without evasion, equivocation, or mental reservation of any kind, under no less a penalty, on the violation of any of them than that of having my throat cut across, my tongue torn out by the root (singular) and buried in the sand (singular) of the sea at low water mark, or a cable's length from the shore, where the tide regularly ebbs and flow twice in 24 hours or the more effective punishment of being branded as a wilfully perjured individual, void of all moral worth, and totally unfit to be received into this worshipful Lodge, or any other warranted Lodge, or society of men who prize honour and virtue above the external advantages of rank and fortune. So help me God, and keep me steadfast in this my Great and Solemn Obligation of an Entered Apprentice Freemason.”²⁰

“Still, as a Freemason, there are other excellences of character to which your attention may be peculiarly and forcibly directed: amongst the foremost of these are Secrecy, Fidelity, and Obedience. Secrecy consists in an inviolable adherence to the Obligation you have entered into never improperly to disclose any of those Masonic secrets which have now been, or may at any future period be, entrusted to your keeping, and cautiously to avoid all occasions which may inadvertently lead you so to do”.²¹

Initiation into the second degree, Fellow Craft requires an oath of secrecy under penalty of having the left breast torn open and the heart plucked out.

²⁰ First Degree or Ceremony of Initiation United Grand Lodge (www.bilderberg.org/First_Degree.htm)

²¹ First Degree or Ceremony of Initiation United Grand Lodge (www.bilderberg.org/First_Degree.htm)

"I further solemnly pledge myself to act as a true and faithful Craftsman answer Signs, obey summonses and maintain the principles inculcated in the former degree. These several Points I solemnly swear to observe, without evasion, equivocation, or mental reservation of any kind, under no less a penalty, on the violation of any of them, than that of having my left breast laid open, my heart torn there from and given to the ravenous birds of the air or devouring. beasts of the field as prey. So help me, Almighty God and keep me steadfast in this my solemn Obligation of a Fellow Craft Freemason."²²

Initiation into the third degree, Master Mason requires an oath of secrecy which threatens that the body will be severed in two, the bowels taken from thence and burned to ashes.

"All these point I solemnly swear to observe, without evasion, equivocation or mental reservation of any kind, under no less a penalty, on the violation of any of them, than that of being severed in two, my body burnt to ashes and those ashes scattered over the face of earth and water by the 4 cardinal winds of heaven, that no trace or remembrance of so vile a wretch may longer be found among men, particularly Master Masons. So help me the Most High and keep me steadfast in this my solemn Obligation of a Master Mason"²³

Freemasonry is saturated with symbolism and secrecy, devotees are taught secret signs, handgrips, codes etc. Secret meetings are held in which members are compelled under oath to keep the "secrets" of Freemasonry, there they promise to "always conceal and never reveal" as seen above. Some of these oaths are undertaken by signing a contract in one's own blood.

Freemasons themselves has confirmed the spiritual side of freemasonry which have kept the cult alive for all this time. The aim of the movement is the quest of

²² Second Degree or Ceremony of Passing (www.bilderberg.org/Second_Degree.htm)

²³ Third Degree Ritual – The Raising (www.bilderberg.org/Third_Degree.htm)

knowledge of and union with “*God*” – claiming Freemasonry to be the “*universal religion*” no matter which route is taken, may it be Christian, Jew or Mohammedian - all travel to the same place.²⁴

3.3.1 What do the Freemasons Believe?

- **God:** “*God*” in Freemasonry terms is called the Great Architect of the Universe, equal to Brahma, Vishnu, Shiva and Krishna (Hindu gods), they thus have a multiplicity of god and this one name applies to all of them, it is in fact the worship of the old pagan gods of ancient Egypt, Greece, India etc. At the root of Freemasonry it is a Luciferian Society. Upon the Royal Arch Degree, one of the other names of “*God*” is revealed to the initiate – ***Jah-bul-on*** i.e. ***Yahweh-Baal-on*** – Baal is a Babylonian god and On is an Egyptian god. Ironically their literature states that old Hebrew prophets would have found this name to be “idolatrous” and “blasphemous”. Albert Pike a renowned Freemason stated that Lucifer is “*God*”, the god of light equal to Adonay (Jesus Christ) struggling for humanity against God (the God of the Christians) which is deemed to be cruel and evil in the Masonic beliefs.
- **The Trinity** is not part of their doctrine; their trinity is ***Jah-bul-on***.
- **Jesus’** name may not be mentioned in lodges or in any prayers, He is seen as inferior to the gods of ancient mythology and a mere man.
- **The Holy Spirit** is not part of their doctrine.
- **The atonement** of Jesus is denied, as Masonry is not sectarian but universal.
- The **resurrection and second coming of Christ** does not form part of their doctrine.

²⁴ Not in agreement with the Bible, as the Bible teaches that the only way to God is salvation through the Lord Jesus Christ.

Jesus said to him, I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life; no one comes to the Father but by Me.

John 14:6 MKJV

- All initiates claim to be “a poor candidate in a state or darkness coming to find the light in the mysteries of Masonry”. Each person have to work out **his own salvation**, as they believe that “God” cannot be partial without ceasing to be “God”, death is the doorway to a place among the gods. Masonry advances one to the lodge in heaven.
- **Man** was conceived in love and is therefore one in respect of origin, duty and destiny.
- **The Bible** is seen as equal to sacred books of the East, it is thus seen **ONLY** as the symbol of the will of “God”, with Masons believing in a multiplicity of “gods” – all being called “god”, the will of “god” could be expressed by the Koran or any other sacred book as per each region the lodge is situated in. Masonry is not based or founded on the Bible. Whenever quotes are made from the Bible, Masons make sure to ban the name of Christ as it would introduce sectarianism.²⁵

Freemasonry has no link with Christianity whatsoever; they deny the Deity of the Lord Jesus Christ, the only name by which a person can be saved, Scripture states:

This is the Stone which you builders have counted worthless, and He has become the Head of the Corner. And there is salvation in no other One; for there is no other name under Heaven given among men by which we must be saved.

Acts 4:11-12 MKJV

*Renunciation prayer for a Child in an Out-of-Control Behaviour Pattern, because of
bloodline involvement in cults:*

*Parental wisdom and judgment are needed here. Sometimes it may be wiser to slip
away to a private place for this intercession. At other times it may be important to
take the distraught little child into your arms and pray for him in his hearing. The size
of your child, the nature of the loss of control, the place and time, and the past*

²⁵ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp, 30-36.

history of the out-of-control problem are factors that will influence your application of prayer.

In the mighty name of my Lord Jesus Christ and by the power of His blood, I come against any and all powers of darkness causing or intensifying the out-of-control behaviour of _____. I subdue you and all your workers in the presence of the Lord Jesus Christ and I command you to cease your wicked, manipulative work against _____. You and all your host must leave _____'s presence, and you must go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends you. I ask You, Lord Jesus Christ, to bring _____ into the self-control that is authored by the Holy Spirit according to Your will and plan for _____'s life.

3.4 The Illuminati

The New World Order conspiracy is often seen as fictional accounts fuelling a suspicious belief in a "Big Brother" government. Before this is made out as fantasy one has to keep in mind; that throughout history power-crazed individuals have decided on a political policy of world domination. Combining a group of secretive highly influential international figures would be easier to steer the world into a certain direction than an individual person and this is how the Illuminati allegedly operates. No one is however sure who or what is behind it – not even the members themselves. The Illuminati may not even exist, but if it does, its aim is thought to be nothing less than world domination.

On May 1, 1776, a Professor of Canon Law at the Bavarian University of Ingolstadt, Adam Weishaupt, formed a group called the Illuminati meaning *intellectually inspired*. He was a radical intellectual who wanted to rid the world of corrupt religion and monarchies and replace them with his own brand of Gnostic free- thinking and his ideas embraced occultism, spirituality and alchemy.

Some scholars claims that Weishaupt was just a front, and the real power behind the Illuminati came from the Rothschild family while others have linked this group to the Knights Templar, saying it was simply another guise by which the Templers preserved their power, which ever the group quickly attracted some of Germany's most radical minds, including Goethe and Mozart, and within a few years had a network of approximately two thousand powerful followers. Weishaupt cleverly initiated people who would be of use to his plans; any possible means were used, even resorting to extortion and blackmail to "encourage" powerful people, such as the Duc D'Orleans, to help further the cause.

Weishaupt found it vital to penetrate the Freemasons, using them as a cover for his group's activities and to enlarge their numbers with like-minded individuals. Sarah Moran²⁶ argues that he also instigated a similar tiered system of initiation where devoted followers could climb the ladder of importance, being allowed more intimate knowledge of the group's aims. In reality, only a tiny circle of people knew the organization was working to overthrow first the French monarchy and then the Pope.

The Illuminati was making potent enemies and even though they had recruited highly influential members, the recognized Jesuit Church was determined to nullify its power and they pressured the French government to ban the organization, which is what happened in 1785. Suspicions were fuelled by the Jesuit Church publishing anti-illuminiti leaflets and articles implying the group were responsible for domestic disorder. A book published in 1993, *Secret Societies and their Power in the 20th Century*, by Jan van Helsing, links the Illuminati to the Second World War, the Russian Revolution, the Kennedy assassination, Scientology, and the Gulf War and even the CIA, FBI, and the Vatican! Some researchers have suggested the whole French Revolution was orchestrated by the group, perhaps in revenge for the deaths of the Knights Templar at the hands of the French monarchy in 1310. The book also

²⁶ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, p. 24.

suggests that the Bavarian Illuminati were only minute part of a much bigger plot to enforce a New World Order. Helsing believed that the actual power lies in the hands of a very small number of very wealthy families and that many monarchies, governments and even the United Nations are being influenced from behind the scenes by a intricate group of individuals who probably don't even know they are in the pay of the Illuminati.

Whether this is just paranoid fantasy, or whether the existence of groups like the Bilderberg Group gives the theory some credibility, is up to the individual to decide considering the fact that the symbols of this group is constantly used by the media..

3.5 Salvation from the Stars

An unidentified flying object or more commonly known as a UFO was witnessed by Kenneth Arnold in 1947, after that a media frenzy of UFO's and extraterrestrial life began and Hollywood produced numerous horror sci-fi movies while others saw a link between what traditional religions always promised as the return of a messiah and the visits of alien-driven flying saucers.

People have always looked to the skies for ultimate answers. The book of Ezekiel refer to wondrous fiery sky borne craft, the same with ancient Indian sacred writings with their amazing, acrobatic sky- chariots, known as *vimanas*. The beginning of the millennium has led many people to look for answers to the endless questions of who they are, where they came from, and what is going to happen when they die. Traditional religions aren't seen to include modern attitudes, while some people join established groups which attempt to impose solutions through revolutionary activity, others follow a self-proclaimed "messiah," and some have found comfort and sense in groups which believe in, although they do not necessarily worship, UFOs and aliens. Members of these groups believe that answers are provided by

extraterrestrials, they believe that the answers to their prayers lies somewhere beyond the earth's atmosphere.

The Aetherius Society formed in 1955 by Englishman George King, is one of the oldest and respectable international UFO sects, with their headquarters based in London. Although King died in 1997, the society is still continuing with a renewed interest in the paranormal and New Age concerns. The societies cause is "*dedicated to the salvation and enlightenment of mankind*" and the members believe in a complex spiritual system of interplanetary government overseen by the Great White Brotherhood and functioning on the continued production of spiritual energy including elements of Buddhism and New Age thinking. Aetherians accept there are diverse astral levels and dynamically practice spiritual healing techniques, and have a great affinity with ecological issues.

King claimed he received hundreds of messages, which have been recorded, the first communication being from a Master from Venus named Aetherius therefore the Aetherius Society was formed, he supposedly developed close relationships with these aliens who channelled information through him while he was in a trance-like state. Aetherius advised King how the aliens - who are supposed just higher-level astral entities who take on a humanoid form when they visit earth - are part of a complex cosmic society which is run from the planet Saturn and that the Cosmic Masters are exceedingly spiritual and in tune with what they call the Law of God, or the Law of Karma. According to King they claim to be thousands of years more spiritually advanced than humans on earth and their understanding of karma has allowed them to leave their physical bodies behind. The Cosmic Masters are compassionate, wanting to guide mankind into a more peaceful and spiritual existence, King claimed that these Cosmic Masters have been helping humanity throughout the ages by sending prophets such as Buddha and Jesus to try to teach mankind the Law of God.

Aetherius members tolerate other religions, they believe by helping others they are distribution good karma and helping the planets evolution, they believe once mankind's karma is balanced and the **planet is treated as a living force – even a goddess**, that all other worldly problems will be solved. Prophecies of the great coming, where the aliens will make their presence known to mankind, was left by King, the date is unknown but Dr Richard Lawrence has alluded to Nostradamus's prediction of an "awesome lord" coming from the skies. It is said that the Cosmic Masters will only visit once humanity is equipped to communicate spiritually on the same level, on a level that appreciates the interplanetary Law of God that all mankind's actions have deep rooted consequences and what comes around goes around which is in other words the Law of Karma.²⁷ Today the same concept is taught on the Television series of Ancient Aliens.

Prayer against the lack of Purpose and Goals for the Future, for being involved in a cult:

Thank You, heavenly Father, that "All the days ordained for were written in Your book before one of them came to be" (Psalm 139:16). I rejoice in Your good and satisfying plan for _____'s future. At the present moment, the sense of direction and life put pose for _____seems hidden from him/her. In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, I resist all efforts of darkness to obscure arid misdirect _____'s life into a purposeless future. I ask for You to sovereignly direct and reveal to Your appointed plan for (him/her). Grant to the wisdom to discern that plan and to enter into it in obedience to Your will.

3.6 Children of God

²⁷ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, pp. 50-52.

The Children of God organisation is known as one of the most controversial and destructive cults, today it is known as *The Family* which is radically restructured. Found in 1968 by David Berg, when helping his evangelist mother run a coffee house for dropouts in California.

Berg claimed to be “*God’s prophet for these last days*” and condemned churches for belonging to this “*world system*” and advocated communal living.

The crowd consisted mostly of **youngsters caught up in the rebellion of the 1960s hippie movement, being disillusioned with mainstream politics and society, the young people felt their parents didn't understand them and they were looking for a new direction in life and Berg appealed to their way of thinking.** He played the guitar and preached on the beach his own special kind of Christian evangelism his doctrines rejected the establishment of education, the Church and parental control, but it embraced the free-love attitude that the young people wanted to pay attention to.

Berg renamed himself as Moses Berg and his fundamentalist Bible interpretations began to take on an odd slant as his self importance grew, his communes were also given Biblical names. He saw himself as an end time prophet falsely predicting various events that California would slide into the sea, Jesus would return in 1993 and that there would be a massive communist takeover of the United States which would lead to all Christians being persecuted. His prophecies were claimed to have been channelled through him from a variety of sources, mainly a thousand-year-old Gypsy king named Abraham, he also claimed to have been in contact with Joan of Arc, Rasputin, and Merlin the magician.

The movement spread, particularly in the United States and Europe, claiming to have communes established in over seventy countries, including South Africa. The members of this cult had to sign a Revolutionary Contract, handing over all

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

possessions to the movement and promising to cease contact with friends and family. Parents were only approached when the group required money. For this purpose, files were allegedly kept on all the parents' financial situations. Once initiated, most members lived in poverty. Parents are looked upon as "evil" a misinterpretation of Luke 14:26 and Matthew 10:36. What Jesus meant in this verse was that no other person should take God's place in a person's life, that God should be first.

If anyone comes to Me and does not hate his father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters, yes, and his own life also, he cannot be My disciple.

Luke 14:26 MKJV

Unless parents supported the cause, their children were forbidden to have any contact with them, most parents contributed to keep contact with their children while others contributed believing it was for a Christian cause. These monies collected appears to go the leaders of the movement, as there were no evidence of monies going towards missionary programs, as per the claims made by the group.

The devotees of the group believe that they are serving God, but the tragedy behind it is that they exist solely for the purpose of supporting the leaders.

At one time this group was very active in the streets, mostly young people handed out these little comic book tracts written by Moses David, they also asked for donations for their cause. Money was raised by selling group literature on street apart from his maintaining a mystique, and communicating by sending an increasingly bizarre series of sermons which members called the "Mo Letters."

Berg began his bi-weekly letters to his followers in 1970, instructing his followers in all aspects of daily life. The first Mo Letter explained why the "prophet" had moved another woman, "Maria," into the family home—because Jane, his wife, represented

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

the old Church, and Maria was the new. Berg's personal fixation with sex soon permeated the ranks of the whole group. By 1978, it wasn't just Berg who got to share the wives of other members; it was the "Law of Love" that the women should be shared among all members.

Scripture was freely quoted but out of context and severely misinterpreted, his followers however considered it to be inspired and equal to prophesy – the continuation of the Bible for “*God’s chosen few*”.

These “Mo Letters” revealed his obsession with sex, He wrote “We have a sexy God and a sexy religion and a very sexy leader with an extremely sexy young following. So if you don’t like sex, you’d better get out while you can”.

The Mo Letters became increasingly frank, were often illustrated with sexual images, sometimes including pictures of Berg himself and a variety of women. It began advocating lesbianism, homosexuality, and group sex, purportedly even legitimizing incest. One of Berg's own daughters, Linda, left the cult and wrote a damning book about her father, claiming he had abused one of her sisters and encouraged sex with underage children, the Mo Letters themselves were rarely specific, but generally highly sexually charged, Berg justified his desires by vowing to his followers that by taking part in such acts they were expressing and passing on God's love.²⁸

This group was one of thousands teaching that Jesus is Lord and claiming to be the true believers, or *Children of God*, using the name of the lord to practice the most diabolical deception, Jesus said that:

Not everyone who says to Me, Lord! Lord! shall enter the kingdom of Heaven, but he who does the will of My Father in Heaven.

Matthew 7:21 MKJV

²⁸ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven’s Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, pp. 84-85.

Most of the devotees in Cults are sincere people and even children who have given heed to seducing spirits and doctrines of demons (1 Timothy 4:1).

Berg ironically depicted himself as a lion in his publications, Scripture warns that the adversary the devil, is walking around like a lion, seeking who he can devour.

Be sensible and vigilant, because your adversary the Devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking someone he may devour;

1 Peter 5:8 MKJV

Berg had a book entitled “*Free Sex*” made up from a selection of “*Mo Letters*” considered by many as pure pornography, and **his basic training handbook prescribed sex with children** and collective striptease. In June 1993, twelve of his devotees were charged with child sex abuse in France. During these raids other arrests were made and practical documents on child sex and explicit children’s drawings were found. They stated that this movement were nothing more than a paedophilia network with international ramifications.

This group was banned in France during 1979 but operated under the names: Family of Love, International Missionary and Families without Frontiers.

Some of Berg’s most alarming teachings appeared to condone paedophilia and incest. *Mo Letters* from the 1970s discuss a babysitter who masturbated and fellated Berg when he was only three years old. Berg asserted her actions did not do him “any harm.” In 1973, he wrote, “*Incest or certain forms of sex with certain specified close relatives was not made illegal until the Mosaic Law 2600 years after Creation.*” He also wrote, “*Marriages of brothers and sisters, mothers and sons and even fathers and daughters were very common in ancient times and were not even considered incestuous, much less illegal.*”

During the early to mid-seventies the group started using sex to make converts. Close to a quarter of a million men were sexually serviced by the group's prostitutes. They even operated their own escort services. Fixed prices were set for various sexual acts. There was cult-directed child prostitution. In 1978 they staged a fake disbanding of the group in response to the negative media attention following the Jonestown tragedy. Shortly thereafter, members were sent to infiltrate churches and fundraise. They were to keep their association with the Children of God (COG) secret. By the use of such deception they were able to raise a lot of financial support.

Most of the adult-child sex took place during the early to mid-eighties. This practice was normative and institutionalized. Mothers were giving their children to adults for sex. Parents were sexually involved with their own children. There was sexual contact between parent and child of the same sex. According to Zerby, the current leader half or more of the adult men in the group had sexual involvement with minors.

3.6.1 What the "Children of God" believes

- The devotee is meant to renounce his current lifestyle, join a commune and turn over all possessions to the movement, to become one of the 144 000 faithful who would survive the tribulation the believer should forsake all and follow Christ.
- All "*Christians*" in this movement should live together communally and share everything as the early Christians did.
- All who do not belong to the group is seen as "*a lost soul in need of salvation*", they believe that they are the only group who have forsaken all to follow God, who has the "*truth*" and is truly "*right with God*".

- Organises churches, ministers of religion, America, all education, the family unit, traditional employment etc is seen as “*Systematic*” and of Satan, the church is said to be run by Satan himself.
- The group is completely anti-parent, it is believed that a “natural family”, are evil and wicked and should be renounced. Berg wrote: “*Your parents are the most God-defying, commandment-breaking, insanely rebellious rebels of all time, on the brink of destroying all of us. To hell with your devilish system. May God damn your unbelieving hearts*”.²⁹
- Berg believed that the end justifies the means and he went to the extremes to gain followers which included: brainwashing, hypnotism, mind-control, sex, drug etc.
- Immorality and sex played a important role in Berg’s thinking, communes claimed to have strict laws regarding sex out of wedlock, mass marriages was preformed which lasted one night only or for a few weeks depending on the commune, the “*Shepherd*” performs all marriages, when couples deems to be to close to each other and putting each other before Christ, they would be sent to different communes. Documented evidence exists of sexual abuse in communes according to an official State investigation.
- Potential members were threatened with impending destiny if they hesitated to join the group and it was even worse when they wanted to leave. Forsaking the group meant placing oneself in the devils hands and incurring the displeasure and judgement of God Himself.
- Cult members are totally separated from the outside world, or any outside contact except when they are “*litnessing*”, which means witnessing with

²⁹ Children of God (www.worldcultwatch.org/children/)

literature. Attractive girls were used to attract new recruits to the cult, using the technique known as “*flirting fishing*”, which is a perversion of what Jesus said that He would make His disciples fishers of men (Matthew 4:19).

- End time theology included David Moses’ prophesy that the world would end in 1993.
- They believed in the ministry of angel beings who manifested themselves during prayer times and gave prophetic utterances, which speaks of occultic involvement.³⁰

In 1995 they came up with a new doctrine that promotes sex with Jesus! Zerby turned out to be just as delusional as Berg. She believes she pre-existed and was Jesus’ lover. When she returns to heaven she will sail in her favourite yacht having sex with Jesus day and night!

The **perversity and utter deception** goes even further as they teach youngsters that: “Jesus” allegedly encourages 14-year-old boys to masturbate and ejaculate to Him! These teenagers are instructed to imagine they are female and to visualize that Jesus is penetrating their vaginas. Elsewhere Jesus tells the teens to have oral sex and masturbate each other.³¹ **These claims are totally blasphemous!**

This cult attracts and recruits mainly young people, especially on university and college campuses, claiming to be a Christian Youth Missionary Organisation. Ex cult members revealed that their special chant “*Thank you God, Thank you Jesus*” keeps them in a hypnotic state of mind, it is their key stimulus. New recruits are never left alone and kept awake day and night, singing, listening to tapes, reading “Mo Letters” and chanting – being sleep deprived and not having time to rethink anything, their minds are broken and they accept whatever they are told. They become non

³⁰ Waldeck, Val (1993) *What do they believe?* Durban South Africa, pp, 11-15.

³¹ The Children of God Cult, aka The Family (www.samajemian.com/)

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

thinking; order taking robots, programmed with pat answers to any situation and question and from there on their “shepherd” will do their thinking on their behalf.

Documented evidence suggests that cult members have been saturated with Moses David’s teachings to such an extent that they are unable to think for themselves or make decisions for themselves, they have literally been brainwashed and their minds have been captured. Without being “deprogrammed” cult members would do anything in their power to rejoin the group. It often takes months to fully recover from the severe psychological damage that has been done, as the person’s free will have been tampered with. The effect of having been feed deception little by little is that the person would believe anything and no longer has the ability to discern the truth.

Jesus is the way the truth and the life (John 14:6), He has come to set man free from the bondage that is in cults, He came to set mankind’s minds free from the deceit that Satan so destructively intertwined within the cults system.

*Prayer against **Unwholesome Relationships in cults:***

You have told us in Your Word, heavenly Father, that “Bad company corrupts good character.” Because of that truth, I have deep concern for the corrupting influence I see _____having on _____, In the name of my Lord Jesus Christ, I pull down all relationships between _____and _____that are being promoted and strategized by the kingdom of darkness. I ask the Lord Jesus Christ to sever all of the unwholesome bonding that is taking place between_____ and _____, I ask that You would sovereignly bring into _____’s life only those wholesome relationships that are Your direct answer for _____’s spiritual development and moral integrity.

3.7 Jehovah Witnesses

Russell was born on February 16, 1852. His parents (Joseph and Anna) raised him in the Protestant faith while growing up in Pennsylvania. When Russell was just eleven years old, he entered a business partnership with his father and they opened a line of clothing stores. In a few years, young Russell sold the stores and his entrepreneurial spirit moved him in pursuit of another business, the business of religion.

At an early age, Russell began to deviate from the doctrines of orthodox Christianity, in turn disagreeing with many Christian teachings such as Hell and the Trinity. Russell claimed that the doctrine of the Trinity was not rational and he was unable to grasp it. Russell was fascinated with the teachings of the Adventists and their predictions of Christ's second coming

Much controversy has saturated Charles Taze Russell and his connections with Freemasonry. Although much debate exists as to whether or not Russell was a Freemason, the facts remain that he exalted Freemason beliefs and their teachings to the extent of using Masonic images within his own publications. In fact, Masonic imagery saturated early Watchtower publications.³²

He also wrote a seven volume series entitled "*Studies and Scriptures*" which he declared to be indispensable to understanding the Bible. Russell were involved in quite a few court cases, including the miracle wheat scandal, which were documented in the local press, his personal life and relationships also resulted in unfavourable publicity.

The cross and crown symbol shown here is the exact symbol of the Knights Templar logo of Freemasonry. Another Masonic symbol is the Knights of Malta symbol,

³² Charles Taze Russell (www.sixscreensofthewatchtower.com/2charlestazerussell.html)

located on the right hand corner. The Watchtower discontinued the use of these symbols regarding them as "Babylonish". The Idolatrous Masonic Egyptian symbol of the winged Sun-Disk graced the covers of many early Watchtower publications. This Pagan idolatrous symbol represents the mythological Egyptian god Ra.

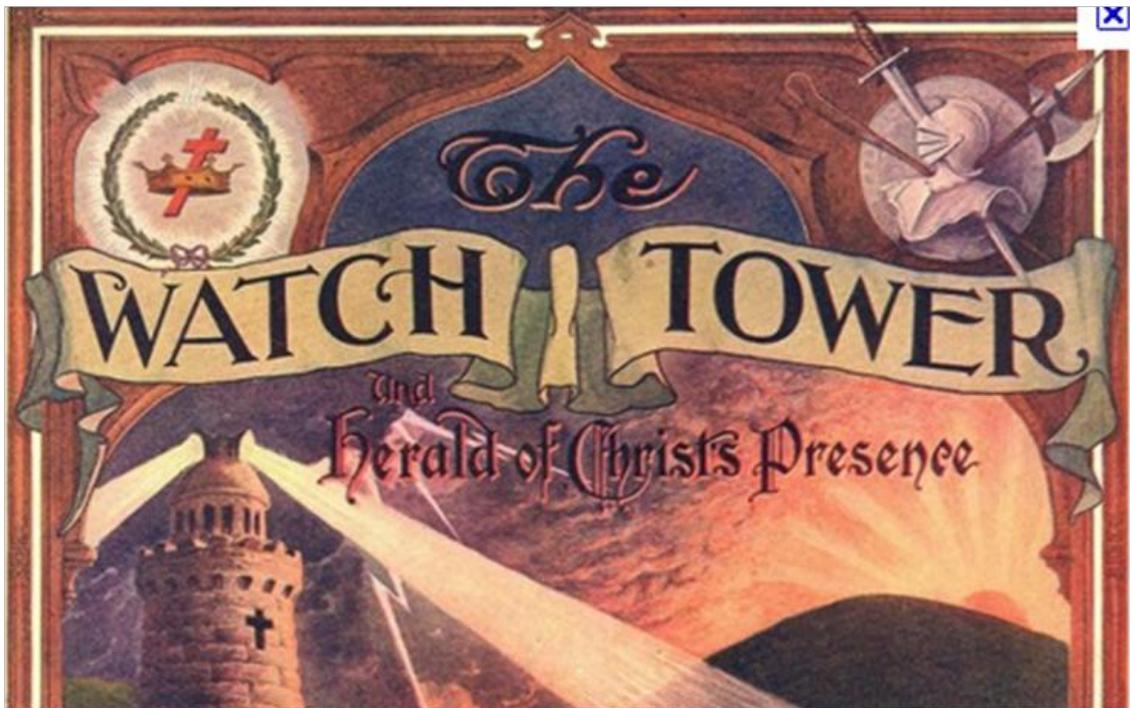


Figure 30: Watchtower, Jehovah Witnesses³³

3.7.1 What Does The Jehovah Witnesses Believe?

- **God:** The Jehovah's Witnesses are taught that the Name of God is **JEHOVAH** and He must be called this at all times, whenever other forms or Names appear in the Old Testament, they believe it was because the original text has been tampered with.

³³ Leave the Cult (www.leavethecult.com/gnosticism-perversion-of-the-gospel/)

There is one solitary Being from all eternity Jehovah God - the Creator and Preserver of the Universe and of all things visible and invisible.

- **The Trinity: Jehovah** witnesses are adamant that the doctrine of the Trinity does not come from God, but from Satan. Sincere persons who want to know the true God and serve Him find it a bit difficult to love and worship a "complicated, freakish-looking, three headed god". They believe that "the teaching of the Trinity is senseless, God-dishonouring and deceptive". "There is no authority in the Word of God for the doctrine of the Trinity of the Godhead" (Studies in the Scriptures).
- **The Person of Jesus Christ.** Jehovah's Witnesses totally deny the deity of Christ, they believe He is the Son of God, but that He is inferior to God. The doctrine beliefs, before Christ's earthly life He was a spirit-creature named Michael - the first of God's creation, through Whom God made the other created things. As a consequence of His birth on earth which isn't seen as the incarnation Jesus became a perfect human being, the equal of Adam prior to the Fall.

In His death Jesus' human nature was destroyed and, as a reward for His sacrificial obedience, God gave Him a divine, spirit nature. He is not eternal "*for there was a time when He was not*".³⁴

- **The Holy Spirit.** Jehovah's Witnesses do not believe that the Holy Spirit is God, nor that He is Personal.

"The Holy Spirit is not a person, but an influence" (Studies in the Scriptures).

"The Holy Spirit is not a person in the Godhead" (Studies in the Scriptures).

³⁴ Distinctive Beliefs (www.catholic.com/tracts/distinctive-beliefs-of-the-jehovahs-witnesses)

- **The Work Of Christ (The Atonement)**, the atonement is seen as a ransom paid removing the effects of Adam's sin on his generations and laid the foundation of the New World of righteousness, including the Millennium of Christ's reign.

They believe that the Atonement of Christ is no guarantee of everlasting life or blessing. The doctrine of beliefs include that only 144 000 spiritual brothers will reign with Christ in heaven while the rest will inherit the earth and live forever. Witnesses believe Jesus died on a punishment stake, not a cross.³⁵

- **Christ's Resurrection and second coming**, according to their doctrine, Jesus Christ returned to earth in A.D. 1914, expelled Satan from heaven and is busy overthrowing Satan's organisation (human government) in order to establish the Theocratic Millennial Kingdom. He did not return in physical form and is invisible as the Logos.
- **Salvation By Faith, Sin and Judgment, Heaven and Hell**, they do not believe in salvation in Jesus, only that it gives man a second chance Heaven is another worldly kingdom, the dwelling place of Jehovah. Hell is mankind's "*common grave*," not a place of torment. All the condemned will be annihilated.
- **Man**, was created in the image of Jehovah, but wilfully sinned. The soul of man is not eternal, but mortal and can die.

³⁵ Jehovah Witnesses Beliefs and Practices (www.christianity.about.com/od/jehovahswitnesses/a/jwbeliefs.htm)

- **The Bible**, is the inerrant, infallible, inspired Word of God as it was originally given, and has been preserved by Him as the revealer of His purposes. The Jehovah version called "THE NEW WORLD TRANSLATION OF THE BIBLE" was "*authorised by the Creator*" and is superior to all other translations. The watchtower magazine is used for Bible Study - which has been estimated to contain less than 6% scripture.³⁶

Prayer towards Rebellion against Authority when people are involved in cults:

In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the power of His blood, I come against the spirit of rebellion that I see seeking to deceive and control _____, I renounce and resist that spirit of rebellion and all of his hosts that are influencing _____ to reject authority. I command you and your hosts to leave _____, and you must go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends you. I ask that the Holy Spirit would affect within _____'s person the same submissive attitude toward authority that the Lord Jesus Christ demonstrated in His earthly life.

3.8 The New Age Movement

This worldwide network has been described as a "*huge cosmic sponge that absorbs all religions, cultures and governments, and culminates in the New World Order.*" Its principle aim is to establish a one-world, a one-world religion and a one-world political and social order. A description of their goals can be seen in Revelations Chapter 13.

- A World Government - verses. 1-10.
- A World Religion - verses. 11 -15.
- A World Economy based on a cashless society - verses. 16-18.

³⁶ Highlights of the Beliefs of Jehovah Witnesses (www.towerwatch.com/Witnesses/Beliefs/their_beliefs.htm)

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

Scholars state that this movement is inspired by Satan and set up by him for the purpose of causing mankind to worship him. Its culmination will be the revealing of the antichrist himself.

Currently New-Agers are busy with their education programmes, re-programming the minds and hearts of people, and redefining "God" so that there will be no resistance to their "Chosen One" when he is revealed - the prophesied antichrist. The Bible calls him the "man of sin" and the "son of perdition" - 2 Thessalonians 2:3).

The Scripture teaches that a great East versus West battle will be the world's last, the New Age Movement is steeped in Eastern mysticism and tradition - with such things as pantheism, reincarnation, karma and the belief that there are many paths to God.

Worship of Satan brings man into the realm of the occult, and this movement has deep occultic roots.

***And He is the Head of the body, the church, who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that He may be pre-eminent in all things.
Colossians 1:18 MKJV***

The New Age Movement, in its modern form, began with the founding of the Theosophical Society in 1875 by Madame Helena Petrova Blavatsky who claimed to receive "telepathic communications" from "Masters"

Satan has been working on his master plan throughout the ages to present his false "messiah" to the world and the New Age Movement is the gathering together of all his satanic projects. All the pieces of the jigsaw puzzle will eventually fit together to make up the one picture described so graphically in Revelation chapter 13.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

The following is just a tiny fragment of available information.³⁷

Titles associated with the New Age Movement include:

Age of Aquarius, Alternative Medicine, Aquarian Conspiracy, Human Potential Movement, Humanism, Humanist Psychology Networking Movement, New Consciousness, New Thought Religion, Secular Humanism, The New Church, The New Spirituality, The Third Force, The Third Wave, Transcendental Movement

New Age Buzzwords include:

Altered state of consciousness, Global Village, Crowded Planet, Global Thread, Global Vision, Holistic, Network, New World Order, Paradigm, Planetary Vision Interfaith, Interdependent, Linear Thinking, Transpersonal, New Consciousness, New Vision, Spaceship, Earth Synergy, Transcendent

New Age Paraphernalia include:

Acupuncture devices, Astrology charts, Charms, Colonic cleansers, Crystals, Crystal balls, Esoteric vitamins, Fortune-telling devices, Herbal medicines, Incense, Peace, Poles, Pendants, Pyramids, Re-birthing tanks, Statues, Talismans, Tarot cards, Tibetan bowls.

New Age Symbols include:

- Eye of Horus (eye in pyramid)
- Hexagram, Pentagram
- Pegasus
- Pyramids
- Satanic symbols
- The rainbow - known as the "*antankarana*" or "*bridge between your soul and Lucifer*".
- Ying Yang sign

³⁷ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp, 60-61.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

- Peace sign³⁸

New Age Literature includes:

- Link-Up
- Lucis Trust (formerly Lucifer) and Lucis Publishing
- Odyssey Magazine
- Triangles Publishing

New Age Groups apparently include:

- Bio Feedback
- Erhard Seminar Training
- First Earth Battalion
- Friends of the Earth
- Guardian Angels
- Network World Alliance
- New World Alliance
- Peak Performance Institute
- Planetary Initiative for the World
- Planetary Alliance Network
- Silva Mind Control
- Success Motivation International (S.M.I.)
- Tara Centre and Press
- The Green Movement
- Transcendental Meditation

Aspects of their teaching include:

Eliminating the world groups who only worship one God – Monotheistic group -
Jews, Christians, creating a one world government and a one world religion.

³⁸ Here are some of the most commonly New Age Symbols (www.angelfire.com/wv/awana96/symbols.html)

3.8.1 What Do They Believe?

God is seen as the "*Ultimate Reality*" an impersonal being with no distinctions, qualities or attributes, "*god*" emanates the cosmos from his own being – they do not believe that God is the Creator. Becoming "*one*" with god will result in ceasing of all existence, man is believed to be god, "*for man created god in his own image*". Worshiping of other deities are encouraged ranging from Pan, Buddha, Brahma, Vishnu and Shiva to even Lucifer himself - anyone except the Lord Jesus Christ.

The movement openly worships the "*God of Force*" or "*Forces*" and is characterised by common mystical experiences. Many of their number possess strong psychic powers enabling them to perform "*signs and wonders*", including astral travel, psychic predictions, etc.

New Age thus **denies the Trinity, thus the Holy Spirit and the deity of Jesus** as He is seen as an "ascended master". The purpose of this New Age of Enlightenment is to prepare the world for the "*Ultimate One*" or "*The Christ*" (not Jesus Christ), who will lead and rule over this so-called New Age Utopia – The Antichrist. As man is his own god, by evolving through reincarnation into realisation of his godhood. Man is thus not seen as a created being, **the Cross and the Blood of Christ have no significance whatsoever**. In fact, worship of pagan deities is encouraged while worship of Jesus Christ is discouraged. The Bible is not a book that they use.

The doctrine teaches that man does not need salvation - only "*enlightenment*" - to "*awaken the Christ within*".³⁹

Jesus warned mankind:

³⁹ Christianity vs New Ageism (www.sharefaith.com/guide/christian-apologetics/christianity-versus-new-ageism.html)

And when these things begin to happen, then look up and lift up your heads, for your redemption draws near.

Luke 21:28 MKJV

Scriptures against New Age:

And when these things begin to happen, then look up and lift up your heads, for your redemption draws near.

Luke 21:28 MKJV

Fables⁴⁰ are defined as: fictitious narrative, legendary story of supernatural happenings, a narrative story in which animals speak and act like human beings.

Scriptures pertaining to occult practices - enchantments: The act of influencing by charms and incantations, the practice of magical arts. ENCHANTER: Sorcerer, magician, one who uses the human voice or music to bring another person under psychic control (Leviticus 19:26; Deuteronomy 18:10-12; 2 Chronicles 33:6; 2 Kings 17:17; Isaiah 47:8-9; Jeremiah 27:8-9; Daniel 1:20). WITCHCRAFT: The practice of dealing with evil spirits, the use of sorcery or magic (Deuteronomy 18:10-12, 2 Chronicles 33:6; 1 Samuel 15:23; Galatians 5:19-21). SORcery: The use of power gained from the assistance or control of evil spirits, especially for divining (Jeremiah 27:9; Isaiah 47:9; Revelations 21:8). DIVINATION: Fortune telling (Deuteronomy 18:10-14; 2 Kings 17:17; Jeremiah 27:8-9; Jeremiah 29:8-9; Acts 16:16-24). WIZARDRY: The art or practices of a wizard, sorcery. WIZARD: One skilled in magic, sorcerer, male witch, to be destroyed in Israel (Deuteronomy 18:11; 2 Kings 17:17; Exodus 22:18).

NECROMANCY: Communication with the dead, conjuration of the spirits of the dead for purposes of magically revealing the future or influencing the course of events (Deuteronomy 18:11; 1 Samuel 28:1-25; Isaiah 8:19; 1 Chronicles 10:13-14). CHARM: Put a spell upon someone, to affect by magic, (Deut. 18:11, Isa. 19:3).

⁴⁰ Fables (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/fable)

STAR GAZING OR ASTROLOGY: The divination of the supposed influence of the stars upon human affairs and terrestrial events by their positions and aspects (Isaiah 47:12-15; Jeremiah 10:2; Daniel 1:18-20; 2:1-49; 4:1-37; 5:7-15). SOOTHSAYING: The act of foretelling events, prophesying by a spirit other than the Holy Spirit (Joshua 13:22; Micah 5:12-15; Acts 16:16-18). PROGNOSTICATION: To foretell from signs or symptoms, prophesying without the Holy Spirit, soothsaying (Isaiah 47:12-15; Joshua 13:22; Micah 5:12-15). OBSERVING TIMES: Astrology (Leviticus 19:26; Deuteronomy 18:10-14; 2 Kings 21:6; 2 Chronicles 33:6). MAGIC: Witchcraft (See same scriptures).

3.9 Spiritism

Spiritism teaches the CONTINUITY OF LIFE and the ETERNAL PROGRESSION OF MAN TOWARDS PERFECTION in the spirit realm. The basic principle of Spiritism is the foretelling of future events or the disclosure of hidden knowledge through pretended communication with the spirits of the dead – Spiritism is thus also an occult.

People claiming to have the power of communication with the "dead" are commonly known today as MEDIUMS, the Bible designates such persons as having "familiar spirits" - demons. Spiritism is an ancient form of deception and one of the oldest of religious cults, strictly forbidden by the Word of God and is, therefore, one of the deadliest of the *Cults where the certainty of Divine Judgment* is concerned.⁴¹ Exploration of the dimension of the spirit is strictly forbidden by God.

Demons take the shape and form of the deceased, or merely imitate the voice and give a message and Galatians 5:6-21 warns against "Spiritism which is the, encouraging of demon activity. Even its adherents admit that Spiritism is beset with

⁴¹ Spiritism (www.newadvent.org/cathen/14221a.htm)

the gravest dangers, often resulting in moral degradation, madness and even death.⁴² Spiritists constantly attempt to verify that the Bible endorses Spiritism and claim that many biblical characters, including the apostles and the Lord Jesus Christ, were mediums and encouraged such practices.

Spiritists also believe in prophecy, clairvoyance (power of discerning objects not present to the senses), gift of tongues, laying on of hands, healing, visions, trance revelations, raps, automatic writing and materialisation (ability of spirits to assume visible or concrete form).

Spiritism is thus a cult of antiquity, the Ancient Egyptians practiced magic, sorcery and necromancy (Exodus 7:11, 8:18) they used these powers to try and duplicate some of the miracles Moses performed. Egyptians, Babylonians, Chaldeans and Canaanites all practised Spiritism and God told the Israelites:

When you come to the land which Jehovah your God gives you, you shall not learn to do according to the abominations of those nations. There shall not be found among you anyone who makes his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that uses divination, an observer of clouds, or a fortune-teller, or a witch, or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or one who calls to the dead. For all that do these things are an abomination to Jehovah. And because of these abominations Jehovah your God drives them out from before you.

Deuteronomy 18:9-12 MKJV

A lot of spiritistic activities are accounted for in the Old Testament as well as the New Testament, Galatians 5:20 condemns it as being works of the flesh.

It is alleged to have begun with the Fox Sisters on the 31st March, 1848, when their family moved to Hydesville, New York. Margaret and Kate Fox, the two youngest daughters of the family of six children, developed into mediums and claimed to have worked out a code of communication with the author of strange rappings heard in the house these are known as "*The Rochester Rappings*". Much publicity was given to

⁴² Communicating with spirits (www.explorespiritism.com/DANGER%20start.htm)

these "*rappings*" and the movement developed and spread far and wide. It is interesting to note that the majority of mediums today are women.⁴³

3.9.1 What Do They Believe?

Spiritists believe that God is an infinite Intelligence and they deny the Trinity, the Holy Spirit and they also deny the miraculous conception of Jesus – making it off as a tale, they believe that each person is their own god and savior.

Seeing as each person is his own god, the whole belief in Jesus, His resurrection and second coming is also denied, together with salvation, sin, judgement. They do not believe in heaven and hell.

They believe that man is a spiritual being, evolved from the lower forms of life, up through the period of consciousness (i.e. life on earth), to the state of higher moral and spiritual faculties.

They do not accept the Bible as the one and only God-given revelation. Spiritism "*accepts truth wherever it is found*". Their Bible interpretation is highly fantastic. For example, the transfiguration and appearances of the Risen Christ are viewed as "*materialisations*". They insisted that Peter psychically proves Ananias guilty of cheating. (Acts 5:1).

Spiritism is a very dangerous cult; it denies all of the major Christian doctrines and produces supernatural manifestations which the Bible describes as originating in demonic forces. It is imperative for children to abstain from any contact with spiritists and their religion.

⁴³ The Fox sisters, Spiritualism's unlikely founders (www.historynet.com/the-fox-sisters-spiritualisms-unlikely-founders.htm)

Prayer against Occult "Gifts" and Spiritistic Interests:

Heavenly Father, I thank You for the direct warnings in Your Word against all occult and spiritistic activities. We have sought to carefully warn and protect our children against any interests in such evil things of darkness. I do note in _____'s life a magnetic fascination with the spiritistic realm, especially as it relates to (name it i.e., clairvoyance, fortune-telling, Ouija boards, levitation, etc.). I stand against all powers of darkness seeking to influence and draw _____ into these spiritistic interests. I resist them in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and command them to cease their wicked influence, and they must leave and go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends them.

3.10 Transcendental Meditation

Transcendental Meditation promises "*True Peace of Mind without Pills*", "*Freedom from Depression*", "*Personality Fulfilment*", "*A fruitful thought life*", "*A new depth of physical relaxation and health*" calmness, super-energy and co-ordination.

The originator and major leader of Transcendental Meditation is known as Maharishi Mahesh Yogi. He began this movement in 1959. ("*Maha*" means great, "*Rishi*" = Sage, Seer or Saint. "*Mahesh*" - his family name "*Yogi*" - Master of Yoga). Incidentally, Yoga is a Hindu system of physical and mental control in order to obtain a state of well-being through "union with the Absolute" known as Brahman and T.M. is very closely linked to it.

The stated aim of Transcendental Meditation is to help individuals "*pass from the personal self and be absorbed in the Impersonal Essence*" - as raindrops are absorbed in the sea. It claims to be a scientific technique and not a religion or philosophy; it attempts to attract people from all walks of life - including Christians. It has already been accepted on the curriculum of many American schools.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

Devotees make a commitment to meditate for on a daily basis, clearing by minds. When they receive their initial mantra, which is used to clean he mind they kneel before an altar while the guru (teacher) gives thanks and praises to the entire line of departed Hindu Master who preserved the Transcendental Meditation approach.⁴⁴

In Hindu tradition, these mantras are used to invoke Hindu deities or gods and the danger of opening the mind and spirit to the power of the supernatural is acknowledged by the Maharishi, who warned the Transcendental Mediator to guard against becoming a "*spirit medium*".

A former T.M. instructor testified: "In some forms of expansive meditational practices, mediators experience the presence of supernatural phenomena. We were advised to pay no attention to them, no matter in what form they appeared. As an instructor, I was told to tell mediators to leave these supernatural beings alone, and to go on with their own business."

The mantra, according to T.M. technique, is ESSENTIAL in order to attain its ends and the Maharishi claimed this to be a powerful form of prayer and a path to God.

The danger of opening one's mind and spirit to satanic influence cannot be overstressed and the professing Christian who seeks to practise this "*scientific technique*" of clearing his mind by invoking Hindu gods (whether he believes in them or not) is simply asking for trouble. The Lord Jesus Christ, in fact, had some very relevant things to say about "*vain repetitions*" of the heathen. "*But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. Be not ye therefore like unto them; for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask Him,*" (Matthew 6:7,8). He followed this instruction with some teaching on genuine prayer.

⁴⁴ The Technique (www.tm.org/meditation-techniques)

Transcendental Meditation is basically based on Eastern Religious philosophy, as well as Hinduism.⁴⁵ (Thus refer to Eastern Religious Cults for the beliefs)

***For let this mind be in you which was also in Christ Jesus,
Philippians 2:5 MKJV***

***You will keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on You; because
he trusts in You.***

Isaiah 26:3 MKJV

Renunciation Prayer for Spiritistic Bombardment in Entertainment, Education, Etc:

Loving heavenly Father, I know that You hate our culture's preoccupation with spiritistic themes and all that promotes supernatural evil. I cry out against it in prayer and ask You to bring this practice into discredit and rejection in our culture. Grant to me the wisdom and action to be salt and light against this darkness. Help me to warn and inform my children about the evils of these bombardments from many sources. In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ I ask for You to protect them from any harm from these influences of darkness. Grant them the wisdom to discern and reject spiritistic promotion and activity whenever they are confronted with it.

3.11 Sinister Sects, Magic and Murder

Certain sects throughout the ages had central beliefs that the majority of humanity would describe as evil. Even though some sects believe murder can be justified they are not essentially followers of Black Magic, and vice versa, both types of beliefs have a basic psychological similarity. Followers of these sects believe that by carrying out certain actions that are essentially "bad," they are in effect guaranteeing their own salvation. Satanists such as Aleister Crowley promoted the denial of the

⁴⁵ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp 109-111.

traditional moral code. It was good to commit adultery, to lie, to steal indeed, it was important that the soul was fulfilled in whatever it considered necessary.

Beliefs like these had led such cults to be linked with bizarre sexual orgies and blood sacrifices. Instruction by a Grand Masters, followers of Satanism would become fixated with selling their souls to the Devil and committing murder in the name of their beliefs. The most renowned of these eerie egomaniacs is the man with the swastika carved on his forehead known as Charles Manson. Serving nine life sentences, Manson remains unrepentant for instructing his followers to commit numerous murders. Other cults have specifically targeted their victims on racial grounds. Nation of Yahweh was a black supremacist organization whose initiation rites allegedly included "smoking" a white man. The activities of the Ku Klux Klan have caused even more terror among the USA's black population. Although the activities of these cults can be extremely fearsome, it is worth noting that they only receive so much publicity because they are extreme. These power-crazed leaders operate at the very edge of society, spreading a dangerous philosophy that could entrap the youth.⁴⁶

Satanism or devil-worship does exist, but has been subject to many misnomers. One usually hears of Satanists via the media, and usually when a murderer goes public and blames his or her crime on some kind of deal with the Devil. This type of "Satanist" has all the credibility of teenagers who dabble with the Ouija board, or rock groups who package their act with so called "*Satanist*" paraphernalia.

Purportedly labelled the "*Great Beast*" from the Bible's Book of Revelation by his mother, a devoted member of the pious Plymouth Brethren, Aleister Crowley (1875 - 1947) is often recognized with the beginnings of modern Satanism. In reality, the worship of natural human desires personified by Satan dates much further back, but

⁴⁶ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, p. 86.

there is no denying that Crowley initiated a revival with his "***Do what thou wilt shall be the whole of the law***" philosophy.

Crowley became interested in the occult as a student at Cambridge University, and later became a member of the secretive occult organization the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn. According to his writings, Crowley had a "divine" experience while he and his wife were staying in Egypt. Over a period of only three days *The Book of the Law* was dictated to Crowley by voices which only he could hear. After this experience he claimed to have been chosen as the prophet of a new age of "*Force and Fire*", at the centre of this philosophy was the axiom, "*There is no god but man*" the Book of the Law was interpreted much the same as modern Satanists way of live that SELF was all important.

According to his teachings instinctive human desires, particularly sexual ones, must be satisfied. A new age was to be ushered in and conventional religions would be dissolved while what Crowley called "*magick*" would finally permit people to truly find themselves. While the core of Crowley's teachings doesn't sound so strange in this era of New Age belief⁴⁷, some of his teaching methods were bizarre and created much hype via the newspapers of the time. Crowley calling himself "The Great Beast 666" and filing his teeth to points didn't help his cause either, but the death of one of his followers fuelled a outrage that led to him being regarded as "the wickedest man in the world." One of Crowley's preferred students was Raoul Loveday, an Oxford University graduate. Loveday died while he was staying at Crowley's Abbey of Thelema with his wife. She promptly flew back to the UK and told the press he had been poisoned by blood he had drunk in one of Crowley's ceremonies.

It is now considered that Loveday drank from a contaminated water supply, but the harm was done and Crowley's cult was expelled from Italy. Crowley's notoriety waned, his wife became an alcoholic, and he spent much of the rest of his life

⁴⁷ Not according to Christian beliefs, purely based on worldly sects

travelling. He died in a far from glorious state, at 72, addicted to heroin, in a seaside hotel in Hastings, England. Crowley's teachings have paradoxically, become more popular now than when he was alive. His writings have been reprinted, his personally designed set of tarot cards is one of the most popular packs available and most recently, an exhibition of his paintings was shown in the town where he died.⁴⁸

The Church of Satan is probably the most well known modern Satanist Church, found by Anton LaVey, set up in California April the 30th 1966. The Church still exists although LaVey died in 1997, the number of members is unknown but estimates propose that it is roughly twenty thousand in the United States. LaVey brought attention to his Church with images of his rituals being performed on a living altar - a naked young woman. He became even more famous, starring as the Devil in Roman Polanski's film *Rosemary's Baby*.

Allegedly some Hollywood celebrities were so taken with the High Priest that they joined the Church of Satan, Sammy Davis Jnr and Jayne Mansfield was both linked to LaVey. Despite LaVey's shaven head, black-cloaked appearance, and all the satanic symbolism he used, the Church of Satan philosophy is far removed from the "evil" most would imagine. Satanists do believe in the Devil—but not as an entity with horns and a forked tail that is idolized, but as a force of nature. The Devil is much more of a pagan concept, in essence conjured up by man and embodying the parts of human nature that the Christian Church has tried to suppress—essentially animal instincts, such as power and sexuality. LaVey's text, *The Satanic Bible*, sets out his philosophy. Satanists are loosely tied to a central control, as it is desirable for each member to be responsible for their own actions. LaVey's nine satanic statements are central to his brand of satanic theology. Believing that there is no afterlife and that human life is sacred, self indulgence is the key to Satanism. The eighth statement

⁴⁸ Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd, pp. 96-99.

sums up this belief: "Satan represents all of the so-called sins, as they lead to physical or mental gratification!"

Prayer against Children Phobias and Fears:

Children have many fears growing up in a chaotic world. Some of those fears are natural and pass with time, such as fear of the dark or being left alone at home. But others can be more pervasive and capture the child in turmoil and fright. Often those sinister fears come from the powers of darkness trying to dominate the child. Here is a prayer to use when your child feels overwhelmed, even oppressed, by a particular fear.

In the name of my Lord Jesus Christ, I renounce and resist all powers of darkness trying to rule over _____ by producing fear and terror of _____ (name the kind of fear being observed; i.e., snakes, illness, closed places, death of parent, etc.). In my union with the Lord Jesus Christ, I command all strongholds of fear and all of their host to leave, and you must go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends you. I ask that the Holy Spirit would replace the rule of fear with the love and peace and all the fruit of His control in _____ 's life.

Similarly, children can pray to overcome their fears. Children who know the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior need to be taught to resist the Enemy. They can begin praying at any age when they are old enough to understand the issue and are trusting God. Some children can learn to resist as young as age four or five. Others might need to be eight or nine before they would comprehend and be ready. Maturity is the issue, not specific age. The following pattern may be help to train them to resist.

In the name of my Lord Jesus Christ and by the blood He shed on the cross, I stand against all powers of darkness trying to make me. fearful of _____. I resist you and I

command all powers of fear troubling me to go where the Lord Jesus Christ sends you. I ask the Lord Jesus Christ to comfort me and to put His courage within my heart.

3.12 Sinister University cults in Nigeria

During the 1960s, the first full generation of educated Nigerian youth were able to attend university in their own right. The immediate post-independence period was an exhilarating time for the universities, and there was great optimism about Nigeria's nature as a '*developed*' country, one of the '*giants*' of contemporary Africa and a leader in the non-aligned movement of so-called Third World states. Universities - first in the southwestern region of Nigeria, then in both the north and the southeast - were thought to be the motors for the new nation's inevitable prosperity. Education more generally was celebrated as the sovereign means for social transformation and the spread of development and modern-rational ideologies - what Ferguson (1999: 13-14) calls the '*modernization myth*' - throughout the population (cf. Escobar 1995: 45).

The last thing that was expected by those who contemplated the burgeoning Nigerian university system at its inception was that universities would become notorious hotbeds for what partisans of modernization would stigmatize as '*superstition*'. Certainly no one imagined the resurgence of violent, masculinist rituals within the universities, syncretic of local and foreign men's associations. What Nigerians now refer to as '*campus cultism*' began during the 1950s.

An important part of media and ordinary Nigerian discourse about campus cults during the last decades of the twentieth century was an understanding that university violence was carried out on several levels, including that of the occult. Discussions of the fraternities invariably lead Nigerians to rumour about fraternity/cult initiations, which are thought to require physical violence and terror, often against women on campus,¹⁰ as well as '*medicines*', other power objects, and even the standard ritual

accoutrements of European Masonry or Satanism. Once initiated, university cult members were believed to have a supernatural immunity to gunshot wounds, to possess a superhuman sexual potency and appetite and to have a magical ability to influence the minds of other's. In the latter case, members are supposedly able to use what appear to be ordinary, everyday objects like handkerchiefs or cigarettes to bewitch people and force them to do the cults' bidding.

Rumours about campus occultism are directly tied to ideas about the magical activities of Nigerian politicians, military and businessmen. Cult violence at the universities does not occur only in the Nigerian imaginary, but has exploded into a real epidemic of rape, physical (as well as psychological) wounds and death on campus during the past decade. Such violence is perceived by many Nigerians to be determined by the more generally violent environment of the country. Cultism therefore reflects forms of violence already present in society, but it also perpetuates and even creates an escalating environment of immorality, carrying that immorality and its material consequences into the next generations.

When cult members leave the campus, they are rumoured to have two trajectories. If of an upper-class background, young cultists go into elite secret societies like the Reformed Ogboni Fraternity. This is a Yoruba-based group that now boasts a membership crossing all ethnic boundaries and is said to be behind the ascent of many Nigerians into the higher echelons of government administration, the judiciary and multinational corporations. Although once an elders' society, limited to the Yoruba-speaking areas of the country and meant to act in the capacity of moral guardianship for the community, including the oba or king (Amadi 1982: 9-10; Apter 1992: 83, 90; Matory 1994: 265, n. 16), the Reformed Ogboni Fraternity is now considered-at least by those who do not belong to the organization - to be at the bottom of Nigeria's most entangled conspiracies.

There is a conflation in Nigerian conspiratorial imaginaries between groups like the Reformed Ogboni Fraternity and the supposedly wealthy practitioners of 'satanic acts' or juju.

Graduates of lower social background have little hope of immediate entrance into Nigerian secret societies like the Ogboni. Unlike the children of Ogboni members, lower class ex-cultists without connections may seek patronage from '*big men*' in their home areas or may trade upon associations begun with elite graduates from their universities. Some consider the recent explosion of armed robbery within the southern half of Nigeria to be directly connected to the numbers of ex-cultists who have weapons, ruthless patrons as well as the experience of university brutality behind them .

Unemployed after graduation and with few prospects, since their university degrees (if granted) now offer little in the way of social mobility, lower class ex-cultists have very few other options. They may enlist in the military and expect to serve as '*peacekeepers*' in African locations of civil strife like Sierra Leone, where the temptation to take part in the violent corruption associated with the illicit diamond and weapons trade is great. They may try to return to their impoverished hometowns, where there will be an equally great temptation to use campus cultist skills - including mystical skills - to become more important personages among their peers. The result of this latter prospect may be seen in the spate of kidnappings for money and disappearances of children, possibly for use in 'ritual murder', in the city of Owerri during the mid-1990s.

In 1998 a Nigerian weekly newsmagazine, Conscience International, published an article on the plague of young women '*ogbanje*' infesting Lagos, the country's former capital. Complete with photographs of the confessing *ogbaanje* speaking into microphones and holding up evangelical literature, it is apparent that these are youthful, well-dressed and lovely women, hardly the stereotype of aged, powerless

women often seen as the victims par excellence of African mystical accusations. These young women are confessing - under the pressure of a new fashion, '*born again*' Christianity - to the interference with physical and social reproduction often associated with witchcraft and other mystical acts on the continent. However, as in the example above, they are confessing to a peculiarly modern conflation of overwhelming sexuality and reproductive blockage rather than to the anti-sexual powers and supposed jealousies of age.

Augustina Uzora, self-confessed *ogbaanje* and '*agent of Satan*' as quoted above, claims five '*powers*', all lodged at various sites in her body. These powers have been given to Uzora by her '*spiritual husband*' - and they are used to ensnare, then destroy, men. The mode of this destruction is made clearer by Uzora's sister *ogbaanje*, Georgina Nwokwa: '*I don't go for poor guys. I go for rich men. Anytime I have fun with them, their business will start collapsing. Even if he is very wealthy, the man will start having problems*'. Uzora claims that the power resident in her vagina '*disturbs*' her when she sees such a successful man. It is as though her dangerous sexuality calls out, not for satisfaction, but for revenge. Once she and Nwokwa '*have fun*' with their male victims, the men are no longer rich and their families are '*wrecked*'.⁴⁹

Renunciation Prayer For a Child Hearing Voices, Etc:

At times a child may hear voices, or report seeing images (apparitions) in the room. These may be more than just dreams or a vivid imagination at work. The child may be experiencing visits with spirit powers. He or she may even report having a conversation with someone in the room, even though no one is there. Here is a prayer for a child hearing voices, seeing apparitions, or having visits or conversations with spirit powers.

⁴⁹ Moore, H.L and Sanders T (2001) *Magical Interpretation, Material Realities*. USA: Routledge, pp, 76-77, 80-84,133.

In the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the power of His blood, I bind away and command to cease all wicked spirit activity seeking to approach and communicate with _____. I ask You, Lord Jesus Christ, to order these intrusive powers away from _____'s presence and that You would confine them where they may never frighten or come near to _____ again. I ask You, heavenly Father, to provide Your protecting, holy angels to guard and secure the safety of _____. May those evil plans of darkness to control _____ through fear and deception be exposed by Your words of truth and destroyed by Your provisions of grace.

4 THE OTHER JESUS OF THE CULTS

The apostle Paul describes the phenomena of “the other Jesus” in 2 Corinthians 11, since the earliest days of Christianity apostles and disciples were confronted with the perversion of the revelation God has given in the Lord Jesus Christ. This perversion extended historically not just the teaching of the Lord but also the Person of Christ, for it is axiomatic that if the doctrine of Christ Himself, His nature, work and Person are perverted – thus the identity of the Life-giver is altered and therefore the life which He came to give is correspondingly negated.

This thesis deems to expose the nature of the “other Jesus” and supply Biblical reason why it is a Christian’s obligation to identify this other Jesus as a counterfeit and refute his other gospel. Christians can expect to encounter similar errors and perversion of the Gospel that his ancestors did before and should not be discouraged as the epistle of Galatians reminds that there are those who would “pervert the Gospel of Christ” and who represents “another Gospel” in reality it is a counterfeit of the original designed by the master craftsman of all evils, Satan as Biblical evidence reveals that he is the prime mover and architect of the major cult system.

Paul made a deadly parallel between true Christianity and pseudo-Christianity that he compared to a carefully designed copy of the original revelation of God in Christ. He warned Christians of the great danger of having their minds, not their salvation of their souls, corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

***But I fear lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve in his craftiness,
so your thoughts should be corrupted from the simplicity due to Christ.
2 Corinthians 11:3 MKJV***

After Paul revealed the existence of a counterfeit Jesus, Holy Spirit and Gospel he completed the parallel by showing that there are also counterfeit apostles and disciples, transforming themselves in appearance and demeanour to appear as ministers of Jesus, but in reality they are representatives of Satan (2 Corinthians 11:13) as Satan himself transforms and often manifested as the angels of light, it is thus obvious that his ministers would emulate their master deceiving to be ministers of righteousness (2 Corinthians 11:14-15).

Jesus and His work on the cross and during the time He was on earth is indeed the very foundation of the Christian faith – if it is redefined or interpreted out of context contrary the Word of God, the whole message of the Gospel is fundamentally altered and its value respectively diminished. The early apostles saw this and laid emphasis on upholding the identity and ministry of the historical Jesus over the counterfeits, as the false christ's of those days, Gnosticism and Galatianism threatened the church at Colose, Ephesus and Crete. In order to understand what Scripture warns against, a citation of some contemporary illustrations of the “other Jesus” will be examined.

4.1 The Jesus of Christian Science

In the theological structure of the Christian Science religion, Gnosticism was revived and Mrs. Eddy became its twentieth century promoter. Mrs. Eddy declared the following concerning “*her Jesus*”:

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

The Christian who believes in the First Commandment is a monotheist. Thus he virtually unites with the Jew's belief in one God, and recognizes that Jesus Christ is no God as Jesus Christ Himself declared, but is the Son of God.

Mrs. Eddy spelled out her view so that no one could possibly misinterpret her when she wrote:

The spiritual Christ was infallible; Jesus, as material manhood, was not Christ.

Matthew, chapter sixteen, reveals that Jesus Christ recognized the confession of Peter to the effect that **He was the Christ, the Son of the Living God**. It would be imprudent to maintain that Jesus was not material manhood, the New Testament recorded that He was born of woman, subject to the limitations of mankind's nature apart from sin, and physically concluded His life upon the cross in mankind's place. The Jesus Mrs. Eddy believed in is a divine ideal or principle; inherent within every man and Jesus was its supreme manifestation. Given that Mrs. Eddy denied the existence of the physical universe, she also denied the reality of human flesh and blood, maintaining that it was an illusion of mortal mind. For this reason, neither Christ nor man, possesses a real body of flesh and bones, thus for Mrs Eddy Jesus Christ has not come in the flesh.

Jesus Himself acknowledged the reality of flesh and blood when He stated to Peter:

***Jesus answered and said to him, You are blessed, Simon, son of Jonah,
for flesh and blood did not reveal it to you, but My Father in Heaven.
Matthew 16:17 MKJV***

An even stronger statement in Scripture declares that if a person denies that Jesus is the Christ who came in the flesh is antichrist:

By this you know the Spirit of God: every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is of God; and every spirit that does not confess that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is not of God. And this is the antichrist you heard is coming, and even now is already in the world.

1 John 4:2-3 MKJV

Who is a liar but he who denies that Jesus is the Christ? He who denies the Father and the Son is antichrist. Everyone who denies the Son neither has the Father. The one confessing the Son also has the Father.

1 John 2:22-23 MKJV

It is quite evident that the "other" Jesus of Christian Science is a Gnostic Jesus, an idea, a principle but not God Incarnate (John 1:14). Even though Mrs. Eddy, her literature and Christian Scientists make use of the name Jesus, theirs is not the Christ of the Scriptures, but an exceptionally clever counterfeit about whom the Holy Spirit graciously saw fit to warn the church.

4.2 The Jesus of Jehovah's Witnesses

Yet another Jesus is taught in the doctrine of the Jehovah witnesses. According to the theology of the Watchtower - *the true Scriptures speak of God's Son, the Word, as "a god." He is a "mighty god," but not the Almighty God, who is Jehovah. he was the first and direct creation of Jehovah God.*

The originator of Jehovah's Witnesses, Charles Taze Russell, describe his Jesus as having been Michael the Archangel preceding to his divesting himself of his angelic nature and appearing in the world as a perfect man. For Jehovah's Witnesses, their Jesus is an angel who became a man. He is a god, but he is not God the Son, second Person of the Holy Trinity.

The Bible disprove this and flatly contradict the Watchtower's Christology by teaching that Jesus Christ is the Word, God the only begotten one (John 1:18) and

no less than the great "**I AM**" of Exodus 3:14 (John 8:58) and the First and the Last, renowned to any informed student of the Scriptures (Revelation 1: 16-17, Isaiah 44:6). As Mrs. Eddy's Christ is an abstract idea, and the Christ of Jehovah's Witnesses is a second god with an angelic background, he, too, qualifies "another" Jesus in the context of the Pauline prophecy.

4.3 The Jesus of the Mormons

The teachings of the Mormon religion, differs from both Christian Science and Jehovah's Witnesses, claiming that their god is one among many gods, confirmation by their own literature: *Each of these gods, including Jesus Christ and his Father, being in possession of not merely an organized spirit, but a glorious body of flesh and bones.*

Mormonism has a full pantheon of gods, before his incarnation it is taught that Jesus was the spirit-brother of Lucifer, a polygamist and the husband of the Marys and Martha, who was rewarded for his faithfulness by becoming the ruler of this earth. The Apostle Paul teaches in his epistle to the Galatians that "**God is one**" (Galatians 3:20) and there is numerous passages from the Old Testament, demonstrating the utter falsity of the idea that there are a multiplicity of gods and an exaltation to godhood to which men can aim for. As for the concept of Jesus as a polygamic and a brother of Lucifer, this need not be dignified by further comment as it is totally unscriptural and blasphemous.

It would be possible to go on listing the other cult systems, but it is apparent that other comment would be surplus to requirements; the evidence is overpowering. The Jesus of the Christian Scientists, Mormons, Jehovah's Witnesses and of all the cult systems, is but a subtle misrepresentation of the Christ of divine revelation. In cult theology, He becomes an abstraction (Christian Science, Unity, Metaphysics, New Thought), a second god (Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormonism, Theosophy,

Rosacrucianism, Baha'ism), or a pantheist manifestation of deity (Spiritism, The Great I Am); but He is still incontrovertibly "another Jesus," who represents another gospel and imparts another spirit, which by no conceivable stretch of the imagination could be called holy.⁵⁰

Herein lays the problem which Christians must face and come to grips with and there are excellent reasons why it is not only a Christian's responsibility but their duty, people are manipulated and misused against their will and therefore Christians should shed the Light of Jesus Christ on the deception in cults.

5 MIND MANIPULATION AND DECEPTION IN CULTS

Mental manipulation as used in a destructive cult - is the influence a person or a group of people have on or over an individual, through systematic mind control in order to achieve a change in the person's:⁵¹

- Feelings
- Thoughts
- Intelligence
- Behaviour
- Will

Mind control which is also referred to as "*brainwashing*," "*coercive persuasion*," "*thought reform*," and the "*systematic manipulation of psychological and social influence*" refers to a process in which a group or individual systematically uses unethically manipulative methods to persuade others to conform to the wishes of the manipulator(s), often to the detriment of the person being manipulated.

⁵⁰ Martin, W (1992) *The Kingdom of the Cults*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers, pp 377-380.

⁵¹ Children in Cults (www.griess.st1.at/anne/children%20in%20cults.htm)

These methods according to the ISCA⁵² could include:

- extensive control of information in order to limit alternatives from which members may make “choices”;
- deception;
- group pressure;
- intense indoctrination into a belief system that denigrates independent critical thinking and considers the world outside the group to be threatening, evil, or gravely in error;
- an insistence that members’ distress - much of which may consist of anxiety and guilt subtly induced by the group - can be relieved only by conforming to the group;
- physical and/or psychological debilitation through inadequate diet or fatigue;
- the induction of dissociative (trance-like) states (via the misuse of meditation, chanting, speaking in tongues, and other exercises) in which attention is narrowed, suggestibility heightened and independent critical thinking weakened;
- alternation of harshness/threats and leniency/love in order to effect compliance with the leadership’s wishes;
- isolation from social supports;
- pressured public confessions.

Even though the process by which cults come to exercise mind control over members is complex and differs a great deal, three overlapping stages can be determined:

5.1 Deception

People being recruited are deceived into believing that the group is compassionate and will enrich their lives by, for example, advancing their spirituality or increasing

⁵² Cults Questions and Answers (www.cslog.org/studyindex/studycult/cultqa.htm)

their self-esteem and security. The results of the deception they are and the systematic use of highly manipulative techniques of influence, recruits come to commit themselves to the group's prescribed ways of thinking, feeling, and acting; they thus become members or converts of the cult.

5.2 Dependency

Cults gradually isolate members from outside influences which would include family and friends outside of the cult, unrealistic high guilt inducing expectations are established, any expressions of negativity towards the cult are punished. Independent critical thinking is discouraged and denigrated and the cult causes members to become extremely dependent on their compliance-oriented expressions of love and support.

5.3 Fear

Once a state of dependency is firmly established within an individual, the group's control over members' thoughts, feelings, and behaviour is strengthened by the members' growing fear of losing the group's psychological support, physical threats also occurs in some cults, however much it may aim at ensuring their compliance with leadership's often debilitating demands.

Some might ask how this mind manipulation or control in cults differs from the ordinary social conditioning parents and Social Institutions employ, firstly parents, schools, churches, and other organizations do not as a rule utilize unethically manipulative techniques in socializing children, adolescents, and young adults. Secondly social conditioning is a slow process which promotes and supports an initially "unformed" child to become an independent adult with a unique identity, while mind control utilises manipulative techniques of persuasion and control to induce dependency in a person with an established identity, which the manipulator seeks to alter radically without the informed consent of his targets

These manipulative techniques with which a group or person seek out to influence another could be grouped into: a) **choice-respecting**, which includes techniques that honour the independence of the person being influenced it can further be grouped into educative and advisory techniques and b) **compliance-gaining**, which includes techniques, fixed on obtaining a desired response, regardless of the needs, wishes, goals, etc., of the person being influenced. It can further be grouped into techniques of persuasion and control. A cult setting differs from a non-cult setting in that the former displays a much greater proportion of compliance-gaining techniques of persuasion and control than the latter.

Control and persuasion is often necessary and appropriate in educating children and protecting them from danger, assisting them and helping them to grow up, to develop an identity and sense of personal independence. Parents eventually give up control as their children assume responsibility. An adult who becomes depressed up to a point of suicidal attempts relatives or authorities will step in as caretakers but when the crises have passed, ethical rules require that the influencer return to a choice-respecting mode of relating to the adult.

In certain special circumstances, such as joining the army or joining religious orders, individuals choose to relinquish some of their independence, contrast to cult situations; these circumstances require informed consent, do not seek to “transform” the person’s identity and are contractual, rather than dependency-oriented and most of these circumstances involve groups that are answerable to society.

Cults, in contrast, answer to no one as they defy the unwritten ethical laws by deceptively establishing a compliance-gaining relationship with individuals whose independence and identity they disregard. For this reason, any similarities between a cult environment and boot camp, for example, are psychologically superficial. Cult apologists maintains that mind control does not exist in cults as most recruits do not become members, they also cite a study claiming that 10% of people completing a

two day workshop offered by a controversial group became members and only 5% remained members after two years, they however made major changes in their lives as the group in question demanded the total commitment of members' time. In contrast, in the typical Billy Graham crusade, only 1%-3% of attending unbelievers, who have been personally evangelized to for months, come forward during the altar call, let alone modify their lives radically and Billy Graham is considered to be one of the most effective evangelists in history. Convincing 10% of a group of people, who are largely recruited from the street, to become full-time missionaries within a matter of weeks reflects an astounding level of psychological influence.⁵³

The process of cult and mass therapy indoctrination may involve repeated inductions of trance-like states of consciousness similar to hypnosis. Environmental (milieu) control, social manipulation, isolation and the use of prescribed consciousness-altering techniques (as mentioned above repetitive and/or continuous chanting, meditating, or praying) are some of the techniques employed by cults to produce these altered states of awareness. Recent studies propose that memories, emotions and even spiritual experiences can be manipulated while a person is under hypnosis. The use of such hypnotic techniques is unethical as there is a lack of informed consent and questionable concern for an individual's needs and wishes. Prolonged hypnotic inductions can impair the convert's ability in decision making and evaluation new information as the convert altered awareness is conditioned into a certain personality response pattern. One result can be periodic episodes of unwanted trance experiences ("floating") that occur for months or even years after a cultist exits his/her group.

Cults have generated concern and debate, concerning whether these techniques constitute an objective process of mind control, especially surrounding behaviour and personality changes in a decidedly intelligent, educated and usually affluent population of converts as the typical cultists are not ignorant, weak willed or

⁵³ Cults Questions and Answers (www.cslog.org/studyindex/studycult/cultqa.htm)

emotionally disturbed individuals. This phenomenon of sudden personality change under stress, labelled "*snapping*" by authors Conway and Siegelman⁵⁴ sparked a renewed interest in methods of environmentally engineered attitude change, coercive persuasion and disguised hypnosis.

Scholars agree that environmental variables can influence behaviour in remarkable ways and that mind control sometimes occurs in cults. Rather than attempt to deal with an extremely complex issue in its entirety, however, this thesis will concentrate on one aspect of destructive cultism: the unethical use of covert communication, persuasion and behaviour-influencing techniques (including hypnosis), and their role in the manipulation/indoctrination process.^{55 56}

6. FAMILY INVOLVEMENT IN CULTS AND THE INFLUENCE ON CHILDREN

For most individuals, it is mysterious and beyond their comprehension how intelligent people can get caught up in often bizarre and dangerous cults but yet a remarkable number of people do, as contemporary cults target individuals throughout their life spans and across all socioeconomic brackets and ethnicities. Unfortunately, it is not possible to quantify how many people are involved in potentially damaging cultic religions or similar ideological commitments, but one estimate of prior involvement comes from Michael Langone, a psychologist who is the executive director of the American Family Foundation which is a respected research and educational organization providing education about cults.

A frequent consequence of cult involvement, which leads to dramatic implications for diagnosis and treatment of former members, is the assault that these groups make upon family units among their devotees. Cults becoming "*fictive families*" is one of the most common patterns, demanding commitments that parallel those made by

⁵⁴ Flo Conway and Jim Siegelman (www.conwayandsiegelman.stillpointpress.net/)

⁵⁵ Cults (www.johnhawkinslpc.com/PDF/Spirituality/Cults.pdf)

⁵⁶ Cults impact on health (www.reveal.org/library/psych/The%20Impact%20of%20Cults%20on%20Health.pdf)

dysfunctional and often abusive families in society. The domineering demands of cult leaders minimize and often eliminate emotional connections among family members that might compete with devotees' loyalties toward them. Indeed, the language that cults use to describe themselves frequently is filled with family images, especially ones in which leaders take on parental roles, such as the devotees of the Unification Church, which refers to its founder (Reverend Sun Myung Moon) and his wife as "True Father" and "True Mother".

The Children of God cult who changed their name to The Family referred to their founder and leader, as Father or even Grandpa. In these confusing social settings, children may not even understand the concept of family nor even know who their biological parents are. For instance, when child psychiatrist Bruce Perry asked children released from David Koresh's Branch Davidian compound (during the Waco standoff) who their fathers were, "*The children [were] able to talk about their fathers but primarily referred to David as their father or dad*". **By their very nature, cults cannot afford to have individuality or independently functioning families.**

To this end, individual and family boundaries break down as the result of several factor, including intensive re-socialization into the new, deviant beliefs and behaviours; the demonization of people's pre-cult lives; intense punishment and shaming regimes; restrictions on exogenous social contacts; heavy financial and time commitments; and constant demands to value group commitments over family considerations. Certainly various factors, such as age, gender, access to wealth, proximity to the group's central location, and so on impact the extent to which family life is affected. Nonetheless, recent events such as the Heaven's Gate suicides in 1997 indicate how deeply people can be involved with dangerous, collectivist thinking, **which one scholar called an ethic of radical obedience.**

6.1 Who gets involved in Cults

A study which randomly surveyed 1,000 San Francisco Bay Area high school students found that 3% of students reported that they were members of a cult group, while 54% reported at least one contact with a cult recruiter. Another study, which analyzed survey data from Montreal and San Francisco, found that approximately 20% of the adult population had participated in “new religious and para-religious movements,” although more than 70% of the involvements were transient. Other data in this study suggest that approximately two to five percent of the subjects had participated in “new religious and para-religious” groups that are commonly considered cults.

People tend to generally have a misconception as to who gets involved in Cults, thinking that cult members are “crazy”, while research strongly suggests otherwise, cult members are relatively normal individuals, even though about one-third appear to have had mild psychiatric disorders before joining, It should be noted, however, that a recent study by the National Institute of Mental Health found that approximately 20% of the general population has at least one psychiatric disorder.⁵⁷

Cult members vary from the young, the old, the wealthy, the poor, the educated, and the uneducated, there is thus no easily identifiable “type” of person who joins cults. Nevertheless, clinical experience and informal surveys indicate that a very large majority of cult joiners were experiencing significant stress, frequently related to normal crises of adolescence and young adulthood, such as romantic breakup, school failure, vocational confusion - prior to their cult conversion, as their normal ways of coping were not working well for them, these stressed individuals were more open than usual to recruiters selling “*roads to happiness.*”

⁵⁷ Freedman, D.X. (1986). Psychiatric epidemiology counts. Archives of General Psychiatry, 41, pp. 931-933.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

Loneliness, indecision, despair, and disappointment are the emotional characteristics cult recruiters notice. They approach the unwary with an excessively friendly invitation to a lecture, free meal, weekend workshop, or other activity offering instant solutions to overwhelming problems. Surprisingly enough, few potential cultists bother to inquire about who is extending the offer, what is behind it, and what functions will take place. Vague answers are seldom challenged, leaving the recruiter an unassailable opportunity to obscure his intentions.

Cults generally attract prospects with an outpouring of attention and affection, the so-called “*love-bombing*” technique. Feeling, not doctrine, is the lure. In fact, the belief structure is seldom mentioned in the beginning. Cult leaders know that once an initiate has been reconditioned to accept their particular worldview, and as soon as he feels a sense of meaningful belonging, his mind will be ready to accept any teaching, including a belief that the leader represents God.

Approval, acceptance, belonging, authority—all those things that were missing in a person’s life are supplied by the cult. Motivation is generated by rewards for excessive zeal. Critical thinking is discouraged and corporate identification with some larger-than-life mission (as conveyed by the leader) causes the member to equate what is good for the cult as being good for him.

When the recruit’s mind shifts into neutral, the period of intensive indoctrination begins. The effectiveness of this tactic is often enhanced by sensory deprivation, extreme amounts of physical activity coupled with fatigue, severance of all ties with family and friends, and the forsaking of all belongings and material possessions. In a short time, the initiate becomes emotionally and spiritually dependent on the cult for decisions, direction, and even the physical necessities of life. The outside world appears more and more threatening. Finally his mind “*snaps*,” and “the sudden, drastic alteration of personality in all its many forms” takes place.

Young adult cult recruits are the least likely to consider thoughts of abandoning the group. Severing the cult-fostered dependency would mean having to cope with hardships and to fend for themselves in a hostile world. Any consideration of leaving immediately conjures guilt feelings of forsaking God's calling, falling into Satan's hands, or even worse, risking the wrath and judgment of God.

Even given the current anti-cult climate, few targets of the cults see their future as one of involuntary slavery and physical domination. Before joining any exotic sect, one should be aware of what could result: **neurosis, psychosis, suicidal tendencies, guilt, identity confusion, paranoia, hallucinations, loss of free will, intellectual sterility, and diminished capacity of judgment.** According to Larson⁵⁸ it will be much easier to avoid such consequences by identifying and recognizing the following psychological forms of "*cult- coercion.*"

- *Absolute loyalty.* Allegiance to the sect is demanded and enforced by actual or veiled threats to one's body or eternal spiritual condition
- *Altered diet.* *Depriving one of essential nutrients and enforcing a low-protein diet can lead to disorientation and emotional susceptibility.*
- *Chanting and meditation.* *Objective intellectual input is avoided by countering anti-cult questions with repetitious songs and chants*
- *Conformity.* *Dress, language, names, and interests take on a sameness that erodes individuality.*
- *Doctrinal confusion.* *Incomprehensible "truths" are more readily accepted when presented in a complex fashion that encourages rejection of logical thought.*
- *Exclusivity.* *Those outside the cults are viewed as spiritually inferior, creating an exclusive and self-righteous "we" versus "they" attitude.*

⁵⁸ Larson, B (1989) *Larson's New Book of Cults.* Wheaton Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc., pp 15-18

- Financial involvement. *All or part of one's personal assets may be donated to the cult, increasing a vested interest in sticking with it and lessening the chance of returning to a former vocation.*
- Hypnotic states. *Inducing a highly susceptible state of mind may be accomplished by chanting, repetitious singing, or meditation*
- Isolation from outside. *Diminished perception of reality results when one is physically separated from friends, society, and the rational frame of reference in which one has previously functioned.*
- Lack of privacy. *Reflective, critical thinking is impossible in a setting where cult members are seldom left unattended, and the ego's normal emotional defensive mechanisms can easily be stripped away by having the new member share personal secrets that can later be used for intimidation.*
- Love-bombing. *Physical affection and constant contrived attention can give a false sense of camaraderie.*
- Mega-communication. *Long, confusing lectures can be an effective tool if the inductee is bombarded with glib rhetoric and catch phrases.*
- New relationships. *Marriage to another cult member and the destruction of past family relationships integrates one fully into the cult "family."*
- Nonsensical activities. *Games and other activities with no apparent purpose leave one dependent upon a group or leader to give direction and order.*
- Pavlovian control. *Behaviour modification by alternating reward and punishment leads to confusion and dependency.*
- Peer pressure. *By exploiting one's desire for acceptance, doubts about cult practices can be overcome by offering a sense of belonging to an affirming community.*
- Sensory deprivation. *Fatigue coupled with prolonged activity can make one vulnerable to otherwise offensive beliefs and suggestions*
- Unquestioning submission. *Acceptance of cult practices is achieved by discouraging any questions or natural curiosity that may challenge what the leaders propagate*

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

- Value rejection. *As the recruit becomes more integrated into the cult, he is encouraged to denounce the values and beliefs of his former life.*

Other factors that may render some persons susceptible to cultic influence include:

- dependency (the desire to belong; lack of self-confidence);
- unassertiveness (inability to say no or express criticism or doubt);
- gullibility (impaired capacity to question critically what one is told, observes, thinks, etc.);
- low tolerance for ambiguity (need for absolute answers, impatience to obtain answers);
- cultural disillusionment (alienation, dissatisfaction with status quo);
- naive idealism;
- desire for spiritual meaning;
- susceptibility to trance-like states (in some cases, perhaps, because of prior hallucinogenic drug experiences); and
- ignorance of the ways in which groups can manipulate individuals.

When recruits was made susceptible by one or more of these factors come across a group which practices mind control, conversion may very well occur, depending upon how well the group's doctrine, social environment, and mind control practices match the specific susceptibility of the recruits. Unassertive individuals, for instance, may be particularly susceptible to the enticements of and authoritarian, hierarchical group because they are afraid to challenge the group's dogmatic orientation. Conversion to cults is not truly a matter of choice. Vulnerabilities do not merely "lead" individuals to a particular group. The group manipulates these vulnerabilities and deceives prospects in order to persuade them to join and, ultimately, renounce their old lives.

It is thus also clear that in today's time and age Christian homes come pitifully short of Biblical norms, which is one of the main problems for the above mentioned

factors. Children would rather seek for answers outside of their home than asking parents to help, the foundation of the Christian home is in shambles as parents do not know or want to admit problems and they do not know what to do about it.⁵⁹ How parents should uphold a Christian home will be explained in greater detail in Chapter Five.

In order to understand the problems children in cults may experience, it is important to analyse how their parents operate. Children usually get involved in cults because their parents belong to one, although some might get involved in a cult through some other family member, a teacher, a coach or whoever might have an influence upon them. The parents who are members of a cult are themselves manipulated and mentally controlled by their leader or guru.

7. PRAYERS OF RENUNCIATION

Concluding the section of occults and cults this thesis deems it necessary to emphasise the role of Satanism as the axiom and endpoint leading the destructed and deceived and broken youth right into the snares of Satan, knowingly or unknowingly. After pinpointing the fallen state of the troubled and delinquent youngster its of the utmost importance to get the whole family to understand the implications of being involved even in the minuetest way with the wile strategies, influence and practices of the satanic kingdom of Darkness.

The following prayers of renunciation are an example of the method of setting the en-captured and captured children and their families free. Free to receive Jesus Christ their only Savoir and Way and to finally break all occultic demonological bands and binds through the Mighty Power of the Holy Spirit in the name of Jesus Christ.

The following things should be renounced after the involvement in a cult:

⁵⁹ Adams, Jay E (1972) *Christian Living in the Home*. Phillipsburg, New Jersey: Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company, pp. 10-11.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

- The Cult “churches” (Satanic Churches) and leaders
- Affiliation, ranking, powers and soul ties
- Names of Satan
- Literature and Writings
- Tools
- Altars, altar objects and magick circles
- signs and symbols
- clothing and jewellery
- pins, crystals, tattoo's and markings

The following rituals should be renounced after the involvement in a cult:

- Ceremonial Magick - (Operative, Ritual or High Magick)
- Practical Magick - (Illustrative, Initiatory, Folk, Natural, Low or Sex magick)
- Curses, spells and hexes etc
- Summoning Demons, spirits and Elementals etc
- Occult Sciences (Divination, Meditation, Sorcery etc.) Symbols (Third Eye, Hexagram, Pentagram, Triangle etc).
- Ritual Ceremonies and acts
- Festivals high days and holidays

The Prayer of renunciation:

Father, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, I now confess my involvement with Satanism. I ask You to forgive me for this sin. Father, please forgive me for rejecting You and adhering to the teachings of Satan; for rejecting Jesus as the Son of God, for condemning and ridiculing Your death on the cross, and for rejecting Your blood in totality. Father, I renounce all this and as of this day I turn my back on Satan and walk away from all of his altars, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. I now

petition You Father to help me renounce and repent of every aspect of Satanism and the bonds it has had on me.

Satanic Philosophy and Guidelines

- renounce the cult (satanic kingdom as the endpoint) as a religion or belief that is essentially a religion of the self, holding that the individual and his personal needs come first before the will of God.
- renounce all guidelines, principles and philosophies relating to the cult, which serve to encourage and enhance one's individual preferences, or as a celebration of individuality without hypocrisy, or teach solidarity without mindlessness, or teach **Objective Subjectivity**.

Repent for ever praying against, and for cursing or hexing people, organizations, churches or ministries. Reverse everything that has been done in the Name of Jesus and release everyone into the full purpose of God Almighty.

Renounce all and any membership or dealing with the various Cults, or offshoots and their leaders.

Give back all ranks and degrees to Satan by whatever name, **Satanist, Warlock, Warlord, Priests or Priestess**.

In the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, I reject and renounce every grading and every ungodly level of spirituality that I have reached, and I now give this ranking back to Satan, in Jesus' Name, as well as all powers and strengths assigned to me. I renounce my cult name, namely, _____ and return it to Satan and his demonic powers. I petition You, Father to remove this name from all of Satan's books in the spirit.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

Father, I petition you to sever all soul ties with all Satanists, cell members, lords, witches, priests, priestesses, magisters and magistras, magus and Satan himself, as well as his evil hierarchy. I petition You Father to cut me loose from every soul tie with any Satanist as well as with any satanic rituals.

I repent of and reject the initiation rituals of drugs and sexual orgies, the calling up of demons to use their powers, all sacrifices that were brought to these demons for power and fertility, the surrender of spirit, soul and body to Lucifer and demons, the calling up of demons, the placing of demons into Satanists, sexual activity with animals (bestiality), and all forms of sex between Satanists, demons and Lucifer. I petition You Father to please sever all the soul ties I may have with any one of these. In Jesus' Name, Father, will You please restore my soul from all directions into which it was scattered, and remove from me all that is not part of me in the spiritual realm.

I Renounce the symbolism in, as well as the structure and operation of the Satanic temple and renounce the Executive authority of the Council of Nine, which appoints both the High Priest of Set and the Executive Director. Reject and renounce the council of 9, and ask that You would please sever the soul tie I have with this unholy, godless council.

I renounce all the influences of the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn and its ROOTS IN magick, Kabbalah, alchemy, tarot, astrology and other hermetic subjects. I renounce all influences of the mental and physical disciplines of yoga, and Oriental mysticism.

I renounce all influences from Egypt and especially the god Horus. (I especially renounce the picture of Horus)

I renounce all Freemasonry connections adhered to in the O.T.O.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

I renounce my participation in all and every form of serpent worship including Nagalism, Chakra's, Kundalini, Tantric Yoga and the Third Eye.

I renounce the structure of the O.T.O. and their degrees.

I renounce the Rituals of these degrees, whereby O.T.O. sought to instruct me by allegory and symbol in the profound mysteries of Nature, and thereby assist me to discover my own true Identity.

I renounce the first three Degrees of O.T.O. and the pattern they follow based on the symbolism of the Chakra's and the rising of the Kundalini, as well as their representation of the Individual's Path in Eternity.

I renounce the higher degrees and their instruction in Hermetic Philosophy, Kabbalah, Magick and Yoga, which were all aimed at preparing me for the revelation and application of one Supreme Secret.

I renounce my participation, connection, membership or bond to all local O.T.O. Lodges, Oases, and Camps.

I renounce all literature connected to the O.T.O especially the three chapters of verse known as The Book of the Law, the heralding of the dawning of the new aeon of Horus, and the governing by the Law of Thelema.

I renounce Thelemic philosophy and "Do what thou will".

I renounce all dealings with the Church of Satan established on April 30th, 1966 by Anton Szandor LaVey, the High Priest, as well as all dealings with the First Satanic Church headed by Karla LaVey.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

I renounce dedication to rational self-interest, indulgence, and a glorification of the carnal and material.

I renounce my disbelief in any external deity figures.

I renounce all degrees attained through proving myself via individual achievement in the outside world, my level of freedom from herd conformity and my independence from forced interaction with the masses.

The Names of Satan

I renounce and cut myself loose from every infernal name of Satan such as Abaddon, Adramelech, Ahpuch, Amon, Apollyon, Asmodeus, Astaroth, Azazel, Baalberith, Balaam, Baphomet, Bast, Beelzebub, Behemoth, Beherit, Belial, Bile, Cernunnos, Chemosh, Cimeries, Coyote, Dagon, Damballa, Demogorgon, Diabolus, Dracula, Emma-O, Euronymous, Fenriz, Haborym, Hecate, Ishtar, Jude/Judas, Kali, Lilith, Loki, Mammon, Mania, Mantus, Marduk, Mastema, Melek, Mephistopheles, Metzli, Mictian, Midgard, Milcom, Moloch, Mormo, Naamah, Nergai, Nihasa, Nija, O - Yama, Pan, Pluto, Proserpine, Pwcca, Rimmon, Sabazios, Sammael, Samnu, Sedit, Sekhmet, Shaitan, Shiva, Supay, T'an-mo, Taus, Tchort, Tezcatlipoca, Thamuz, Thoth, Tunrida, Typhon, Yaotzin and Yen-lo-wang.

I renounce all specific demons assigned to me for my 'protection', as well as ties to Hades (hell / the Underworld) and death. (Mention the names received personally, hand them back and cut all soul ties with them, bind, rebuke, resist and drive out the demons).

4) Satanic Literature

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

*Father, please forgive me for distorting Your Word and for having applied it to the glory of Lucifer. I repent for reading the **Satanic Material** (contain magic words of black magic) and **The 6th and 7th books of Moses** (which contain magic words, curses and methods as to how a person can make contact with Satan - these books have nothing to do with the Moses of the Bible).*

*I repent for ever having bought, read, kept or quoted from any **Satanic Literature**. Just as I have burnt and destroyed this literature in the physical realm, I ask You Father to destroy all of them in the spiritual realm as well.*

*I renounce all the writings of Anton LaVey, including *The Satanic Bible*, *The Satanic Rituals*, *The Satanic Witch*, *The Devil's Notebook*, *Satan Speaks*, *Satan takes a Holiday*. *The Satanic Mass* and all or any not mentioned.*

*I renounce the writings of Marilyn Manson, especially *The Long Hard Road out of Hell*. I renounce the writings of Blanche Barton, especially *The Secret life of a Satanist* and *The Church of Satan*.*

*I renounce the writings of Charles Darwin especially *The Expressions of Emotion in Man and Animals*, and *The descent of man and selection in relation to sex*.*

*I renounce the writings of Aleister Crowley such as *777 and Other Kabbalistic Writings of Aleister Crowley*, *The Book of Law*, *Book of Lies*, *Magick without Tears* and *The confessions of Aleister Crowley*.*

*I renounce all Satanic Magazines such as, *Not Like Most* (A publication of Satanism in Action), *The Cloven Hoof* (The Official Bulletin and Tribunal of The Church of Satan) and *The Black Flame* (The International Forum of the Church of Satan).*

I renounce my participation in any Satanic ritual and all therein contained.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

In the Name of Jesus Christ I now rebuke and renounce meditation originating from any country, hypnosis, self-hypnosis, visualization, calling on demons by means of chanting, controlling nature in the name of Lucifer in order to call on demonic powers to work through these nature elements (i.e. air, fire, water, wind, earth and nature's neutral powers).

I renounce all occult avenues pertaining to division, dissociation or visualization that formed, reinforced or controlled me, such as Apparitions, Visions and Visualization as well as Astral Body's, Astral Twins, Bi-locations, Doppelganger's and Fetch's.

I sever from me all cosmic beams, all forms of pyramids and every ungodly eye (solar eye, evil eye of Lucifer, eye of Ra, eye of Ahurah Mazda, Third eye).

I renounce my belief in the four (4) Ancient Elemental Spirits (Air, Fire, Water and Earth), and their powers, as well as my belief in the Quintessence or fifth and highest Ancient Element (Akasha, the witch spirit and the equal sided triangle).

I renounce my belief in the four (4) Guardians of the Watchtower (Sylphs, Gnomes, Undines and Salamandars), and their relation to the four (4) directional points (N S E and W) at the perimeter of a magickal circle.

I renounce the magickal circle and the five point star in the circle and every demon represented by the five points.

Father, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, I now reject and renounce the 4 prince spirits of hell, which are called from the four (4) directions of the wind during Satanist high days, as well as the sword which is held into the 4 directions of the wind, namely Satan in the south, Lucifer in the east, Belial in the north and Leviathan in the west.

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

I petition You Father to smash all and every world, kingdom or quarter in my life, built on these four (4) points or relating to them. I petition You Father to bring unity and wholeness to any division in my soul built or based on these four (4) points.

I repent of and reject all activities and acts of an abusive or traumatic nature, such as all methods of isolation, violation and pollution of the body, objects thrust into vagina or rectum to cause pain, drug abuse, all forced sexual deeds, starvation or water deprivation of cell members or self, all forced participation in murder rituals or execution of murder-instructions, flogging by means of whips, putting nails or sharp objects through hands or any other body part, male and female prostitution, ghoulings of tombs, participating in kidnappings and all and every method of infiltration of Christian churches

Father, I now come to You in the precious Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, on the grounds of His victory over Satan on the cross at Golgotha and the price He paid for me.

Father, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, I now reject and renounce all above mentioned things, and I now turn my back on it and walk away from it.

I reject and renounce Satan as my lord and master, and today I submit myself to You as my Lord and Master. I reject Satan as lord and master of my spirit, soul and body and I now demolish every contract possible between him and me.

I turn my back on all the churches of Satan and walk away from them, as well as from all of his altars. Today I claim a divorce from Satan and his whole demonic kingdom, as well as between every ungodly human worker of Satan and myself.

Father, will You please cancel all blood oaths with the precious Blood of Jesus Christ.

Father, please remove the seal of agreement between Satan and myself with the Blood of Jesus Christ, for I now stand in an everlasting, valid Blood covenant with You. I now give back all rings, gifts, ranks, abilities, power and might to Satan and I now take my legal, godly position in Jesus Christ of Nazareth, where He sits on the Right Hand of God the Father, in Heavenly places.

I now sever all ties with Lucifer and his whole demonic kingdom, with Satanism and occultism, and I now command every demon to leave me immediately, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. I declare and confess that I belong absolutely and completely forever to God the Father, His Son, Jesus Christ and His Holy Spirit. Thank You Father, that Jesus Christ, Your Son, is my Redeemer and Saviour and that His Blood cleanses me from all sin.

AMEN⁶⁰

8. CONCLUSION

One of the main reasons that so many professing Christians become involved in the Cults is because they are not well grounded in the Word of God. This lack of knowledge has made them very vulnerable to the "half-truths" presented by the Cults.

Christianity may well be facing the greatest challenge in its history: a series of powerful and growing seductions that are subtly changing Biblical interpretations and undermining the faith of millions of people. Most Christians are scarcely aware of what is happening and much less do they understand the issues involved. The seduction is surprisingly easy. It does not take place as an obvious frontal assault from rival religious beliefs. That would be vigorously resisted. Instead, it comes to

⁶⁰ Gibbens, E (Date Unknown) River of Life Family Church

some Christians in the guise of faith-producing techniques for gaining spiritual power and experiencing miracles and to others as self-improvement psychology for fully realizing human potential.

A time has come where many church leaders have embraced Positive Thinking and faith-producing techniques for gaining "*spiritual*" power. Faith is not placed in God but a power directed at Him. For many evangelicals "*faith*" no longer requires God as its object, but is touted as a positive power of the mind that creates whatever man wants it to, man thus creating "*God*".

Dealing with unconscious reality is what sorcerers have been doing for ages. Anyone who imagines that because he thinks certain thoughts or speak certain words God must respond in a certain way has slipped into sorcery and if not playing God, is at the very least attempting to manipulate God, which is nothing other than pure witchcraft. The Ascended Master theology of "*positive thinking, positive faith*" slipped into the churches years ago and it is dominant among the even newer theologies of being able to create one's own reality or changing the development of one's soul where they experience the things they choose to as they reach into higher levels and realms of "*christ consciousness*." Some refer to it as positive thinking; others call it Angelology, others the New Age. There is no room for magic in a Christian's life! To teach man's will above that of God is promoting the New Age Agenda.

The underlying theme of cults is that by creating one's own reality and living in one's own dream world there would be no thoughts of sin, accountability, and judgment. No thought of placing God's will above one's own as visions of materialistic possessions under the guise of faith conjured. Enticed by such false teaching Christians begin to view prayer as a religious technique for getting their own way. They set their sights upon what they want, then try to have faith to make it happen.

True Christian faith has no comparison to this kind of New Age "*faith*." Don't be deceived for this faith is also known as visualization, guided imagery, and witchcraft. Visualization and guided imagery have long been recognized by sorcerers as the most powerful and effective way to contact the spirit world (demons) for supernatural power and knowledge.

Today there is an increase in the preoccupation with "*self*" where humility is out and self-esteem is in contrary to I Peter 5:6. When Scripture speaks of self, it usually commands self-denial and self-control and condemns self-worship. It does not teach self-love, self-assertion, self-esteem, self-forgiveness, instead it teaches mankind to turn to Christ. Jesus said mankind are to deny themselves and take up His cross (Matthew 16:24-25) and not to be self-seeking.

Therefore be humbled under the mighty hand of God, so that He may exalt you in due time,

1 Peter 5:6 MKJV

A lot of religious leaders are falling prey to the New Age and many more occult themes being reworded for Christian assumption and indoctrinated into churches despite the fact that these New Age and cult beliefs are contrary to Scripture, demeaning to God's attributes, and defamatory.

This revival in "*christ*" is not the true Lord Jesus but the Antichrist. Many are being attracted into Christianity today because of the false teachings and new "*christ*" who has the attributes of Antichrist. They are being deceived into thinking they are following the true Gospel when in fact, wolves are leading them astray. Many churches are not teaching Jesus Christ but the christ portrayed in cults and New Age propaganda that no longer calls sinners to repentance and excuses ungodly behaviour as a psychological problem resulting from traumas suffered in childhood.

Satan knows that Christians will not accept a frontal assault of occultic doctrines and themes, so he changed occultic words into Christian terms such as "*faith*," "*God*,"

"Christ," and "born again" with many churches and Christians believing it to be true. Satan knows how to mix just enough truth with falsehood to make the falsehood seem true and intensely appealing. He already has millions falling into his traps of destruction. Don't be deceived and if you have been get out of the deception. Return to, and stay focused on the Most High.⁶¹

Christians should know that there is a language barrier when it gets to cults, they should know what these terms means in Christianity and what the cult is portraying, so that they will not fall into the deception of half truths. By knowing this the Christian can protect his family and especially his children from the destruction which lies in cults.

Christians should stand up and defend the Gospel of the Lord Jesus, as He was willing to lay down His very life in order for man to receive the Good News, to receive salvation and everlasting live!

The Jesus of the cults is a poor substitute for the incarnate God of the New Testament. Along with the equally important imperative of cult evangelism stands the very real need to give to everyone that asks:

but sanctify the Lord God in your hearts, and be ready always to give an answer to everyone who asks you a reason of the hope in you, with meekness and fear;

1 Peter 3:15 MKJV

That hope is the Jesus of Biblical theology and of history, once believers understand the true nature of the Jesus of the cults they can discharge their duty faithfully and by contrast unmask him and his creator for all to see – which is the adversary - Satan.

⁶¹ The New Age Plan to Defeat Christianity (www.sherryshriner.com/sherry/newage.htm)

*Dismantling The Satanic Kingdom Of Darkness As The Axiom And Endpoint Of
Cults Influencing Post Modern Youth*

There are so many voices in the world today clamouring for the attention of people who think seriously about their own spiritual lives. **It is vital to hear the Voice of the Lord and follow Him alone** (John 10:4) for He came that they might have life and that they might have it more abundantly (John 10:10b), any other way leads to frustration and loss, in this life and the next.

The battle today is for the minds of men, woman and children and today more than ever mankind needs to keep their attention focused on the Lord Jesus Christ

looking to Jesus the Author and Finisher of our faith, who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and sat down at the right of the throne of God.

Hebrews 12:2 MKJV

-----oOo-----



Chapter Five

Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting the Youth of Today in the Hand of God

But Jesus said, Allow the little children to come to Me, and do not forbid them; for of such is the kingdom of Heaven.

Matthew 19:14 MKJV

1. INTRODUCTION

The Parable of the Prodigal Son in Luke 15:11-32 may illuminate the special predicament of adolescent's and point counsellors to an effective approach to helping them and handling their problems. This chapter offers insights into the prevention and treatment for troubled children and youth. More importantly, it encourages replacing attitudes of isolation and fear with acceptance and concern,

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

with regards to troubled youth. The "*Prodigal Son*" is the third parable which Jesus gave to answer the Pharisees and scribes, proud religious leaders of His day. They believed that even touching a sinner made them "*unclean*" before God, and they criticized Jesus who not only socialized with sinners, but even ate with them. (Luke 15:2)

Jesus responded with the teaching stories, called parables, to let them know that God loves every person and is willing to receive anyone who follows Him. Implicit in the Prodigal Son is the truth that **God has not rejected the sinner** and neither should any human being.

And He said, A certain man had two sons. And the younger of them said to his father, Father, give me the portion of goods that is coming to me. And he divided his living to them. And not many days afterward, the younger son gathered all together and went away into a far country. And there he wasted his property, living dissolutely.

Luke 15:11-13 MKJV

Evidently the time had come for the younger son to free himself from the family and leave home. He had no plan; he just left and wandered to a distant country where he spent his money on himself, having a good time. Whether this trip was the natural and inevitable adolescent quest for freedom or simply an escape from home, the younger son was "*running away*" with no destination or goal. Even with personal resources and his father's consent, he was an "*up and coming*" troubled young person.

Likewise, today many youth leave home to "*make it on their own*" or to escape the unsympathetic realities of a dysfunctional family. The Prodigal's carelessness wasted his inheritance to satisfy his short term desires and immediate pleasures may

have been a simple act of immaturity, or it may have been an attempt to compensate for limitations placed on him earlier in life. A lot of young people today actively pursue substitutes for love which includes money, sex, possessions, power etc. *"After he had spent everything, there was a severe famine in that whole country, and he began to be in need"* (Luke 15:14). Famine devastates those without resources, exacerbating their most basic need—survival. Additionally, the famine forced the Prodigal to confront the emptiness of his life away from his father and his inability to provide for himself. As with many troubled youth, his self-image suffered and he did not have the psychological base necessary to survive as a person. *"So he went and hired himself out to a citizen of that country, who sent him to his fields to feed pigs. He longed to fill his stomach with the pods that the pigs were eating, but no one gave him anything"* (Luke 15:15-16).

When a youngster has hit rock bottom, feeling absolutely hopeless and believing that he or she is a *"nothing"* that makes a relationship with a hurting young person so timely. This is when he or she will see the **need for Jesus Christ** who alone has the ability to truly change a life. *"When he came to his senses, he said, 'How many of my father's hired men have food to spare, and here I am starving to death! I will set out and go back to my father and say to him: Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son; make me like one of your hired men'"* (Luke 15:17- 19).

"When he came to his senses," the self-defeating behaviour, the delinquent trend, was finally checked. This was his turning point, and he realized his personal need. Out of the depths of hunger and want he cries, *"I have sinned against heaven and against you,"* betraying feelings of guilt and the desire to start all over again. And his words, *"I am no longer worthy to be called your son,"* betray his fear of lost identity,

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

his desperate need to find himself, and his realization that he was reduced to nothing, not even his father's son.

Like so many troubled youngsters, disillusionment and suffering shook him awake, forcing him to come to grips with his life. Now he was ready to admit his need to trust and to depend on someone else. "*So he got up and went to his father*" (Luke 15:20a). The prodigal son was not only motivated by being forgiven but also a there is often a lot which he or she needs to forgive others for. In a troubled young person's experience, there is often much that he or she must forgive. Many of those who run away will forgive just about anything—beatings, drunkenness, verbal abuse—if only their fathers will take them back and love them. No matter how weak, cruel, or indifferent the parent has been, the faintest possibility of love and acceptance, hidden though it may be by indifference and rejection, will evoke forgiveness.

The need for love and acceptance is critical in troubled youth.

And he arose and came to his father. But when he was still a great way off, his father saw him and had compassion, and ran and fell on his neck and kissed him. And the son said to him, Father, I have sinned against Heaven and before you, and am no more worthy to be called your son.

Luke 15:20-21 MKJV

When the son got to his father he finally begins to pour out his feelings to his him - a carefully worded plea prepared for this moment. He acknowledges that he has done wrong, plea for restoration, for help in **re-establishing his identity**. Troubled youth do admit that they were wrong but do no naturally seek conflicting and unhealthy relationships.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

These Children need to understand that God is depicted in this parable as the loving Father – waiting for His children to come back to Him.

But the father said to his servants, Bring the best robe and put it on him. And put a ring on his hand and shoes on his feet. And bring the fattened calf here and kill it. And let us eat and be merry, for this my son was dead and is alive again, he was lost and is found. And they began to be merry.

Luke 15:22-24 MKJV

The father took back his son - this is one of the most important lessons that Jesus wanted to teach: ***God never rejects the sinner***. He receives anyone who repents and asks to be restored. His love is always ready; it has never stopped and will never be withheld. Sometimes the Prodigal, the wanderer, may need to experience suffering in order to face his own emptiness and then to be open to the Father's love. In today's families, there are youth who have been rejected and need somehow to experience acceptance and love. But acceptance is meaningless if only expressed in words. A vital link when a relationship is established with a troubled young person is to model the truth of God's love and acceptance.

"*Bring the best robe and put it on him,*" cries the father. Taking off his son's rags, he clothes him with articles of beauty and dignity, **clearly identifying his lost son as an individual, a person.** "*This son of mine was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found.*" Thus begins the long, slow process of restoration. Troubled youth do admit their need for help and that they want to be loved and accepted. And the best way for them to experience God's love is through a loving relationship with another person.

God wants to clothe each child with His identity and His love. He wants to restore them to their rightful place as heirs to His Kingdom!

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

After receiving and restoring his lost son to the family, the father confronts a delicate problem. How could he fully accept this troubled son without belittling the faithful older brother whose traditional family position made him highly sensitive and open to unintentional rejection by the parent.

And answering he said to his father, Lo, these many years I have served you, neither did I transgress your commandment at any time. And yet you never gave me a kid so that I might make merry with my friends. But when this son of yours came, who has devoured your living with harlots, you have killed for him the fattened calf. And he said to him, Son, you are always with me, and all that I have is yours. It was right that we should make merry and be glad, for this brother of yours was dead and is alive again; and was lost, and is found.

Luke 15:29-32 MKJV

Evidently at this critical moment, the older brother needed to test and reaffirm his own acceptance and status in the family. The father responds as God would, with unquestioning love and acceptance. The community of today as well as other children in the family's reaction is very much as the older brother's response is towards troubled youth, with hostility, tear, anxiety, and, therefore, rejection. Very often the church responds in the same way,

Parents, teachers, and even church leaders often present a world in which the individual adolescent has no place, because adults tend to put themselves first and kids last. Troubled youth, therefore, are rejected by their parents, society, and the church. They are not seen as important. At times, churches have tried to be channels for acceptance, but they rarely succeed, because they fail to teach the truth that God will accept anyone who comes in repentance and faith to Him, no matter how far he or she has strayed. Even in their finest moments, programs cannot *teach* the love of God with words.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Children must not merely be told about love and acceptance; they must experience it. This is why ministry should be done with the entire family and not just one member thereof as all of the family members share responsibility, the story of the Prodigal Son teaches that as individuals, as members of society, and as church men and women, can make a difference in the lives of troubled young people.¹

On one occasion during Christ's ministry, He brought deliverance to an epileptic boy whom the spirits had been physically attacking since early childhood (Mark 9:21). On another occasion, he freed a woman's young daughter who had been possessed by an evil spirit (Matthew 15:22). These two incidents indicate that certain types of spirits will attempt to invade the lives of children at a very early age.

Throughout history, the **adversary has set his focus on infants and children**, especially during major prophetic seasons when God was raising up a deliverer for His people or for His nation. The pharaoh of Egypt assigned the Egyptian midwives, and later, all the Egyptian people, to cast every newborn Hebrew son into the Nile River (Exodus 1:16, 22).

This decree of death on the sons forced the mother of Moses to hide the infant in a small handmade ark in the Nile River. Centuries later, Herod heard that a king of the Jews had been born in Bethlehem. Out of fear, he commanded Roman soldiers to slay all infants under two years of age (Matthew 2:16). Through God's protection, both Moses and Jesus escaped from these decrees of death. As grown men, Moses led the Hebrew nation out of Egypt, and Jesus brought the possibility of redemption to the world.

¹ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 16-19.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Today children have been faced with their own decree of death since abortion was legalized in some countries. The enemy has blinded the eyes of doctors, politicians, and even expectant mothers who participate in the premature death of the unborn. Contained in the Scriptures' End Time prophecies is a **major prophetic promise directed at youth**— the sons and daughters—that will take place prior to the return of the Messiah. It is found in both the Old and New Testaments.

And it shall be in the last days, says God, I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh. And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams. And in those days I will pour out My Spirit upon My slaves and My slave women, and they shall prophesy.

Acts 2:17-18 MKJV

And it shall be afterward, I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh. And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy; your old men shall dream dreams; your young men shall see visions. And also I will pour out My Spirit on the slaves and on the slave women in those days.

Joel 2:28-29 MKJV

A unique outpouring of the Holy Spirit is promised to the youth prior to the return of Christ!

This outpouring will be initiated by the sons and daughters. This younger generation will also witness an increase of spiritual visions and dreams, revealing the plans of God and exposing the strategies of the adversary. With such a dynamic promise, is it any wonder that the youth of our time are experiencing the most subtle and sly attacks of the adversary?

By hindering young people's relationship with God, the enemy blocks their ears from hearing God's Word. By binding them with addictions to drugs or alcohol, he prevents from feeling the peaceful and joyful presence of the Holy Spirit. By keeping

them in rebellion, demonic forces prevent them from experiencing the love their parents have for them. Satan is conducting a *mass bondage program* to defeat the next generation because he does not know who may be the next deliverer—the next Moses, Joshua, Daniel, Deborah, Rachel, Rebekah—or the next great leader to bring the nation out of its lukewarm, spiritual lethargy.²

2. NESHAMAH IN COUNSELLING

In counselling, especially in extreme troubled youth, it is important to understand ***Neshamah***. When working with troubled youth this understanding is critical to knowing if you are working with the foundational core identity of a person's identity - or in the realm of the soul.

In the case of DID/SRA children would have been exposed to programming being done, although this thesis doesn't focus on the methodology and results of DID specifically it is essential and noteworthy to mention the occurrence to understand the phenomenology of extreme troubled children and youth. The counsellor will find it necessary in a hardcore case of juvenile disturbances, to research the probable cause as DID, although the Holy Spirit will lead the Christian counsellor and open up the roots of behaviour.

The **soul** is the domain of the **mind** and **intellect**, where all programming is structured. All programming is anchored to that realm of the human spirit that remains dissociated, defiled and not yet sanctified (2 Corinthians 7:1 with 1 Thessalonians 5:23).

² Stone, P (2011) *Pruning your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma House. pp, 8-9.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

It is at the level of the **human spirit** where generational **principalities and powers** of darkness are involved, which drives the "*programming*" and so profoundly affects the mind, emotions, and the will of troubled children and youth.

The core trauma and memory of a person is in **NESHAMAH!** It is at Neshamah that **complete** healing and **integration** takes place.

But as it is written, "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard," nor has it entered into the heart of man, "the things which God has prepared for those who love Him." But God has revealed them to us by His Spirit; for the Spirit searches all things, yea, the deep things of God. For who among men knows the things of a man except the spirit of man within him? So also no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God.

1 Corinthians 2:9-11 MKJV

The New Testament terminology appears to unite the function of the Holy Spirit and the human spirit in relation to **NESHAMAH** into **ONE** domain. This is most likely also be seen and explained in the following verse:

But he being joined to the Lord is one spirit.

1 Corinthians 6:17 MKJV

The Biblical counsellor who is equipped with this understanding of **NESHAMAH**, who gains experience in discerning the Biblical distinction of **soul** and **spirit** will witness progressive restoration of children and youth coming to wholeness and maturity in Jesus Christ.

It is important to know and discern the problematic events in a household as it could destroy the whole family unit. In counselling children and the youth, one should know where to start the counselling process, be it after birth where a child refuses to

be breastfed, crying for hours at end, creating disunity in the family especially between parents and other siblings. Sometimes it is even necessary for the starting point in counselling to be before the birth of the child.

2.1 What is Neshamah?

The Strong's Hebrew 5397, meaning for Neshamah:

"Breath"

"Spirit" (which is not the same as RU'ACH)

NESHAMAH is thus the **GOD-created breath of LIFE.**

And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.

Genesis 2:7 MKJV

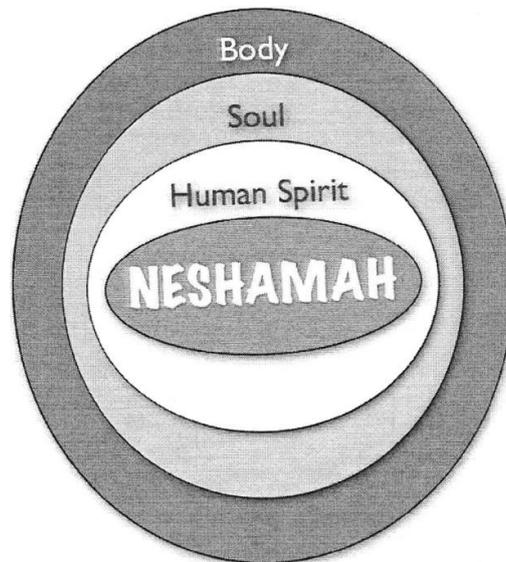


Figure 31: Neshamah

Neshamah is separate to the human spirit and human soul, but works with the Holy Spirit, it is the GOD-given capacity to know, perceive, and understand.

Neshamah is the Lamp of the Lord as it searches the innermost parts of man.

The spirit of man is the lamp of Jehovah, searching all the inward parts of the belly.

Proverbs 20:27 MKJV

Neshamah gives LIFE and UNDERSTANDING.

But there is a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.

Job 32:8 KJV

The Spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life.

Job 33:4 KJV

Neshamah is thus the GOD - imparted capacity to know and connect with HIM and His LIFE!

There are THREE foundational events in the lives of troubled children and youth

- Pre-conception problems,
- Spiritual death at conception and birth,
- Spiritual death and the new-birth identity

2.2.1 Pre-Conception problems:

The Bible teaches that words have power - hexes, vexes, spells, curses, blessings, assignments. These are spoken over or attached to a child at conception, creating a web of bondage which controls the child throughout life. Principalities and demons

attach to all these **WORDS**, making sure all that was said is carried out. These words are embodied into the child through wounding by various types of torture, trauma and pain.

These demonic attachments connect to the DNA by generational curses in the **BLOODLINE**, to cast out the demonic being does get rid of the programming and control over the child, if the programming and control are not removed the demonic spirits have the legal right to return. To stop the control and the programming, of that which was spoken over the child or placed upon the child must be identified and then refused! Every false agreement in terms of what was spoken should be broken through the Blood of the Lamb.

Then effect the principalities have on a child and the indwelling demons can be permanently removed and the person can be SET FREE!

The LEGAL right always involves Human:

- Will - active or passive.
- Words - deliberate or accidental.
- Invitations - active or passive.
- Agreements - know or unknown.
- Choices - active or passive.
- Violations of humanity - self or others.
- Wounds - unrecognized or hidden.
- Mind Control Structures - deliberately implanted in the unconscious mind,

In counselling children, the Holy Spirit will reveal certain bondages and problems, also where it originated, if some of these points under the heading is picked up the

heading will help in discerning where the counselling should start – before or after the birth of the child, the list do no deem to be a full list as the Holy Spirit will help the counsellor to determine the origin of the child's problems.

Attachments/CURSES to the SPERM:

- BONDAGE to a particular person - child's WILL to belong to a particular person.
- Abandonment by others.
- Rejection by those close to the child.
- Alienation from others. . INSECURE.

FALSE "blessings" attached to a MAN's sperm:

- The child will NOT know success. "*BLESSED*" with emotional PAIN.
- ANGER at people and things that get in the way of the relationship with a particular person.
- To be CRITICAL towards self and others.
- To live in a CONFUSED state to keep things internally intact and to keep things on the outside from interfering.

Attachments/CURSES to the OVUM:

- Descendants would not live past a certain age,
- Homosexuality,
- Paedophilia,
- Dissension and STRIFE in the family, Difficulty with CHILDBIRTH,
- Inability to BOND,
- No sexual INTIMACY, no joy or happiness in marriage,
- Lots of HEALTH problems,

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Not being ACCEPTED in the family, SUICIDAL thoughts,
- Confusion,

FALSE "blessings" attached to a WOMAN's egg:

- Dedication to a particular FALLEN ANGEL.
- Blessing of BEAUTY if obeys a particular person, UGLINESS if disobeys.
- Ancestral EVIL to suck the life out of child.
- Powerlessness, amount to NOTHING.
- The person would die.

Curses at BIRTH:

- More curses, false blessings, assignments, spoken over the child.
- Some reinforce what has already been done, others are NEW.

Developmental phases:

- Month ONE.
- Month TWO,
- Month THREE,
- First BIRTHDAY
- Second, third ...

Positioned in Christ this spiritual connection *Neshamah* cannot be completely broken (John 5:24, 1 Corinthians 6:17).

Truly, truly, I say to you, He who hears My Word and believes on Him who sent Me has everlasting life and shall not come into condemnation, but has passed from death to life.

John 5:24 MKJV

The human spirit is however capable of defilement and therefore a part of the believer's identity is in need of sanctification (2 Corinthians 7:1, 6:14-18; 1 Thessalonians 5:23).

The enemy has effectively devised ways to defile in this last generation to legally confiscate the identity of Christ in troubled youth especially through generational sin and spiritual death (Romans 6:23). His methods include stealing a substantial quantity of NESHAMAH and the human spirit, through trauma and defiling the image of God in the child, enmeshing his characteristics into Neshamah and the human spirit (known as the five I will's), and he instils rebellion within the child. ³

2.2.2 Behavioural Indicators of Demonic Oppression – After Birth/Adult Life

Many demons leave clues in the form of behavioural manifestations, which could lead the counsellor in the counselling process to recognise the demonic infestation. This section in the thesis should help the counsellor, parent, educator or caregiver to become a "*demon detector*," as well as helping them learn to use the wonderful gift of discernment. This is also important to note for generational sins, as one works with the whole family.

Behavioural Indicators of Demonic Oppression⁴

- Incapacity for Normal Living
- Extreme Bondage to Sin
- Deception about Normal Personality

³ Articles - Riggs, D (2012) River of Life Family Church, Vanderbijlpark, SA bl 16-22.

⁴ Kylastra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations, An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry, 2nd Addition. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, p 289.

- Abnormal Emotions
- Breakdown of Marriage and Family
- Tragic Happenings and Accident Proneness
- Financial Insufficiency
- Inner Anguish
- Restlessness and/or Insomnia
- Abnormal Sex Life
- Trances
- Violence, Super-Human Strength
- Demonic Torment
- Self-inflicted Injury
- Functional Sickness
- Unidentified Foul Odors
- Rapidly Changing Personality

2.2.2.1 Incapacity for Normal Living

This symptom of this could manifest in a variety of ways. Some examples include the **inability to feel joy** or satisfaction in life. A person experiences ongoing feelings of confusion, heaviness or depression. This occurs at times when there is no specific external situation that could cause stress.

Agitation at gospel meetings that keep the individual from truly entering and receiving the message, demonic strategy can often be seen in children causing restlessness, irritation, sleepiness, or even physical attacks or coughing, especially as the main truths of the gospel are being read or preached.

In the **yo-yo effect**, a person goes from **one extreme to another**. For example, he is not content in a crowd and not happy alone. He may yo-yo between exuberance and depression, between being very disciplined and undisciplined, between having much sexual passion and being frigid.

2.2.2.2 Extreme Bondage to Sin

The person is **unable to stop the sin** they are busy with even when trying very hard, eventually he becomes hopeless and defeated. Examples could include a person who can't stop abusing his own children, can't stop temper tantrums, can't stop shoplifting, can't stop involvement with pornography, etc.

2.2.2.3 Deception about Normal Personality

Demons have mastered the art to masquerade as part of a person's personality; they conceal themselves within the personhood causing an individual to think "*This is just the way I am. This is part of my personality, or, a **normal** part of my family characteristics.*" (The Botha's have always been hot-tempered; the women in this family have always been bossy, controlling, etc.)

2.2.2.4 Tragic Happenings and Accident Proneness

This could be a person who is prone to accidents or having bad things happening to them on a constant basis.

2.2.2.5 Financial Insufficiency

Demonic infestation is particularly indicated in situations where there is an adequate supply of income and there "*should be enough*," but there isn't.

2.2.2.6 Inner Anguish

This anguish takes many forms, such as pressure on the inside, turmoil, depression, despair, mental lapses, and the inability to concentrate. The anguish exists even when there are no apparent pressures from the external environment.

2.2.2.7 Restlessness and/or Insomnia

The demon's strategy: "*Let's wear him out.*" Demons may be present when a person can't slow down, when he is impelled to be busy. He will over exert, then go to bed and not be able to sleep. Note: There are other causes for this behaviour, so one must be careful not to judge or label it as demonic too quickly.

2.2.2.8 Abnormal Sex Life

Demons might cause a person to have abnormal sexual patterns, demanding too much or too little. They can also cause spouses to have the opposite desires, i.e. one will have excessive need while the other is frigid. Demons can cause the same adverse effect in families over the generations.

2.2.2.9 Trances

A trance like state could be an indication of demonization, even in an uncontrolled way, not all trances are demonic, but it is likely that many trances are. If anyone "*falls*" into a trance from time to time, and perhaps a physician has been consulted and no explanation found, then the condition is likely to be demonic in nature. The mediumistic trance is the ultimate form of demonization — a state where the demon is in complete control, and the person has "*willed*" to yield totally to their "*spirit guide*."

2.2.2.10 Violence, Super-Human Strength

Demons can cause people to have super-human strength. A Scriptural example is the Gerasene demoniac who could not be bound. Scholars claim or suspect that many violent people in mental institutions, who have to be drugged to be controlled, are actually manifesting demons of violence. These violent manifestations can be partially, though not necessarily completely, controlled through binding the demons in the Name and Authority of Jesus Christ. The degree of success in binding depends on the degree of submission of the person to the demonic.

2.2.2.11 Reporting of Demonic Torment

Demonic torment could manifest in such strange phenomena as having doors slam when there is no wind, having their bed a foot or more off of the floor, hearing voices when there is no one present, having the light go on or off by itself. These are all forms of demonic torment. Other people, usually those who themselves or their ancestors have a background of occult practices, have experienced sexual

intercourse with an Incubus (male) or Succubus (female) spirit. These demonic torments are very real.

2.2.2.12 Self-inflicted Injury

Demons, like their leader Satan, are working to kill mankind and their children. If they can cause a person to harm him or herself, they are accomplishing their mission. Scratching one's arms, cutting, other forms of mutilation, are signs of demonic mental anguish and pain. Both suicidal fantasies and suicidal attempts can be caused by demons.

2.2.2.13 Functional Sickness

Functional sickness includes pain or sickness at inopportune times (such as at church or in ministry sessions) and undefined pains that move around the body. It seems very likely that demons are involved with many, if not all, of the "*incurable*" illnesses, such as MS, cancer, AIDS, arthritis, ringing in the ears, etc. They may not always be the root cause, but they certainly make the illness worse.

2.2.2.14 Unidentified Foul Odours

On rare occasions people will emit a strong unpleasant odor which has no physical cause. One possibility is that the source of the odour could be a demon. Occasionally, deliverers have experienced a brief, intense stench during deliverance.

2.2.2.15 Rapidly Changing Personality

From time to time, very rapid changes of personality occur for no external reason. Demonic Oppression is one possible cause. (Chemical and hormonal imbalances and; multiple personalities are other possible causes.)

This list can be used to alert the counsellor, parent, educator or caregiver of possible Demonic Oppression. The Demonic oppression grouping can be seen in Addendum two.⁵

3. THE IMPORTANCE OF FAMILY AND PARENTAL LOVE

The family is the basic unit of society, it is here that the child first experiences living with others, and this experience forms the foundation for values, attitudes, and behaviours. A distorted family is usually in the background of the troubled child or a delinquent. A bad home breeds disruptive attitudes. Families featuring alcoholic parents, promiscuous mothers and sisters, single parents, drug-abusing brothers, unemployed fathers, or a combination of the above mark the homes of many delinquents and troubled youth, in part, are the environment of nearly all troubled youth.

Even the middle- or upper-class problem child is usually struggling at home. Discipline in the distorted home is usually particularly permissive or extremely stern and harsh, often physically enforced to the point of abuse. Extreme permissiveness communicates lack of concern and love. Extreme strictness is usually arbitrary and cruel and is inconsistent when administered by undisciplined parents and others. The ineffective parent often vacillates between freedom and law, leaving the child

⁵ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) *Restoring the Foundations, An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry*, 2nd Edition. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp 289-292.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

confused and without guidelines with which to evaluate his or her behaviour. Parental affection or rejection is the watershed issue of home effectiveness. Few parents of troubled youth realize they communicate rejection to their children. Most are trying to love their children, but problems in their own character development make this difficult. Today the cultural patterns of life put children and families last, behind priorities such as making money, achieving recognition, and fulfilling civic and social obligations. Parenting is to be done, of course, but it happens in the "*spare time*."

Regardless of the situation in a family household, being a single parent etc, the key element in every family is the relationship between parent and child. If the parent is loving, considerate, and understanding, the child will be able to grow and mature in almost any kind of family structure. Though family forms play an important role, far more noteworthy is the presence of a caring adult who loves God. Ideally, every child should have parents who model and teach love for God.

Only take heed to yourself and keep your soul carefully, lest you forget the things which your eyes have seen, and lest they depart from your heart all the days of your life. But teach them to your sons, and your sons' sons. Remember the day that you stood before Jehovah your God in Horeb, when Jehovah said to me, Gather the people to Me, and I will make them hear My Words so that they may learn to fear Me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and they may teach their sons.

Deuteronomy 4:9-10 MKJV

God could use other adults and support structures to teach His truth where God-loving parents aren't available. The emotional bond between a parent and child is much deeper as people acknowledges, when a adult leader is involved personally and emotionally, a relationship will develop and the child will begin to relate well to his or her world. When the adult doesn't care, the relationship will be incomplete,

one-sided. Every child needs at least one person to love and who loves and values the child to develop a healthy self-esteem. Regrettably, unwanted youngsters are plentiful as infants are born from unplanned and unwanted pregnancies begin rejected from before birth even took place.

Children pushed from families and into institutions starts off with a disadvantage. And any child's welfare fades when an adult claims him or her with self-serving motives (e.g., using the child to gain a financial advantage, as revenge after a painful divorce, as a way to force a reluctant partner into marriage, to cement a shaky marriage, or to replace another child lost in death). At the other extreme, being wanted loses its benefits when the parent's needs and valuation are excessive.

There are parents, for example, who blindly believe that their children have never done, or could never do, anything wrong. Children from those homes may grow to become egotistical, spoiled, and self-righteous. And they can become almost unteachable regarding values and morality because they feel no obligation to win their parents' approval. The quality of the interaction between parent and child is crucial. Troubled youth have needs like any other children. When they receive love and acceptance from parents, they learn to love and accept others. When they don't, they learn to be self-serving, hard, and "*unlovable*."

Research about how troubled youth feel loved by their parents delivered the following results:

1. Delinquents/troubled youth feel loved most by their mothers; non-delinquents feel loved by both parents.
2. Delinquents/troubled youth believe that their fathers should love them more; non-delinquents believe that neither parent should love them more.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

3. Delinquent/troubled boys think their parents are too embarrassed, especially their fathers to openly show love and affection.
4. Delinquents/troubled youth are too embarrassed to show love openly to their parents.
5. Delinquents feel hostility from their parents; non-delinquents/troubled youth do not.
6. Delinquents/troubled youth identify with their mothers more than their fathers and believe they are more like Mom than Dad; non-delinquents/troubled youth tend to identify with both parents. In general, troubled young people receive less love and affection, and their fathers are less satisfactory.

Dr. Gary Chapman⁶ states that the most effective way to communicate love to someone is to do it in their "*love language*." Love languages are the "*primary method that a person uses to express love for another person*." They are also "*the way that person most prefers to receive love*." Firstly one should have to determine the child's primary love language.

The five love languages are:

- Talk - saying, "*I love you*," "*You look nice*," "*Nice job*," "*I'm proud of you*," etc.
- Time - spending a few minutes of quality time together over coffee or Coke, just walking together or being in an uninterrupted environment
- Actions - doing things for people: washing the car, doing dishes, building, cleaning or helping around the house.

⁶ Chapman, G (1983) Building Relationships, Marriage and Family Life Consultants. Winston, N.C

- Gifts - giving gifts: anything that takes some thought and a little effort, and is from the heart.
- Physical touch - touching: patting, hugging, etc. "*Personal space*" is small if not nonexistent.

3.1 The importance of Discipline

Usually consistent, loving discipline lacks in the lives of troubled youth and children. Good discipline is based on a common understanding between parents and children and is carried out in love. Research has shown that the discipline in the homes of troubled young people is either extremely permissive or extremely unbending and harsh (physically en-forced). The discipline style in a home determines to a great extent the child's own discipline patterns and his or her feelings of love or rejection. Discipline could lead to greater problems if it is not based on Biblical discipline, such as abuse and family violence. Family violence is also a common ingredient in the background of troubled youth, physical aggression could be evident in the child as violence is the way of life in his or her home.

Most troubled adolescents seem to experience inconsistent and unloving discipline. And there is usually no mutual understanding between parent and child on what is expected. Consequently, many hurting and troubled young people never learn the basic guidelines about how to act or relate to others.⁷

Most troubled youth does not have a personal relationship with the Loving God and do not try to live by biblical principles, their morals and values, consequently reflect

⁷ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) *Reaching out to Troubled Youth*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 29-33.

those of their parents and peers. Most morals these children embrace aren't necessarily those they practice, they would act according to their circumstances.

The average person, who enters adolescence, becomes increasingly able to conceptualise and generalise moral rules and principles, while troubled youth, find conceptualizing difficult. The concept of honesty, for example, covers everything from speaking the truth and obeying rules for example not to cheat or steal.

Instead of applying abstract, biblical ideals and principles, troubled young people judge the seriousness of an act by its practical consequences and the potential punishment. ("*Love*," for example, is what he or she feels, not the idea of helping others.) "*Right*" and "*wrong*" are interpreted literally. A troubled youth may think, If stealing is wrong for me, it is wrong for everyone. But if others can steal and not get caught, so can I, in contrast, morally mature people consider intentions and the practical consequences of an action. Children who aren't troubled judge right and wrong differently from the troubled young person. Most people however deems it right to sometimes make an exception from the rule, arguing that for example, if a hungry child steals a sandwich he or she is not as guilty as a well-fed child who steals a doughnut. But at the end of the day – stealing is still wrong in reflection the Word of God.

These inconsistencies between right and wrong are difficult for troubled youth to understand and accept because they have not been taught to think conceptually, issues must be "*black and white*"; they can't handle "*grey areas*" and they do not see models of consistent morality at home or elsewhere. Most of these young people, therefore, become cynical, reject belief in any general standard of right and wrong, and develop their own moral codes.

3.2 Why do Troubled Youth Break the Rules?

Most parents, caretakers, educators etc would like to know why troubled young people act the way they do. Why they often steal, vandalize, fight, or try to hurt others? Frequently, delinquent or troubled acts either express needs or provide unorthodox ways to solve problems. These needs may vary from uncontrollable desire (e.g., stealing a pack of gum) to an irresistible urge to act on a hostile impulse.

The motive the child might have is to gain status within the peer group, take revenge, to show off, or it might come from the frustration of trying to cope with the difficult circumstances. Related delinquent or troubled acts may come from different motives; on the other hand, similar motives may evoke different acts. It is more important to why a child did something wrong rather than what the child did.

Boys tend to act out their problems more overtly than girls by breaking windows, fighting, or wrecking a car, while girls are usually less visible, sexual promiscuity, drinking, stealing. Sometimes punishment for such acts benches an excuse for young people to rake revenge. Unfortunately for young people in trouble, there is very little in their actions which appeals to kindness or sympathy, of the person helping them and even their parents to some degree. It may often seem as if only the God-given love and concern of the counsellor or parent that stand between the young person and spite and cries for punishment.⁸

One needs to keep in mind that the typical delinquent or troubled child detests himself or herself. The child has a negative self-concept, especially in regard to

⁸ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) *Reaching out to Troubled Youth*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 41.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

behaviour, moral self and family self. The child's self-concept shows many of the maladjustments which propose personality disorder. These children usually suffer from inner tension and discomfort, and are very much at odds with themselves, which often throws them into conflict with society. They are also too unstable and immature to withstand stress and frustration and find it very hard to cope with life. They see themselves as bad and worthless and acts accordingly, has an uncertain picture of themselves and is easily influenced by external suggestions from the environment.

The troubled youngster tends to look outward for control and evaluation of his or her behaviour; they are not defensive and makes little effort to portray themselves in a good light, it is thus certain that they lack those psychological defences necessary for normal self-esteem. The self-concepts of delinquents and troubled youth are much more negative, uncertain, variable, conflicted, and **passive** than those of non-delinquents.⁹

It is thus very important to teach troubled children to live within certain boundaries and to accept someone else's rules. The individual background of the child, emotional maturity and self concept determines the reason why they would break the rules.

Youngsters break rules because:

- They do not know the rules
- They do not (or refuse to) understand that the rules apply to them
- They do not understand the need for the rules

⁹ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 40.

- They are struggling with other, "internal" problems

A person's self concept and personal development of identity is a lifelong activity. The self-concept is influenced by many factors which interweave and overlap throughout a lifetime. One of these is basic needs, every person is continually trying to meet their needs, the success or failure in this effort affects how an individual see themselves. Another factor is life skills, which include caring for one's self, physically, building relationships, communicating, and solving problems. The degree to which these skills are learnt will have a direct effect on how a person feel about themselves as good, competent persons. The third factor is unresolved feelings. Feelings carried from the past like excess baggage eventually find their way into ones actions, thoughts, emotions and reactions, surfacing as ones self-concepts

The factor of how others respond to an individual is assimilated into their identity. Finally, there is our placement in the whole developmental process. That is, how does our stage of personal development match with where one should be or are expected to be? This will have an impact on how an individual feels about themselves. The diagrams illustrate the relationship between basic needs, developmental tasks, feelings, and behaviour. According to the diagram below, the success or failure of meeting basic needs and learning life skills impacts directly how one feel about themselves, lives, families, friends, jobs, associates, youth with whom is worked with, etc. Feelings, then, determine the behaviour and, as one "act" toward other people, and their response reinforce the feelings about how a person feels about themselves, and the cycle continues.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

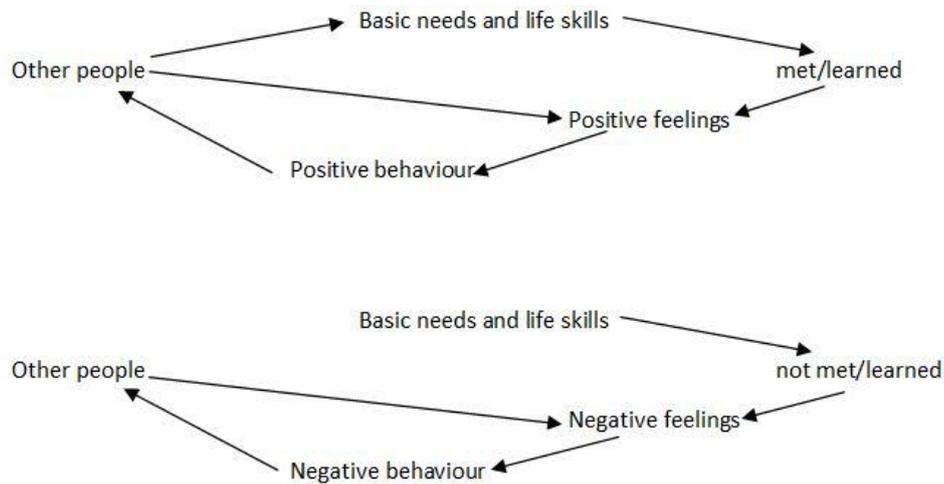


Table 2: Positive and Negative behaviour¹⁰

Most people think of punishment when they hear the word discipline, but it is not the same thing, according to the dictionary discipline is "*training that corrects, moulds, or perfects the mental faculties or moral character*".¹¹ Correcting" or "moulding" may involve punishment, but that is only **one** of the elements. The purpose of discipline is to teach, if troubled youth were disciplined, they will learn to accept and live within certain limits. Discipline, therefore, shows youth the correct path to follow and then guides them until they are able to walk the path on their own, the broad understanding of discipline must include positive direction and leadership, corrective action, valid rules and standards, and personal affirmation.

People have a misconception of what freedom is seeing it as the "*absence of rules or boundaries*." In reality, however, rules are necessary for life and for order. In fact,

¹⁰ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, p. 74.

¹¹ Discipline (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/discipline)

without limits and boundaries, real freedom cannot exist. The natural order of the universe is based on rules and principles. The planets orbit the sun and the moon orbits the earth, which results in days, nights, seasons, and tides. Gravity and other physical "*laws*" govern mankind's lives, without these "*rules*," there would be no life, let alone freedom. These rules certainly does restrict but without them man would die.

There are also societal or interpersonal boundaries, mankind are created in the image of God and have infinite worth and dignity, therefore it is wrong to use or abuse another person. When these laws are ignored and a person violates another individual's personhood in the name of freedom – mankind is only hurting themselves and they become less than human – which is the major plan of Satan, he wants humankind to destroy each other, to break the rules God had set to keep man safe. Thereby destroying the image of God in man so man can become animalistic if follow Satan's plan for their lives – which is destruction and eternal death. Therefore it is important for children and the youth to have boundaries and rules to life by, to help them to grow up as responsible God fearing young adults.

From a purely secular point of view, society needs regulations for order and protection. Consider, for a second if highways had no speed limits, lights or signs, drivers would have total freedom for a while until it causes accidents which would result in total chaos. Rules, regulations, boundaries, and limits are vital for real freedom to exist, within the right boundaries, throughout society and as individuals, people are free to grow, mature, live and enjoy life. Discipline, therefore, involves teaching a person to recognize and respect the right boundaries.

Discipline prevents punishment; it is the act of stretching the mind and body of a person so that when the performance comes, it can be a pleasure because of the

pain a person faced in the practice. Discipline comes before the act, and punishment comes after the act, if the act isn't done well. If you consistently discipline well enough and thoroughly enough, there isn't any need for punishment because children have learned how to act. Most parents live on the basis of reaction and response rather than initiation, it would be better if parents planned ahead and know how to discipline before a child does something wrong and then punishing them, without them understanding why.¹²

It is very important to build a firm foundation in discipline; if this foundation was not laid parents can expect a problem in the area of faith. Children who have not been disciplined are not going to believe their parents. Discipline creates trust and respect. Without discipline there is no basis for trusting the parents' values or faith, and no respect for their viewpoints. Discipline is important in helping teens feel loved. **In fact, discipline is a fruit of love.** In some cases, parents are never able to show outward affection or verbal affirmation, but the kids discover love in their discipline.

This is not about the rules, but the kind of strictness that produces respect. Children should know that the strictness is because of the love the parent has for them, discipline without love is not going to be effective. The love might be buried underneath, but it has to be there.¹³

3.3 Responding to an Angry Youth

¹² MacDonald, G (1984) Parents and Teenagers. Scripture Press, p. 425.

¹³ Perkins, J (1984) Parents and Teenagers, Scripture Press, p. 410.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Working with troubled youngsters could be challenging, the following suggestions for dealing with an angry young person should be considered helpful ideas and not seen as a "bag of tricks" are based on *The Aggressive Child* by Fritz Redl and David Wineman¹⁴.

1. Catch the young person being good; tell him or her what behaviours please you.
2. Don't ignore inappropriate behaviour that cannot be tolerated.
3. Provide physical outlets and other alternatives.
- 4- Use closeness and touching, for example a hug.
5. Express interest in the youth's activities.
6. Be ready to show affection.
7. Ease tension through humour.
8. Appeal directly to the young person.
9. Explain situations.
10. Use physical restraint.
11. Encourage young people to see their strengths as well as their weaknesses.
12. Use promises and rewards.
13. Say no!
14. Tell the young person that you accept his or her angry feelings.
15. Build a positive self-image.
16. Use punishment cautiously.
17. Model appropriate behaviour.
18. Teach young people to express themselves verbally.

It is important to remember that anger covers up fear, hostility or anger may also be expressed by the troubled young person. It is important to realize that much of the

¹⁴ Redl, F and Wineman D (1966) *The Aggressive Child*. Illinois: Free Press.

anger expressed by the young person actually masks fear - fear of not measuring up, fear of someone getting too close and fear of change. If the counsellor or parent can react to the fear rather than the anger, they will be much less intimidated and able to withstand the anger. The life of a troubled young person has been filled with anger which has usually been met with angry responses. What the young person desperately needs is to see is mature responses and alternatives to anger. He or she needs to know people who can "*keep their own cool*" or regain it.¹⁵

4. SANCTIFICATION AS PART OF THE EQUIPPING OF THE SAINTS

Christians need to be prepared in themselves to understand the spiritual realm and its connection with the natural world, as well the effects of ignoring God's divine principles. They should teach this to their children enabling them to live holy lives.

The two major facets of Christian holiness are relationships, and obedience. Three vital aspects of a Christian's relationship to God: Firstly God is a Believer's Father thus he begins with a loving relationship to Christ since he was a child who said, "***Abba, Father!***" (Gal 4:6- 16)

And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

Galatians 4:6 MKJV

¹⁵ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 97.

¹⁶ ***And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.***

Galatians 4:6 MKJV

The Lord is the Master, therefore Christians have a loving desire to obey Christ's will, The heir, as long as he is a child, does not differ at all from a slave, meaning that Jesus has bought the Christian out of the snares of eternal death if a person was bought in the Old Testament he was a slave of his, the slave Jesus refers to is that Believers are now His because He bought them with His Blood.

But I say, Over so long a time the heir is an infant, he does not differ from a slave, though being lord of all;

Galatians 4:1 MKJV

Since Jesus Christ is the role model, Believers should deem to be Christ-like. Paul addressed the Galatians believers as follows

My children, for whom I again travail until Christ should be formed in you,
Galatians 4:19 MKJV

In the Systematic Exposition of the Biblical Exegesis of **HOLINESS**, it is important not to take it up lightly, thereby missing the real point of the intrinsic meaning that defines the concept aptly.

4.1 Holiness is seeing Christ formed in Mankind

Holiness is to love Jesus and keep His commandments, the Greek word *hagios*¹⁷ means to be set apart; biblically it means to be set apart for God. There is a direct and immediate connection between “**holiness**” and “**sanctification**”, actually it is synonymous to “*sanctification*”. In the sense of being set aside for God, every Christian has been made holy through the new birth.

¹⁷ Etymology KyioCj {*hagios*....)

But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for possession, so that you might speak of the praises of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light;

1 Peter 2:9 MKJV

in the body of His flesh through death, to present you holy and without blemish, and without charge in His sight,

Colossians 1:22 MKJV

Paul reminds the believers in Corinth accordingly.

And such were some of you. But you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.

1 Corinthians 6:11 MKJV

As a reminder to Christians in this thesis, to be engaged in Spiritual Warfare as a Spirit filled Christian believer, the ultimate goal of the “**warfare**” will be to be changed continually to the image of Christ through equipping and sanctification in the ultimate holiness (in the future eternity).

4.2 Sanctification as projected through Counselling

Counselling in its fullest sense, then, is simply *an application of the means of sanctification*. The prerequisite for sanctification is the Holy Spirit’s presence in the life of a regenerate person. In Colossians 2 and Ephesians 4, Paul stressed this in his discussion of the new man and the renewal of God’s image. This image was ruined at the fall. The goal of counselling is the renewal of that image. Concretely this means likeness to Christ, who perfectly imaged God as man.

The attainment of that goal is achieved as a person changes from his former sinful life patterns and grows into the stature of Christ¹⁸, into the unity of and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.

This is begun when the Holy Spirit re-establishes communication with God. (1 Corinthians 2 shows that no communication with God exists apart from regeneration.) By His power the Spirit then enables the person to begin to put off the old man with its old patterns of life, and to put on the new man with its new biblical patterns. Day by day the Christian should grow in grace. Proving what is acceptable unto the Lord (Ephesians 5:10). Walter Wink notes: “*Jesus’ table fellowship with social outcasts was an acted parable of the dawning of the age of forgiveness*”.¹⁹

4.3 Sanctification means Change

In a cryptic repique Jay E Adams, biblical scholar as well as counsellor maintains that sanctification is a dominant if not the dominant view of counselling. A view which this thesis is in general agreement with.

“*Sanctification means more than learning what the Bible teaches. It involves personal change*”²⁰. Sometimes when counselees especially children are cornered

¹⁸Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel, Introduction to Nouthentic Counseling*. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan, p. 73.

¹⁹Wink, Walter (1992) *Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press, p. 116.

²⁰ Here we must differ radically with Christians who think that the pastor’s aim in counseling “is not ... to induce any major personality change.” Why leave such major change in the hands of psychiatrists whose beliefs and methods are antithetical to Scripture? *Cf Baker’s Dictionary, op. cit.*, p. 209. The work of the Holy Spirit is precisely the work of personality change, and the Christian counselor must become involved in this work as an agent whom the Spirit may use.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

and forced to acknowledge that their behaviour is irresponsible, they attempt to dodge the issue by replying: “*Well, I guess that’s just the way I am.*” They say this in a resigned manner and expect to leave the whole matter right there. They speak as though there were no possibility for genuine personality change. Such a view of man is decidedly unscriptural.”²¹

Instead of Holiness as separation, Borg notes, “*Jesus offered an economy of mercy that extends to all, especially the outsiders including Israel’s enemies. The command - which would have indicated Romans above all - points beyond the exclusiveness of the holiness code to a kindness and compassion which is all -encompassing and unlimited.*”²² Jay E Adams on furthering his argument²³ “*Human beings in one way might be described more accurately as human becomings.*”

Personality can be changed. God, throughout history, has turned Jacobs into Israels, Simons into Peters and Sauls into Pauls. Today’s personality is based on yesterday. What one is today is but the composite of his past. At birth, God gave each individual a basic deposit of inherited “*stuff*” which Scripture calls *phusis* (nature). This is a matter of gene makeup.²⁴

²¹ Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel*, Introduction to Nouthetic Counselling. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan, p. 77.

²² Borg, M.J (1998) *Conflict, Holiness and Politics*. Trinity Press International, p 51-200.

²³ Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel*, Introduction to Nouthetic Counselling. Grand Rapids Michigan; Zondervan, p. 75

²⁴ Depending upon whether one is a creationist (God creates each new soul afresh at birth) or a traducianist (the soul is *transmitted from one’s parents*) he may wish to include or exclude the human spirit from the inherited *phusis*. I do not wish to discuss this issue here, but it is fair to say that a more-or-less traducianist position has been presupposed. At least, *phusis* as been thought to include the genetic and another element received at birth. When Christ says “out of the heart” proceeds evil of every description (Luke 6:45; 15-19), he refers to what emanates from man’s inherited nature {*phusis*}, not what is learned. Man does not learn his responses as a passive, neutral being. Rather, he is an active, committed organism with a nature disposed toward sin because he is at enmity toward God. Sinful response patterns are inevitable, but the particular patterns developed, the particular styles of sinful expression, are not; they are learned.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

But that is not personality. How one uses the *phusis* in responding to life's problems and life's challenges determines the personality. Those response patterns may become deeply etched over a period of time. At length, they may seem to be, "second nature", i.e., almost as "given" as the original *phusis*. Though habit patterns are hard to change, **BUT** change is not impossible. Counsellors regularly see patterns of 30-40 years' duration altered, what was learned can be unlearned. An old dog can learn new tricks.

As is absolutely evident in conveying such a view on "change" it deems necessary to see the subject in light of a paradigm shift. Jesus, by abrogating the laws of purity, was announcing a new image of God: a God not concerned with cleanliness, who loves precisely the marginalized and rejected. The one whose tender womb aches for the uninvited and the unloved: a compassionate parent, of all of mankind.²⁵

Sometimes people also think that past decisions must be maintained as firmly as the laws of the Medes and Persians. Such people should reread the biblical account which shows the consequences of those foolish laws. Spiritual warriors must realize that past decisions were based upon yesterday's data and judgments. The former might have been insufficient and the latter poor. If new data have come to light, if one finds his judgment clearer today, he should attempt to rectify yesterday's bad decisions.

²⁵ Matt 6:9//Luke 11:2; Matt 7:7-11//Luke 11:9-13; Matt 6:25-34//Luke 12:22-31; Matt 10:29//Luke 12:6-7; Matt 18:19; Luke 15:1-7//Matt 18:12-14; Matt 11:25-27//Luke 10:21-22; Mark 11:25; 14:36 par., Luke 12:32; 23:34; and most references to "father" in John's Gospel. Ezekiel 22:26 amounts to virtually a line-by-line indictment of Jesus: "[The priests] have done violence to my teaching and have profaned my holy things; they have made no distinction between the holy and the common, neither have they taught the difference between the unclean and the clean, and they have disregarded my Sabbaths, so that I am profaned among them. "The rendering of the Temple curtain symbolizes the completion among them. "The rending of the Temple curtain symbolizes the completion of this process of profanation, which, according to Ezekiel, even God resists.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

This thesis would like to make a humble injection concerning the above- mentioned statement. In case of the Christian believer falling out of the holy standards of God, it is good to remember, **CORRECTION IS PROOF OF SONSHIP.**

My son, do not despise the chastening of Jehovah; nor be weary with His correction;

Proverbs 3:11 MKJV

God's Word changes people, changes their thinking, changes their decisions, and changes their behaviour, therefore it is important for children to start reading the Bible from a very young age – their parents can start reading Bible to them as a “*bed time story*” even before they are able to read it themselves.

Change is an important matter to counsellors. The Scriptures everywhere anticipate change. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of change. His activity is everywhere represented as dynamic and power behind the personality changes in God's people. Wherever the Holy Spirit's activity is demonstrated, people are changed. God says: “*Grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.*” Static living, static decisions, static personality is inconsistent with the biblical picture of the new life. Where there is life there is growth²⁶ and growth means change. Growth means maturation; it means refining of ideas and ways of doing things. So a Christian counselee must not be allowed to plead that he is what he is and nothing can be done about it.

Man is a weak creature, and no way able to discover Satan's snares, nor to avoid them, unless the Spirit of the Lord gives skill and power; therefore, whoever be

²⁶ All living organisms grow. Growth may sometimes take place in large spurts, and at other times may occur more slowly. In all Christians the potential for growth is significant.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

grieved, be sure the Spirit be not grieved by your enormities, nor by your refusing the cordials and comforts that he sets before you, nor by slighting and despising his gracious acting in others, nor by calling sincerity hypocrisy, and faith fancy, nor by fathering those things upon the Spirit, that are the brats and fruits of your own hearts.²⁷

The Spirit of the Lord is the Counsellor, Comforter, Upholder, Strengthenener - it is only the Spirit that makes a man too great for Satan to conquer. ²⁸

You are of God, little children, and you have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

1 John 4:4 MKJV

Change for some people is difficult to accept, because it means doing something not done before. It usually means exchanging old habit patterns for new ones. Such change is a threat to people and especially troubled children who already feels uncertain. They are afraid of the unknown, and therefore unwilling to launch out into new adventures. But to a Christian, change should be thrilling rather than threatening.

The Christian life is an adventure into God's newness. Newness need not make the Christian feel insecure because the future is new - only that the Person has not yet experienced it; it is not unknown to God. Christ is the pioneer of the Christian's faith. He is its author and finisher. He knows all about mankind's lives. Christ Himself has experienced the worst this life has to offer, all that death holds, and now stands victorious on the other side of both in eternal glory. So for the Christian the

²⁷ Isaiah 63:10; Ps 73:23; 1 Thessalonians 5:19; Acts 2:13.

²⁸ Brooks, Thomas (1984) Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices. The Banner of Truth Trust, p. 244.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

providence of God is a vital reality. The Savior has blazed a trail before him.²⁹ A Christian commits sin if he becomes a static, sedentary person who fears positive biblical change and frantically clings to the past, either in personality growth, in life decisions, or in manner of living. To resist sanctifying change is to resist and grieve the Holy Spirit. This is true for parents and children, as receiving counseling for troubled children involves the whole family. Jesus regarded holiness and wholeness as contagious, a transforming power – transforming children and their families into the wholeness and purity which is within Christ, restoring the image of Christ within them.

The Scriptural Doctrine of sanctification necessarily involves growth in holiness. Christians must change in order to become more like Christ. Growth means changing into the fullness of the stature of Christ. In principle if it is true that believers have been declared perfect in Christ, but now they must grow more like Christ in practice.

New truths discovered in the study of the Scriptures must become new practices woven into the fabric of one's daily life. Fundamentally, then, pastoral care, counseling, deliverance, healing, inner healing, teaching and preaching, lots of

²⁹ Gibson Winter was one of the first to sound the note that the modern family is uprooted. He wrote: "We are like gypsies on the move" (*Love and Conflict*, Garden City: Doubleday and Company, 1958, p. 16) Granberg echoes the cry that ours is a rootless society and also sees this as the source of many problems. Cf. *Baker's Dictionary, op. cit.*, p. 194. It must be granted that rootlessness that is due to modern mobility offers many temptations, but Christians may not blame this rootlessness for their problems. Although the problem takes on modern dimensions, it is not a new one. Abraham's life, like ours, was that of a "pilgrim and stranger." Christ spoke of leaving houses and brothers and sisters and father and mother and children and farms for his sake (Matthew 19:29). Such mobility and rootlessness actually affords great opportunity for demonstrating to others that "the world is not our home" and that "we seek a heavenly country" (see Hebrews 11:8-10; 13-16; 1 Peter 1:1; 2:11). The vital importance of the covenant family and the larger covenant community (the Church) is only emphasized by the rootlessness of modern society. One's taproot in God finds nourishment and life through these.

prayer and intercession would help Christians to become sanctified. Counseling involves helping people to put off old patterns which grew out of rebellion toward God and helping them to put on new practices which grow out of obedience to God. This is the shepherd's challenge, opportunity and duty.

5. DELIVERANCE OF CHILDREN IN BONDAGE TO THE SATANIC KINGDOM OF DARKNESS

5.1 Demonic Interconnectedness

Addendum 2 reflects the demonic groupings; the counsellor needs to remember that demons interconnect themselves within these groups in mutual support and protection for each other. While it is true that demons are very competitive, cut-throat, and ruthless, they will work together in their mission to destroy the person they inhabit.

Ten Commandments for working with troubled youth:³⁰

- THOU SHALT not allow sin to build up in thy life.
- THOU SHALT have a sense of humour.
- THOU SHALT be able to flex.
- THOU SHALT do anything thou tellest thy youth to do.
- THOU SHALT be committed and consistent.
- THOU SHALT keep in touch with those who understand thy youth's problems.

³⁰ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) *Reaching out to Troubled Youth*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 55.

- THOU SHALT give thy youth responsibility.
- THOU SHALT help thy youth grow as whole people.
- THOU SHALT consult the parents of thy young people on a regular basis.
- THOU SHALT pray for thy young people because of thy love for them.

5.2 Preparation for Deliverance

It is important to do some preparation before deliverance can be safely ministered. God's heart has always been to see His people set free. He has sovereignty delivered His people from many demonic forces, predominantly at the important times of their salvation, water baptism, and the baptism of the Holy Spirit. He has supernaturally delivered His people from Demonic Oppression in response to prayer, repentance, and fasting. Great deliverance has taken place during times of revival. God loves to see His sons and daughters shake loose from the enemy's clutches. He is present, through the power of His Holy Spirit, for the deliverance minister to co-labour with Him to bring about deliverance.

For deliverance to be successful and lasting the person or the child needs to receive the Lord Jesus as the child's ONLY Lord and Saviour of his or her life, the person should also be serious about receiving deliverance. Both factors are very important for a successful outcome. Then there is time for proper preparation. Also, in this context, the person is able to build trust and thus more easily share intimate areas where repentance and forgiveness are needed. This context also has the advantage of the integrated nature of this ministry, where the minister has opportunity to; break Sins of the Fathers and Resulting Curses See that major Ungodly Beliefs are dealt with Minister to Soul/Spirit Hurts that have given legal ground to demons

In other words, the legalities and ground work can be done before deliverance which allows the best possible situation for casting out demons and ensuring that new demons won't come in at a later time.

Since it has already been shown that demon spirits are able to gain entrance to a foetus and to children, it is obvious that there should be deliverance for them. Demons can be called out of children in the same way they are called out of older persons. There will be manifestations of the spirits leaving through the mouth and nose as in other deliverances. Ordinarily, children are quite easily delivered. Since the spirits have not been there very long they are not as deeply embedded in the flesh. There are exceptions to this, as in the cases of children who have been exposed to demonic attack through severe circumstances. The manifestations of the demons can be quite dramatic, even in children.³¹

Preparation thus involves:

5.2.1 Preparation of the Minister/Counsellor before Deliverance

The counsellor needs to be thoroughly convinced of two things: that demons really exist and that Jesus has given His followers authority over them. This conviction will occur as the counsellor or minister experiences deliverance himself and as he works with an experienced deliverance minister. Once these issues are settled, then it is a simple matter of listening to the Holy Spirit to obtain God's order and strategy for doing the deliverance.

³¹ Hammond, Frank and Ida (1973) *Pigs in the Parlour*. Kirkwood: Impact Christian Books Inc., p. 65.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

The minister must be secure in Christ's position of rule and authority over Satan and all his demons, and then in his own position in Christ. Knowing he is seated with Christ in the heavenly places, ruling with Him in authority and that **everything** is under his feet as well as the feet of Christ. The minister must **know** that Christ has given him authority and that he can **stand in that authority, which is based on God's Word, the truth as revealed in Jesus Christ.**

And miraculous signs will follow to those believing these things: in My name they will cast out demons; they will speak new tongues;

Mark 16:17 MKJV

Behold, I give to you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the authority of the enemy. And nothing shall by any means hurt you.

Luke 10:19 MKJV

Jesus speaks to the seventy excited deliverance ministers and addresses the issues of authority and safety, John also reassures the minister that God's power and authority operating in his life is greater than any power of Satan and his demons. Furthermore, as he comes against the powers of darkness, he is doing what Jesus has told him to do and he is safe doing it.

You are of God, little children, and you have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

1 John 4:4 MKJV

We know that everyone who has been born of God does not continue to sin, but the one born of God guards himself, and the evil one does not touch him.

1 John 5:18 MKJV

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

To be rightly prepared the minister needs to remember that "*Jesus is the Deliverer.*" Jesus works through the deliver with the power of the Holy Spirit to do the deliverance. Demons are to be driven out, as the deliverer co-labour with Christ. Paul speaks of this human-divine interaction in First Corinthians:

For of God we are fellow-workers, a field of God, and you are a building of God.

1 Corinthians 3:9 MKJV

For which I also labor, striving according to the working of Him who works in me in power.

Colossians 1:29 MKJV

The deliverer are pursuing the ministry and issuing the commands, but Jesus is the **actual** true Deliverer. The demons leave as they are escorted away by the finger of God which is the Holy Spirit. Retaining this **truth** prevents anxiety and fear from hindering the deliver. It also gives the person ministered to a sense of security and confidence.

The final part of the minister's preparation is to develop a list of the specific demonic groupings and Demonic Strongholds to be cast out. The minister should always be dependent on the Holy Spirit guidance. The person receiving deliverance will have to list Generational Patterns and problems experienced in the past. In prayer the Holy Spirit will reveal the problem areas and reveal which category/group of demons and which Demonic Stronghold to deal with first. The Holy Spirit will reveal the plan of action and how the deliverance should happen.

It is wise to **always cover** the areas of: the occult, control, sexual sin, fears, and physical ailments. Even though the ministry receiver may have never sinned in any

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

of these areas, it is almost a certainty that some of his ancestors have, resulting in curses of defeat, failure, and entrapment in these areas. In summary, the minister needs to approach the time of deliverance spiritually prepared and mentally set in his knowledge and focus.

Before any session of deliverance the minister should **put on the whole armour of God** as seen in Ephesians six. However a Christian should never be without their armour – it should be something they put on every day.

Finally, my brothers, be strong in the Lord and in the power of His might. Put on the whole armor of God so that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the world's rulers, of the darkness of this age, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Therefore take to yourselves the whole armor of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Therefore stand, having your loins girded about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace. Above all, take the shield of faith, with which you shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching to this very thing with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

Ephesians 6:10-18 MKJV

1. Loins girt about with **truth**.
2. The breastplate of **righteousness**.
3. Feet shod with the preparation of the **Gospel of peace**.
4. The shield of **faith**.
5. The helmet of **salvation**.
6. The sword of the Spirit which is the **Word of God**.
7. **Praying** in the Spirit.

The minister should also **pray for protection and plead the Blood of Jesus** for himself, his family and loved ones, the ministry receiver and the ministry receiver's family and loved ones.

5.2.2 Preparation of the Ministry Receiver

God is very patient and loving in deliverance where children are involved, children are very important to Him and He will be there to keep them safe.

Most children by the age of five or six can be given a simple explanation of what the minister is going to do before ministry begins. They need to know that the minister is not talking to them but to the spirits in them, otherwise they may be offended or frightened by words of command addressed to the evil spirits. Usually the children are quite cooperative. Since the children may feel more secure with a parent, it is often best for the parent to hold the child during the ministry. The deliverance minister must discern reactions in the child attributable to the spirits being stirred up.

The spirits may cause the child to resist being held. He may cry or scream and show signs of great fear. The demons may try various tactics to make one think it is the child being hurt or wronged, so that the minister and/or parent will become so sympathetic with the child that they will stop the ministry and the demons retain their hold. Especially in ministry with children it is well to remember the fact that it is not the loudness of a command that moves the demon but the authority of the name and of the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ. The commands can be given with such

calmness and matter-of-factness that the child will scarcely realize what is taking place.³²

- **Requirement: Salvation, Seriousness**

First, it is "*essential*" that the ministry receiver be saved. One should proceed with introducing him to Jesus if he isn't saved.

In addition to being saved, it is important for the ministry receiver to be serious in wanting deliverance. After all, it is his house that needs the cleansing. He should want to cooperate with the process and actively engage in setting his will and joining in with the deliverance process. Also, since he is the one who must learn to stand against demonic affliction, he needs to be serious about appropriating God's provision so he can be successful in maintaining lasting victory.

The balancing word for the previous paragraph is that someone severely oppressed by curses and demons may need help before he can come into a condition of seriousness. There are times when it is the minister's faith and determination, his "*standing in the gap*," that brings that measure of freedom and healing that enables the person's own will and faith to begin to operate. Once again the minister needs to rely on the guidance Holy Spirit in these situations.

One additional measure of a ministry receiver's seriousness is his willingness to enter into praying and fasting before he comes for deliverance. This is not a rule but is usually left to the ministry receiver to do as he desires and God directs. When the

³² Hammond, Frank and Ida (1973) *Pigs in the Parlour*. Kirkwood: Impact Christian Books Inc., p. 66.

minister comes against major occult strongholds, it is advisable to fast beforehand and intercessory support is important.

The ministry receiver must humble themselves before the Lord, recognising his or her dependence on God and His provision for deliverance (James 4:6-7), repent their sins (Amos 3:3; Ezekiel 20:43) and forsake evil (renunciation)(Matthew 3:7-8; Acts 19:18-19).³³

- **Specific Information for the Ministry Receiver**

As it seems relevant for a particular ministry receiver, some of the ministry steps can be reviewed. Obviously what will be discussed depends on his maturity level, his understanding of the demonic kingdom, and his previous experiences with demonic deliverance.

Some ministry receivers may be fearful and anxious before the first deliverance session. Fear of the unknown, particularly of the spiritual realm, can be extremely unnerving. Some of the ministry receiver's anxiety may be alleviated by instruction on what to expect and how to constructively participate.

- **Un-confessed Sin/Need for Forgiveness**

Demons will cling to any hidden or **un-confessed sin** so it is very important to make sure that repentance and the forgiveness of others is as complete as possible. This is especially true in the occult area. It is better to be too thorough than not thorough

³³ Maintaining your deliverance (www.demonbuster.com/maintai4.html)

enough. What's not already covered will become apparent during the "*casting out*" phase if and when strong resistance is encountered.

- **Occult Objects**

If the ministry receiver still possesses **occult books** on magic, fortune telling, astrology, sexual perversion, witchcraft, psychic gifts, etc., he needs to agree to get rid of them. This is also true of trinkets or jewellery with magical and/or idolatrous significance. Rock music's CD's and covers; games and toys will also fall under this section.

- **It's the Truth that sets a person Free**

It is important that the ministry receiver **knows** the truth that Jesus has defeated, disarmed, and triumphed over all the power of the enemy. Demons have to leave because He has given His children authority over them the Word of Truth are released in the deliverance situation. **It is the knowledge of the Truth that sets people free** - not the volume of voices or the force of the ministers will. The Truth is proclaimed by using Scripture and praise as part of the deliverance, if necessary.

- **Reporting**

Let the ministry receiver know that he can help by reporting any negative experiences such as thoughts tempting him to withdraw from the deliverance process, strong negative feelings, and/or any physical symptoms (i.e., moving pains, dizziness, confusion, etc.).

- **Expect Hindrances**

Demons will try to block the deliverance. That is just part of the spiritual warfare.

- **Use of Scripture, Praise**

Demons hate any talk or songs about the Name of Jesus, the Blood, the Cross, certificates of debt, meaning that Jesus blotted out all man's sin and nailed it against the cross³⁴, the resurrection, Satan's defeat, their defeat, the lake of fire, etc. They get stirred up, agitated in different ways, and have a hard time remaining hidden. They particularly hate Scripture, especially verses about the fall or the defeat of Satan. The ministry receiver should be ready to say or read scripture and to join the ministers in praise.

- **Possible Manifestations**

Let the ministry receiver know that there may be manifestations, both of resistance and as the demons leave. The most common signs of resistance are thoughts such as, "*This won't work*," or "*Demons aren't real*." The receiver may experience sharp pains that move about his body, sleepiness, changing body temperature, and or tightness somewhere in his body. Sometimes demons mock the process. At these times, the receiver may appear to be sarcastic, sneering and/or uncooperative. Demons generally manifest according to their type or function. For example, a demon of anger will cause a person to feel angry, a demon of shame, shameful, etc. Occasionally, the demon will manifest in a physical struggle. Also, occasionally the

³⁴ ***blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and has taken it out of the way, nailing it to the cross.***
Colossians 2:14 MKJV

demons may speak through the person. Be prepared for whatever form the manifestations may take. Assure the ministry receiver that you will limit the extent of the manifestations if they become distracting or potentially harmful to him

- **Explain how Demons Leave**

Demons usually leave with the breath, through a yawn, cough, sigh, burp, hiccup, deep exhalation, laughter, crying, or a scream. Sometimes, as an act of the will it is helpful to have the person breathe deeply and then to forcibly breath out, even to cough. This seems to help encourage the demons to leave, especially if they are already close to leaving. While the breath or cough does not cause the demons to leave, it provides the receiver **an opportunity to exercise faith** that the demons are leaving. Screams may occur, but this happens infrequently and usually when related to occult, witchcraft, or death demons.

- **Equipping**

The main purpose is to equip the ministry receiver to learn to do self-deliverance that he will use for the rest of his life. Initially the minister will lead and guide so that the ministry receiver would be able to learn how to deal with stronger demonic groupings and gradually move into a supporting role.

- **Identifying additional Demons**

During the actual deliverance session it is normal to identify additional demons. This occurs through the discerning of spirits either by the ministers or the ministry receiver. Sometimes, the person's behaviour reveals the presence of a demon.

During the ministry session, the demon may speak through the person in a recognizable way or try to pull the person to sleep, etc. Sometimes, as the demon is stirred up, the type of manifestation exhibited by the person reveals the demon's identity. Be alert to changes in the receiver's emotions, physical actions, appearance, and voice pitch or level.

- **Sending Demons to Jesus**

Once the time is right, as pointed out by the Holy Spirit to cast out the demon the deliverer would simply say: "*I command you to go where Jesus sends you.*" Or "*I command you to go to the place that Jesus had prepared for you*". This is scripturally safe.

And they begged Him that He would not command them to go out into the abyss.

Luke 8:31 MKJV

- **Preventing Demons Returning**

Jesus is the delivering minister's model, He told the epileptic demon to leave and never to come back.

And seeing that a crowd is running together, Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to him, Dumb and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him and enter no more into him!

Mark 9:25 MKJV

By forbidding the demons to return and turning them over to Jesus to go wherever He sends them, the demons being cast out of the person are essentially removed

from this realm. Thus, their ability to oppress the ministry receiver, or anyone else for that matter, comes to an end.

However, plenty of other demons of "like nature" (i.e., having the same function, such as anger) are waiting in the wings ready to tempt the delivered person as they strive to find a home. If the recently delivered ministry receiver yields to the temptation, the door may be reopened. The "*replacement*" demons can then set up housekeeping, drawing the person back into bondage.

When the unclean spirit has gone out of a man, he walks through dry places seeking rest, and finds none. Then he said, I will return into my house from where I came out. And when he has come, he finds it empty, swept, and decorated. Then he goes and takes with him seven other spirits more evil than himself, and they enter in and live there. And the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so it also shall be to this evil generation.

Matthew 12:43-45 MKJV

So while there is no need not fear the "*previous*" demons re-entering, a warning to the ministry receiver is to be on the alert against counterattacks from **replacement** demons trying to infiltrate.

Keeping infants and children free from demons once they are delivered is the responsibility of the parents as the child's spiritual guardian, when Jesus ministered to children one or both of the parents were present. It is the responsibility of parents to be the spiritual guardians of their children.

After deliverance the minister should pray and ask the Holy Spirit to fill all the empty places (ground) the demons have left.

If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him?

Luke 11:13 MKJV

5.2.3 Continuing the Deliverance

The process of casting out demonic demons will continue until all identified demons and those revealed by the Holy Spirit are removed from the person, enough has been done in the particular session or the Holy Spirit indicates the session to come to an end which usually means that the person needs to be allowed to "*increase and possess the reclaimed land*" (Exodus 23:29-31) before moving on to the next round of warfare.

As the deliverance session comes to an end (where the session was stopped and all demons weren't evicted yet) the remaining demons are bound and commanded to stay separated and isolated, prohibit any manifestations, particularly the interjecting of thoughts into the person's mind, cancel the assignments of all demons assigned to replace the evicted demons and pray for the Holy Spirit to fill all of the vacated areas. The minister should also pray for restoration of the areas affected by the demons, including physical healing.

5.2.4 What to do With Stubborn Demons

When **Eviction Day** arrives, the demons are not excited, they will do everything within their power to hinder and block their departure. They will continue to resist right up to the very last moment by interfering, confusing, sidetracking and even preventing deliverance.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Sometimes the "*strongman*"³⁵ will force the weaker demons to be "*sacrificed*," hoping that the ministers will think that they have evicted the "*strongman*" who will attempt to remain in hiding and not be cast out. The Gifts of the Spirit needs to operate in the minister in order for him not to be deceived. All the legal ground that has given the demon the legal right in a person's life needs to be dealt with, otherwise the demon will not leave, it is easier to cast out the demon in this way and it won't be able to find an open door for re-entry afterwards.

Certain demons will create a blockage especially in the case when dealing with a Demonic Stronghold, causing a "*pile-up*" – with the help and guidance of the Holy Spirit by removing the reason for the "*pile-up*" – the strongman – the remaining demons generally leave quite easily.

At other times, the enemy may have a definite plan to stop the deliverance process. His tactics, however, are all doomed to failure since the victory has already been won by the Blood of the Lord Jesus Christ through His victory on the Cross. All the minister has to do is to follow the Holy Spirit's leading to remove the various obstacles that the demons erect until all blocks are gone.

Mental-Blocking demons strategize to prevent deliverance of other demons. They whisper messages to the person's mind such as: "*Demons are not real. This is an outdated concept. My problems are really psychological.*" They may say, "*This is not going to work. It works for other people, but it is not going to work for me.*" They have even been known to say, "*I'm not here,*" as the deliverance minister called their names.

³⁵ Strong man – meaning the demon in control of an area for example occult with lesser demons under him.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

These demons work to affect the person's belief system and, thus, his will. The most general blocking demons are **doubt, unbelief, scepticism, rationalism, and pride.** Pride causes a person to deny that he could "have" such a thing as a demon. This demonic strategy needs to be met with a strong biblical offensive by sharing Scripture and illustrations of Jesus doing deliverance. Also specifically bind the blocking demons', or proceed with their deliverance. Go through the usual forgiveness, renouncing, and casting out process. Forgiveness, in this case, includes having the ministry receiver ask forgiveness for giving place to the blocking demons and agreeing with their lies.

False Agreements: Every Ungodly Belief is a potential agreement with the forces of darkness that provides legal ground for Demonic Oppression. By providing legal ground to demons on false agreements, the person will have to exert his free will and renounce the agreement on the basis of the Cross and the Lordship of Jesus Christ. Of course, any needed forgiveness should also be accomplished.

The demons do not want the person to find their identity in Christ, since God does not violate a person's free will, the deliverer nor the demon can override it. The deliverer's main objective is to help the person to find his identity in Christ and to cancel out any lies the person believes about himself –the demonic identity.

The covenant a new Believer makes in Christ can be used to override all agreements with the demonic "inhabitants", this new covenant in Christ must be applied to remove all false identity demons.

5.2.5 What Demons Hate

Demons hate many things, God being at the top of their list, His Word, and humans especially Christians. This could be used to force them out of hiding and pressuring them to leave. Demons really hate Bible scriptures (See Addendum 1). Read these out loud to magnify God and minimize Satan, highlighting the victory of Christ and the fall and the defeat of Satan. They will reveal themselves as they cry out in defence of Satan and their position in his kingdom. Reading these scriptures to the demons, the ministry receiver and ministers during deliverance is guaranteed to bring **good** results. These scriptures are **Godly Beliefs** that will set a person free from fear and concern about Satan, enabling a person to minister freedom to others.

Important to take note of is Isaiah 14:17:

***who made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed its cities; who did not
open the house for his prisoners?***

Isaiah 14:17 MKJV

Satan would not open the house of his prisoners, thus when deliverance is done the deliverer is forcefully going into the prisons of the kingdom of darkness and **forcefully** opening the house of Satan's prisoners, setting them free.

***And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of Heaven is
taken by violence, and the violent take it by force.***

Matthew 11:12 MKJV

Demons also hate praise and worship of God. The importance and power of admiration of God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ during the deliverance session cannot be underestimated, particularly if any resistance arises.

Demons hate any talk about the Name of Jesus, the Blood, the Cross, the resurrection, Satan's defeat, and the lake of fire. Songs about the blood of Jesus will definitely "*stir*" them up and force them to reveal themselves. Speaking in tongues will also aggravate them and using the weapons God has provided to maximum advantage when dealing with obstinate demons.

5.2.6 Additional Deliberation in Removing a Resistive Demon

After completing the previously discussed items the presence of yet another obstinate demon is discerned, upon indication of the Holy Spirit the following can be used to complete the deliverance.

Sever ancestral ties/generational curses. Affirm and declare that all ties are broken, from the time of conception in the womb right up to the present. **Speak forgiveness** to any ground that the demon(s) may be standing on (using), and/or to any agreements that the ministry receiver may have with the demon(s). Lastly, speak forgiveness to the person for his putting up with, entertaining, catering to, and/or giving place, to the demon(s).

Break any agreements/lies/contracts/covenants still remaining between the ministry receiver and demon (s). **Appropriate the Blood of Jesus** over any legal ground the demons think they have and invalidate all agreements. Declare that every part of the ministry receiver's life, all of his "*land*," is holy ground, dedicated and consecrated unto the Lord.³⁶

³⁶ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations, An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry, 2nd Addition. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp. 297-311.

5.3 Relationship counselling

You become responsible, forever, for what you have tamed

– Antoine de Saint-Exupery, The Little Prince

People's problems do not occur in a vacuum. People live within a rich network of relationships to others, and so do their problems. For this reason, some therapists and counsellors have argued that treatment should always involve the family or even the larger social network and that it is impossible to understand or help an individual without including these significant others in the therapeutic process.

Although it does contain a kernel of truth, the social/relationship dimensions of an individual's problems should always be considered. Most "*mental health*" problems are in fact problems of adjustment, conflicts of some sort between the individual and the social environment. If change is the goal, this may be brought about by changing the individual, the environment, or both. Yet to say that *all* therapy must be family therapy is absurd. Individual counselling can and does provide effective help for many people. An individual approach to treatment does not preclude the making of changes in the person's environment or the requesting of change from significant others.

Sometimes, however, the relationship is the problem. In the treatment of sexual dysfunctions, for example, it is difficult, though not impossible to work with only one partner because sexuality is necessarily and intimately tied to relationship. Likewise marital conflicts or family crises are best understood not as the pathology of one member but rather as difficulties in the relationship among the members. The

counsellor's client in such cases is actually not an individual but the relationship itself.³⁷

6. SPECIFIC DEMONS AREAS TO ADDRESS WITH REGARDS TO CHILDREN

It is advisable to ask the child to make a list, writing down any areas that are habitual problems, the following Scripture verses can be used as a basis Galatians 5:19-21, Mark 7:21-23 and Colossians 3:5-8. On the list the child can also list anything he or she participated in which made them feel uneasy. Review with care and clarity the child's need for complete honesty when confessing sins and asking Jesus to cancel the ground demons hold as a result of those sins. If the child holds back or hides areas of sin the demons will not leave.³⁸

It is also important to remember that only God can hear man's thoughts – when demons is addressed it thus has to be done audibly for them to be able to hear it – as demons cannot read a man's mind.

When demons are casted out it is done in the name of the Lord Jesus as the Bible states that no other name will bring forth deliverance and freedom, it makes it clear to the demons that the minister and the receiver understand that the Lord Jesus Christ is the reason the Christian will win this conflict.

***And there is salvation in no other One; for there is no other name under
Heaven given among men by which we must be saved.***

Acts 4:12 MKJV

³⁷ Miller, RM and Jackson, KA (1995) Practical Psychology for Pastors, Second Edition. USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc, p. 367.

³⁸ Payne, Karl I (2011) Spiritual Warfare, Christians, Demonization and Deliverance. Washington D.C: WND Books, p. 128.

6.1 Children of Death and Hell (Demons)

This thesis believes that the demons called children of Death and Hell are as follows: Sickness, pain, plagues, breathing problems, spirits of infirmity, spirits of guilt, spirits of condemnation and fear, curses, hopelessness, loneliness, darkness, depression, spirits of suicide and self-destruction. Under “*sickness*”, one could include all forms of sickness, particularly those of longstanding origin.

6.2 Unholy Trinity

It has been suggested that the foregoing **three strong men**, namely the spirit of Jezebel, Anti-Christ, and Death and Hell, are the Satanic counterparts of the Holy Trinity; namely that the spirit of Jezebel seeks to take the place of the Holy Spirit, and the spirit of Anti-Christ seeks to take the place of God the Father, and the spirit of Death and Hell seeks to take the place of Christ. It is noteworthy that they are cast into the lake of fire and brimstone in the order of Jezebel, Anti-Christ, and Death and Hell, and it does seem important in the area of ministry to cast them out in that order when they are affecting an individual or church.³⁹

These are very strong men and deliverance ministers must always remember the power of agreement referred to in Matthew 18:

Truly I say to you, Whatever you shall bind on earth shall occur, having been bound in Heaven; and whatever you shall loose on earth shall occur, having been loosed in Heaven.

Matthew 18:18 MKJV

³⁹ Subritzsky, B (1985) Demons Defeated. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd, pp. 40-41

When Christians, agree together to bind these spiritual forces then they in turn lose their grip over the church, persons, children or city, which would enable the Christian cast out the lower demons (“their children”).

6.3 Control Spirit

Apart from the three major demonic powers referred to above, another powerful demonic force called a control spirit. Many people or children have a control spirit **which will deny the truth**. The devil can bring peace as well as turmoil. Control spirits act to control the person and prevent deliverance. The function of the control spirit is twofold:

- To shield the human spirit from hurt.
- To bring calmness.

This demon frequently comes in **during childhood as a result of a trauma**, for example a child’s father says, *‘I am going away and will not come back.’* The youngster may well take on the demon which eases the pain. As true repentance, including forgiveness, takes place, then deliverance can be accomplished.⁴⁰

6.4 Abused Child physically, emotionally and spiritually

Abuse – (noun) to use ill; to maltreat; to misuse, to use with bad motives or wrong purposes; to violate; to defile; to deceive, to impose on; to treat harshly; to use insulting, coarse, or bad language about or to; to revile. All forms of abuse results in

⁴⁰ Subritzsky, B (1985) Demons Defeated. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd, pp. 40-41

demonic infestation. **Rejection is the basic cause of abuse.** All types of rejection work to destroy the mental and emotional health of an individual. Abuse (whether verbal, physical, mental or sexual) has a deep and lasting effect on a person. It affects all their relationships and all they do. This includes neglect.

Know this also, that in the last days grievous times will be at hand. For men will be self-lovers, money-lovers, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, without natural affection, unyielding, false accusers, without self-control, savage, despisers of good, traitors, reckless, puffed up, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God, having a form of godliness, but denying the power of it; even turn away from these. For of these are those who creep into houses and lead captive silly women loaded with sins, led away with different kinds of lusts,

2 Timothy 3:1-6 MKJV

This verse indicates that in the end times people will be lovers of self, utterly self-centred. Most child abuse comes from selfish parents, when a child is neglected or rejected; damage is done to them emotionally, mentally and physically. Emotionally these children are unsure of themselves, and everyone or almost everyone around them. Often they are unable to be still or concentrate. Emotions are always at an extreme pitch. Mentally they cannot trust others or themselves. They have difficulty learning due mainly to being emotionally unsound. Many times an abused child will mildly or completely neglect themselves to convey the idea to others that they are worthless or at fault. By their attitudes they invite sickness, etc. Or, they go to the other extreme - they must always look beautiful to hide their real selves. If a child is beaten, it will when it becomes an adult tend to do the same thing to its children (because of the familiar spirit the child received through abuse, sins of their forefathers). Since these senseless beatings have no reason, the child becomes confused and frustrated. Many work extremely hard to prove themselves. In mental abuse, children follow pretty much the same pattern as physical abuse. Eventually

they accept or partially accept the verbal abuse as true. Dishonest dealing with children makes them fearful of trusting. Hence they have trouble trusting God because parents who are authority figures have not been trustworthy. They always have nervous problems.

Sexually abused children have all the above problems. Hate figures in all abuse, but is extreme in a sexually abused child. The abused child may take up homosexuality, sadism, etc., and become frigid. Any form of abuse can lead to mental illness. First, the child who has been abused must learn to forgive. When tempted to hate again, the child must not let it rule him or her. They must come to understand that the parent or abuser has had much trouble in his or her life. If the person is young, the minister should seek help and protection from this abuser.

For the counsellor it is important to take note of some characteristics of an abused child:

- an inordinate desire to please
- inability to say no to things they don't want to do
- always setting goals, working hard to accomplish them and then stopping short of success
- always feeling they have to do things better than anyone else and
- trying to make everything around and about them look better than they think it is.

The following table can be used to detect the cycle of rejection in a child:

Cycle of Rejection

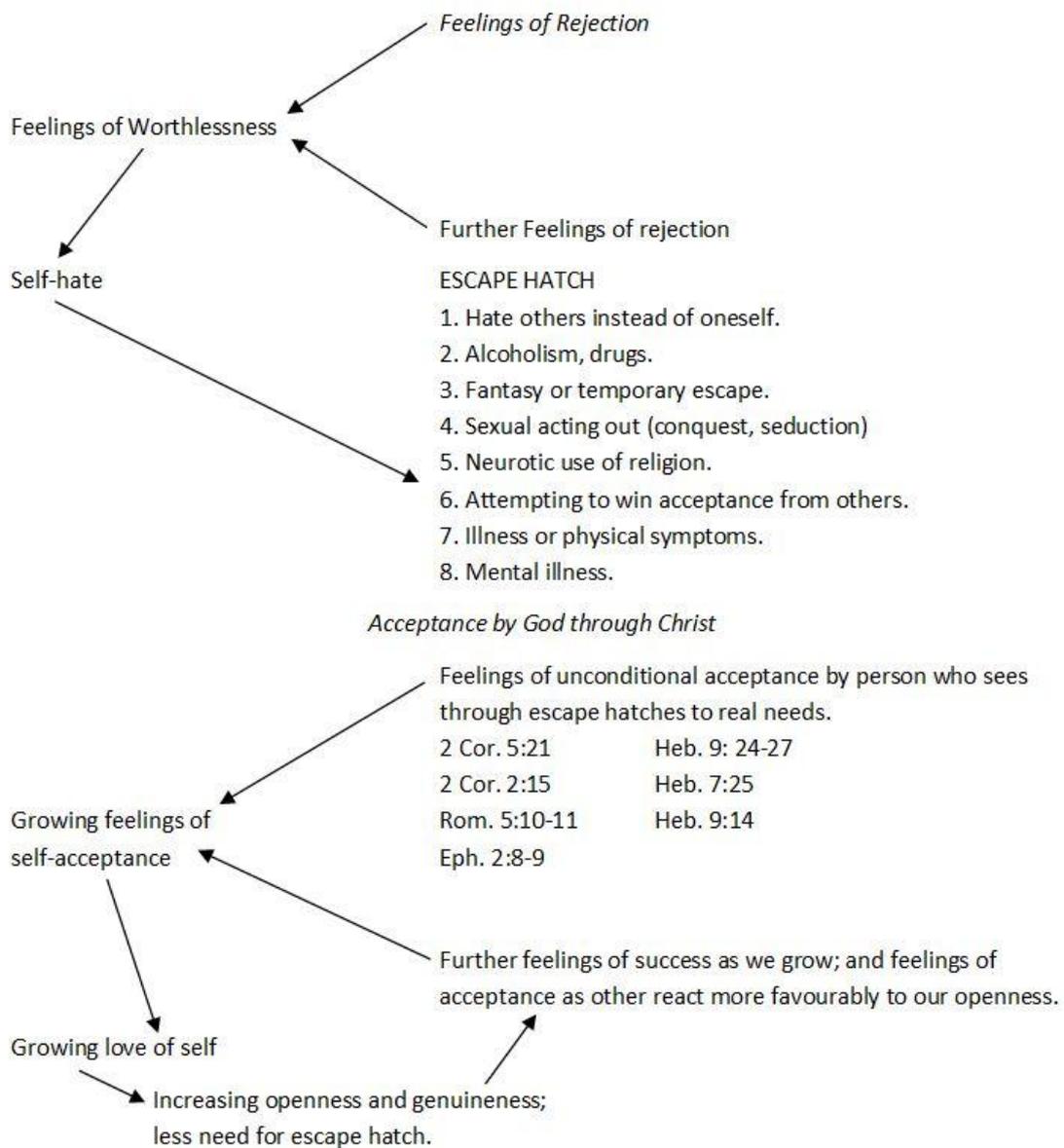


Table 3: Cycle of Rejection⁴¹

⁴¹ Hodge's, MB (1967) *Your Fear of Love*, Garden City, N.Y: Dolphin Books, Doubleday and Company, pp. 15-50.

Other indicators:⁴²

PHYSICAL ABUSE

Physical indicators:

- Has unexplained bruises or injuries
- Has linear bruising, especially when seen on the buttocks, legs, arms and back
- Has injuries where children don't normally - on the face, legs, bottom or torso
- Has bruising in various stages of healing especially when on different body parts
- Has bruises in the shape of an object, a hand, shoe, iron, stick, belt, etc.
- Has fading bruises or other marks noticeable after an absence from school

Behavioural indicators:

- Reports injury by a parent or another adult caregiver
- Provides difficult to believe explanations for injuries
- Has difficulty sitting, complains of soreness, or moves uncomfortably
- Wears clothing to cover body especially when inappropriate to weather
- Reports mistreatment of animals in the home
- Becomes withdrawn, aggressive or self-destructive
- Is bullied or is a bully
- Routinely arrives at school early or stays late
- Is overly compliant, an overachiever or overly responsible
- Seems frightened of the parents; appears afraid of being at home

⁴² Signs and Symptoms of Child abuse and neglect (www.speakupbesafe.org/parents/warning-signs-of-abuse-and-neglect-for-parents.pdf)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Is always watchful and alert - as though preparing for something bad to happen
- Has learning problems
- Has behaviour changes just prior to going home from school or when picked up
- Is wary of adult contact; cringes or flinches when others get close

Additional indicators for adolescents

- Chronic runaway
- Engages in violent or dangerous behaviour

NEGLECT

Physical indicators

- Has not received attention for physical or medical problems
- Medical needs are only cared for when urgent, has untreated dental needs
- Has consistently bad hygiene, has unwashed, matted hair and noticeable body odour
- Clothing is too large or too small or inappropriate for the weather
- Receives little or no support from family with homework and school activities
- Reports no caretaker, or inconsistent caretakers at home
- Has attended numerous schools with delays in enrolment
- Has no pets or many pets; describes pets as hungry or dying
- Routinely loses, or does not return school papers, permission slips, etc
- Does not have money for lunch, arrives to school in time for free meals
- Is accidentally hurt or abused by someone other than parent while unsupervised

Behavioural indicators

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Is frequently absent from or late to school
- Is allowed to play in unsafe environments or with unsafe people
- Is responsible for household, cooking, cleaning, laundry, and care of siblings, not typically seen in children of the same age and family size
- Feels responsible for meeting the needs of parent
- Is tired; falls asleep in class
- Displays excessive need for affection or attention
- Exhibits self-soothing behaviours, thumb sucking, rocking
- Has learning problems, speech delays and delayed physical development
- Is self-destructive, engages in delinquent behaviour at a young age
- Has difficulty making and keeping friends
- Begs or steals food or money from classmates

Additional indicators for adolescents

- Drops out of school
- Uses drugs or alcohol
- Increasingly engages in dangerous or delinquent behaviour

SEXUAL ABUSE

Physical indicators

- Reports sexual abuse by a parent or another adult caregiver
- Has difficulty walking or sitting
- Has a sudden weight change
- Has frequent somatic complaints, stomach or head ache, sore throat
- Suddenly refuses to change for gym or to participate in physical activities
- Has sudden negative change in appearance

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Has frequent urinary or yeast infections not explained by medical condition or treatment
- Becomes pregnant or contracts a venereal disease, particularly if under age fourteen
- Runs away

Behavioural indicators

- Shows sudden changes in behaviour or school performance
- Is inappropriately seductive
- Has sophisticated knowledge or interested in sexual activity and behaviours beyond same age peers
- Perpetrates sexual activity with another child, particularly a younger or more vulnerable child
- Is overly protective of siblings
- Avoids a specific person without an obvious reason
- Talks a lot about an adult
- Is threatened by physical contact, closeness
- Is always watchful, as though preparing for something bad to happen
- Comes to school early, stays late, and does not want to go home

Additional indicators for adolescents

- Is self-destructive
- Is considered promiscuous
- Abuses drugs or alcohol
- Self mutilates or attempts suicide
- Develops an eating disorder

- Runs away

CHILD ON CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

Behavioural indicators

- Low self-esteem
- Shows unusual signs of anxiety
- Shows signs of guilt
- Exhibits signs of depression
- Becomes more angry and hostile

Additional indicators for adolescents

- Shows signs of Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)
- Suicidal thoughts or ideation
- Misses or skips a lot of school
- Runs away from home
- Abuses drugs or alcohol
- Is sexually promiscuous

EMOTIONAL ABUSE

Physical indicators

- Has speech delays
- Reports a lack of attachment to the parent
- Exhibits frequent somatic complaints typical with anxiety, ulcers, frequent stomach or headaches

Behavioural indicators

- Is fearful or anxious about doing something wrong or making a mistake

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Is excessively withdrawn
- Does not play as other children do
- Speaks negatively about his/her self
- Does not appear to be attached to the parent or caregiver
- Displays extremes in behaviour, being overly compliant one minute and demanding the next
- Is extremely passive or aggressive
- Has delayed emotional development, exhibited by crying, whining, temper tantrums, hitting, biting, etc.
- Engages in self-soothing behaviours, thumb sucking, rocking, etc., outgrown by peers
- Has inappropriate adult behaviours; for example, parenting other children
- Comes to school early, stays late, and does not want to go home
- Has learning problems
- Appears anti-social and or destructive
- Is bullied or is a bully
- Attempts suicide
- Additional indicators for adolescents
- Over eats
- Abuses alcohol or other drugs
- Attempts suicide

CHILDHOOD BULLYING

Physical indicators

- Child has frequent cuts and/or bruises with excuses to explain them
- Physical complaints

- Changes in sleeping or eating patterns
- Has ripped or torn clothing at the end of the school day

Behavioural indicators

- Child has a sudden reluctance to go to school
- Lost lunch money or personal possessions and has excuses they seem untrue
- Spends much more time alone
- Looking and acting sad

CYBER PREDATORS AND CYBERBULLYING

Behavioural indicators

- Spends large amounts of time on-line, especially at night
- Find pornography on child's computer
- Child receives phone calls from men you don't know or is making calls, sometimes long distance, to numbers you don't recognize
- Child receives gifts, mail, or packages from someone you don't know
- Child becomes withdrawn from the family
- Child uses an on-line account that belongs to someone else

Most abused children have a problem feeling gratitude because they have been victimized repeatedly. They cannot be glad or grateful when something good happens because they fear it has a price to be paid. Parents' attitude should be to serve the Lord in gratitude of heart and mind, for all that He has blessed them with, and this would help the child in learning to do the same.

Children need to be reminded that Jesus died for them before they were even born, they need to forgive everyone to the degree that they can truly pray for them to be saved and receive blessings of God, they have to realize that their abuser's troubles are probably as great or greater than theirs and that it is not entirely or maybe not at all the child's fault.

6.5 Deliverance and the Fragmented Soul

To the best of this thesis knowledge the soul is made up of the: personality, intellect, mind as it deals with the intellect, will, emotions and heart.

Satan wants to fragment and remove the intellect of **A BABY, CHILD, YOUNG PERSON OR ADULT** for the following reasons:

- Ties up the whole family with care for the retarded or insane.
- Weakens faith in God.
- Brings shame to entire family.
- Causes embarrassment about marriages to others.
- Sets stage for future generations to be insane.
- Binds them to doctors.
- Binds them to psychiatrist.
- Sometimes connects the family to the occult through accommodation to the behaviour of the victim.

In the Kingdom of Light there is no such a thing as a deranged, retarded insane child as such, there is only a person whose normal God-given intellect

has been removed and insane, deranged, retarded, dumb, crazy, evil spirits substituted for the normal intellect!!!

Methods Satan uses to fragment or remove intellect:

- Dealing with the occult or witchcraft apparently gives grounds for Satan to remove portions of the soul and substitute evil spirits in that portion's place.
- Whenever a person puts something or someone above the Father, a portion of the soul can go into the idolised object or person.
- Witchcraft, spells, incantations, some forms of prayers - these can be used to fragment and remove the soul.
- Great trauma such as accidents, fire, shock, etc., undoubtedly has a place in the plan to fragment the soul.

lest he tear my soul like a lion, tearing it in pieces, and there is no one to deliver.

Psalms 7:2 MKJV

Methods on how to deal with the retarded, insane and senile

- Scripture posters and wallpaper with powerful deliverance scriptures are helpful.
- Play deliverance scripture and messages, and mass deliverance tapes 24 hours a day when possible.
- Have parent or guardian to take Warfare Prayers for those unable to take them personally.
- Distance from the person being prayed for means nothing.
- Your commanding and prayers are effective in comas, when sleeping and drugged or under anesthesia. The evil spirits hear it all.

- Acts 19:12 - Use prayer cloths in pillows, clothing and bedding.
- Anoint premises with oil; also anoint clothes and bedclothes with oil.
- Lose their angels as discussed in Matthew 18:10.
- Ask for angels to minister all the time (Hebrew 1:14).
- Forgive their sins (John 20:23).
- Cast out Mind Control and Prince of Mind Occult.

6.6 Deliverance for the Subconscious Mind, Freeing, Restoring, Protecting⁴³

Subconscious – (noun) that portion of mental activity of which the individual has little or no conscious perception.

Subconscious – (adjective) occurring without conscious perception or with only slight perception on the part of the individual - said of mental processes of reactions.

Before a person is "*born again*" Satan has a heyday filling children with evil spirits. All thoughts start either with the Father or Satan. Mankind should guard against Satan generating thoughts in their minds (Matthew 5:37; 2 Corinthians 10:5; Matthew 5:36; 6:27).

God has created man in His image and therefore He planned that any child of God can have superb intelligence, the mind is truly the key to a believer's growth into being an over comer. The battlefield between God and Satan is for the mind of humankind, the believer can free their mind (Ephesians 6:17), the mind of their

⁴³ Moody, Gene B (Date Unknown) Teaching Manual. Baton Rouge: Moody Press

children (1 Corinthians 7:11; John 17:12, Isaiah. 54:13; Ephesians 6:11) and the minds of the ones to be delivered (Ephesians 6:18; Romans 8:26-27).

Methods Satan uses to get the mind get in bondage:

- Satan is a legalist. This means that he knows when he has legal right to send or keep an evil spirit in a person, saved or unsaved. For instance: the act of smoking gives legal grounds for nicotine, craving of smoke, addiction, and many other spirits to enter and stay in a person.
- Explanation: This has to be correct or the Bible could not say the carnal flesh is at enmity (open warfare) with God. This means that the cells and blood have to be full of evil spirits or it would not be at war with the Father.
- In many scriptures the Lord says these will be visited upon the third and fourth generations.
- **This gives Satan legal grounds to afflict an unborn baby, newborn baby, children and adults until these curses are removed.**

If a child had unexplained nervousness, fears, lying, inability to trust, always having to prove themselves in dead-heat competition, hate and hatefulness, strong leaning to sexual perversions, hypocritical, fantasy, inability to cope with life or people, extreme self-centeredness, extreme emotions, bad temper, depression, confusion, frustrations, being victimized or unable to control their actions, then the child probably need deliverance in the subconscious mind as well as conscious mind.

After deliverance the child will need to learn what the Bible says about each area of deliverance and should be taught to obey, to ask God to help them understand themselves, to think differently – to renew their thought process. Without the demons the child should be able to obey God's instructions.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Deliverance: Break all inheritance from ancestors' sins that would give rise to demons in the subconscious mind. These would include idol worship (Masons, occult, cults, Catholic, etc.), sexual sins (bastards, incest, adultery, homosexuality, music, media etc.) and ungodly attitudes of the parents. Start with basic deliverance in subconscious mind and conscious mind (Rejection, Bitterness, Rock Music, unbiblical/secular media and Rebellion). Then call for demon spirits that went in from the abuser (Spirits of Abuse) and call out the Victim Spirit.

Spiritual abuse in the subconscious and conscious mind is something which happens in the spiritual realm; it might seem odd but with regards to music and the media, if the rock or pop star abuses the child's innocence (refer to Chapter Three) they will be seen as the abuser of the child— and that specific spirit needs to be addressed in the child. All the demons that clings to these idols will be transferred to unsuspecting children if they are open therefore, thus not under the protection of the Blood of the Lamb.

The following table includes the demons that could be present in **subconscious and conscious mind:**

BEATING	DISCONTENT	COVETOUSNESS
LETHARGY	HATE	DEJECTION
STEALING	COMPROMISE	GUILT
HOPELESSNESS	KLEPTOMANIA	MASTURBATION
RETALIATION	SUICIDE	MATERIAL LUST
DEPRESSION	DESTRUCTION	DEATH (WELCOME FANTASY)
FOOD LUST	PRIDE	POUTING

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

MORBIDITY	GREED	HOMOSEXUALITY
CURSING	HEAVINESS	CRITICISM
DESPAIR	BERATING	GLOOM
INTOLERANCE	EGO	INFERIORITY
FALSE BURDENS	IRRITABILITY	HARLOTRY
LONELY	WORRY	COMPETITION
DESPONDENCY	TIMID AND SHY	DREAD
DRIVING	FEAR OF AUTHORITY	NADEQUACY
APPREHENSION	ARGUMENT	RAPE
INEPTNESS	NERVOUS	GRIEF
DISGUST	SUSPICION	EXCITEMENT
SORROW	LYING AND DECEIT (FOR PROTECTION)	JEALOUSY
SCHIZOPHRENIA	HEARTACHE	SPITE
MENTAL ILLNESS	EXPOSURE	HATRED
RETARDED	CRYING (FOR CONTROL OF OTHERS)	CRUELTY
MADNESS	FRIGIDITY	DISCOURAGED
CONTENTION	MANIC DEPRESSIVE	SADNESS
DEFEATED	DAYDREAMING	PARANOIA
LAZINESS	PRETENSE	FANTASY
UNFAIRNESS	DEATH	MURDER
DISTRUST	FEAR OF JUDGEMENT	CURSING
SADISM	PRETENSION	FEAR OF CONDEMNATION
FEAR OF ACCUSATION	MOCKERY	GOSSIP
BACKBITING	UNREALITY	HYPERACTIVE
ESCAPE	FEAR OF REPROOF	BELITTLING
DRIVING	INDIFFERENCE	SENSITIVENESS

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

HALLUCINATIONS	IDLENESS	RAILING
NO PEACE	STOICISM	AGGRAVATED
PASSIVITY	NIGHTMARES	SELF-PITY
FANTASY LUST	PROCRASTINATION	SLEEPINESS
CONFUSION	SELF-REWARD	ALCOHOL
FRUSTRATION	SELF-HATRED	LISTLESSNESS
DRUGS	FORGETFULNESS	SELF-AWARENESS
FUNK	QUARRELING	INCOHERENCE
SELF- CONDEMNATION	INDECISION	FIGHTING
DOUBT	SELF-PROTECTION	INCEST
TORMENT	UNBELIEF	SEXUAL IMPURITY
HARASSMENT	SKEPTICISM	LUST

Table 4: Demonic spirits in the conscious and subconscious mind⁴⁴

6.7 Drug Addiction

Lots of children around the world are on very dangerous psychiatric drugs. In the past five years alone, the number of children committing suicide is up over 600%. Evidence is mounting, on a daily basis, that this tragedy is directly related to psychiatric treatment of children at an early age. Over the past ten years, psychiatry has shifted its income base from primarily treating adults to primarily treating children. This has been made possible by group medical plans which have recently (over the past 12 to 15 years) included coverage for psychiatric "*treatments*".

⁴⁴ Deliverance for the subconscious mind (Abused Child) (www.demonbuster.com/dftsm.html)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

As a result, there are over 400% more children in psychiatric hospitals today than in 1980. It is estimated that the number of school children carrying psychiatric "diagnoses" of "mental illness" is up over 1000% in the same time period. In today's society, hanging a label of "mental illness" on a child is like hanging a sign around the child's neck saying, "GARBAGE: TAKE IT AWAY!" Under psychiatry's invented criteria, there isn't a single normal childhood behaviour which doesn't fall within the broad "symptoms" which comprise so-called "mental illness". Psychiatry has implanted a so called solution to the problems encountered in the education of children. Psychiatry's solution is to "medicalize", label and then to cash in on the most common problems of life, including those experienced daily by people who educate and live with children.

The American Psychiatric Association published a test called the "Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders". In the psychiatric industry it is known as the "bible of psychiatry", it is so highly regarded because if a "mental illness" is not in this book, insurance companies will not pay the bill.

Whether any of the above "criteria" fit any particular child, depends only on the subjective opinion of the "adult" making the "diagnosis". As anyone can observe, some adults are better able to tolerate activity in children than others. This tolerance or intolerance for that matter can even vary, in the same adult, over a period of time. The real trick is to get the parents to buy the "diagnosis" of "mental illness". Parents are often told or led to believe that "there is a real 'scientific' basis for the 'disease'." This is an utter falsehood. The only "criteria" are those listed above and the obvious financial benefits to the psychiatrist and other so-called "mental health professionals". The truth is, psychiatrists say they "don't know what causes children to act as they do". The main criteria for having the "disease" seems to be the

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

parents' willingness and ability to pay for "*treatment*" and often whether the parents have psychiatric coverage on their medical insurance.

The parent who still believes a child is too active, should know that there are alternatives to drugging the child. In fact, there is extensive information available on handling active children without drugs. However, the first alternative to drugging a child, which the parent must recognize and choose, is to "*not drug the child*".⁴⁵

List of demons, drugs, signs, symptoms, reactions and effects to cast out in the name of Jesus:

- Cylert, Dexedrine, Mellaril, Tofranil, Haldol, Thorazine, Ritalin, Speed and Amphetamine-Like Drugs
- Withdrawal, Depressed Mood, Fatigue, Psychotic Episodes, Severe Prolonged Depression, Paranoia, Suicidal, Severe Sleep Disturbances, Bed Wetting, Increased Dreaming with Nightmares
- Mental Illness, Crazy, Insanity, Nutritional Deficiencies, Stunting of Growth, Allergic Reactions
- Anxiety, Tension, Extreme Agitation, Irritability, Psychosis
- Mood Swings, Nervousness, Insomnia, Dizziness, Headache, Appetite Loss, Unexplained Fever, Blurred Vision, Joint Pain, Uncontrolled Movements, Rash, Hives, Sore Throat, Nausea, Abdominal Pain, Chest Pain, Fast/Irregular Heart Beat, Unusual Bruising, Unusual Tiredness, High Blood Pressure
- Confusion, Behaviour Problems

⁴⁵ Moody, Gene B (Date Unknown) Teaching Manual. Baton Rouge: Moody Press

- Tourette's Syndrome, Body Ticks, Spasms, Barking Sounds, Screaming Babble, Screaming Obscenities
- Seizures, Epileptic, Convulsions, Fits, Grand Mai, Petit Mai, Body Twitches, Violent Muscular Spasms, Unconsciousness. Brain Damage
- Over Stimulation of Central Nervous System, Death, Vomiting, Tremors, Exaggeration of Reflexes, Muscle Twitching, Convulsions, Coma, Euphoria, Confusion, Hallucinations, Delirium Sweating, Flushing, Headache, High Fever, Abnormally Rapid Heart Rate, Irregular Heart Beat, Pounding Heart, High Arterial Blood Pressure, Pupil Dilation, Dryness of Mucous Membranes
- Thorazine, Chemical Lobotomy, Thorazine Shuffle, Slack Jawed, Drooling, Palms Turning Back, Arms Hanging Slack, Tardive Dyskinesia, Uncontrollable Muscle Spasm, Tongue Rolled Over, Tongue Protruding, Limbs Shake, Parkinson's Disease
- Attention Deficit Disorder, Minimal Brain Dysfunction, Learning Disability, Impulse Disorder
- Hyperactivity, Inattention, Impulsivity⁴⁶

6.8 Imaginations

The Pattern that most people follow when it comes to imagination is - they look at it, they take it, they eat it and then they give it to somebody else. Imaginations come from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. They do not come from the tree of life. In the Garden of Eden were two trees, one was called the tree of life. There was another tree in the garden called the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. That tree had on it two types of fruit, good fruit and evil fruit.

⁴⁶ Moody, Gene B (Date Unknown) Teaching Manual. Baton Rouge: Moody Press.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

On the tree there were two different types of fruit, the knowledge of good and the knowledge of evil, but they both had the same root. Some people think, "*I'm going after knowledge, good knowledge.*" But what tree are they really picking it from? Christians needs to seek truth and not just knowledge. The Word of God is truth. Sin is always first conceived in the imaginations of man. Now the serpent came to Eve and challenged God's Word in her life. The devil will challenge God's Word in each and every Christian's life and then try to pull them into the realm of imaginations to dwell on it, his reason for it is that he want to person to give birth to the imagination.

Imaginations release fear, confusion, make's someone self conscious, destroys the persons prayer life, attack others, release lust (especially what is seen in the media today– it promotes corruptive and destructive imagination patterns), cut a person off from God, imaginations will make a person walk in witchcraft, (when they image their will be done instead of God's will), imagining things that aren't true – which could lead to false agreements, imaginations lead to carnal living, imaginations exalt themselves against the knowledge of God in a person's life

***pulling down imaginations and every high thing that exalts itself against
the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought into the
obedience of Christ;***

2 Corinthians 10:5 MKJV

Every imagination must be in obedience to the Lord, when it differs from the Word of God it must be bound and the imagination must be casted out by asking the Lord to cleanse the mind of imagination and to renew the mind and thought process which goes against His principles. (Also see section above – deliverance of the subconscious mind).⁴⁷

⁴⁷ Clark, J (1999) Imaginations – Don't live there. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing, pp. 35-53, 60-

7. SPIRITUAL BOUNDARIES IN A FAMILY HOME

After deliverance and counseling it is important to set the right atmosphere in a family home, a place the child can feel acceptance, love, joy and peace. These following points could be used as a guideline to implement this in the home.

7.1 Specific Boundaries

Boundaries are a set of limits that specify what is permitted and what is not permitted. Some are set from a practical perspective and others for health reasons. When a child becomes a teenager, he or she will test these boundaries and often challenge the authority they have lived under. This is when tough love is necessary to hold your line as parent and not to compromise. It is the parents responsibility not to keep something in the house they do not want their children to participate in, or that would encourage children to follow their practice. Which could include, smoking, alcohol, pornography (even by Television)

7.2 Building an altar

Building an “altar” in your house, alter by definition is a meeting place between God and man. It is thus a place in the house which is set aside to intimately meet with God and encounter His presence. Identify a peaceful place to enter into prayer with the Lord.

But you, when you pray, enter into your room. And shutting your door, pray to your Father in secret; and your Father who sees in secret shall reward you openly.

Matthew 6:6 MKJV

7.3 The anointing of the Holy Spirit

The anointing of the Holy Spirit is an inward presence, a divine energy that dwells in the spirit - ***holy of holies*** of a Spirit-filled believer. There is, however, an act of anointing that is performed by anointing with oil those who are sick and desiring healing (James 5:14-15). Anointed prayers are the most effective types of prayer to pray. **Anointing your house** involves taking a small portion of olive oil, which represents the Holy Spirit's anointing, and applying it with your finger to the posts of your door, both outside and inside the home. Whereas the oil itself does not have any intrinsic value, in Scripture the act of anointing was seen as a consecration of a person or thing to God. In the time of Moses oil was used to anoint the high priest, his sons, the furniture of the tabernacle and was even mixed with the bread on the table of showbread, recorded in Exodus chapters 29, 30, and 40.

When the anointing oil was poured upon the heads of leaders, the Holy Spirit descended upon them, as recorded in Scripture when Samuel anointed young David in the midst of his brothers (1 Samuel 16:13). Throughout the Bible the oil alludes to the anointing and the anointing is what sets a person apart for the ministry and spiritual authority.

7.4 Mark ones house with the Word of God

The Lord taught the early Israelites to **mark the gates of their homes with the Word of God**. In biblical times a sacred object called a *mezuzah* meaning “doorpost” was designed. It is a small case that has a rolled parchment within it, on which scriptures are written on. It is attached to the right side of the doorposts on the homes of Torah-observant Jews. It is based upon the following scripture

Hear, O, Israel. Jehovah our God is one Jehovah. And you shall love Jehovah your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might. And these words which I command you this day shall be in your heart. And you shall carefully teach them to your sons, and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way, and when you lie down, and when you rise up. And you shall bind them for a sign upon your hand, and they shall be as frontlets between your eyes. And you shall write them upon the posts of your house, and on your gates.
Deuteronomy 6:4-9 MKJV

Some have suggested that the purpose for the *mezuzah* was to remind the Jewish people, on a continual basis, of the Blood of the Lamb, which, when applied on the doorposts in Egypt, prevented the Angel of Death from entering the home and killing the firstborn. This theory, however, is an opinion and not based on the rabbinic understanding of the purpose of the *mezuzah*. It is important to note that this is **not some kind of charm designed to ward off demons!**

It is a reminder to those living in the home that the house has been dedicated to God and that those living therein should commit to walk in accordance with God’s Word. It is viewed however, as an object, reminding God to protect the home.

The *mezuzah* can be placed at the doorpost as a physical reminder when one walks past it - that the house and the family are dedicated to God, that the house is a dwelling place for the Lord and that in all that each person in the house do should be

to glorify the Lord - let this be a reminder to the head of the household to set an example of faith in the family and to teach the children the Word of God – the Bible.

But as for me and my house, we will serve Jehovah.

Joshua 24:15b MKJV

7.5 Music changing the atmosphere in a home

Music can be used to change the atmosphere in a home, word create the atmosphere around people, and especially in a household. Tension is formed when angry negative words are released. **It is therefore utterly important for parents NOT to speak negative words over their children!**

Death and life are in the power of the tongue, and those who love it shall eat the fruit of it.

Proverbs 18:21 MKJV

The psalmist taught that bitter words are like arrows from a bow, there is no greater blessing than a home where the peace of God prevails and those who lie down can have sweet sleep (Proverbs 3:24)

In voice training one is taught to sing and speak from the diaphragm taking the pressure off the vocal chords. When one places ones finger lightly over the diaphragm, simply saying aloud three or four times: “*Hallelujah*” one can barely feel the diaphragm move while singing the word “*Hallelujah*” in a loud voice and hold the sound for about five seconds. It is possible to actually feel the diaphragm moving when singing—much more than when simply speak.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

This is interesting because - when Jesus was unlocking the revelation about worshiping God in spirit and in truth, He was sitting at a well with a woman from Samaria (John 4:6-24). The wells in Christ's time were underground cisterns that either contained a natural spring or, in many cases, held rainwater. Each well had a large stone covering that had to be removed each time someone dipped his or her bucket into the well to bring forth water ensuring the water remained pure from outside impurities.

Later at the temple, during the Feast of Tabernacles, the priests performed a water drawing ceremony. At dawn the high priest descended from Jerusalem's Water Gate to the pool of Siloam and dipped a golden vessel into the flowing (living) water. A team of priests followed him, playing flutes, cymbals, harps, lyres, and bells. The elders and members of the Sanhedrin danced and juggled torches. After the priest reached the large gathering of people at the Temple Mount, he would pour water on the brass altar and proclaim, "*With joy we draw waters from the wells of salvation*" (Isaiah 12:3).⁴⁸ It was in this setting of the water-drawing ceremony, on the last day of the feast, that Jesus made a profound prophecy:

And in the last day of the great feast, Jesus stood and cried out, saying, If anyone thirsts, let him come to Me and drink. He who believes on Me, as the Scripture has said, "Out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water." (But He spoke this about the Spirit, which they who believed on Him should receive; for the Holy Spirit was not yet given, because Jesus was not yet glorified.)

John 7:37-39 MKJV

Jesus said that out of one's belly, or out of one's innermost being, would flow this living water of the Holy Spirit. Jesus said that the river begins in a person's belly. Man is a tripartite- being body, soul, and spirit (1 Thessalonians 5:23). All spiritual

⁴⁸ The Festival of Sukkot (www.templeinstitute.org/tabernacles.htm)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

blessings begin within the human spirit. Solomon wrote, “*The spirit of man is the candle of the **Lord**, searching all the inward parts of the belly*” (Proverbs 20:27). The physical heart is the center of the human body, and the belly is the center of the human spirit.

Emotions are sensed deep within the belly area, fear, grieving and anger can actually be felt stirring in the pit of the stomach. This is because the center of emotions for the human spirit is located in this area.

The diaphragm is similar to the stone covering over the well of water. When praises are sung to God, it opens the covering - ***the diaphragm***, allowing a flow of the Holy Spirit to move through the person, thus releasing a faith-filled atmosphere! Singing has a dimension of its own. Anyone can open his or her mouth and appear to be praising God, but that person’s heart may not be connecting with what they are saying with the mouth. This was a problem with the hypocritical Pharisees in Christ’s time. Christ said, “*These people draw near to Me with their mouth, and honor Me with their lips, but their heart is far from Me*” (Matthew 15:8). Their praise was coming from the head and not from the spirit.⁴⁹

Paul revealed the importance of music and singing and how it assists in stimulating the Holy Spirit within man.

And do not be drunk with wine, in which is excess, but be filled with the Spirit, speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;

Ephesians 5:18-19 MKJV

⁴⁹ Stone, P (2011) Pruning your House, Pruning your Family Tree. Florida: Charisma House. pp, 32-37,143-152.

When a person sings to the Lord the well of one's spirit is opened, allowing the presence of the Lord to move within, upon and around one!

7.6 Covering the Child in the Blood of Jesus

It is important that parents cover their children in the Blood of Jesus with daily prayer for protection and life in abundance. Just as the blood was sprinkled in the days of Moses on the doorpost's for the protection of the entire family, the child must be covered with the protection of the Lord. Parents should teach their children to pray and ask Jesus to protect them by His blood and to sanctify them, to keep them on within His divine plan for their lives.

Parents should teach their children to not leave the house without putting on their armor God has given them. (Ephesians 6:10-18, as mentioned in preparations for Deliverance). They should be taught to focus their attention on Jesus, by allowing the Holy Spirit to have His way in their lives. They should immerse themselves in Scripture by reading their Bible so that God's truth could saturate their whole being with Love.

7.7 Daily Praying for one's children

Every Parent should daily shower their children with prayer, it is also important to pray with the child enabling them to learn how to pray to the Lord.

Shabbat is a Jewish tradition, which starts at sundown on a Friday and ends when the sun sets on Saturday and it is dedicated to family, community and spiritual renewal. Traditionally Shabbat includes special blessings that are said over children

on Friday night. Customarily it is the father who blesses the children by laying his hands on their heads and reciting the blessings below.

However, in modern times it is not unusual for mom to help dad bless the children. This can be used as a model for Christians to help them in praying for their children it should never be seen as a habit or old tradition but as a chance to connect the child with the Lord, it should always be regarded as something special, thereby reinforcing the fact that the child is loved, accepted and supported by their families.

7.7.1 The Shabbat Blessing for a Son:

The traditional blessing said for a son asks God to make him like Ephraim and Manasseh, who were two of Joseph's sons in the Bible. Ephraim and Manasseh were the sons of Joseph. Just before Joseph's father, Jacob, dies he calls his two grandsons to him and blesses them, expressing his hope that they become role models for the Jewish people in years to come, they were the first two brothers who came before the likes of Cain and Abel, Jacob and Esau – who did not fight with each other, by contrast they were known for their good deeds, “*How good and pleasant is it for brothers to sit peacefully together*” (Psalms 133:1).

English: *May God make you like Ephraim and Manasseh*

Transliteration: *Ye'simcha Elohim ke-Ephraim ve hee-Menashe*

And he blessed them that day, saying, In you shall Israel bless, saying, God make you as Ephraim and as Manasseh. And he put Ephraim before Manasseh.

Genesis 48:20 MKJV

7.7.2 The Shabbat Blessing for a Daughter

The blessing for daughters asks God to make them like Sarah, Rebecca, Rachel and Leah. These four women are the matriarchs of the Jewish people. According to Jewish tradition they were strong women who kept faith with God during tough times. Between them, they endured martial troubles, infertility, abduction, envy from other women and the task of raising difficult children. But whatever hardships came their way these women put God and family first, eventually succeeding in building the Jewish people

English: *May God make you like Sarah, Rebecca, Rachel and Leah.*

Transliteration: *Ye'simech Elohim ke-Sarah, Rivka, Rachel ve-Leah.*

7.7.3 The Shabbat Blessing for Children

After the above blessing is recited over sons and daughters, many families recite an additional blessing that is said over both boys and girls. Sometimes called the "*Priestly Blessing*", it is an ancient blessing that asks God to bless and protect the Jewish people.

English: *May God bless you and protect you. May God's face shine toward you and show you favor. May God look favorably upon you and grant you peace.*

Transliteration: *Ye'varech'echa Adonoy ve'yish'merecha. Ya'ir Adonoy panav eilecha viy-chuneka. Yisa Adonoy panav eilecha, ve'yasim lecha shalom.*⁵⁰

⁵⁰ Blessing the Children on Shabbat (www.judaism.about.com/od/judaismbasics/a/Blessing-The-Children-On-Shabbat.htm)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Jehovah bless you and keep you. Jehovah make His face shine upon you and be gracious to you. Jehovah lift up His face to you and give you peace. And they shall put My name upon the sons of Israel. And I, I will bless them.

Numbers 6:24-27 MKJV

Below is a sample prayer for children.

“Father, Your Word is true and I believe it. Therefore, in the Name of Jesus, I believe in my heart and say with my mouth that the Word of God prevails over my children. Your Word says that You will pour out Your Spirit upon my offspring and Your blessing upon my descendants. I believe and say that my children are wise and that they take heed to and are the fruit of godly instruction and correction. I love my children and I will diligently discipline them early. Because of that, they give me delight and rest.

Father, I take Your Word that says You will contend with him who contends with me, and You give safety to my children and ease them day by day. They are blessed when they come in and when they go out. I confess that You, Lord, give Your angels special charge over my children to accompany and defend and preserve them. I believe they find favor, good understanding and high esteem in Your sight, Lord, and in the sight of man.

I confess that my children are disciples taught of the Lord and obedient to Your will. Great is their peace and undisturbed composure. I believe I receive wisdom and counsel in bringing up my children in the discipline and instruction of the Lord. And Your Word declares that when they are

old they will not depart from it. So I commit them to Your keeping and I know and have confident trust that they are watched over and blessed of the Lord all the days of their lives, in Jesus' Name.”⁵¹

8. SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Assisting others caught in demonic bondage does not depend upon a particular type of giftedness. Some gifts probably make this type of counseling easier for some than for others. But the authority, victory, protection and position necessary for successfully challenging demons is something freely given to every Christian.

Demons do not typically leave because of the faith or authority of the individual assisting the demonized person, they leave because the demonized individual is willing to: 1) Confess the sin(s) that provided the foothold in the first place 2) ask God to cancel the ground or permission given over to the demons, effectively removing their right to stay and 3) command the controlling demons to leave. Standing on the authority, victory, protection and position God purchased and delegated to every true Christian through the cross, resurrection and intercession of the Lord Jesus Christ.⁵²

***For though walking about in flesh, we do not war according to flesh.
2 Corinthians 10:3 MKJV***

⁵¹ Prayer for your Children (www.kcm.org/real-help/prayer/prayer-your-children)

⁵² Payne, Karl I (2011) *Spiritual Warfare, Christians, Demonization and Deliverance*. Washington D.C: WND Books, p. 125.

God is giving Christians an understanding of Ephesians Chapter 6: "*We wrestle not against flesh and blood.*" Paul states that Christians do not war after the flesh, but they are in war. "*For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strongholds*" the war is thus against the Powers and Principalities of Satan.

8.1 Praying against the deaf and dumb spirit – assault through the ear and mind gate

Horn⁵³ states that with the advent of cell phones, iPods, and other "*personal devices,*" the **ear-gates of an entire generation have been treacherously compromised.** In addition to the obvious physical risks that associate cell phone use and texting while driving, effects have been measured on teenage language abilities and a markedly increased incidence of tinnitus, a chronic "*ringing-in-the-ears.*"

A 2005 ChildWise study found that one in four children under the age of eight had a mobile phone, a figure which increased to 89 percent by the time the child reaches eleven years.

"*Teenagers: A Generation Unplugged*" is a 2008 study which determined that four out of five teens carry a wireless device (an increase of 40 percent from 2004) and found that their cell phones rank second, only to clothing, in communicating personal social status and popularity, "*outranking jewelry, watches and shoes.*" Additionally,

⁵³ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates, How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology and Human Enhancement Herald the Dawn of Techno Dimensional Spiritual Warfare.* USA: Library of Congress, pp. 224-229.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

over half (52 percent) view cell phones as a form of entertainment and **80 percent feel that a cell phone provides a sense of security** while 36 percent dislike the idea of others knowing their exact location.

While a recent WHO [World Health Organization] study determined that a cell phone-cancer link is inconclusive, the UN [United Nations] did acknowledge that the 2010 examination of thirteen thousand participants found up to 40 percent higher incidence of glioma, a cancerous brain tumor, among the 10 percent that used the mobile phone most. While there is near-unanimous agreement within the scientific community that it is simply too early to accurately project damage caused by radiation, even the most modest estimates acknowledge minimal consequences, the estimated 4.6 billion cell phone users "*appear prepared to take the risk*" without "*firm assurances*" that they are safe.⁵⁴

As dire as these occurrences for physical damage appear, the psychological and **spiritual implications** are the significantly more profound—and sinister. "*Thought reading*" has come of age. CBS revealed technology conducted at Carnegie Mellon University that makes it possible to see what is happening within the brain while people are thinking. Using specialized magnetic resonance, neuro-activity can be recorded by analyzing brain activity.⁵⁵

While mainstream media carefully smudges the science fiction-actual science line, both government and private research groups charge the fields of neuro-fingerprinting, neuro-databases, and abject control neuro-control.

⁵⁴ Robert Maguire, Charles J. Doe (2008) Commentary on John Bunyan's The Holy War. Minneapolis: Curiosmith, p. 11.

⁵⁵ "How Technology May Soon Read Your Mind", CBS 60 Minutes (June 2009) (www.cbsnews.com/stories/2008/12/31/60minutes/main4694713.shtm)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Following the Human Genome Project's mapping of human DNA, the Human Brain Project, HBP, was launched. The international research group hopes to provide a "blueprint of normal brain activity" to the goal of understanding brain function for improved health care, but inherent in the study is the very real possibility of threatening autonomous and unrestricted thought. If in 2002 the BBC was touting wireless sensors that record and generate brain waves and anatomical functions remotely,⁵⁶ and in 2008, Scientific American reported that scientists can "*selectively control brain function by transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)*" via the pulsing of powerful electromagnetic fields into the brain or a subject's brain circuits.⁵⁷

A March 2010 study published in the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences stated that electromagnetic currents directed at the right temporoparieto junction (TPJ), located just above and behind the right ear, which is the same place priest were anointed that they might hear from the Lord (Exodus 29:20), can impair a person's capability to make moral judgments by inducing a current which disrupts this region of the brain.

By producing "*striking evidence*" that the right TPJ is "*critical for making moral judgments*," Liane Young⁵⁸ noted that "*under normal circumstances, people are very confident and consistent in these kinds of moral judgments.*" The researchers believe that transcranial magnetic stimulation, TMS, interfered with the subject's ability to interpret the intentions of others, suggesting that they are believed to be "*morally blameworthy.*" Subsequent publications have proposed an interest by the U.S.

⁵⁶ "Remote Control Brain Sensor," BBC (November 2002) (www.news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/health/2361987.stm.)

⁵⁷ Mind Control by Cell Phone, Scientific America, R Douglas Fields (2008) (www.scientificamerica.com/article.cfm?id=mind-control-by-cell.)

⁵⁸ Liane Young, Joan Albert Camprodon, et al, "Distributing of the Right Temporo-Parietal Junction with Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation reduces the Role of Beliefs in Moral Judgements," Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (March 2010) (www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2010-03/miot-mjc032510.php)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

military to use transcranial magnetic stimulation to enhance soldiers' battle duration by reducing the need to stop for sleep.⁵⁹

It is chilling to note that the area of the right ear now targeted by electromagnetic currents, to impair judgment – it opens up a lot of questions regarding the mysteries of the mind and what God knows that Christians don't about spiritual gateways existing in these regions – seeing as priests were anointed there.

Satan opens mind gates through new technologies, another example of how near-horizon neurosciences and human-machine integration may reconfigure human brains to allow borderline supernatural activity involves certain video games played before bedtime, which are being shown to allow people to take control of their dreams, to shape the alternate reality of dream worlds in a way that reflects spiritual warfare.

According to LiveScience senior writer Jeremy Hsu, published studies on the dreams of hard-core gamers by Jayne Gackenbach, a psychologist at Grant MacEwan University in Canada, found that gamers experienced reversed-threat simulation in nightmares, which allowed the dreamer to become the threatener instead of the threatened. In other words, a scary nightmare scenario turned into something "*fun*" for a gamer, allowing the player to assume the role of the aggressor or demon attacker. "They don't run away; they turn and fight back. They're more aggressive than the norms," Gackenbach explained. "Levels of aggression in gamer dreams

⁵⁹ EM Field, Behind Right Ear, Suspends Morality, Sci-Tech Heretic (March 2009)
(www.heretic.blastmagazine.com/2010/03/em-field-behind-right-ear-suspends-morality)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

also included hyper-violence not unlike that of an R-rated movie," and when these dreaming gamers became aggressive, "oh boy, they go off the top".⁶⁰

From learning to influence mankind's private dreams via game-tech to having man's dreams infiltrated and manipulated by outside forces, disquieting ideas deepen. In the 2010 movie *Inception* starring Leonardo DiCaprio, industrial spies use a dream machine called PASIV to steal corporate secrets by means of invasion and "extraction" of private information through a victim's dreams. In a second scenario, the film depicts ideas planted in the person's mind (inception) so that the individual perceives them as his or her own, thus allowing the victim to be steered toward particular decisions or actions - a modern upgrade on brainwashing.

While the film *Inception* is fantasy, it is based in part on near-future technology. Electroencephalograms, functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (fMRIS), and Computed Tomography (CT) scans are already being used to "read and even influence the brain," points out Aaron Saenz at the Singularity Hub. But could the fundamental science that the film *Inception* examines actually be setting the stage for making it a reality? "We're certainly working towards it," Saenz adds, continuing: "In the next few decades we could have the means to understand, perhaps in rather detailed terms, what a person is thinking. Once that barrier is passed, we may."⁶¹

Knowing that this technology exists, parents should open the spiritual ears – and ask the Holy Spirit for conviction and in these areas, asking the Lord to reveal any deaf and dumb spirit lurking behind electronic equipment children gets so easily attached

⁶⁰ Video Gamers Can Control Dreams, Study Suggests, Live Science (www.livescience.com/culture/video-games-control-dreams-100525.html), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.

⁶¹ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates, How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology and Human Enhancement Herald the Dawn of Techno Dimensional Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Library of Congress, pp. 224-229.

too. Parents should pray and anoint their children – so that they too will hear to voice of the True Living God, that they may receive discernment enabling to determine right from wrong, that they may abstain from what is spiritually harmful to them.

8.2 The Sword of the Spirit as Protection for the Family in the End Times

Study earnestly to present yourself approved to God, a workman that does not need to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth.

2 Timothy 2:15 MKJV

The Word of God is the Christian's only inspired sourcebook on Spiritual Warfare and other books are useful only as they are in harmony with the Word of God. It is the Scripture rightly divided and applied that insures victory. Spiritual warfare should be founded and grounded upon the Word of God and growing in knowledge about the Truth, which is the Lord Jesus Christ.

This book of the Law shall not depart out of your mouth, but you shall meditate on it by day and by night, so that you may be careful to do according to all that is written in it. For then you shall make your way prosperous, and then you shall act wisely.

Joshua 1:8 MKJV

It is important to take time to read and learn the Word of God, as a Christian cannot become strong in warfare if this is neglected and, memorising Scripture in context, to lift a verse out of its context is always somewhat dangerous since it opens the door for a misapplication of God's truth. It is important to memorise and get to know the Bible

For the Word of God is living and powerful and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing apart of soul and spirit, and of

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 MKJV

From this verse in Hebrew one cannot help but notice the power of the Word of God to do its workings which brings life and power within Christians. It works in the soul, the spirit, and the body, and ministers to the deeper motivations of man's heart.

The Word of God is God's medicine for all manner of spiritual ills, as it is consumed it provides spiritual nourishment, the very source of spiritual life – the Word of God washes and purifies man.

Reflection on the Word is only possible if it was first committed to memory. Then no matter where what a person is doing, they can begin to meditate⁶² on a passage word by word, line by line, and verse by verse. Complete new insights will come to the believer as he/she lets the Holy Spirit open the text to their understanding. Memorization and meditation upon the Bible is perhaps the single greatest step a believer can take in helping him overcome the world, the flesh, and the devil.

The Word of God needs also to be systematically read and studied as it relates to Satan, God's enemy. Biblical insight into how Satan operates, where he came from, and how he provides his followers strong equipment in spiritual warfare, the believer intending on claiming all of his victory in the Lord Jesus Christ should familiarize himself with basic biblical information about his enemy.⁶³

⁶² Meditate - meaning not the worldly fashion of blanking one's mind, by reflecting and learning the Word of God.

⁶³ Bubeck, Mark I (1975) *The Adversary*. Chicago: The Moody Bible Institute, p 55-57.

8.2.1 Victory over a passive mind

Bow down your ear, and hear the words of the wise, and apply your heart to My knowledge. For it is a pleasant thing if you keep them within you; they shall all be fitted in your lips, so that your trust may be in Jehovah, I have made known to you this day, even to you. Have I not written to you excellent things in counsels and knowledge, that I might make you know the sureness of the words of truth; to return the words of truth to those who send to you?

Proverbs 22:17-21 MKJV

Keep your heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life. Put away from you a wicked mouth, and devious lips put far from you. Let your eyes look right on, and let your eyelids look straight before you. Ponder the path of your feet, and all your ways will be established. Do not turn to the right hand nor to the left; remove your foot from evil.

Proverbs 4:23-27 MKJV

Reading and memorising the Word of God gives one victory over a passive mind – it leads to the renewal of one's mind. **To know the voice of the Lord is to know what He teaches!** It is imperative that a believer guards their heart as from the heart flows the issues of life, if a person has a heart filled with darkness, darkness, wickedness and evil will come out of their mouth, a person with a heart filled with the Light of Christ will be a blessings, their mouth will speak life and the truth of God.⁶⁴

8.3 The Path to Freedom

⁶⁴ How to Have Victory over a Passive mind (www.layevangelism.com/qreference/spiritual-warfare/spiritual-warfare8.htm)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

The very first step to freedom is knowledge of the truth regarding the source and nature of experiences the believer has had since his entrance into the spiritual life—experiences that may have been perplexing or else thought with deepest assurance to be of God.

There is no deliverance from deception except through acknowledging and accepting the truth.

When a believer faces the truth in regard to certain spiritual and supernatural experiences, a sharp-edged knife will pierce his self-respect and pride. (See above Hebrews 4:12.) This process requires a very deep allegiance to the truth that God's will and desires should reign in the inward parts of His children. It means a believer must accept truth that cuts and humbles as readily as he accepts that which is agreeable. To come to know that one has been deceived is one of the keenest blows to a person who once thought that he was so advanced, so spiritual, and so infallible in obeying the Spirit of God. A believer very easily believes a lie about themselves and from their experience. When the truth breaks upon his mind, its entrance is not agreeable. It is not easy for him to absolutely disbelieve what he once believed so thoroughly.

Spiritual experiences does not make one spiritual the spiritual man is a person who lives in, is governed by, and understands his spirit, and who understands cooperation with the Spirit of God. A great experience accompanying entrance into the realm of the Spirit does not make a believer spiritual.

Christians should be vigilant and as the Holy Spirit for the gift of discernment in order not to be deceived by Satan and his demons. Through the entry of truth, a person

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

must be brought to the place where he acknowledges his condition frankly, as follows:

- To believe that it is possible for a Christian to be deceived and oppressed by evil spirits.
- It is possible for a Christian to be deceived.
- If the Christian was deceived by an evil spirit – he or she should acknowledge and find out, why they were deceived.

Assuming, then, that the believer has discovered he is a victim of lies from deceiving spirits, the steps to freedom is briefly:

- Acknowledging the deception
- Refusing ground
- Steadfastly fighting all that deception is
- Being on guard against excuses
- Detecting all the effects of deception
- Discerning the result of the above actions

The believer must learn to read the signs of deliverance, as well as the symptoms of deception, lest he be deceived again by the Adversary.⁶⁵

⁶⁵ Peninhlewis, J (1996) *Secrets of Spiritual Warfare*, USA: Whitaker House, pp. 191-221.

9. EFFECTIVE WAYS OF MINISTERING/EVANGELISING TO TROUBLED CHILDREN OR YOUTH

The Gospel is the good News of the Lord Jesus Christ. It is not a negative pronouncement, a book of laws, or a funeral eulogy; and it isn't an argument or an apology. The Good News of Jesus Christ is the promise of **eternal life and the only hope for personal change and abundant life**. Every person who responds positively to the Gospel does so through the work of the Holy Spirit in their lives, not the clever technique of the presenter. But God has chosen to use people to share His message with other people. The Holy Spirit wants to work through each and every person if they allow Him to. Effective and responsible evangelism to children involves the balance of the following:

- Proclamation—verbal communication of the message
- Relationship—personal communication, winning the right to be heard, being a significant person in another person's life
- Incarnation—living demonstration of the message

The facts of the Gospel should be presented to children in an easy to understand “*simple*” way: (Romans 5:6-8).

- God is good, He is love, and He loves His children (1 John 4:16; John 3:16).
- Mankind has broken fellowship and friendship with God through self centeredness and rebellion (sin) Romans 3:23; 1 John 1:8).
- The natural result of this break with God is death, eternal death (Romans 6:23; James 2:10).

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- In spite of man's attitudes and actions, God continues to love them, and He sent Jesus to earth to rescue mankind from sin and death. (1 John 3:5; Romans 5:6-8)
 - Jesus is God (Philippians 2:6).
 - Jesus is man, but He is perfect (1 Peter 2:22).
- Jesus died on the cross, in mankind's place, taking penalty of sin on Himself (1 John 4:10; 1 Peter 3:18)
- Jesus rose from the dead and lives today (Acts 17:2-3; Romans 8:34)
- Mankind can restore their relationship with God and have new, eternal life by renouncing sin and believing in Jesus - accepting what He did on the cross and giving one's lives to Him (John 1:12; Acts 3:19; Ephesians 2:8-9).

The child should understand:

- God forgives and declares children "*not guilty*" (Ephesians 1:7).
- God gives children life (John 10:10).
- God makes children His very own children (1 John 3:1-3).
- God guides children's lives through the Holy Spirit (John 16:13; Romans 15:13).
- God promises children heaven when they die (John 14:1-4).

Effective communication begins with knowing the message. But this is just the beginning. This message must be translated into the individual language of the listener - the troubled young child.

Every child is unique; to communicate the Gospel successfully to troubled youth one needs to understand that they have a complex package of needs. The child has social, physical, mental, and emotional needs which are not being met. . Typical

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

evangelical approaches to sharing the Gospel are usually inappropriate and ineffective with troubled youth because their needs and other limitations become obstacles to understanding and knowing God.

The troubled young person who has learned not to trust anybody will find it difficult to trust God. The troubled young person who models his or her life after self-centered parents and other family members will not understand Jesus giving His life for that person's sin. The troubled young person who believes that love is for self-gratification will not comprehend God's love. This includes those who equate "love" with "sex"—a message prevalent in their music and peer group, and probably with their parents too. The troubled young person who lives in emotional and material poverty will find it difficult to respond to an offer of "*abundant life*" from someone he or she cannot see. The troubled young person with an underdeveloped or weak conscience will experience little guilt or sorrow for sin

The young troubled person who does not trust the "*establishment*" will find it difficult to trust the God who is so often associated with the status quo. The troubled young person who only knows retribution will find it difficult to consider the significance of God's forgiveness. Because of these problems, the central concepts of the Gospel are foreign to most troubled young people.

The Holy Spirit will guide the counselor, caregiver or parent to lead the child to Christ, the following prayer of commitment is a model prayer helping the child to pray and ask the Lord to come into his or her life.

Prayer of Commitment

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Professing personal faith in Jesus is a decision which is made in the heart and expressed with the lips to God and others (Romans 10:10). When leading a young person to Christ, explain that you will pray aloud for him or her. Then he or she should pray, preferably aloud, expressing the following to God:

"I'm sorry for my sin and for living apart from You"

"Thank You for sending Jesus to die on the cross for me and for making available forgiveness, eternal life, and a relationship with God."

"Come in and take over as Lord of my life; I give my life to You"

Then you pray again, aloud, thanking God for what He is doing right now in this person's life. Immediately following this prayer be sure to give the young person two simple assignments:

- to read and think about a few Bible verses that you will assign,
- to tell another person who would really love to hear about what just happened in his or her life.

This process of teaching the Gospel and helping troubled youth begins with a relationship, is smothered with love and prayer, continues with a careful and simple explanation of the Good News, and moves toward a personal decision and relationship with Jesus Christ.⁶⁶

⁶⁶ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 112-114.

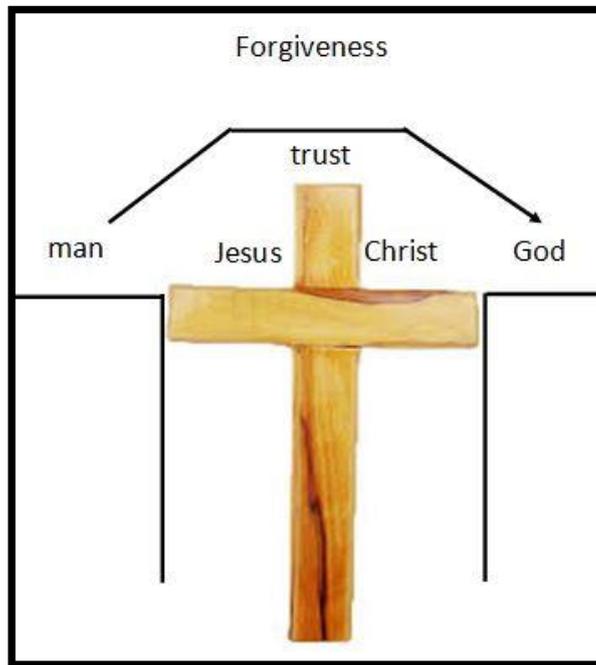
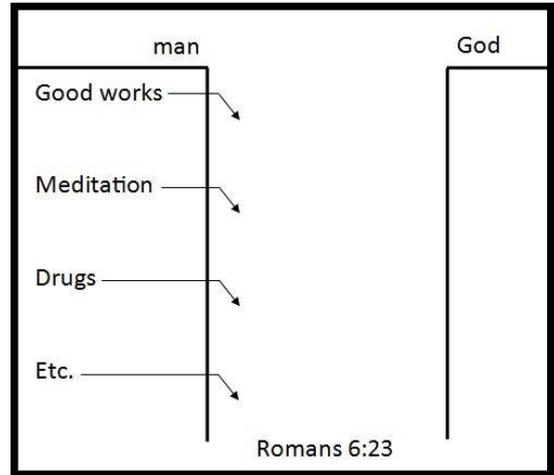
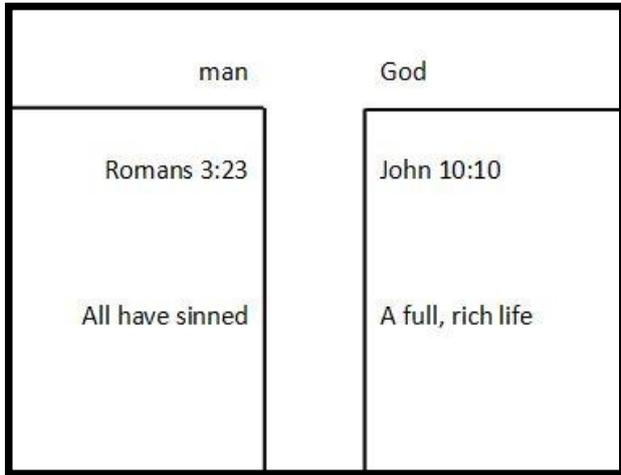
9.1 Teaching the Gospel with the Bridge

The bridge is a simple yet effective way of communicating the Gospel: Begin by explaining the first picture: there is a gap between man and God which is so wide that one cannot even see the other side, it exists because of self-centeredness and rebellion. God wants His children to have a rich, full life with Him, but mankind are separated from Him by their sins.

Man tries a lot of things to have a full life, video games, certain music, good works, drugs, friends, sex, alcohol, cigarettes, etc.,. but all of these attempts are futile and people end up lost forever, they end up in hell (Romans 6:23).

Finally the cross is drawn in the middle of the gap – to illustrate how Christ has become mankind's bridge to God (1 Timothy 2:3), the bridge is crossed through personal commitment to Jesus Christ (John 1:12).

Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting the Youth of Today in the Hand of God



**9.2 Material to use by Teachers, Pastors, Educators, Sunday School Teachers
and Parents Educating and Counselling Children About the Curses**

CURSES
The Epitome of Curses on the House of God

Occasionally God gives Satan the legal right to send demons onto people to injure and destroy them. At other times God may bring people who are Satan's servants to conquer and destroy – for example invading armies of foreign nations.

Jeremiah 17:9-10
The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked,
Who can know it. I the Lord search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways and according to the fruit of his doings.

Psalm 119: 11
Your word I have hidden in my heart, that I might not sin against You.

Curses from God can consist of several different things. Sometimes a curse from God is direct injury and destruction through such things as catastrophic weather, disease, lack of fertility and economic collapse.

Jeremiah 17:5
Thus says the Lord; cursed be the man that trust in the man, and makes flesh his arm, and whose heart departs from the Lord

Sources or Roots of Curses:

Several sources of curses exist. We will examine the following roots of curses:

- Inheritance
 - The sins of the forefathers
 - Broken dedications to Satan
 - Ancestors' acceptance of curses on the lives of descendants
 - Continuing in the sins of the forefathers

- Involvement with unclean and unholy things
 - Bringing cursed objects into the home/office
 - Handling unholy things
 - Giving honour to demon gods
 - Following demonic fads

- Territorial rights violations
 - Touching Satan's ground
 - Going into battle against Satan without being specifically commanded to by God
 - Living on unclean or cursed land
 - Living in unclean or cursed housing

- Performance of demonic rituals
 - Through occultic drawings

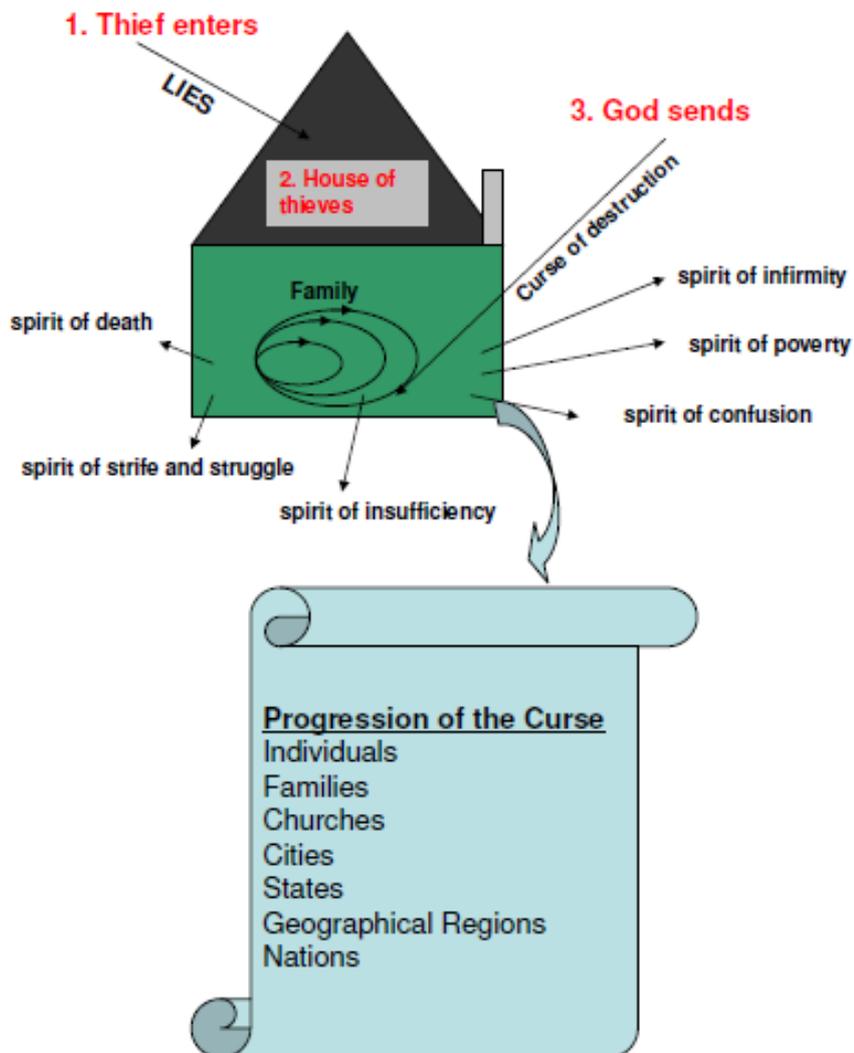
*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Through the spirit realm directly
 - By use of personal items
 - By attaching to animals and pets
 - Through cursed gifts
- Distinct situations and actions
- Ridiculing Satan
 - Partaking of food sacrificed to idols
 - Hatred, jealousy and the misspoken word
 - Circumstances beyond our control
 - Breaking vows to God

Often we give Satan legal right to attack us because we, knowingly or unknowingly, become involved in situations that open the door just enough for him to gain entrance. Most curses come from this source. It is only as that legal right is removed through repentance and cleansing that we can then break a curse.

Before we discuss exactly how to break curses, we need to show how we can give Satan the legal right to attack us and put curses on our lives.

CURSES FROM GOD ON THE HOUSE (GENERATION)



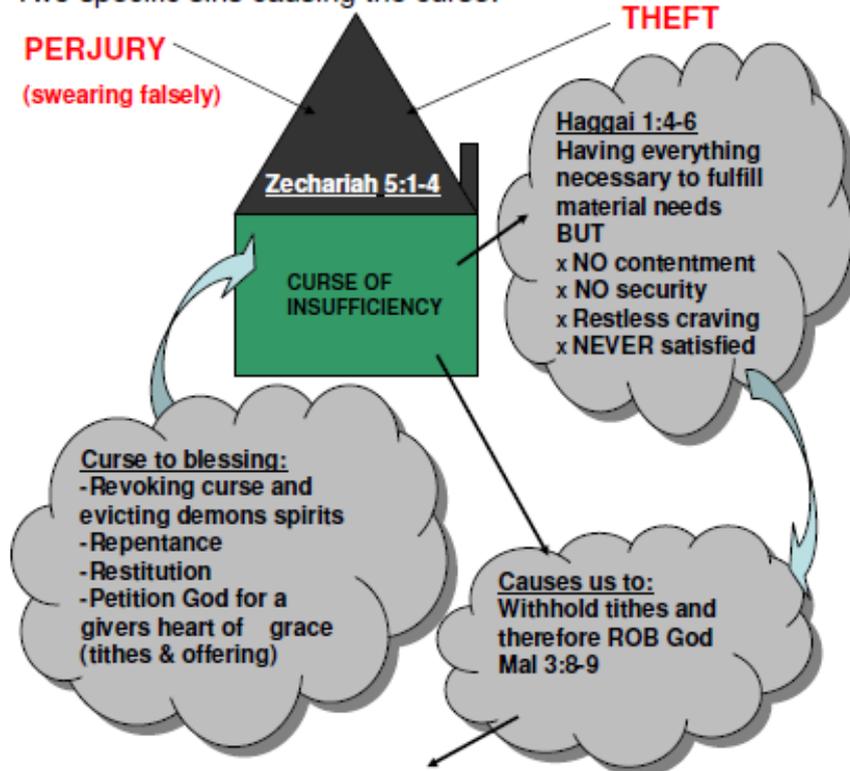
THE CURSE OF INSUFFICIENCY (a curse brought upon on selves)

The Outworking of GOD's Curse

Two specific sins causing the curse:

PERJURY
(swearing falsely)

THEFT



Brings a curse on:

- Nation
- Every area of our lives

9.3 Image to Use while Ministering the Triune God to the youth

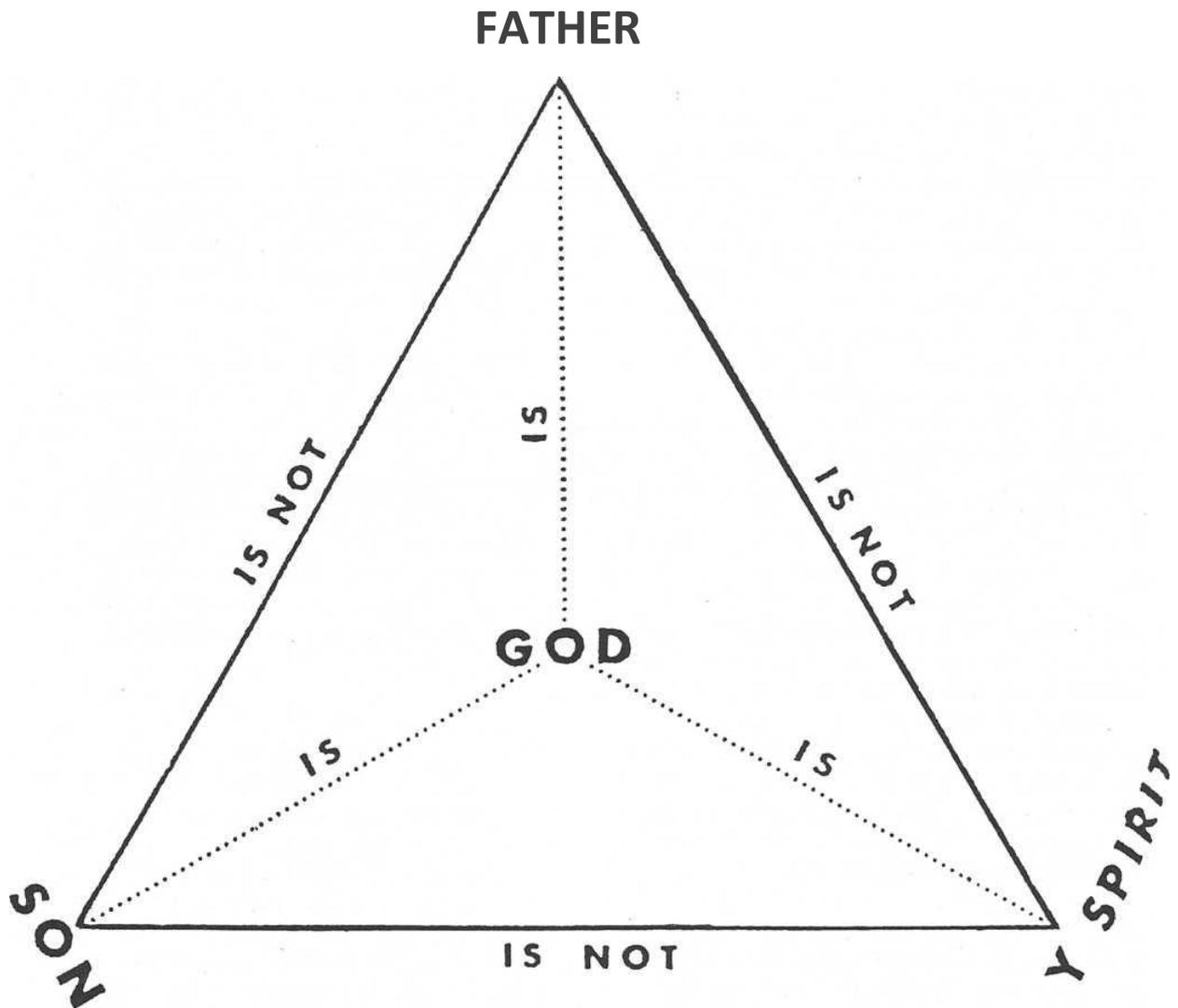


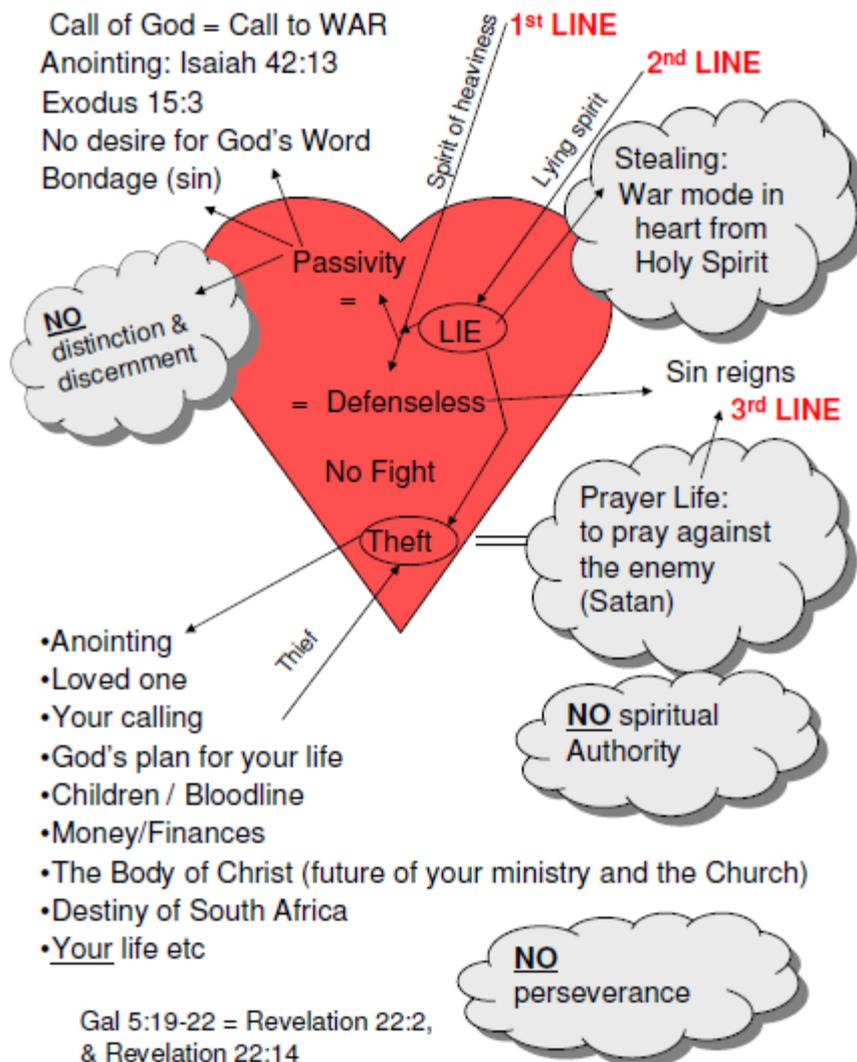
Figure: Triune God⁶⁷

⁶⁷ Waldeck, Val (1993) *What do they believe?* Durban South Africa, p. 78.

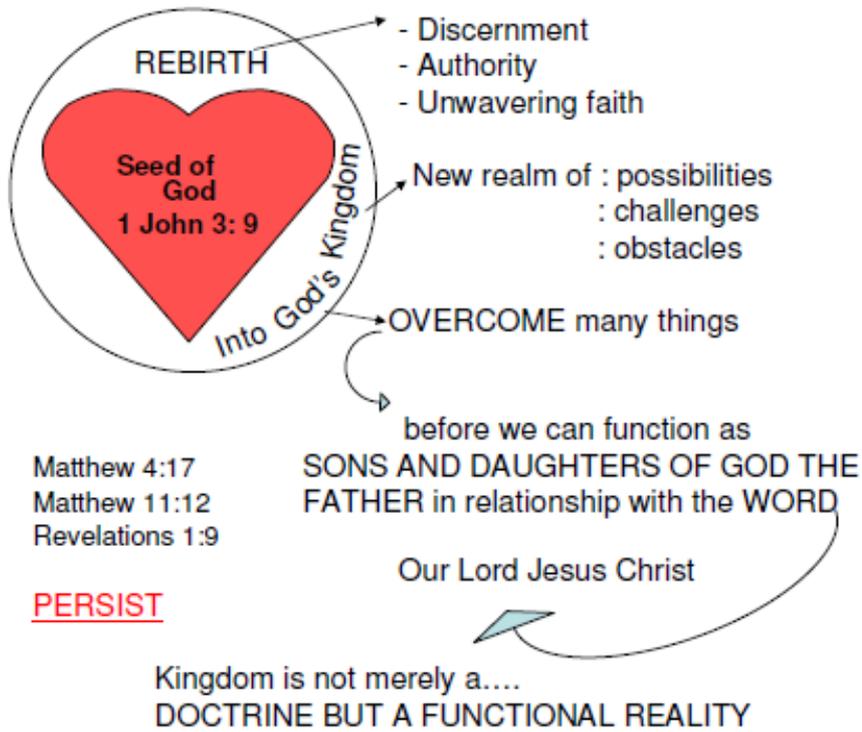
9.4 Teaching Manual for Children with Regards to Spiritual Warfare.

**The LORD is a man of War:
LORD is His Name
1.SATAN'S ASSAULT**

Call of God = Call to WAR
Anointing: Isaiah 42:13
Exodus 15:3
No desire for God's Word
Bondage (sin)



2. SPIRIT



Jesus Christ Said:

Luke 8:15

x Severe = extreme

x Contend for the faith

x Wrestle against Principalities & Powers

x Don't give up: (Satan's plan)

x Endure hardship (soldiers)

x Defeat is not final

x Surrender is not an option

x No lethargy, oppression

Possess God's
Promises, walk in it

Persevere on behalf of
families, cities, nations

In the NAME

Be saved:
Overcome : by the
power of the Holy
Spirit
Revelation 12:11

OF JESUS

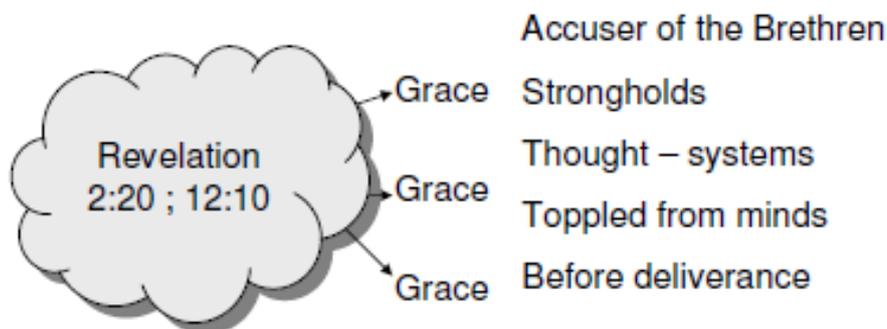
3. ANOINTED FOR SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Isaiah 42:13 (Man of War)

Anointing : Provided insight and discernment
: Imparted new vigor and authority
: When you are weak and weary
: Empowerment in overcoming the demonic attacks
: Holy Spirit confirming His word / strength
: Supply weapons of the Word

Psalm 18:31-34

: Holy Spirit unmask many covert works of demonic realm eg Jezebel

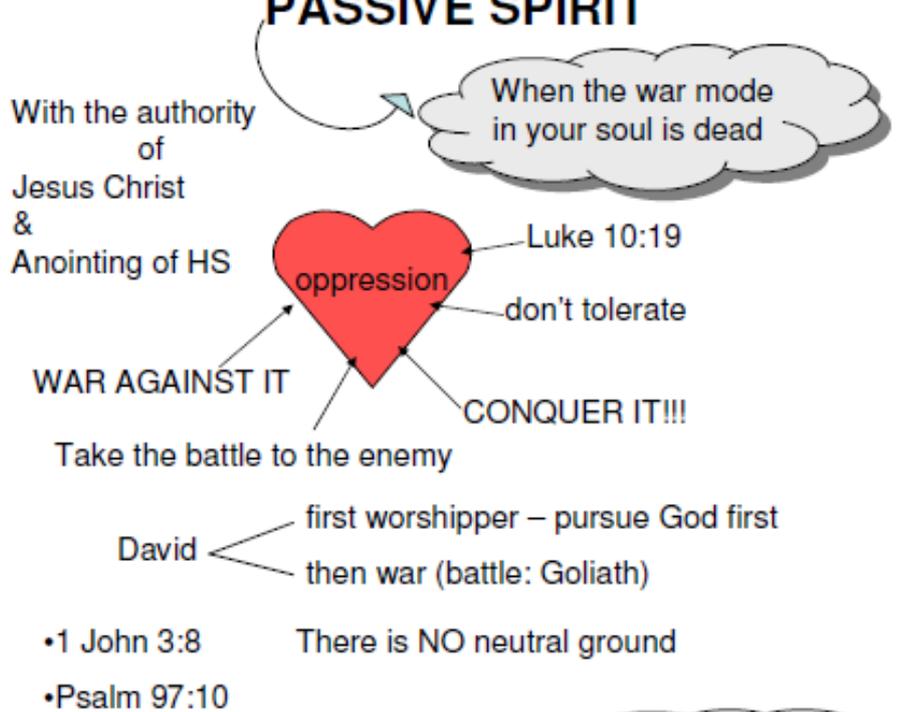


: Supernatural weapons Ephesians 6:14-17

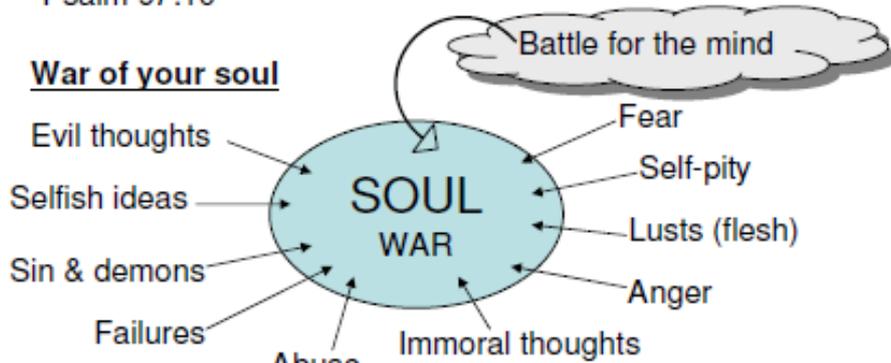
Aims of the Anointing

- 1) To supply information
- 2) To impart a measure of Anointing for Christians
TO STAND WITH CHRIST in the days of battle
(Revelation 19:11-15)

5. BREAKING THE BONDAGE OF A PASSIVE SPIRIT



War of your soul



WARNING:

Matthew 12:43-44

Matthew 12:45

9.5 Resources for Parents⁶⁸

Here are a variety of resources, including books and videotapes, to promote a child's security and thus help him or her overcome the wolves of this world. The resources are in five areas: (1) building a loving marriage, (2) communicating biblical sexual values, (3) modelling the responsible use of money, (4) giving a balanced, biblical view of spiritual warfare issues, and (5) understanding how to rear your children.

Building a Loving Marriage

Campbell, Ross. *How to Really Love Your Child*. Wheaton, 111.: Scripture Press, 1977.

Finzel, Hans, and Donna Finzel. *The Top Ten Ways to Drive Your Wife Crazy—And How to Avoid Them*. Wheaton, 111.: Victor, 1996.

Harley, Willard F., Jr. *His Needs, Her Needs*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Revell, 1994.

McDowell, Josh and Dick Day. *How to Be a Hero to Your Kids*. Dallas: Word, 1991.

Smith, Jim. *Learning to Live with the One You Love*. Carol Stream, 111: Tyndale, 1991.

Trent, John. *Love for All Seasons: Eight Ways to Nurture Intimacy*. Chicago: Moody, 1996.

Wheat, Ed. *Love Life for Every Married Couple*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Zondervan, 1980

Communicating Biblical Sexual Values

Learning About Sex Series. St. Louis, Mo.: Concordia, 1988.

⁶⁸ Bubeck, Mark I (1997) *Raising Lambs Among Wolves*. Chicago, Illinois: Moody Press, p. 223-225.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

This series is available in book and video form with helpful discussion sheets and leaders notes. The five books/videos, which are age-graded, are: *Why Boys & Girls Are Different* (ages 3 to 5), by Carol Greene; *Where Do Babies Come From?* (ages 6 to 8), by Ruth Hummel; *How You Are Changing* (ages 8 to 11), by Jane Graver; *Sex and the New You* (ages 11-14); and *Love, Sex & God* (ages 14 and up), by Bill Ameiss and Jane Graver.

God's Design for Sex Series. Colorado Springs: NavPress, 1994.

The four books in this series are: *The Story of Me*, by Stan and Brenna Jones; *Before I Was Born*, by Carolyn Nystrom; *What's the Big Deal*, by Stan and Brenna Jones; and *Facing the Facts*, by Stan and Brenna Jones.

Modelling the Responsible Use of Money

Briles, Judith. Money Sense: What Every Woman Must Know to Be Financially Confident. *Chicago: Moody, 1994*.

The Stewardship Series, by Larry Burkett. The first two books are very helpful in understanding the place of money and possessions in our lives: *Caretakers of God's Blessings: Using Our Resources Wisely* and *Where Your Treasure Is: Your Attitude on Finances* (Chicago: Moody, 1996).

Larry Burkett has provided a wealth of materials that promote the biblical perspective of financial matters. These materials may be accessed by writing to: Christian Financial Concepts, P.O. Box 2377, Gainesville, GA 30503, or calling 1-800-722-1976.

Humber, Wilson J. The Financially Challenged: Survival Guide for Getting Through the Week, the Month, and the Rest of Your Life. *Chicago: Moody, 1994*.

Having a Balanced, Biblical View of Spiritual Warfare Issues

Anderson, Neil T. *Living Free in Christ*. Ventura, Calif.: Regal, 1993.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

- Bubeck, Mark I. *The Adversary*. Chicago: Moody, 1975.
- Dickason, C. Fred. *Angels, Elect and Evil*. Chicago: Moody 1975.
- Logan, James. *Reclaiming Surrendered Ground*. Chicago: Moody, 1995.
- Murphy, Ed. *Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville: Nelson, 1992.
- Warner, Timothy. *Spiritual Warfare*. Wheaton, 111.: Crossway, 1991.
- Wiersbe, Warren W. *The Strategy of Satan*. Wheaton, 111.: Tyndale, 1985.
- Rearing Our Children
- Campbell, Ross. *Kids in Danger*. Wheaton, 111.: Victor, 1995.
- Dobson, James. *Parenting Isn't for Cowards*. Dallas: Word, 1987.
- . *The New Dare to Discipline*. Wheaton, 111.: Tyndale, 1992.
- Johnson, Greg, and Mike Yorkey. *Faithful Parents, Faithful Kids*. Wheaton, 111.: Tyndale, 1993.
- Krueger, Caryl Waller. *365 Ways to Love Your Child*. Nashville: Abingdon, 1994.
- Rogers, Adrian. *Ten Secrets for a Successful Family*. Wheaton, 111.: Crossway, 1996.
- Wright, H. Norman. *The Power Of a Parent's Words*. Ventura, Calif.: Regal, 1991

10. SPIRITUAL BLESSINGS TO BE PRAYED OVER CHILDREN

The blessing that follows is from the book of Gunter and Burk⁶⁹ and is included as an example of a spiritual blessing on sonship, and can be said every day to one's children or it can be spoken to someone else's spirit or oneself. The way to do it is to engage in the person spirit by looking into his eyes and speak to the person's spirit.

*“(Person's name), I call your spirit to attention. Listen with your spirit to the
Word of God for you. “Those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of*

⁶⁹ Gunter, Sylvia & Burk, Arthur (2005) *Blessing your Spirit*. Canada: The Father's Business, pp. 13-15.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

God. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by Him we cry, 'Abba, Father.

The Spirit Himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children, then we are heirs - heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ, if indeed we share in His sufferings in order that we may also share in His glory. I consider that our present sufferings are not worth comparing with the glory that will be revealed in us" (Romans 8:14-18), the Spirit of your Father gives witness that you are His son and are led by His Spirit. I bless you, _____, with the Spirit of sonship and the mindset of sonship. I bless you with embracing problems with the confidence that God is in them to give you grace to solve them and to overcome. I bless you with deep heart identity as God's very own child, securely loved in his family, calling him "Abba, dear Father. " I bless you with the Spirit of sonship that does not make you a slave to fear because you know your Abba is with you. I bless you with the settled assurance that He has a future and a hope for you that He has written your days in His book with love for your best interests and His ultimate glory.

I bless you with being filled with deep knowledge that your Abba knows what you need and has all the resources of the universe to meet the need. Listen again, with your spirit to the Word of God for you. "The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children." I bless you with ears to hear the testimony of the Spirit of the Lord - the Spirit of wisdom and understanding, the Spirit of counsel and power, the Spirit of knowledge and the fear of the Lord. I bless you with delighting in obedience in the fear of the Lord. I bless you with the Spirit of God at home in you so that you will not judge by what you see with your eyes, mere appearance, or false

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

evidence, or decide by what you hear with your ears or by deceptive conclusions. I bless you with being tuned into God with eyes for seeing and ears for listening according to His Spirit. I bless you with being led by the fullness of the Spirit of truth to call forth God's true spiritual discernment to see things as He sees them in the spirit realm.

Listen again with your spirit to the Word of God for you. "Now if we are children, then we are heirs - heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ, if indeed we share in his sufferings in order that we may also share in his glory." I bless you with deep knowledge that you are an heir with your brother Jesus to all the treasures of your Father. I bless you with confidence that you have the riches of your Father and that you lack nothing that you need emotionally, physically, practically, mentally, spiritually, in any way.

I bless you with embracing the fellowship of the sufferings of Jesus, so that you will be blessed with sharing His glory. I bless you with realizing the glory that you have and embracing the glory that you are.

Listen again, with your spirit to the Word of God for you. "I consider that our present sufferings are not worth comparing with the glory that will be revealed in us." I bless you with the sure understanding that His ways are not our ways, and He wants to have His way for your good and His glory. I bless you with pressing forward to see the glory that He is revealing. I bless you as you listen everyday as the Lord gives you the tongue of one being taught, "An instructed tongue, to know the word that sustains the weary" (Isaiah 50:4). I bless you with the beauty, satisfaction, and fulfilment of your Father wakening your ears morning by morning, opening

*your ears to be taught by Him, and I bless you with presenting to Him a heart that does not rebel or shrink away from what He puts before you day by day. I bless you with hunger for His glory every day, as you search Him out in His Word and watch and listen every day at the doorpost of the counsels of His wisdom. I bless you with glimpses of His glory revealed to you. I bless you in the name of Jesus of Nazareth”.*⁷⁰

10.1 Spiritual Protection to be prayed against Spiritistic Harassment

“Loving heavenly Father, (I/we) welcome your protective presence with us in this time of prayer. I ask You to assign Your holy angels to protect and guard us and our children with their guarding protection during this time of prayer. In the mighty name of our Lord Jesus Christ and by the power of His blood I command all powers of darkness not having assignment against us or our family to leave our presence. They may not intrude or in any way seek to disrupt this confrontation against powers of darkness seeking to afflict and control _____. I also ask that all powers of darkness that Satan has assigned to rule over _____ be subdued and forbidden to work in any way against while (he/she) sleeps.

Thank You, Lord Jesus Christ, that You promised to never leave us or forsake us. I welcome Your unseen presence here in this room with us. It’s in Your mighty name, Lord Jesus Christ, that I take authority over those forces of darkness seeking to harass and rule over my child. As the spiritual and parental guardian of _____ and as one who is seated with You in the heavenly realms, I use my authority in Christ to command all

⁷⁰ Gunter, Sylvia & Burk, Arthur (2005) Blessing your Spirit. Canada: The Father’s Business, pp. 13-15.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

powers of darkness seeking to control _____ to be bound here in the presence of the Lord Jesus Christ. (At this point refer to your prepared list of suspected activities of powers of darkness. Use the name of the symptom you see to identify the suspected strongholds. They and your Lord know their identity. Proceed with this kind of prayer.)

I pull in and bind before the Lord Jesus Christ all powers of darkness working against _____ in footholds and strongholds of (name those workings of darkness you believe are troubling your child, such as fear, hate, lust, rage, etc.). I command that they become and remain whole spirits. I bind all their hosts who work with them, all backup systems and replacer powers of darkness. There may be no restructuring, regrouping, or multiplying of the activity of the powers of darkness assigned against _____. In the name of my Lord Jesus Christ and by the power of His blood, I command these powers of darkness to give full attention to what my Lord Jesus Christ will say to you.

I now ask You, Lord Jesus Christ, in that spiritual realm where You dwell with me, and where these powers of darkness know Your presence, to tell these scheming, troubling forces of evil where they must go. I want them to leave _____ and our family totally and completely. I ask You to insure that they go where they cannot return to continue their evil work. (A pause of reverent waiting for our Lord to address His will and authority over them is in order.)

I now ask that the Holy Spirit would evict from _____'s presence all these powers of darkness. They must go where the Lord Jesus Christ has commanded them to go. I ask the Spirit to make a thorough search in and around to make sure that there are no lingering forces of evil to deceive

and rule over _____. May the Holy Spirit sanctify _____'s whole person from the defiling works of darkness. I invite the Lord Jesus Christ by the power of the Holy Spirit to do Your great work of drawing _____ to Yourself for blessings and spiritual growth. Thank You, loving heavenly Father, for the faith and grace You have given to me to use my authority in Christ to stand in watchful protection over _____. I yield fully to Your plan and purpose for this battle. Grant to me the wisdom and grace to protect my family, and guide each one into Your plan and will. I worship You and give You thanks in the name of my Lord Jesus Christ.”⁷¹

Amen

11. CONCLUSION

The New Testament teaches the concept of two important words, **power and authority**, since the Christian's warfare is against numerous spirit rebels – they will need power and authority to protect their children from the powers of Darkness. Power is the Greek word *dunamis* (in Acts 10:38) which alludes miraculous power and in Luke the world power in Greek is *exousia*, which alludes to having judicial authority. In the ministry of Christ both power and authority was used, He laid hands on the sick and when people touched Him in Faith, the Word teaches that “*virtue*” left Jesus' body, entering the sick, bringing healing (Mark 5:30). The English word virtue is *dunamis* the same Greek word used for power in Acts 1:8⁷²

⁷¹ Bubeck, Mark I (1997) *Raising Lambs Among Wolves*. Chicago, Illinois: Moody Press, p. 231-233.

⁷² Stone, P (2011) *Pruning your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma House. pp, 170-171.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

But you shall receive power, the Holy Spirit coming upon you. And you shall be witnesses to Me both in Jerusalem and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and to the end of the earth.

Acts 1:8 MKJV

This power is an inward energy of the Holy Spirit – the anointing of the Holy Spirit that is released through the hands of an anointed person when praying for a person who is sick, oppressed or in spiritual bondage.

Authority is released through words. After Jesus' disciples witnessed Him doing supernatural miracles, including His dominion over the demonic realm, the Lord began to transfer this same power and authority to His followers.

Truly I say to you, Whatever you shall bind on earth shall occur, having been bound in Heaven; and whatever you shall loose on earth shall occur, having been loosed in Heaven. Again I say to you that if two of you shall agree on earth as regarding anything that they shall ask, it shall be done for them by My Father in Heaven. For where two or three are gathered together in My name, there I am in their midst.

Matthew 18:18-20 MKJV

In this verse Jesus revealed that whatever is bound on earth is bound in heaven and whatever is loosed on earth is loosed in heaven, thus whatever one forbids on earth is forbidden in heaven and whatever is allowed on earth is allowed in heaven. With this principle in mind, mankind can ask God to let His will be allowed on earth – to let His Kingdom come – to let it be established on earth, through each and every Christian. Asking God to release His love, grace, abundance and peace among people and to earnestly pray for the deliverance of the bound and troubled children, asking God to rise up workers in His field to minister and break the chains by which Satan has bound up the future of the Nation.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

There should be a time for prayer when meeting with troubled youth, thereby teaching them to pray. Many young people use prayer as a magic formula or a pious act. They feel that if they get on the right side of God, He will do anything they want, that God can be manipulated and bribed. When their prayers appear - by their standards and experience - to be unanswered, they think God is angry with them or they feel that prayer does not work. Prayer is a good example of an abstract concept that is difficult to teach.

In teaching the Bible to troubled youth, it is important that they see themselves in the Scriptures. The Word cannot be some abstract book with little or no self-realization as to who they are. Bible study should be used to help reinforce values, moral decisions and other life choices.⁷³

Wisdom starts with the fear of the Lord, parents and educators should firstly understand the fear of the Lord themselves, enabling them to “*practice what they preach*”, and then teach children to fear and respect the Lord. They should teach their children to love the Lord with the whole heart, soul and mind.

And you shall love Jehovah your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might. And these words which I command you this day shall be in your heart. And you shall carefully teach them to your sons, and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way, and when you lie down, and when you rise up.

Deuteronomy 6:5-7 MKJV

Putting on the armor of the Lord should be a **daily occurrence**, as in the days where God provided manna for the Israelites, they were only suppose to get enough for the day – as the Lord provided fresh manna every day, based on this principle – God

⁷³ Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 123, 125.

proves mankind with “*fresh*” armor everyday – therefore man should refresh themselves with the fullness of the armor which is within the Lord. When one’s mind is not protected Satan can plant false imaginations, thoughts and ideas which would cause man to obey the voice of Satan.⁷⁴

For such ones are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. Did not even Satan marvelously transform himself into an angel of light?

2 Corinthians 11:13-14 MKJV

The armor of God protects the image of Christ within mankind!

Parents should start blessing and praying for the children when they are in the womb, perfect unconditional love will overcome the problems of even the most troubled children, even when the child came from an unwanted or unplanned pregnancy. Children need to know that they can go to their parents no matter what they had done. They need to feel loved and appreciated, as children can very easily feel rejected which will cause fear of not being loved and cared for.

Faith is the antidote to fear, by receiving and resting in the truths of the gospel translates a Christian’s life into a life of joy, peace, freedom, and love. This truth gives the believer a new way to live and relate to other people. It frees the believer from sin’s stranglehold on his life, liberates the conscience and releases them from living according to the principles of this world.

One of the great hindrances to Christian growth, intimate, healthy relationships, and strong communities is a life of pretence - pretending that there is no struggle with a multitude of sins, such as self-righteous attitudes, foul tempers, nagging anxieties,

⁷⁴ Divine revelations (www.divinerevelations.info/SampsonJude/Testimony_2.htm)

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

lustful looks, controlling and critical hearts, and a general belief that a Christian is a better person than other people. The above mentioned are all factors that the fearful child uses to hide his/her fear of worthlessness and lovelessness. The gospel can change that. One profound prayer that speaks to the need of the Christian is found in Psalms.

***Search me, O God, and know my heart; try me, and know my thoughts, and
see if any wicked way is in me; and lead me in the way everlasting.
Psalms 139:23-24 MKJV***

Sin blocks intimacy with God and others, the Christian needs God's Spirit to show him his many fears and offensive ways. The goal is to grow in intimacy with Him and others to create a healthy family home where children can feel loved and accepted. When the believer lives by unbelief, he is doing less than trusting in something or someone other than Christ for life, happiness, security, respect, love, identity, fulfilment, significance and freedom. Belief in the gospel tears down these false trusts. Faith is a walk of forgiveness and repentance. The Christian that wants to be free from fear has to repent from it.

Blessings prayed from the Word of God over the child will strengthen the child's spirit and help him or her maintain a fearless spirit. Parents should teach their children to test the spirit keeping them from blindly participating in anything (Please see Addendum 3).

It should be the parent's greatest goal to help their children in attaining a sonship relationship with the Almighty God. Sonship is a heart attitude of submission that brings self-redemption; it is a heart characterised by humility and subjection to the mission of Father God.

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*

Truth not only sets free, but it enables parents to parent in freedom, turning their children from Darkness to the Light of righteousness freeing them from iniquities, truth and wisdom of the Lord makes the parent shine like “*the stars forever and ever*”.

***And those who are wise shall shine as the brightness of the sky; and those
who turn many to righteousness shall shine as the stars forever and ever.
Daniel 12:3 MKJV***

-----oOo-----

*Expounding Revelation Pertaining to the Cross and the Divine Victory of Putting
the Youth of Today in the Hand of God*



Conclusion

The thesis concludes that there is **Hope** for the troubled and broken youth, the ultimate hope that the New Testament offers is eschatological. As sure as the Lord came the first time to defeat His cosmic enemy and mankind's oppressor in principle, just as certainly He shall return again to defeat him in fact. Because sickness, disease, war, death, sorrow and tears are not God's will, and because God is ultimately sovereign, Christians can have a confident assurance that someday, when His foes are ultimately vanquished, God will end all sorrow, and every evil which causes such sorrow, and will wipe away every tear from mankind's eyes (Revelations 20:4). Precisely because mankind's present suffering is not God's will - however much He can now use it for mankind's ultimate good - there is an assurance that it shall not always be this way.

Indeed, Paul has the inspired audacity to proclaim that, when the Kingdom has finally fully come, the glory and joy that Christians shall know will render all the sufferings of this present world insignificant.

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

In Scripture God is depicted as the Potter, moulding and sanctifying His children, He is patient because it is not His will to destroy His creation – mankind, He wants each and every person to come to Him and thus He is patient with them. He doesn't want anyone to perish and longs for all to be saved (2 Peter 3:9), but as long as man persist in their evil and unbelief they remain vessels fit for destruction. When a person yields to God's influence and has faith, God fashions a vessel of honour.

Scripture highlights the centrality of the revelation of God in Christ by calling Jesus "the image of God", the passage that most fully develops this theme is found in Colossians, Paul writes:

who is the image of the invisible God, the First-born of all creation. For all things were created in Him, the things in the heavens, and the things on the earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers, all things were created through Him and for Him. And He is before all things, and by Him all things consist. And He is the Head of the body, the church, who is the Beginning, the First-born from the dead, that He may be pre-eminent in all things. For it pleased the Father that in Him all fullness should dwell. And through Him having made peace through the blood of His cross, it pleased the Father to reconcile all things to Himself through Him, whether the things on earth or the things in Heaven.

Colossians 1:15-20 MKJV

Jesus' death and resurrection was an act of war, as God was overthrowing sin and Satan (Romans 8:3; Hebrews 2:14; 1 John 3:8, Colossians 2:13-15). God went the unfathomable extreme of dying a Godforsaken death on the cross because the world was not in accordance with God's will. He did this to accomplish God's will, which is to reconcile the world with Himself and reconcile humans to each other. Through the power which is in God troubled children and youth can be reconciled to their parents and their siblings in perfect unity.

God's omnipotence is displayed in self-sacrificial love.

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

The crucifixion reveals God's attributes. By dying on the cross Christ displayed God's love and did all that was necessary for Christians to participate in God's love. He dismissed the serpent's lie and unveiled the Truth of who God truly is: **unsurpassable love**. He did this while defeating Satan, freeing mankind from Satan's bondage, atoning for their sins and thus opening up the door for them to participate in the very love He was revealing, the Love from the Father God for His children.

God's fullness was perfectly revealed by Jesus hanging and dying on the cursed tree, for the fullness of God is most fundamentally the fullness of his Eternal, Triune Love. God's Holiness was perfectly displayed in His becoming sin for mankind's sake.

For He has made Him who knew no sin, to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

2 Corinthians 5:21 MKJV

God's Eternal Triune Love is the essence of His Holiness. God's righteousness was perfectly revealed in His becoming a judged criminal on behalf of mankind for the righteousness of God is simply the justice of His unsurpassable love. God's power was most perfectly displayed in His allowing Himself to be crucified at the hands of sinners. The power of God is simply the power of His Love.

God's glory was most perfectly revealed in the utter humiliation of the crucified Messiah, most essentially the radiance of His incomprehensible Love is the glory of God. The beauty of God is perfectly revealed in the awfulness of His executed Son, for it is the magnificence of His love put on display to reconnect the sinner to the Creator through His great Love.

Jesus Christ is the perfect expression of God's thought, character and will. He is **God's self-definition** to His created being mankind. Within Christ, God defines and

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

expresses Himself as a God of outrageous love. He is for man and not against them, for He is man's Father, Creator and the Lover of their souls. This is a very important factor for troubled youth and children as they feel that the whole world is turned against them – they should know that they have a Loving Father who loves them more than words could ever express and more than the human mind will ever comprehend. God also defines humans as undeserving people with whom He is nevertheless in love. ***This is the Word and image of the true God.***

When Christians' picture is centred on Christ it enables one to avoid the conclusion that God is mysteriously behind all the suffering and evil in the world.

Christians and all of mankind should know that the mystery of evil isn't about God's character or purposes but about the inconceivable complexity of a cosmos engulfed in spiritual war. The reason the events of life, including God's response to prayer, seem so arbitrary is that mankind is in ignorance and lacks knowledge about the vast network of influences shaping every events.

Freedom through Jesus Christ would help the Christian to understand how evil **can** happen in God's creation and why one typically cannot penetrate the mystery of *why things happen as they do*, understanding this however does not help the Christian in the midst of this war between good and evil, God and Satan, righteousness and iniquity. Especially when the casualty of war is a child, one should however remember the following six biblical principles to cope effectively in this spiritual war and it is important to minister to children as well.

Firstly one should fix their eyes on Jesus throughout the race of endurance, for the love of Jesus for His children expressed in dying for them should be the motivating factor **for God Himself was willing to experience judgement and death to bring evil to an end!**

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

Therefore since we also are surrounded with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight and the sin which so easily besets us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, looking to Jesus the Author and Finisher of our faith, who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and sat down at the right of the throne of God.

Hebrews 12:1-2 MKJV

Secondly God is always with the believer; Jesus knew that His people would suffer because of their commitment to Him – because Satan hates God and ALL of humankind, in particular Christians, therefore he will launch an attack on them just as he had done to Jesus Christ. Today people wonder why “*bad things happen to good people*” the New Testament however teaches that the “*good*” people should expect to suffer (1 John 16:33, 1 Thessalonians 3:4) as the world is however a war zone, Jesus consoles His children by reaffirming that He is always with them even to the end of the age.

teaching them to observe all things, whatever I commanded you. And, behold, I am with you all the days until the end of the world. Amen.

Matthew 28:20 MKJV

Thirdly, one needs to yield to God’s gracious redemptive power. Some people have erroneously concluded that God is the cause or ultimate reason behind all things, they believe that God uses tragedy to benefit their life and thus orchestrated it for this purpose – this is understandable however given God’s amazing redemptive wisdom, these people are actually limiting God in drawing this conclusion they overlook God’s ability to perfectly anticipate and prepare for possibilities with the same confidence He anticipates certainties. These people also contradict the biblical teaching that human and angelic beings have their own free will and cause many things to happen that are against God’s will.

And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are called according to His purpose.

Romans 8:28 MKJV

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

The promise Paul gives in this verse means – *in all things* – whatever or whoever caused them, God *works for* the good, whatever happens or however a person gets into a situation he can be sure that God is already working to bring good out of it. Those who place their trust in God are called to work with Him to bring redemptive meaning out of every event, however tragic it may be.

Fourthly, Christians should stop asking why evil is happening and confront evil. Instead of asking why, Christian warriors should start asking what God, others and they themselves can do to alleviate the pain of the situation to bring fourth redemptive value out of it.

Fifth – Christians must live in and by the Spirit, as every Christian has God's Spirit dwelling within them – which makes them so magnificently unique. The Holy Spirit wants to direct the Christians life on a daily basis, helping them to get into the fullness of Christ to obey and love the Lord with all of their hearts, minds and spirits.

***I say, then, Walk in the Spirit and you shall not fulfill the lusts of the flesh.
Galatians 5:16 MKJV***

Lastly, Christians should live in the Hope of knowing that everything is worth it. Jesus died and every Christian participates in His sufferings and death (Romans 6:3-5; 8:16-18; 1 Corinthians 4:9-12; Colossians 1:24) but He also rose from the dead, His atoning death provides a Christian with the righteousness to stand before God. Even though in this life Christians will be afflicted, because Jesus conquered sin, death and the devil – Christians will ultimately overcome them, be raised from the dead and will live eternally and reign in His unsurpassable love and joy.

There is no Christ-like streak in God, for the fullness of God is revealed in Christ

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

Children should be taught to plead the blood of Jesus over them for protection, physically, emotionally and spiritually. The Kingdom of God is about restoration and reconciliation of all things and He has made the Christian, His spiritual sons and daughters, part of this great story of salvation – it is about freedom from every lord, every idol, and every false imagination - except the Lord Jesus and the defeat of Satan.

When children and the youth actively walk under the Spirit of sonship, entering into the full benefits of an adult son, every striving spirit is put aside and he can properly relate to God as Father. Every child's great need for righteousness and justification is provided by God through Jesus Christ. The child is forgiven his sins and declared righteous, not by striving to please God by his good works, but by trusting in Jesus Christ by Faith.

The child is unconditionally accepted by the Father. He does not have to perform to earn the Father's love, the troubled child and the youth is accepted just the way he is and his potential by developing the correct value of himself through the intimate relationship with the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. The child is free from the yoke of man, the fear of man and the rejection of man. The relationship of sonship is the opposite of slavery.

Effective Spiritual Warfare against ruling spirits through praise, worship and deliverance ministry will be needed (the Nehemiah principle of Nehemiah 1:6-7; see also Leviticus 26:40). *Let thine ear now be attentive, and thine eyes open, that thou mayest hear the prayer of thy servant, which I pray before thee now, day and night, for the children of Israel thy servants, and confess the sins of the children of Israel, which we have sinned against thee: both I and my father's house have sinned.* (Nehemiah 1:6,7)

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

Satan always prefers to work in the dark. John 3:20 expresses very explicitly the attitude of demons to the light of Jesus that comes through the Holy Spirit. “*For everyone who does evil hates the light, and does not come to the light, lest his deeds should be exposed*” While John was talking about people, he was also describing precisely how people behave when they are driven by a demon who wants to remain hidden. Exposure to light is the very last thing a demon would want.

Sin is first conceived in the imagination of man, and ungodly imaginations always come against and undermine God's authority. Imaginations exist in the realm of fantasy birthed in the soulish realm. Your soul is your mind, will, imaginations, emotions, and intellect.

When mankind have an imagination, if it's in one's mind, it is given birth to when spoken with the mouth. It then becomes alive and can affect people in a negative way if it isn't under the obedience of Christ. When mankind prophesies an imagination over others, wishing one's own will over another human being – speaking that vain imagination is operating in witchcraft.

For this reason Satan wants to lure young people into the world of imagination – as youngsters has a vivid and active imagination, he uses the media and music to accomplish his goal by defiling and corrupting the *god given* gift of imagination in children.

The adversary is keenly aware of the power of musical instruments in worship. Satan was originally created as an anointed cherub, a special angel assigned to guard the presence of the Lord. Cherubim protected the gates of the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3:24), and two golden cherubim sat on the lid of the Ark of the Covenant (Exodus 25:18-20). Ezekiel saw cherubim carrying the throne of God in Ezekiel chapter 1. Ezekiel revealed insight into the pre-Fall history of Satan and what his assignment was in heaven:

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

The description given to this anointed cherub begins by describing nine gemstones that formed his covering. These nine stones are also found on the breastplate of the Old Testament high priest, whose golden breastplate held twelve stones identifying the twelve tribes of Israel.

The prophet then described how the cherub had been created with timbrels and pipes, and Isaiah added that Lucifer had viols as a part of his musical gifting (Isaiah 14:11) this angel was created to lead the praise and worship of the angelic hosts before the throne of God prior to the creation of man.

Musicians know that all musical instruments are divided into four different categories:

- Wind instruments
- String instruments
- Percussion instruments
- Brass instruments

The wind instruments are blown with the mouth, the string instruments are plucked with the fingers, and the percussion instruments are played by beating with the hands. This anointed cherub had three of the four main musical groups created within him, the pipes are associated with the wind instrument, the viols with the strings, and the timbrels with the percussion instruments – one instrument group was never given to Lucifer – and that was the brass or the horns.

In the Old Testament there were silver trumpets prepared for the calling of the camp and the journey of the assembly (Numbers 10:1-2). The most common trumpets, however, were the natural trumpets made from the horns of animals, called *shofars* in the Hebrew. These consisted of the ram's horns, which are the small circular horns of a ram and the larger horns of the antelope. As Driscoll pointed out, God never gave Lucifer the horn as one of his instruments since God reserved the voice of the horn for Himself! For example, in the Old Testament when God's voice was

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

heard, it was often compared to the sound of a trumpet by those who heard it (Exodus 19:16). At the return of Christ, He will return “*with a shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trumpet of God*” (1 Thessalonians 4:16). The apostle John was on the island of Patmos when he received his apocalyptic vision. He writes:

After these things I looked, and behold, a door was opened in Heaven. And the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me, saying, Come up here, and I will show you what must occur after these things.

Revelation 4:1 MKJV

To John the voice was like a trumpet, and yet it was the voice of a heavenly being speaking to him. When God created Lucifer, He limited him in several areas. This angel, according to Ezekiel 28, had nine stones as his covering. However, twelve precious stones covered the breastplate of the high priest, meaning that Lucifer was three stones short of a full load! He was created with three main instruments, but God reserved the trumpet for Himself. This was so that when the trumpet sounds, we will know the heavenly sound, which cannot be duplicated or imitated by the enemy!

When Paul and Silas were arrested and beaten for preaching the gospel, they were unable to sleep, and they began singing. What started as a duet quickly became a *trio*—God made it a trio by sending an earthquake that shook the prisoners loose from their chains and broke down the bars holding them in. The incident was so supernatural that the head jailor was converted to Christ, and later, his entire family received the gospel (Acts 16:23-34), **Anointed** music can break the stronghold that surrounds a person!

This was true in the life of King Saul, the first king of Israel. Saul became violently jealous of David because of his military success against Goliath and his new recognition among the people. An evil spirit began troubling Saul, and the tormented king attempted to assassinate David on several occasions. David, however,

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

understood the power of anointed music. Music such as praise and worship songs, Southern gospel, instrumental, and songs on CD by anointed singers and musicians not only can minister to a person, but they can also create an atmosphere in which the Christian can dwell in - even when travelling or isolated from home and friends.

A Psalm of praise. Make a joyful noise to Jehovah, all you lands. Worship Jehovah with gladness; come before His presence with singing. Know that Jehovah, He is God. He has made us, and not we ourselves; we are His people, and the sheep of His pasture. Enter into His gates with thanksgiving, and into His courts with praise; be thankful to Him, and bless His name. For Jehovah is good; His mercy is everlasting; and His truth endures to all generations.

Psalms 100:1-5 MKJV

This thesis proposes another hypothesis in the area of music, to have better control over what children is exposed to in the media and music, as children are fed a heavy dose of ungodly music from a very young age as well as the important aspect of godly music and Scripture being spoken into the spirit of a child in the womb.

Another hypothesis this thesis proposes is the area of education, Statistics in South Africa shows that academically qualified educators are on a very low scale of remuneration, research should be undertaken to improve the quality of educators from preschool to university level. If the knowledge and inspiration of the educator is improved children will benefit from it. For more than five decades, hundreds of millions of dollars in public funds have poured into transhumanist goals; media outlets have denigrated traditional values; the highest courts in the land have ruled with imperious decree against the free expression of Christianity; evangelicals have been disinvited to the National Day of Prayer at the Pentagon; and finally, according to the current president of the United States, Barack Hussein Obama, America is no longer a Christian nation.

The net result is the dawn of a generation without sacred moorings, an era in which people are sufficiently prepared to accept the nightmarish trans-human vision

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

unfolding. Christians should stand against the satanic kingdom like Noah, David, Joshua and Caleb. The gods of chaos are coming. They are poised to redefine what it means to be human, and to remove anyone or anything that stands in their way. The church must prepare for this now, both physically and spiritually, as the threat is real and spreading like cancer. However the hope and the Good News are found in Scripture which very clearly expresses the truth that Satan was defeated when Jesus rose again from the dead and he is firmly under the feet of Jesus. That means that for those who are in Christ, Satan and his demons are also under their feet.

that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of heavenly ones, and of earthly ones, and of ones under the earth;

Philippians 2:10 MKJV

There is no being that will not have to bow the knee to Jesus' name. It is only in His name that believers have power and authority over demons, and they know that they have to submit to His authority. The authority is expressed through the lips of believers. When ministering deliverance in the name of Jesus, believers have all the authority of the courts of heaven to back up their legal claim against demonic power.

One could then ask how to protect one's children from evil; the key context is by spiritual warfare and relationships by love and unity in the Body of Christ through obedience. The dynamic of the Body of Christ drives Satan and his demons away; it is the platform of Spiritual Warfare. The purpose of the Body of Christ is to co-operate to a common goal – the same vision – which is the harvest of souls, to reduce tension and reconcile children to their Creator!!!

This thesis ultimately re-claims the words of Jesus Christ whilst saying.

But Jesus said, Allow the little children to come to Me, and do not forbid them; for of such is the kingdom of Heaven.

Matthew 19:14 MKJV

-----oOo-----



BIBLIOGRAPHY

BOOK RESOURCES

1. Adams, Jay E (1970) *Competent To Counsel, Introduction to Nouthentic Counseling*. Grand Rapids Michigan: Zondervan.
2. Adams, Jay E (1972) *Christian Living in the Home*. Phillipsburg, New Jersey: Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company.
3. Adler, Vera (1972) *The Initiation of the World*. York Beach: Samuel Weiser, Inc
4. Arnold, Johann Christoph (1997) *The Lost Art of Forgiving*. USA: The Plough Publishing House of The Bruderhof Foundation.
5. Borg, M.J (1998) *Conflict, Holiness and Politics*. Trinity Press International.
6. Boyd, Gregory A (1997) *God at War*. USA: Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data.
7. Brand, Connie M.J (1998) *Geestelike Oorlogvoering, Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. Unpublished.

8. Brand, Dr Prof CMJ (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Pretoria South Africa: Unpublished.
9. Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Self-Published.
10. Brand, Prof Dr Connie M.J (2007) Teaching Manual 1 B, Module 1-5. Pretoria South Africa: Self Published.
11. Brand, Prof Dr Connie MJ (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Dissertation for Doctor of Philosophy, UK: Calvary University.
12. Brooks, Thomas (1984) Precious Remedies Against Satan's Devices. The Banner of Truth Trust.
13. Bubeck, Mark I (1975) The Adversary, The Christian Versus Demon Activity. Chicago: The Moody Bible Institute.
14. Bubeck, Mark I (1997) Raising Lambs Among Wolves. Chicago, Illinois: Moody Press.
15. Chapman, G (1983) Building Relationships, Marriage and Family Life Consultants. Winston, N.C.
16. Clark, J (1999) Imaginations – Don't live there. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing.
17. Coleman, Ray (1984) Lennon. NewYork: McCraw-Hill Book Company.
18. Consiglio William Dr (1991) Homosexual No More. Practical Strategies For Christians Overcoming Homosexuality. USA: Scripture Press Publications.
19. De Villiers, Dr Prof P. R (2007) How God created? A scientific approach to God's Creation. Karenpark Zondervan Publishing House.
20. Dickason, C.F (1975) Angels Elect & Evil. Chicago: Moody Press.
21. Durant, Will (1950) The Age of Faith. New York: Simon and Schuster, Inc.
22. Dwight, S and Veerman, D (1987) Reaching out to Troubled Youth, Wheaton: Tyndale House Publishers.
23. Enns, Paul P (1997) The Moody Handbook of Theology, Systematic Theology. Chicago: Moody Press.

24. Ferrell, Ana Mendez (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. USA: Voice of the Light Ministries.
25. Ferrell, Dr Ana Mendez (2010) *Seated in Heavenly Places*. USA: Voice Of The Light Ministries,
26. Frangipane, Francis (1994) *Christ – the remedy that breaks all curses*. The Divine Antidote. United States of America: Arrow Publications.
27. Freedman, D.X. (1986). *Psychiatric epidemiology counts*. Archives of General Psychiatry, 41
28. Gibbens, E (Date Unknown) *River of Life Family Church*.
29. Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. USA :Chick Publications.
30. Grein, Janny (1996) *Called Appointed Anointed, Prepare your Life to be a Vessel for the Anointing and Glory of God*. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House, Inc.
31. Gunter. Sylvia & Burk, Arthur (2005) *Blessing your Spirit*. Canada: The Father's Business
32. Hall, Manly P (1928) *The Secret Teachings of all Ages*. San Francisco: H.S Crocker Company, Incorporated.
33. Hammond, Frank and Ida (1973) *Pigs in the Parlour*. Kirkwood: Impact Christian Books Inc.
34. Hamp, D (2011) *Corrupting the Image, Angels, Aliens and the Antichrist Revealed*. USA: Douglas Hamp.
35. Hearn, Michael P (1973) *The Annotated Wizard of OZ*. NY: Clarkson N. Potter
36. Henderson, D (1978) *Scuse me While I Kiss the Sky, Jimi Hendrix Voodoo Child*. New York: Bantam Books.
37. Horbury, W (1992) *Jewish Inscriptions of Graeco-Roman Egypt*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.
38. Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates, How Genetics, Robotics, Artificial Intelligence, Synthetic Biology, Nanotechnology and Human Enhancement Herald the Dawn of Techno Dimensional Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Library of Congress.
39. Horrobin, P (2003) *Healing through Deliverance*. United Kingdom: Sovereign.

40. Hugh, Larry (2006) 10 Curses that Block the Blessing. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
41. Hunt, Dave (1996) In Defence of the Faith, Biblical answers to challenging questions. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers
42. Klein, J and Spears, A (2007) Lost in Translation, Volume 1. USA: Selah Publishing Group, LLC, Tennessee.
43. Kraft, Charles H (2012) I Give You Authority. Minnesota, Chosen Books.
44. Kroeger, Catherine Clark and Beck, James R (1996) Woman Abuse and the Bible, How Scripture can be Used to Hurt and Heal. UK: Paternoster Press.
45. Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations, An Integrated Approach to Healing Ministry, 2nd Addition. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications.
46. Langton, E (1049) Essentials of Demonology. London: The Epworth Press.
47. Larkin, Clarens (1918) Dispensational Truth. USA: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est.
48. Larkin, Clarens (1921) The Spirit World. USA, Rev. Clarence Larkin Estate
49. Larson, B (1989) Larson's New Book of Cults. Wheaton Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc.
50. Larson, Bob (1999) Larson's Book of Spiritual Warfare. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, Inc.
51. Last Trumpet Newsletter, Vol. IV, Issue XIII, August, 1985.
52. Lutz, Lorry (1997) Woman as Risk – Takers for God. Carlisle, Cumbria: Paternoster Publishing.
53. MacDonald, G (1984) Parents and Teenagers. Scripture Press.
54. Martin, W (1992) The Kingdom of Cults. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House Publishers.
55. Miller, RM and Jackson, KA (1995) Practical Psychology for Pastors, Second Edition. USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc.
56. Moberg, D (1965) The Social Responsibility of the Christian. Grand Rapids, Michigan: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.
57. Moody, Gene B (Date Unknown) Teaching Manual. Baton Rouge: Moody Press
58. Moore, H.L and Sanders T (2001) Magical Interpretation, Material Realities. USA: Routledge.

59. Moran, S (1999) *The Secret World of the Cults, from Ancient Druids to Heaven's Gate*. Italy: CLB International, an imprint of Quadrillion Publication Ltd.
60. Murphy, Dr Ed (1992) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, Inc.
61. Packer, J.I (1993) *Knowing God*. Downers Grove, Illinois: Inter Varsity Press.
62. Patemen, Alan (1991) *Reality of a Warrior*. England: Merseyside Printing Co.
63. Payne, Karl I (2011) *Spiritual Warfare, Christians, Demonization and Deliverance*. Washington D.C: WND Books.
64. Peninhlewis, J (1996) *Secrets of Spiritual Warfare, USA*: Whitaker House.
65. Perkins, J (1984) *Parents and Teenagers*, Scripture Press.
66. Philpott and Hymers, *The Deliverance Book*, op. cit.
67. Plato, (1909) *Symposium*. Cambridge: W. Heffer and Sons.
68. Potts, D and Veerman, D (1987) *Reaching out to Troubled Youth*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers.
69. Prince, Derek (2006) *Lucifer Exposed, The Devil's plan to Destroy your Life*. UK: Derek Prince International.
70. Redl, F and Wineman D (1966) *The Aggressive Child*. Illinois: Free Press.
71. Robert Maguire, Charles J. Doe (2008) *Commentary on John Bunyan's The Holy War*. Minneapolis: Curiosmith.
72. Roger, John and McWilliams Peter (1988,1989) *You Can't Afford the Luxury of a Negative Thought*. California: Prelude Press.
73. Ryrie C.C. (1999) *Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth*. Chicago: Moody Press.
74. Sherman, Dean (1995) *Spiritual Warfare for Every Christian*. USA: YWAM Publishing.
75. Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987) *Reaching out to Troubled Youth*. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers.
76. Springmeier, F and Wheeler, C (2000) *The Illuminati Formula Used to Create an Undetectable Total Mind Controlled Slave*.
77. Stone, P (2011) *Pruning your House, Pruning your Family Tree*. Florida: Charisma House.

78. Subritzky, B (1985) *Demons Defeated*. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd.
79. Subritzky, B (1985) *Demons Defeated*. New Zealand: Dove Ministries Ltd.
80. Sumrall, Dr Lester (2001) *Demonology & Deliverance, Volume One*. Indiana: Sumrall Publishing.
81. Tame, David (1984) *The Secret Power of Music*. Rochester Vermont: Destiny Books.
82. Tan, P (2007) *The Spiritual World*. Australia: Peter Tan Evangelism.
83. The book by James G. Friesen, *Uncovering the Mystery of MPD*, Here's Life Publishers, Inc., San Bernardino, CA, 1991, presents an enlightened Christian approach to ministering to Multiple Personality Disorder.
84. Thomas, Dr I.D.E (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy, Satan's Last assault on God's Kingdom*. USA: Anomalos Publishing House.
85. Troeltsch, Ersnt (1931) *The Social Teaching of the Christian Church, Volume One*. London: The Macmillan Company.
86. Unger, Merrill F. (1952) *Biblical Demonology*. Wheaton, Illinois: Scripture Press.
87. Vizzutti, Richard (2003) *Return of the Stargods*. Victoria, Canada: Trafford Publishing.
88. W.M. Ramsay, *Hastings' Dictionary of the Bible*, I.
89. Waldeck, Val (1993) *What do they believe?* Durban: South Africa
90. Walker, JK (2007) *Today's Religions and Spirituality*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
91. Wilkerson, D (1985) *Set the Trumpet to Thy Mouth*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
92. Wink, W (1984) *Naming the Powers*. Philadelphia: Fortress Press.
93. Wink, Walter (1992) *Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press.
94. Woods, D (2006) *Reaping the Whirlwind of National Idolatry*. South Africa: A division of New Holland Publishing,

INTERNET RESOURCES

1. "Remote Control Brain Sensor," BBC (November 2002) (www.news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/health/2361987.stm), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
2. 30 Astonishing Monster High Pictures (www.creativefan.com/monster-high-pictures/), Date Accessed: 15 April 2013.
3. A Short Guide to Occult Symbols, Carleichrib (www.crossroad.to/articles2/2002/carl-teichrib/1contents.htm), Date Accessed: 22 May 2013.
4. Heathen (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/heathen), Date Accessed: 11 October 2013
5. Aleister Crowley: His Story, His Elite Ties and His legacy (www.vigilantcitizen.com/category/sinistersites/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
6. Arnobius Against the Heathen, V7 (www.aren.org/prison/documents/religion/Church%20Fathers/Arnobius%20Against%20the%20Heathen,%20v7.pdf), p. 22. Date Accessed 12 October 2013.
7. Athena (www.greekmythology.com/Olympians/Athena/athena.html), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
8. Athena (www.greekmythology.com/Olympians/Athena/athena.html), Date Accessed: 10 April 2013.
9. Biophotons The Light in our Cells, Marco Bischof, 2005 (www.transpersonal.de/mbischof/englisch/webbookeng.htm), Date Accessed: 24 September 2013.
10. Blessing the Children on Shabbat (www.judaism.about.com/od/judaismbasics/a/Blessing-The-Children-On-Shabbat.htm), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
11. Bohemian Grove (www.worldsavingdevice.com/bohemian-grove/), Date Accessed: 10 April 2013.

12. Bohemian Grove Exposed (www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Wicca%20&%20Witchcraft/bohemian_grove_exposed.htm), Date Accessed: 10 April 2013.
13. Brainworld, Music, Rhythm and the Brain, Passion Jun M.D, 7 March 2011 (www.brainworldmagazine.com/music-rhythm-and-the-brain-2/), Date Accessed 29 May 2013.
14. Can listening to music be harmful to us, Simon Heather (www.simonheather.co.uk/pages/articles/listen.pdf), Date Accessed: 16 October 2013.
15. Charles Taze Russell (www.sixscreensofthewatchtower.com/2charlestazerussell.html), Date Accessed 8 October 2013.
16. Children in Cults (www.griess.st1.at/anne/children%20in%20cults.htm), Date Accessed 27 September 2013.
17. Children of God (www.worldcultwatch.org/children/). Date Accessed: 6 October 2013.
18. Christian Science (www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/Christian-Science), Date Accessed: 6 October 2013.
19. Christian Science, Christian or Cult (www.rapidnet.com/~jbeard/bdm/Cults/science.htm), Date Accessed: 6 October 2013
20. Christianity vs New Ageism (www.sharefaith.com/guide/christian-apologetics/christianity-versus-new-ageism.html), Date Accessed 17 October 2013.
21. Communicating with spirits (www.explorespiritism.com/DANGER%20start.htm), Date Accessed 18 October 2013.
22. Cult (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/cult), Date Accessed 20 October 2013.
23. Cults impact on health (www.reveal.org/library/psych/The%20Impact%20of%20Cults%20on%20Health.pdf), Date Accessed 27 September 2013

24. Cults in Culture: Christian Science – A Deadly Religion Part 7
(www.christianpost.com/news/cults-in-culture-christian-science-a-deadly-religion-part-7-64940/), Date Accessed: 7 October 2013.
25. Cults Questions and Answers (www.cslorg/studyindex/studycult/cultqa.htm)
Date Accessed 27 September 2013.
26. Cults (www.johnhawkinslpc.com/PDF/Spirituality/Cults.pdf), Date Accessed 27
September 2013.
27. Deliverance for the subconscious mind (Abused Child)
(www.demonbuster.com/dftsm.html), Date Accessed 20 October 2013.
28. Demonic Child Entertainment (www.demonbuster.com/demonicc.html), Date
Accessed: 12 April 2013.
29. Demonology (www.newadvent.org/cathen/04713a.htm), Date Accessed 5
October 2013.
30. Discipline (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/discipline), Date Accessed: 21
October 2013.
31. Distinctive Beliefs (www.catholic.com/tracts/distinctive-beliefs-of-the-jehovahs-witnesses), Date Accessed 21 October 2013.
32. Divine revelations
(www.divinerevelations.info/SampsonJude/Testimony_2.htm), Date Accessed
20 October 2013.
33. Dr Kobus Jonker: God's Detective, Henk Lustig (www.vice.com/en_za/read/dr-kobus-jonker-420-v17n4), Date Accessed: 9 April 2013.
34. EM Field, Behind Right Ear, Suspends Morality, Sci-Tech Heretic (March 2009)
(www.heretic.blastmagazine.com/2010/03/em-field-behind-right-ear-suspends-morality), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
35. Entertainment Media – does it lead of follow society?
(www.christiananswers.net/q-eden/edn-f010.html), Date Accessed 12 April
2013.
36. Evil (www.biblestudytools.com/dictionaries/bakers-evangelical-dictionary/evil.html), Date Accessed: 06 September 2013.
37. Fables (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/fable), Date Accessed 18
October 2013.

38. First Degree or Ceremony of Initiation United Grand Lodge
(www.bilderberg.org/First_Degree.htm), Date Accessed 8 October 2013.
39. Flo Conway and Jim Siegelman
(www.conwayandsiegelman.stillpointpress.net/), Date Accessed 30 September 2013.
40. Freemasons: The Silent Destroyers – deist religious cult based on the Knights Templers (www.bilderberg.org/masons.htm), Date Accessed: 8 October 2013.
41. Has Madonna ditched Kabbalah for Islam (www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-2447973/Has-Madonna-ditched-Kabbalah-Islam-Singer-reveals-studying-Koran.html), Date Accessed 18 October 2013.
42. Heathen Worship (www.christadelphiansisters.org/ESTSEP.HTM) Date Accessed: 11 October 2013.
43. Here are some of the most commonly New Age Symbols
(www.angelfire.com/wv/awana96/symbols.html), Date Accessed: 17 October 2013.
44. Highlights of the Beliefs of Jehovah Witnesses
(www.towerwatch.com/Witnesses/Beliefs/their_beliefs.htm), Date Accessed: 19 October 2013.
45. Hodge, C. Anthropology, The Origin of the Soul
(www.audiowebman.org/start/books/charles_hidge/vol_2/vol_0203.htm), Date Accessed: 12 October 2013.
46. How can Jesus be God and Man? (www.desiringgod.org/resource-library/articles/how-can-jesus-be-god-and-man), Date Accessed 25 September 2013.
47. How did the Fall affect Humanity (www.gotquestions.org/fall-affect-humanity.html), Date Accessed: 24 September 2013.
48. How Fingerprints Works (www.science.howstuffworks.com/fingerprinting1.htm), Date Accessed: 23 September 2013.
49. How Technology May Soon Read Your Mind“, CBS 60 Minutes (June 2009)
(www.cbsnews.com/stories/2008/12/31/60minutes/main4694713.shtm), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.

50. How to Have Victory over a Passive mind
(www.layevangelism.com/qreference/spiritual-warfare/spiritual-warfare8.htm),
Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
51. Humanity (www.theopedia.com/Humanity), Date Accessed: 12 October 2013.
52. Jehovah Witnesses Beliefs and Practices
(www.christianity.about.com/od/jehovahswitnesses/a/jwbeliefs.htm), Date
Accessed 20 October 2013.
53. Kesha on having sex with a ghost: "I had sex with a ghost"
(www.jezebel.com/5946786/keha-on-having-sex-with-a-ghost-i-had-sex-with-a-ghost), Date Accessed: 06 September 2013.
54. Kesha speaks out on having sex with a ghost (www.celebuzz.com/2012-11-24/keha-speaks-out-on-having-sex-with-a-ghost-it-did-scare-me-but-thats-part-of-the-fun-of-it/), Date Accessed: 06 September 2013.
55. Krugersdorp school rocked by "Satanic" Killing, 18 August, 2008, Fienie Grobler
(www.mg.co.za/article/2008-08-18-krugersdorp-school-rocked-by-satanic-killing), Date Accessed: 9 April 2013.
56. Leave the Cult (www.leavethecult.com/gnosticism-perversion-of-the-gospel/),
Date Accessed: 20 October 2013.
57. Liane Young, Joan Albert Camprodon, et al, "Distributing of the Right Temporo-Parietal Junction with Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation reduces the Role of Beliefs in Moral Judgements," Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (March 2010) (www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2010-03/miot-mjc032510.php), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
58. Made in the Image of God (www.relevantmagazine.com/god/deeper-walk/features/23549-qmade-in-the-image-of-godq), Date Accessed: 20 September 2013.
59. Madonna (www.definitions.net/definition/madonna), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
60. Madonna; Vogue (The Girly Show)
(www.youtube.com/watch?v=SfumkIRnGyQ), Date Accessed: 18 September 2013.

61. Maintaining your deliverance (www.demonbuster.com/maintai4.html), Date Accessed: 20 October 2013.
62. Merriam Webster Online Diary (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/power). Date Accessed: 5 October 2014.
63. Methodius (www.studylight.org/his/ecf/view.cgi?pn=2&sid=ant&aid=06-13&file=anf06-125&), Date Accessed 12 October 2013.
64. Mind Control by Cell Phone, Scientific America, R Douglas Fields (2008) (www.scientificamerica.com/article.cfm?id=mind-control-by-cell.), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
65. Monarch Mind Control (www.conspiracy.wikia.com/wiki/Monarch_Mind_Control), Date Accessed: 18 September 2013.
66. Monster High Create a Monster Review (www.dollyconfessions.wordpress.com/2012/01/07/monster-high-create-a-monster-review/), Date Accessed: 15 April 2013.
67. Monster High Official Website (www.monsterhigh.com) , Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
68. Monster High Official Website (www.monsterhigh.com), Date Accessed: 15 April 2013.
69. MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vm-as-2013/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
70. Music and Worship (www.demonbuster.com/music.html), Date Accessed: 12 September 2013.
71. Music on the brain, Michael D. Lemonick Sunday, May 28, 2000 (www.time.com/time/magazine/article/0,9171,46157,00.html), Date Accessed: 9 April 2013.
72. Mystery of Godliness (www.spurgeongems.org/vols13-15/chs786.pdf), Date Accessed: 25 September 2013.
73. Naturalistic Evolution (www.conservapedia.com/Naturalistic_evolution), Date Accessed 26 September 2013.

74. Occult influence and your children (www.threenailzz.tripod.com/id22.html), Date Accessed: 7 February 2013.
75. Occult influence and your children (www.threenailzz.tripod.com/id22.html), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
76. Origin and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control (www.dougriggs.org/Origins_and_Techniques_of_Monarch_Mind_Control.pdf) Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
77. Pan (god) ([www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pan_\(god\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pan_(god))), Date Accessed: 16 October 2013.
78. Pan (www.theoi.com/Georgikos/Pan.html), Date Accessed: 16 October 2013
79. Prayer for your Children (www.kcm.org/real-help/prayer/prayer-your-children), Date Accessed: 20 October 2013.
80. Rectoral: Relating to God as governor or ruler of men. (www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/rectoral), Date Accessed: 19 September 2013.
81. Religion and Child Abuse News (www.religiouschildabuse.blogspot.com/2008/08/satanism-blamed-in-wake-of-krugersdorp.html), Date Accessed: 9 April 2013.
82. Religious Rock, The Music of Devils in the Church (www.biblebelievers.com/Rock1.html), Date Accessed: 24 February 2013.
83. Rockumentary (www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/rockumentary.htm), Date Accessed: 16 October 2013.
84. Satan's Seven High Ranking Principalities of hell (www.unsolvedmysteries.com/usm167314.html), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
85. Second Degree or Ceremony of Passing (www.bilderberg.org/Second_Degree.htm), Date Accessed: 8 October 2013.
86. Shepherd's Call Ministry (www.shepcall.com/), Date Accessed: 22 May 2013.
87. Sings and Symptoms of Child abuse and neglect (www.speakupbesafe.org/parents/warning-signs-of-abuse-and-neglect-for-parents.pdf), Date Accessed: 20 October 2013.

88. Skins of Light and Flesh
(www.yashanet.com/studies/judaism101/sidebars/ohr.htm), Date Accessed: 24 September 2013.
89. Spiritism (www.newadvent.org/cathen/14221a.htm), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
90. Testimonies of Young People and Christian Rock
(www.av1611.org/crock/crockkids.html), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
91. The Children of God Cult, aka The Family (www.samajemian.com/), Date Accessed: 6 October 2013.
92. The Church, the ekklesia (www.hisholychurch.net) Date Accessed: 9 September 2013
93. The Decoding of Monster High, 15 March 2013 (www.globalreport2010.com), Date Accessed: 15 March 2013.
94. The Decoding of Monster High, 15 March 2013 (www.globalreport2010.com) , Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
95. The ELF God (www.sherryshriner.com/elf-god.htm), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
96. The Festival of Sukkot (www.templeinstitute.org/tabernacles.htm), Date Accessed: 20 October 2013.
97. The Fox sisters, Spiritualism's unlikely founders(www.historynet.com/the-fox-sisters-spiritualisms-unlikely-founders.htm), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
98. The Great god Pan (www.lugodoc.demon.co.uk/PAN.HTM),Date Accessed: 16 October 2013.
99. The Horror of Disney, Brittni Bizarro, 24 May 2011
(www.acryliczombie.wordpress.com/2011/05/24/the-horror-of-disney/), Date Accessed: 13 March 2013.
100. The Hunger Games, Satanic Ritual for Teens
(www.henrymakow.com/hunger_games.html) Date Accessed: 18 September 2013.
101. The Illuminati and Witchcraft (www.scribd.com/doc/7563552/John-Todd-The-Illuminati-Witchcraft-Condensed), Date Accessed: 16 January 2013.

102. The Mysterious All Seeing Eye, David J Steward (www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Illuminati/nwo_eye.htm), Date Accessed: 22 May 2013.
103. The New Age Plan to Defeat Christianity (www.sherryshriener.com/sherry/newage.htm), Date Accessed: 18 September 2013.
104. The Occult and Music, Gary Gomes, 2004 (www.furious.com/perfect/occult.html), Date Accessed: 16 October 2013.
105. The Sacrifice of Praise, Collins Martin G, November 1994 (www.cgg.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Library.sr/CT/ARTB/k/573/The-Sacrifice-of-Praise.htm), Date Accessed: 15 March 2013.
106. The Sacrifice of Praise, Collins Martin G, November 1994 (www.cgg.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Library.sr/CT/ARTB/k/573/The-Sacrifice-of-Praise.htm), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
107. The Satanic Cult behind the Music Industry Part 1 (www.youtube.com/watch?v=pqyl7bNQAqA), Date Accessed: 22 May 2013.
108. The Technique (www.tm.org/meditation-techniques), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
109. Third Degree Ritual – The Raising (www.bilderberg.org/Third_Degree.htm). Date Accessed: 8 October 2013.
110. Threefold Nature of Man (www.tripartiteman.org/historical/larkin.html), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
111. Traducianism (www.reclaimingthemind.org/wordoftheday/traducianism/), Date Accessed: 24 September 2013.
112. Trichotomous vs Dichotomous views of Man (www.christianity.stackexchange.com/questions/8847/trichotomous-vs-dichotomous-views-of-man), Date Accessed: 12 October 2013.
113. Video Gamers Can Control Dreams, Study Suggests, Live Science (www.livescience.com/culture/video-games-control-dreams-100525.html), Date Accessed: 22 October 2013.
114. Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul), Date Accessed: 13 March 2013.

115. Water Crystals – the impact of music and intention on water and on us
(www.emilyelst.wordpress.com/2011/08/20/water-crystals-the-impact-of-music-and-intention-on-water-and-us/), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
116. What is Christian Science (www.christianscience.com/what-is-christian-science#basic-teachings), Date Accessed: 6 October 2013.
117. What is Monotheism
(www.atheism.about.com/library/FAQs/religion/blrel_theism_mono.htm), Date Accessed: 22 September 2013.
118. Who is Baphomet (www.vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/whoisbaphomet/#fn-12539-3), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
119. Youth and the Occult, Baker J, (www.watchman.org/occult/teenwitch.htm), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
120. Youth and the Occult, Baker J (www.watchman.org/occult/teenwitch.htm), Date Accessed: 1 February 2013.
121. Youth Orientated TV and the Occult, Barker J,
(www.watchman.org/youthandoccult.htm), Date Accessed: 7 February 2013.

Video Clips

1. At MTV We Own 14 Year Old's
(www.youtube.com/watch?v=tRhminE9J8E), Date Accessed: 29 May 2013
2. Freaky Fridate (www.youtube.com/watch?v=yUmZLXX8Cz4), Date Accessed: 15 April 2013

ARTICLES

1. Riggs, D (2012) River of Life Family Church, Vanderbijlpark, SA , pp 16-22

LECTURES

1. Lecture on The Attributes of God (Pretoria) by Prof Dr Paul Banting, Râdâh Academy 2013.

BIBLIOGRAPY OF TABLES AND FIGURES

Tables:

- Table 1: Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Darkness
(www.cura.free.fr/decem/10kengil.html), Date Accessed: 17 March 2012.
- Table 2: Positive and Negative Behavior. Spotts, D and Veerman, D (1987)
Reaching out to Troubled Youth. Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House
Publishers, p, 74.
- Table 3: Cycle of Rejection. Hodge's, MB (1967) Your Fear of Love, Garden City,
N.Y: Dolphin Books, Doubleday and Company, pp. 15-50.

Figures:

- Figure 1: Threefold Nature of Man (www.tripartiteman.org/historical/larkin.html),
Date Accessed: 10 October.
- Figure 2: Three parts of Tabernacle relating to tripartite man
(www.google.co.za/imgres?start=107&sa=X&rlz=1T4ADRA_enZA416ZA431&biw=1280&bih=755&tbm=isch&tbnid=Ge5OaA09DcVWfM:&imgrefurl=http://www.lsmradio.com/hearing-of-faith/pdf/whatis/Aug99whatis.pdf&docid=iKDKI3iZt3-M0M&imgurl=x-raw-image:///c50d3d0d684eee19527bc7e104ab3bbb7d16cc1d3704575ffc638e074f842af2&w=1779&h=769&ei=Jl5bUr2mII SphAeghoGQAQ&zoom=1&iact=hc&vpx=2&vpy=192&dur=1742&hovh=147&hovw=342&tx=188&ty=99&page=4&tbnh=113&tbnw=264&ndsp=39&ved=1t:429,r:31,s:100,i:97), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
- Figure 3: Pan, Prof Dr Connie, Research Booklet, South-Africa: Unpublished.
- Figure 4: Water Crystals – the impact of music and intention on water and on us
(www.emilyelst.wordpress.com/2011/08/20/water-crystals-the-impact-of-music-and-intention-on-water-and-us/), Date Accessed 16 October 2013

- Figure 5: Conscious water Crystals, The Power of Prayer made visible (www.spiritofmaat.com/archive/aug1/consciouswater.html), Date Accessed 16 October 2013
- Figure 6: Dreamer Haste the Day Album ([www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dreamer_\(Haste_the_Day_album\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dreamer_(Haste_the_Day_album))), Date Accessed 18 October 2013
- Figure 7: An Ocean Between Us (www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/An_Ocean_Between_Us), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
- Figure 8: Singer in Christian Band “As I Lay Dying” hired hit man to kill wife (www.metalinjection.net/latest-news/tim-lambesis-trial/new-details-on-as-i-lay-dying-frontman-tim-lambesis-arrest-lawyer-switchover), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
- Figure 9: Toby Mac, Eye on it (www.rlslog.net/tobymac-eye-on-it-web-2012-wax/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
- Figure 10: Disney’s naughty subliminals (www.helpfreetheearth.com/news103_Disney.html), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013
- Figure 11: Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013
- Figure 12: Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013
- Figure 13: Walt Disney Owl Mystery (www.richardcassaro.com/tag/occul), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013
- Figure 14: Bohemian Grove (www.worldsavingdevice.com/bohemian-grove/), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013
- Figure 15: Monster High Create a Monster Review (www.dollyconfessions.wordpress.com/2012/01/07/monster-high-create-a-monster-review/), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
- Figure 16: 30 Astonishing Monster High Pictures (www.creativefan.com/monster-high-pictures/). Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
-

- Figure 17: Freaky Fridate (www.youtube.com/watch?v=yUmZLXX8Cz4), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
- Figure 18: How Hollywood Spreads Disinformation about Secret Societies (www.vigilantcitizen.com/category/moviesandtv/page/3/), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
- Figure 19: Origin and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control (www.vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/), Date Accessed: 14 October 2013.
- Figure 20: Madonna Open your heart (www.youtube.com/watch?v=snsTmi9N9Gs), Date Accessed 18 October 2013
- Figure 21: Baphomet (www.abovetopsecret.com/forum/thread933893/pg1), Date Accessed 18 October 2013
- Figure 22: Madonna's Superbowl Halftime Show: A celebration of the Grand Priestess of the Music Industry (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/madonnas-superbowl-halftime-show-a-celebration-of-the-grand-priestess-of-the-music-industry/), Date Accessed 18 October 2013.
- Figure 23: Madonna's Superbowl Halftime Show: A celebration of the Grand Priestess of the Music Industry (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/madonnas-superbowl-halftime-show-a-celebration-of-the-grand-priestess-of-the-music-industry/), Date Accessed 18 October 2013.
- Figure 24: MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
- Figure 25: MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013.
- Figure 26: MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall (www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
-

- Figure 27: MTV VMA's 2013: It was about Miley Cyrus Taking the Fall
(www.vigilantcitizen.com/musicbusiness/mtv-vmas-2013/), Date
Accessed: 18 October 2013
- Figure 28: Katy Perry E.T (www.sorceressdream.deviantart.com/art/Katy-Perry-E-T-WallPaper-203616274), Date Accessed: 18 October 2013
- Figure 29: Katy Perry E.T. (www.examiner.com/slideshow/katy-perry-e-t-featuring-kanye-west) Date Accessed 18 October 2013
- Figure 30: Watch Tower Jehovah's Witnesses. Leave the Cult
(www.leavethecult.com/gnosticism-perversion-of-the-gospel/), Date
Accessed 18 October 2013.
- Figure 31: Riggs, D (2012) River of Life Family Church, Vanderbijlpark, SA, p. 16.

BIBLES

The King James Version and Modern King James version was used unless otherwise indicated.



Terminology and Abbreviations

Words defined as per the online Merriam Webster Dictionary and Thesaurus.

Anthropology: the science of human beings; especially: the study of human beings and their ancestors through time and space and in relation to physical character, environmental and social relations, and culture, theology dealing with the origin, nature, and destiny of human beings.

Astrology: *archaic:* ASTRONOMY, the divination of the supposed influences of the stars and planets on human affairs and terrestrial events by their positions and aspects

Christian: A Christian here refers to a re-born person.
a : one who professes belief in the teachings of Jesus Christ *b*
(1) : DISCIPLE *2 (2)* : a member of one of the Churches of Christ separating from the Disciples of Christ in 1906 *(3)* : a member of

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

the Christian denomination having part in the union of the United Church of Christ concluded in 1961

- Mythology:**
- 1: an allegorical narrative
 - 2: a body of myths: as *a*: the myths dealing with the gods, demigods, and legendary heroes of a particular people *b*: MYTHOS 2 <cold war *mythology*>
 - 3: a branch of knowledge that deals with myth
 - 4: a popular belief or assumption that has grown up around someone or something: MYTH 2a <defective *mythologies* that ignore masculine depth of feeling — Robert Bly>
- Numerology:** The study of the occult significance of numbers
- Occultism:** Occult theory or practice: belief in or study of the action or influence of supernatural or supernormal powers
- Phenomenology:**
- 1: the study of the development of human consciousness and self-awareness as a preface to or a part of philosophy
 - 2(1): a philosophical movement that describes the formal structure of the objects of awareness and of awareness itself in abstraction from any claims concerning existence (2): the typological classification of a class of phenomena <the *phenomenology* of religion>
- Psychology:**
- 1: the science of mind and behaviour
 - 2a: the mental or behavioural characteristics of an individual or group *b*: the study of mind and behaviour in relation to a particular field of knowledge or activity
 - 3: a theory or system of psychology <Freudian *psychology*> <the *psychology* of Jung>

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

- Pre-history:**
- 1: the study of prehistoric humankind
 - 2: a history of the antecedents of an event, situation, or thing
 - 3: the prehistoric period of human evolution
- History:**
- 1: TALE, STORY
 - 2a: a chronological record of significant events (as affecting a nation or institution) often including an explanation of their causes *b*: a treatise presenting systematically related natural phenomena *c*: an account of a patient's medical background *d*: an established record <a prisoner with a *history* of violence>
 - 3: a branch of knowledge that records and explains past events <medieval *history*> 4a: events that form the subject matter of a history *b*: events of the past *c*: one that is finished or done for <the winning streak was *history*> <you're *history*> *d*: previous treatment, handling, or experience (as of a metal)
- Satanism:**
- 1: innate wickedness
 - 2: obsession with or affinity for evil; *specifically*: worship of Satan marked by the travesty of Christian rites
- Sociology:**
- 1: the science of society, social institutions, and social relationships; *specifically*: the systematic study of the development, structure, interaction, and collective behaviour of organized groups of human beings
 - 2: the scientific analysis of a social institution as a functioning whole and as it relates to the rest of society
 - 3: SYNECOLOGY
- Symbol:**
- an authoritative summary of faith or doctrine, something that stands for or suggests something else by reason of relationship, association, convention, or accidental resemblance; especially:

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernatural, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them

a visible sign of something invisible <the lion is a symbol of courage>

Symbology: 1: the art of expression by symbols
2: the study or interpretation of symbols 3: a system of symbols

Theology: 1: the study of religious faith, practice, and experience;
especially: the study of God and of God's relation to the world
2a: a theological theory or system <Thomist *theology*> <a *theology* of atonement>

Tripartite: 1: divided into or composed of three parts
2: having three corresponding parts or copies
3: made between or involving three parties <a *tripartite* treaty>

ABBREVIATIONS

KJV King James Version
MKJV Modern King James Version
i.e.: and others

-----oOo-----



Addendum 1

Scriptures that Demons Hate

- 1 Jn 3:8 For this **purpose** the Son of God was manifested, that he **might destroy** the works of the devil. (KJV)
- Acts 10:38 How **God anointed** Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about **doing good**, and **healing all** that were **oppressed** of the devil; for God was with him. (KJV)
- Col **2:15** God made you **alive** with Christ. He forgave us all our sins, (NIV) having **cancelled out the certificate of debt** consisting of decrees against us and **which was hostile to us**; and He has taken it out of the way, having **nailed it to the cross**. When He had **disarmed the rulers and authorities**, He made a public display of them, having **triumphed over them** through Him (by the Cross). (NAS)
- Heb 2:14-15 ... he also himself likewise took part of the same (flesh); that **through death** he **might destroy him that had the power of death**, that is, **the devil**; And **deliver them** who through **fear of death** were all their lifetime **subject to bondage**. (KJV)

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

Lk 10:18-19 ... I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. **Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. (KJV)**

Lk 11:20 **But if I with the** finger of God cast out devils, **no doubt the** kingdom of God is come upon you. **(KJV)**

Mk 16:17 **And these signs shall** follow them that believe; In my name **shall they** cast out devils; **(KJV)**

Isa 14:12-17 **How art** thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, **son of the morning!** **[how] art** thou cut down to the ground, **For** thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend **into heaven**, I will exalt **my throne above the stars of God:** I will sit **also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north:** I will ascend **above the heights of the clouds;** I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, **to the sides of the pit. They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, [and] consider thee, [saying, Is] this** the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms; [That] made the world as a wilderness, **and** destroyed the cities thereof; [that] opened not the house of his prisoners? **(KJV)**

Eze 28:17-19 **Your heart became proud** on account of your beauty, and **you corrupted your wisdom** because of your splendour. So **I threw you to the earth; I made a spectacle** of you before kings. By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuaries. So I made a fire come out from you, and it consumed you, and I reduced you to ashes on the ground in the sight of all who were watching. All the nations who knew you are appalled at you; **you have come to a horrible end and will be no more.**

Rev 12:11 ... Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the **accuser of our brethren is cast down**, which accused them before our God day and night. And **they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb**, and **by the word of their testimony;** and **they loved not their lives unto the death.**

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

Rev **20:10** and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And **the devil** that deceived them **was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, (KJV)**

*An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To
Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting
The Image Of Christ Within Them.*



Addendum 2

DEMONIC OPPRESSION GROUPINGS

<p>Abandonment Isolation Loneliness Not Acceptable Not Belonging Rejection Self-Pity Not Wanted Victim</p> <p>Addictions/Dependencies/Escape Alcohol/Caffeine Cocaine Computers Downers/Uppers Food Gambling Marijuana Nicotine/Non-prescription Drugs Pornography Prescription Drugs Sports Street Drugs Television Tranquilizers Video Games</p> <p>Anger Abandonment Feuding Frustration Hatred Murder Punishment Rage Resentment Spoiled Little Boy/Girl Temper Tantrums</p> <p>Anxiety</p>	<p>Indian Burial Ground Indian Occult Rituals Jewellery, Occult KKK Gossip Judging Murmuring Ridicule Unforgiveness</p> <p>Competition Driving Jealousy Possessiveness Striving</p> <p>Control Appeasement Denial Domineering Double Binding False Responsibility Manipulation Male Control Occult Passive Aggression Possessiveness Pride (I know best) Selfishness Witchcraft Female Control</p> <p>Deception Confusion Lying Self-Deception</p> <p>Depression Despair Despondency Discouragement Hopelessness Insomnia Oversleeping Self-Pity Suicide fantasies</p>	<p>Lazy Lethargy Passivity Procrastination Sleep/Slumber Withdrawal</p> <p>Failure Performance Pressure to Succeed Striving</p> <p>Fears Anxiety Bewilderment Burden Dread Harassment Heaviness Horror Movies Intimidation Mental Torment Over-Sensitivity Paranoia Phobia Superstition Worry Fear of Authorities Fear of being Attacked Fear of being a Victim Fear of Cancer Fear of Death Fear of Diabetes Fear of Demons Fear of Failure Fear of Infirmities Fear of Man Fear of Performing Fear of Punishment Fear of Rejection Fear of Sexual Inadequacy Fear of Sexual Perversion</p>	<p>Financial Bondage Greed Irresponsible Spending Job Failures Job Losses Poverty Stinginess Greed Cheating Covetousness Idolatry Stealing</p> <p>Grief Crying/Weeping Heartbreak Loss Sadness Sorrow Trauma</p> <p>Idolatry Appearance/Beauty Clothes Food Money Position Possessions</p> <p>Infirmities/ Diseases Accidents (falls, cars) Anorexia/Bulimia Asthma Barrenness/Miscarriage Cancer Congestion (lungs) Diabetes Fatigue Female Problems</p>
---	--	--	---

*An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To
Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting
The Image Of Christ Within Them.*

<p>Burden False Responsibility Fatigue Heaviness Nervousness Restlessness Weariness Worry</p> <p>Bitterness Accusation Blaming Complaining Criticalness Fault Finding</p> <p>Mental Illness Craziness Compulsions Confusion Hallucinations Hysteria Insanity Mind Binding Paranoia Schizophrenia Senility</p> <p>Mind Influence Double Minded Binding Blocking Racing</p> <p>Mocking Laughing Ridiculing</p> <p>Music Heavy Metal Rock and Roll</p> <p>Not Belonging Abandonment Isolation Loneliness Not Acceptable Not Wanted Rejection Self-Pity</p> <p>Occult Accident Proneness Antichrist Astral Projection Astrology Automatic Writing Black Magic Books, Occult/Witchcraft Clairvoyance Crystal Ball Death, Suicide Dispatching Demons Eight Ball ESP False Gifts Fortune Telling Gypsy Handwriting Analysis Horoscopes Hypnosis I Ching Idolatry (of)</p>	<p>Suicide attempt Withdrawal</p> <p>Emotions, Bound Hindered</p> <p>Escape Fantasy Forgetfulness Levitation Mental Telepathy Movies, Science Fantasy Meditation</p> <p><u>Music, Heavy Metal</u> Necromancy Non-Christian Exorcism Ouija Board Pagan Temples Palm Reading Past Life Readings Pendulum Psychic Healing Science Fantasy Séances Sorcery Spell or Hex, Casting Spirit Guide(s) Spiritism TM Tarot Cards Tea Leaves Victim Voodoo Water Witching White Magic Witchcraft Yoga Meditation</p> <p>Pride Arrogance Self-importance Vanity</p> <p>Rebellion Disobedience Independence Insubordination Lying Self-Will/Sufficiency Stubbornness Undermining</p> <p>Rejection Mistrust (of others) Mistrust (by others) Not Wanted Perceived Rejection Perfectionism Prejudice/Slavery Self-Rejection Religious Spirits Antichrist Catholicism/Other Legalism/Rules Liberalism</p>	<p>Fear of Singing Fear of Violence Self-Punishment</p> <p>Sexually Confusion Deception Homosexuality Lesbianism Pornography Trauma Unprotected</p> <p>Sexual Sins Adultery Bestiality Demonic Sex Defilement/Unclean Exposure Fantasy Lust Fornication Frigidity Homosexuality Incest Incubus Lesbianism Lust Masturbation Pornography Premarital Sex Prostitution/Harlotry Rape Seduction/Alluring Sexual Abuse Succubus</p> <p>Shame Anger Bad Boy/Girl Condemnation Embarrassment Guilt Hatred Inferiority Overweight/ Underweight Self-Hate Strife Arguing Bickering Contention Cursing Fighting Mocking Quarreling</p> <p>Trauma Accident Emotional Abuse Little Boy/Girl Loss</p>	<p>Heart/Circulatory Problems Mental Illness MS Migraines-Mind Binding Physical Abnormalities Premature Death Judgment Blaming Criticalness Fault Finding Physical Abuse Sexual Abuse Shock Verbal Abuse Violence Unbelief Doubt Rationalism Skepticism</p> <p>Unforgiveness Bitterness Religious Pride</p> <p>Unwanted Abandonment Not Belonging Victim</p> <p>Unworthiness Inadequacy Inferiority Insecurity Self-Accusation Self-Condernnation Self-Hate</p> <p>Victim Appeasement Helplessness Hopelessness Mistrust Self-Pity Suspicion Trauma</p> <p>Violence Cruelty Destruction Feuding Hate Murder Retaliation Torture/Mutilation</p> <p>Withdrawal Isolation Blocked Intimacy Loneliness</p>
--	---	--	--



Addendum 3

1. TEACHING MANUAL FOR YOUTH PURPOSES: TEST THE SPIRITS

There are so many voices in the world today, each with their own doctrine, and the first epistle of John strongly commands the Christian not to believe everything he or she hears.

"Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but TEST THE SPIRITS, whether they are of God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world." (1 John 4:1).

The Lord does not leave us to test doctrine by our "*feelings*" or philosophical understanding, but the Word of God provides some basic tests for the Christian to apply. The scriptures are always our standard for examining truth. *"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness, that the man of God may be complete, thoroughly equipped for every good work"* (2 Timothy 3:16,17).

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

It is comforting to know that the Lord has not left us at the mercy of men with their fallible minds!

The most vital of all the tests concerns the LORD JESUS CHRIST Himself. He is the "*Author and Finisher of our faith*" (Hebrews 12:2), the one and only "*Mediator between God and men*" (1 Timothy 2:5). He came from the realms of glory (Philippians 2:5-11) to die for our sins, was buried, and rose again the third day (1 Corinthians 15:3,4), and He is returning in great glory as Judge of all mankind. "*The Father judges no one, but has committed all judgment to the Son*" (John 5:22).

"What think ye of Christ?" is the pivotal question that every man woman and child has to answer.

It is only those who confess Him as Lord that find salvation. "*If you confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus and believe in your heart that God has raised Him from the dead, you will be saved. For with the heart one believes to righteousness, and with the mouth confession is made to salvation*" (Romans 10:9, 10).

That is why Jesus put that all-important question to the disciples: "*Who do men say that I, the Son of Man, am?*" (Matthew 16:13).

His disciples offered the various views held by different people, and then He looked them straight in the eye.. and said: "*But who do you say I am?*" (vs.14).

Peter answered: "*You are the Christ, the Son of the Living God*" (vs. 16) and Jesus responded: "*Blessed are you, Simon Bar- Jona, for flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but My Father who is in heaven*" (vs. 17).

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

A true doctrine of Christ comes straight from the heart of the Father Himself. It is not surprising, therefore, that every major cult holds a defective view of Jesus Christ. How will we recognize the truth? 1 John chapters 4 and 5 assist the Christian with three basic tests.

Test One - the true humanity of Jesus Christ.

1 John 4:2.3 *"By this you know the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is of God, and every spirit that does not confess that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is not of God. And this is the spirit of antichrist which you have heard was coming, and is now already in the world."*

Test Two - the true divinity of Jesus Christ.

1 John 4:15 *"Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God abides in him, and he in God."*

Test Three - the mission of Jesus Christ.

1 John 5:1 *"Whoever believes that Jesus is the Christ is born of God."*

(*"Christ"* comes from the Greek *"Christos"*. It means *"Anointed"*. The Hebrew equivalent is *"Messiah"*. He is *"Jesus, the Christ of the Jews .. the Saviour of Mankind"*.)

Ask any person or group concerning their doctrine of Christ, and you will know immediately whether or not you are dealing with a cult.

Anyone who detracts in any way from the Person or Work of Christ is on dangerous ground and Paul warns in Galasians 1:8,9 *"But even if we, or an angel from heaven,*

preach any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed. As we have said before, so now I say again, if anyone preaches any other gospel to you than what you have received, let him be accursed."

Those are strong words indeed, but it demonstrates how important a biblical view of Christ and the atonement is. There is no other way. *"Nor is there salvation in any other, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved"* (Acts 4:12).

Our faith rests in One who was able to pay the full price for sin because of Who He was. If Christ had not been God, He would have had His own sin to deal with .. and we would have been left to pay the price of sin for ourselves.

2. AN EXAMINATION OF THE BIBLICAL DOCTRINE OF THE PERSON AND WORK OF JESUS CHRIST

2.1 The Humanity of Jesus Christ.

"Jesus Christ has come in the flesh" (1 John 4:2)

We humbly recognize that we are delving in the realm of mystery when we talk about the Lord Jesus Christ.. the God-Man. 1 Timothy 3:16 *"And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: GOD was manifested in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen by angels, preached among the gentiles, believed on in the world, received up in glory."*

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

When the Lord became man, He did not stop being God. He temporarily laid aside His Glory... but not His Deity (Philippians 2:5-11). His Deity remains undiminished Deity - and His humanity remains genuine humanity.

The Westminster Shorter Catechism puts it this way: "*He continueth to be God and man, in two distinct natures and One Person for ever*". He was not just "*a man filled with God*" - but He is God. "*Christ is therefore both God and man, no less God because of His humanity, and no less human because of His deity*" (John F. Walwood).

He died as man - not God - but the victory of His death lay in the fact that He was - and is - God indeed. "*Had He not been man, He could not have sympathised with us; and had He not been God, He could not have saved us.*"(W.H. Scroggie).

John 10:17,18 "*Therefore My Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down of Myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This command I have received from My Father.*"

While Christ was on earth, He deliberately and voluntarily limited Himself in the use of the Divine attributes. For e.g., when He was hungry, He did not make food supernaturally (Matthew ch. 4:3,4).

He "*made Himself of no reputation, taking the form of a servant, and coming in the likeness of men. And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself and became obedient to the point of death, even the death of the cross*" (Phil. 3:7,8).

2.1.1 The birth of Jesus

On the human side, He had a beginning. *"For unto us a Child is born, unto us a Son is given. And the government will be upon His shoulder, and His Name shall be called Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace"* (Isaiah 9:6).

Unlike us, He chose to be born. *"Therefore, when He came into the world, He said: sacrifice and offering You did not desire, but a body You have prepared for Me ... Then I said, Behold, I have come - in the volume of the book it is written of Me - to do Your Will, O God"* (Heb. 10:7 quoting Psalm 40:6-8).

His birth in Bethlehem was not His origin. *"But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law"* (Galatians 4:4).

He, in fact, was responsible for the creation of all things. *"For by HIM all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him. And He is before all things, and in Him all things consist (hold together)"* (Colossians 1:16,17).

He is unique among men, yet perfect man. The birth of the Savoir, though considered insignificant by the world, was the most important event that has ever taken place. The eternal destiny of every human being depended on it.

It is beyond human understanding how He could be fully human and fully divine, but we may be assured that HE is GOD INDEED - Powerful and Glorious - knowing all things .. past, present and future.

Some reject the biblical testimony of the "*virgin birth*", but when we consider WHO was born ... it is more than believable. The virgin birth is actually the lesser miracle!

There are five ways God has been known to make a man:

By the law of natural generation - e. man plus woman.

Without the agency of either man or woman - e.g. Adam.

A man without a woman - Eve.

Through the divine empowering of a man and a woman both past natural child-bearing age.. by the Holy Ghost - JESUS.

"Behold a virgin shall be with child, and bear a son, and they shall call His Name Immanuel, which is translated, God with us" (Matthew 1:22 quoting Isaiah 7:14).

2.1.2 The childhood of Jesus.

Very little is known of His childhood, beyond His supernatural birth. Luke 2:40 tells us that "*the child grew and became strong in spirit, filled with wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him.*"

He was a goodly child and indistinguishable from other children, except for the absence of sin. "And Jesus increased in wisdom (mental development), and stature (physical development), and in favor with God (spiritual development), and man (social development).

Jesus grew up in a family environment. Matthew 13:55,56 records that Mary and Joseph gave birth to a number of children. "*Is this not the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary? And his brothers James, Joses, Simon, and Judas? And are his sisters, are they not all with us? Where then did this man get all these things?"*

The only recorded incident from the childhood of Jesus is found in Luke 2:41- when His parents lost Him in the Temple at the age of twelve.

2.1.3 Early adult life.

Mark 6:3 records that He worked as a carpenter until He began fulltime ministry after His baptism. Justin Martyr (a disciple of John the Baptist) wrote: "*When He was among men, He made ploughs and yokes and other farm implements.*"

2.1.4 Jesus - the man.

Some have referred to Him as "*just and good, but a trifle soft*", but nothing could be further from the truth. He was the Lamb of God and the Lion of the Tribe of Judah. Here was a Man indeed.. with a strong physique and no record of physical illness.

That He was strong and manly is evidenced by the confusion in the minds of some as they compared Him with the fearless John the Baptist and the rugged Prophet Elijah - Matthew 16:14. His recorded journeys during the three years of ministry cover at least 4,000 k's - travelled on foot, mostly being thronged with people - always preaching, teaching and healing.

He had a human appearance and constitution.

- Body - "For in pouring this fragrant oil on My body, she did it for My burial" (Matthew 26:12).
- Soul - "Then He said to them, My soul is exceedingly sorrowful, even to death. Stay here and watch with Me" (Matthew 26:38).
- Spirit - "And when Jesus had cried out with a loud voice, He said, Father, into Your hands I commend My spirit. And having said this, H e breathed His last" (Luke 23:46).

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

He had human experiences:

- He was tired - John 4:6.
- Hungry - Matthew 4:2.
- Slept - Matthew 8:24.
- Sorrowed - John 11:32-34.
- Wept - John 11:35.
- Angry - Mark 3:5.

He was a man of courage, without fear of disease, demons or men (John 18:3-8) - a stern man, frank and uncompromising (Matthew 23:14,15,17,33, Luke 14:27), yet loved by adults and children alike (Mark 10:13-16) - a man in whom JOY and SERIOUSNESS blended (Isa. 53:3, Heb. 1:9).

His PRAYER LIFE was outstanding. This makes an excellent study on its own. Luke records nine occasions when Jesus prayed at His baptism (3:21), after a day of miracles (5:15,16), before choosing His disciples (6:12), before the first prediction of His death (9:18), on the Mount of Transfiguration (9:29), before teaching the disciples to pray (Luke 11:1), when the seventy returned with their report (10:21), in the Garden of Gethsemane (22:39-46), and on the Cross (23:34,46). He prayed in the morning (Mark 1:35), and in the evening (Mark 6:46).

Great crises were preceded by prayer (Luke 3:21,22, Luke 6:12,13, Luke 9:18,21,22, Luke 9:28-36). Great achievements were preceded by prayer (Matt. 15:36, John 6:11, Matthew 14:23-33, John 11:41,42, Mark 9:14-29). Great achievements were followed by prayer - Matthew 14:23. Great pressure of work was a call to extra prayer - Luke 5:15,16, Mark 1:35, Luke 4:42, John 6:15. Great sorrows were met in prayer - Matt. 26:36-46, John 6:15, John 11:41,42, John 12:28. He died praying - Luke 23:46.

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

(With acknowledgment to Oswald Sanders "*The Incomparable Christ*" for this study in the prayer life of Jesus).

As a man, He was totally submitted to the Will of His Father. "*Then Jesus answered and said to them, Most assuredly, I say to you, the Son can do nothing of Himself, but what He sees the Father do; for whatever He does, the Son also does in like manner*" (John 5:19).

He leaned heavily on the Father and the ministry of the Holy Spirit. "... *God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power, Who went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him*" (Acts 10:38).

- He was conceived by the Holy Spirit Luke 1:35.
- The Holy Spirit was present at His baptism - Luke 3:22.
- It was the Holy Spirit Who led Him into the wilderness - Luke 4:1.
- The Holy Spirit empowered Him for the ministry - Luke 4:14,18.
- He urged His disciples to follow His example and be equally dependent on the Holy Spirit - Luke 24:49.
- Even His death on the cross was accomplished in the Power of the Holy Spirit - Heb. 9:14.

Jesus Christ rose again, returned to Heaven, and continues His ministry on behalf of mankind in Glory. "*Therefore He is able to save to the uttermost those who come to God through Him, since He ever lives to make intercession for them*" (Hebrews 7:25).

This truth is especially encouraging when we realize that, as a genuine man, He understands and appreciates life as we experience it.

2.2 THE DEITY OF JESUS CHRIST.

"Jesus is the Son of God" (1 John 4:15)

This is the key doctrine of the Scriptures. If Christ is not God, then our salvation is invalid and Christianity is a mere philosophy. If He is not God and we worship Him - then we are idolaters. His claims to be God are so specific that, if He is not God, then He must be the ultimate blasphemer and a deliberate deceiver. Either that, or He was Himself totally deluded and, therefore, not a good man, a great teacher or an example. But.. If He is God indeed - and men say less of Him - then they become blasphemers!

When we speak of the Deity of Christ, we mean that the Person known to history as Jesus of Nazareth existed in eternity - before He became man - as the Infinite and Eternal God, the Second Person of the Trinity.

By "*Deity*" we mean that He shares absolute equality with the Father (and the Holy Spirit), of Whose Person and Glory He is the accurate expression. " .. *the brightness of His Glory and the express image of His Person ..*" (Hebrews 1:3).

Christ is not just like God - He is God in the full and absolute sense of the term. "*For in HIM, dwells ALL THE FULLNESS of the GODHEAD bodily*" (Colossians 2:9).

Let's examine the testimony of Scripture.

1 HE HAS THE NATURE AND ATTRIBUTES OF DEITY

- a) He is eternal - John 8:58.
- b) He is unchanging - Hebrews 13:8.

- c) He is omniscient (all-knowing) John 2:25, John 16:30, 1 Cor. 1:30.
- d) He is omnipotent (all-powerful) Matt. 9:6, Matthew 28:18, Luke 8:25, John 1:3, Colossians 1:16,17.
- e) He is omnipresent (all-present) Matthew 28:20, Mark 16:19,20.

2 HE HAS THE NAMES OF DEITY

- a) He is called GOD - John 1:1. John 20:28,29, Titus 2:13, 1 John 5:20, Hebrews 1:6,8.
- b) He is called Son of God - Matthew 16:16, Mark 1:1, Luke 1:35, John 1:18.
- c) **He is called Lord - Acts 4:33, Phil. 2:10,11, Isa. 6:1-6, John 12:41.** (The Hebrew "*Yahweh*" or "*Jehovah*" is equivalent to the Greek "*Kurios*" - translated as "*Lord*" when referring to Christ).

3 HE CLAIMED TO BE GOD.

- "*I and My Father are one*" (John 10:30).
- "*Jesus said to him, Have I been with you so long, and yet you have not known Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father: so how can you say, Show us the Father?*" (John 14:9).
- "*But Jesus answered them, My Father has been working until now, and I have been working. Therefore the Jews sought to kill Him, because He not only broke the Sabbath, but also said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God*" (John 5:17,18).
- "*Jesus said to them, Most assuredly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I AM*" (John 8:58).
- Compare also the "I AM" sayings around which John wrote his gospel John 6:35, 8:12, 8:58, 10:7, 10:11, 11:25, 14:8, 15:1. Note Exodus 3:14 and compare John 18:6.

4 HE DID THE WORKS OF GOD.

- a) Creator and Sustainer of all things Colossians 1:16,17, Hebrews 1:3.
- b) Forgives sin - Mark 2:1-12.
- c) Judge - Matt. 25:31,32, John 5:22, Acts 7:31, 2 Timothy 4:1.
- d) He demands extra-ordinary devotion - Matthew 10:37.
- e) He accepts worship.
- * From men - John 20:28, Matthew 14:33, Luke 24:52, Philipians 2:10,11.
(Compare Acts 10:25,26,Acts 14:11-18, Acts 12:21,22,23).
- * From angels - Rev. 5:8-14, Rev. 22:8,9, Heb. 1:6.

5 THE TESTIMONY OF OTHERS

- a) His Father - Matt. 3:13-17, Luke 3:22, Matt. 17:5, Luke 9:35, John 12:27,28, John 5:22,23, Philipians 2:9,10, Hebrews ch. 1.
- b) His friends - Peter - Matthew 16:16. Thomas - John 20:28. The women at the well - John. 4:26. The man born blind - John. 9:35-38.
- c) His enemies - Matthew 27:54.
- d) The spirit world- Revelations 5:8,9 (angels), Mark 5:7 (demons).

6 THE EVIDENCE OF HIS SINLESS LIFE.

He alone of all men was totally sinless. *"Which of you convicts Me of sin?"* (John 8:46). He left the devil no foothold in His life - *"for the ruler of this world is coming, and he has nothing in Me"* (John 10:30).

"For we do not have a High Priest who cannot sympathise with our weaknesses, but was in all points tempted as we are, yet without sin" (Hebrews 4:15).

His life was an open book. No word He ever spoke needed to be modified, withdrawn, or apologized for. He never asked advice. The Gospels portray a picture of a Real Man, Who displays perfection at every stage of His development as a man, and in every circumstance of life. He was without flaw or contradiction.

7 THE EVIDENCE OF THE RESURRECTION

Rom. 1:5 *".. and declared Him to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of Holiness, by the resurrection from the dead."*

If the Lord Jesus Christ were not God, He could never have been the Saviour of the world. No human being can save another human being. Only God can do this. A great teacher, or an ideal example, is not sufficient to provide salvation from sin. The Bible presents One who can save because of Who He is - the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God and the Saviour of the world.

3. THE WORK OF "THE CHRIST" (THE MESSIAH): THE ATONEMENT.

"Jesus is the Christ" (1 John 5:1)

When God (The Son - the Second Person of the Trinity) was manifested in the flesh (1 Timothy 3:16), it was for a very specific purpose.

"For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many" (Mark 10:45).

Christ did not just come to bring us the Gospel - He is the Gospel (or "*Good News*").

This major Christian doctrine is the theme of the scriptures - from Genesis to Revelation. Gen. 3:15 is known as the "*proto evangelium*" - the first preaching of the gospel. The "blood line" runs from Genesis to the Book of Revelation.

The Bible is described as "... *the holy scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus*" (2 Tim. 3:15).

This was the theme of Paul's preaching:

- "*For Jews request a sign, and Greeks seek after wisdom; but we preach CHRIST CRUCIFIED, to the Jews a stumbling-block and to the Greeks foolishness*" (1 Corinthians 1:22,23).
- "*For I determined not to know anything among you except Jesus Christ and Him crucified*" (1 Corinthians 2:2).
- "*For I am not ashamed of the Gospel of Christ, for it is the power of God to salvation for everyone who believes*" (Romans 1:16).
- "*But God forbid that I should glory except in the Cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by Whom the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world*" (Galatians 6:14).

3.1 The Reality of Christ's Death and Resurrection.

It was absolutely vital that His death was real - not just a mere swooning - or sin would not be dealt with and we would still be lost and separated from God. "*And if Christ is not risen, your faith is futile: you are still in your sins! Then also those who have fallen asleep (died) in Christ have perished. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men the most pitiable*" (1 Corinthians 15:17,18).

Compare John 10:15-18, Acts 1:3, 1 Corinthians 15:3-8, Romans 1:4.

3.2 THE NECESSITY FOR CHRIST'S DEATH AND RESURRECTION.

- a) Man's position as a sinner under the wrath of God is assumed and taught.

The reason for His death was sin - and it is at the Cross that we realize the extent of our sin. This is what genuine Christianity is all about.

"For all have sinned, and fall short of the Glory of God" (Romans 3:23. See also Romans 6:23, 1 Corinthians 15:3).

Man is lost because of sin and only the Son of God could atone (deal with/pay penalty for) sin. "But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far off have been made near by the Blood of Christ" (Ephesians 2:13).

Sin is that which separates us from God. *"Behold, the Lord's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; nor His ear heavy that it cannot hear. But your iniquities have separated you from your God, and your sins have hidden His face from you, so that He will not hear..."* (Isaiah 59:1).

Sin and death came through Adam (Romans 5:12), but, nevertheless, God holds the individual responsible for his own sin (Ezekiel 18:4).

Sin is failure to meet God's standard of holiness - *"for whoever shall keep the whole law, and yet stumble in one point, he is guilty of all"* (James 2:10).

Christ's atonement answers a serious question: How can God pardon the obviously guilty sinner and still maintain His position as the Holy God? The Cross explains how a Holy God can forgive and receive sinful men.

- b. Christ's death has its roots in the love of God:

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

- The Father – John 3:16, Romans 5:8
- The Son – Galatians 2:20
- The Holy Spirit – Hebrews 9:14

c. Christ's death satisfies the justice of God.

It not only deals with the problem of sin - in the Cross justice and mercy meet.

Sinful man is under the wrath of God - Romans 1:18, Rom. 2:5, Romans 5:9,10, Galatians 5:10.

Christ reconciled us to God, making peace between sinful man and a Holy God - Romans 5:1, Romans 8:1, Romans 3:24,25.

The God of Wrath also provided the remedy for wrath!

It is the duty of all Christians who have experienced the mercy and salvation of God, to share the Gospel. We have been given the "*ministry of reconciliation*" (1 Corinthians 5:18-20).

d. Christ's death demonstrates the mercy of God.

- In Old Testament times, a blood sacrifice was offered under the levitical sacrificial system. It was a picture of the Eternal Lamb of God "*Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world*" (John 1:29 - John speaking of Jesus). He is our sacrifice. The Passover and Communion Service are closely linked "*for indeed Christ, our Passover, was sacrificed for us*" (1 Corinthians 5:87). God permits and provides an acceptable sacrifice in Christ, and Jesus is both the Priest and the Offering)Heb. 9:22-28).

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

- He is our substitute - *"He was wounded for our transgressions: He was bruised for our iniquities. The chastisement of our peace was upon Him, and by His stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray. We have turned, every one to his own way, and the Lord has laid on Him the iniquity of us all"* (Isaiah 53:4-6). See also John 11:49-51, 2 Corinthians 5:21, 1 Pet. 2:24.
- He is our redeemer - Mark 10:45, 1 Pet. 1:18,19, Galatians 3:13, Titus 2:14, Eph. 1:7, Rom. 6:16.

e. Christ's death has powerful effects in the life of believers.

We are saved from the penalty of sin - from the power of sin - and, finally, we shall be saved from the very presence of sin. *"For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that He might destroy (undo loosen, dissolve - Amplified Bible) the works of the devil"* (1 John 3:8).

The true believer has power over the enemy. *"And they overcame him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives to the death"* (Revelations 12:11).

We belong to the Lord – body, soul and spirit - and Scripture exhorts us to live a Kingdom lifestyle. *"For you were bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's"* (1 Corinthians 6:20).

"But who do you say am I?"

I confess that Jesus Christ came in the flesh. That Jesus is the Son of God, that Jesus is the Christ.

An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting The Image Of Christ Within Them.

The Child can make this his or her declaration of faith

DECLARATION

- I acknowledge that I am a sinner in need of the Saviour (Romans 3:23).
- I repent of my sins (Acts 3:19).
- I confess that Jesus alone forgives sin (1 John 1:9, Romans 10:10).
- I renounce all involvement with the occult and all doctrines and teaching that deny Jesus Christ came in the flesh, that He is the Eternal Son of God (the Second Member of the Trinity), and that He is "*the Christ*", (the Messiah and Anointed One). (2 Corinthians 6:17, 1 John 4:2,3, 4:15, 5:1).
- I believe that Christ died for me. (John 3:16, Rom. 10:9).
- I receive Him as my Personal Saviour. (1 John 1:12, Rev. 3:20).
- I confess that JESUS CHRIST IS LORD. (Philippians 2:10, 11).¹

Signature:

Date:

¹ Waldeck, Val (1993) What do they believe? Durban South Africa, pp, 113-121,123.

*An Exposé Of The Methods And Strategies Used By Satan And His Principalities To
Recruit Post Modern Youth To Evil Supernaturalism, By Defiling And Corrupting
The Image Of Christ Within Them.*



List of Tables and Figures

- Table 1:** Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Darkness
- Table 2:** Positive and Negative behaviour
- Table 3:** Cycle of Rejection
- Figure 1:** Threefold Nature of Man
- Figure 2:** Three parts of Tabernacle relating to tripartite man
- Figure 3:** The Deity Pan, god of Rock and Roll
- Figure 4:** Water Crystal, pure harmonious music/positive words
- Figure 5:** Water Crystals exposed to heavy metal music/negative words
- Figure 6:** Haste the Day CD Cover, depicting death and decay
- Figure 7:** CD Cover: As I Lay Dying, depicting death and the One Eye symbol
- Figure 8:** Front man of As I Lay Dying, lightning bolt representing Satan and Eagle representing Freemasonry
- Figure 9:** Toby Mac: "Christian Rapper" – one eye symbolism on album art
- Figure 10:** Disney movie the Little Mermaid, priest getting an erection
- Figure 11:** Left: Owl symbols form the landing at the top of the stairs. Right: Owl symbols form the stairs
- Figure 12:** Left: The image of a flying owl forms the top of a coat-rack. Right: The image of owls forming the staircase.
- Figure 13:** An owl forms part of the headboard of one of the dwarf's beds
- Figure 14:** Bohemian Grove
- Figure 15:** Three eyed girl, symbolizing the third eye
- Figure 16:** Operetta Doll, emphasizing one eye
- Figure 17:** Freaky Fridate, YouTube Video screenshot
- Figure 18:** Transition between grandfather telling a story and the Pyramid of Gizeh into the All seeing eye of the Great Architect
-

- Figure 19:** Monarch Butterfly, porcelain masks
Figure 20: Madonna 666
Figure 21: Baphomet and Madonna
Figure 22: Ishtar the Ancient Sumerian/Babylonian goddess
Figure 23: Madonna depicted as the goddess Ishtar
Figure 24: Hannah Montana, Disney
Figure 25: Miley Cyrus performing at the 2013 VMA's
Figure 26: Lady Gaga as the goddess Venus
Figure 27: goddess Venus as depicted in "The Birth of Venus" by Botticelli
Figure 28: Katy Perry E.T. Goat Legs
Figure 29: Katy Perry E.T.
Figure 30: Watchtower Jehovah's Witnesses
Figure 31: Neshamah